



# WHO international standard terminologies on traditional Chinese medicine







# WHO international standard terminologies on traditional Chinese medicine



WHO international standard terminologies on traditional Chinese medicine

ISBN 978-92-4-004232-2 (electronic version)

ISBN 978-92-4-004233-9 (print version)

© World Health Organization 2022

Some rights reserved. This work is available under the Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial-ShareAlike 3.0 IGO licence (CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 IGO; <https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc-sa/3.0/igo>).

Under the terms of this licence, you may copy, redistribute and adapt the work for non-commercial purposes, provided the work is appropriately cited, as indicated below. In any use of this work, there should be no suggestion that WHO endorses any specific organization, products or services. The use of the WHO logo is not permitted. If you adapt the work, then you must license your work under the same or equivalent Creative Commons licence. If you create a translation of this work, you should add the following disclaimer along with the suggested citation: “This translation was not created by the World Health Organization (WHO). WHO is not responsible for the content or accuracy of this translation. The original English edition shall be the binding and authentic edition”.

Any mediation relating to disputes arising under the licence shall be conducted in accordance with the mediation rules of the World Intellectual Property Organization (<http://www.wipo.int/amc/en/mediation/rules/>).

**Suggested citation.** WHO international standard terminologies on traditional Chinese medicine. Geneva: World Health Organization; 2022. Licence: CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 IGO.

**Cataloguing-in-Publication (CIP) data.** CIP data are available at <http://apps.who.int/iris>.

**Sales, rights and licensing.** To purchase WHO publications, see <http://apps.who.int/bookorders>. To submit requests for commercial use and queries on rights and licensing, see <https://www.who.int/copyright>.

**Third-party materials.** If you wish to reuse material from this work that is attributed to a third party, such as tables, figures or images, it is your responsibility to determine whether permission is needed for that reuse and to obtain permission from the copyright holder. The risk of claims resulting from infringement of any third-party-owned component in the work rests solely with the user.

**General disclaimers.** The designations employed and the presentation of the material in this publication do not imply the expression of any opinion whatsoever on the part of WHO concerning the legal status of any country, territory, city or area or of its authorities, or concerning the delimitation of its frontiers or boundaries. Dotted and dashed lines on maps represent approximate border lines for which there may not yet be full agreement.

The mention of specific companies or of certain manufacturers' products does not imply that they are endorsed or recommended by WHO in preference to others of a similar nature that are not mentioned. Errors and omissions excepted, the names of proprietary products are distinguished by initial capital letters.

All reasonable precautions have been taken by WHO to verify the information contained in this publication. However, the published material is being distributed without warranty of any kind, either expressed or implied. The responsibility for the interpretation and use of the material lies with the reader. In no event shall WHO be liable for damages arising from its use.

Design by Inis Communication

# Contents

Foreword	v
----------	---

Acknowledgements	vi
------------------	----

Introduction	ix
--------------	----

## 1 Fundamentals of traditional Chinese medicine

### 一、中医基础理论术语 1

1.1 Yin/Yang	阴阳类	1
--------------	-----	---

1.2 The five elements	五行类	3
-----------------------	-----	---

1.3 Zang-xiang theory	藏象	5
-----------------------	----	---

1.4 Essence, qi, blood and body fluids	精气血津液类	19
--	--------	----

1.5 Etiological factors	病因类	23
-------------------------	-----	----

1.6 Pathogenesis	病机类	31
------------------	-----	----

1.7 Health preservation and prevention	养生预防类	39
--	-------	----

1.8 Five movements and six qi	五运六气类	40
-------------------------------	-------	----

1.9 Others	其他类	44
------------	-----	----

## 2 Terminologies on diagnosis, patterns and constitution

### 二、诊断、病证和体质术语 49

2.1 Concept and principles in diagnosis	诊断基本概念与原则类	49
---	------------	----

2.2 Four diagnostic methods	四诊	50
-----------------------------	----	----

2.3 Pattern differentiation methods	辨证方法类	93
-------------------------------------	-------	----

2.4 Patterns	证候	103
--------------	----	-----

2.5 Disorders	疾病	184
---------------	----	-----

2.6 Body constitution	体质	322
-----------------------	----	-----

## 3 Treatment principles/methods and therapies

### 三、治则、治法与疗法 325

3.1 Treatment principles	治则	325
--------------------------	----	-----

3.2 Treatment methods	治法	328
-----------------------	----	-----

3.3 Chinese medicine treatment	药物治疗类	362
--------------------------------	-------	-----

3.4 Health cultivation methods	养生保健方法	397
--------------------------------	--------	-----

3.5 Acupuncture and moxibustion (including cupping and guasha) 针灸类(含拔罐、刮痧)		397
---	--	-----

3.6 Tuina	推拿类	424
-----------	-----	-----

3.7 Daoyin/qigong	导引气功	433
-------------------	------	-----

3.8 Taiji	太极	434
-----------	----	-----

3.9 Mental/emotional therapy	情志疗法	447
------------------------------	------	-----

3.10 Others	其他	449
-------------	----	-----

References	451
------------	-----



# Foreword

Traditional, complementary and integrative medicine (TCIM) is an important resource for health and well-being. According to the World Health Organization (WHO) *Global report on traditional and complementary medicine 2019*, 88% of WHO Member States acknowledge the use of traditional and complementary medicine in health care in their respective countries. WHO is currently implementing of its *13th General Programme of Work*, which aims to support countries in achieving universal health coverage and the health-related Sustainable Development Goals. Taking note of the growing importance of traditional medicine in the provision of health care at both the nation and global levels, WHO and its Member States have strived to explore ways to integrate safe and effective traditional and complementary medicines appropriately into national health systems.

WHO is unique in its leadership on independent normative guidance, and prioritizes normative products based on ongoing assessments of country needs. The organization is developing a series of standard terminologies for different forms of TCIM to support the use of relevant

benchmarking documents and other technical documents. Traditional Chinese medicine is one of the most popular forms of TCIM worldwide and it is fitting that this standard terminology on traditional Chinese medicine is the first of this series.

Standard terminology is an essential normative output, and one that enables professionals, policy-makers and the general public to use the same concepts, understanding and definitions in communications, health care services and medical records, as well as in related technical and training resources. Driven by domestic and international demands, WHO is pleased to respond by providing this type of technical guidance and essential tools to Member States – to help promote the safe and effective use of traditional Chinese medicine and to support development of further global goods and associated research.

I am pleased to introduce the *WHO International Standard Terminologies on Traditional Chinese Medicine* and invite you to join us in measuring and expanding its impact.



Zsuzsanna Jakab  
Deputy Director-General  
World Health Organization

# Acknowledgements

WHO wishes to express our sincere appreciation to Shanghai University of Traditional Chinese Medicine, the Translation Committee of China Association of Chinese Medicine, the World Federation of Chinese Medicine Societies and World Federation of Acupuncture-Moxibustion Societies, which kindly provided technical support for this document.

Special thanks go to the following experts who have actively and diligently contributed to the drafting and editing of this document:

YAN Shiyun (Shanghai University of Traditional Chinese Medicine, China), SHI Jianrong (Shanghai Jiao Tong University, China), HAN Chouping (Shanghai University of Traditional Chinese Medicine, China), DOU Danbo (Shuguang Hospital Affiliated to Shanghai University of Traditional Chinese Medicine, China), LI Jie (Shanghai Qigong Research Institute, Shanghai Academy of Traditional Chinese Medicine, China), LI Qizhong (Shanghai University of Traditional Chinese Medicine, China), LI Zhengyu (Shanghai University of Traditional Chinese Medicine, China), QU Lifang (Shanghai University of Traditional Chinese Medicine, China), SHEN Xueyong (Shanghai University of Traditional Chinese Medicine, China), SU Li (Longhua Hospital Affiliated to Shanghai University of Traditional Chinese Medicine, China), WANG Yiqin (Shanghai University of Traditional Chinese Medicine, China), WEN Xiaoping (Shanghai University of Traditional Chinese Medicine, China), YANG Baican (Shanghai University of Traditional Chinese Medicine, China), ZHU Bangxian (Shanghai University of Traditional Chinese Medicine, China), ZHU Liming (Shuguang Hospital Affiliated to Shanghai University of Traditional Chinese Medicine, China), Charlie XUE (School of Health & Biomedical Sciences, RMIT University,

Australia), ZU Lianghua (Shanghai University of Traditional Chinese Medicine, China), Nicola ROBINSON (London South Bank University, United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland), ZHOU En (Shanghai University of Traditional Chinese Medicine, China), ZHOU Yu (Shanghai University of Traditional Chinese Medicine, China), GUO Jinglei (Shanghai University of Traditional Chinese Medicine, China), CHEN Liyun (Shanghai University of Traditional Chinese Medicine, China), CHEN Shaoli (Shanghai University of Traditional Chinese Medicine, China), CHENG Ke (Shanghai University of Traditional Chinese Medicine, China), GU Sizhen (Shuguang Hospital Affiliated to Shanghai University of Traditional Chinese Medicine, China), WANG Youwen (Shanghai University of Traditional Chinese Medicine, China), XIAO Bin (Shanghai University of Traditional Chinese Medicine, China), XU Feng (Shanghai Qigong Research Institute, China), XU Jin (Shanghai University of Traditional Chinese Medicine, China), XU Zhaoxia (Shanghai University of Traditional Chinese Medicine, China), YANG Lina (Shanghai University of Traditional Chinese Medicine, China), YANG Yeying (Longhua Hospital Affiliated to Shanghai University of Traditional Chinese Medicine, China), and ZHANG Ting (Shanghai University of Traditional Chinese Medicine, China).

The contributions of colleagues within the Traditional, Complementary and Integrative Medicine (TCI) unit (Department of Integrated Health Services, WHO) were: Dr ZHANG Qi, head of the TCI unit, who oversaw the project and undertook revisions. Stéphane Alexandre ESPINOSA, LIU Qin, Aditi BANA, WEI Chunyu and WU Yanyun provided technical support to this document.



WHO would additionally like to thank the experts who are listed in alphabetical order as follows for their technical contributions and peer review:

Daniel L. ALTSCHULER (Seattle Institute of East Asian Medicine, Bastyr University, USA), AN Xiaoxian (Xiyuan Hospital, China Academy of Chinese Medical Sciences, China), Elio BASAGNI (International College of Oriental Medicine, United Kingdom), Mark BOVEY (British Acupuncture Council, United Kingdom), Charles BUCK (Chester Clinic for Complementary Medicine, United Kingdom), CHAI Kefu (Zhejiang Chinese Medical University, China), CHANG Chiu-An (Arizona School of Acupuncture and Oriental Medicine, USA), CHEN Dexing (Shanghai University of Traditional Chinese Medicine, China), CHEN Hongfeng (Longhua Hospital Affiliated to Shanghai University of Traditional Chinese Medicine, China), CHEN Jiayu (Beijing University of Chinese Medicine, China), CHEN Xiao (Shanghai University of Traditional Chinese Medicine, China), CHEN Yemeng (New York College of Traditional Chinese Medicine, USA), CHENG Zhaozhi (PCU College of Holistic Medicine, Canada), Samuel A. COLLINS (H.J. Ross Network, USA), Catrina DAVY (Royal London Hospital for Integrated Medicine, United Kingdom), FU Di (Atlantic Institute of Oriental Medicine, USA), DONG Changwu (Anhui University of Chinese Medicine, China), DUAN Junguo (Chengdu University of Traditional Chinese Medicine, China), William DUNBAR (Midwest College of Oriental Medicine, USA), Marnae ERGIL (New York Chiropractic College, Finger Lakes School of Acupuncture and Oriental Medicine, USA), FANG Min (Shanghai University of Traditional Chinese Medicine, China), Michael Scott FITZGERALD (Academy of Chinese Culture and Health Sciences, USA), GAO Xiyian (Henan University of Chinese Medicine, China), Leslie L. Mackenzie-Graham GETTY (American College of Acupuncture and Oriental Medicine, USA), Debra GODSON (Endeavour College of Natural Health, Australia), GOH Chye Tee (Nanyang Technological University, Singapore), Roisin GOLDING (Self-employed acupuncturist, United

Kingdom), GONG Changzhen (American Academy of Acupuncture and Oriental Medicine, USA), GU Yihuang (Nanjing University of Chinese Medicine, China), Kamontip HARNPHADUNGKIT (Faculty of Medicine Siriraj Hospital, Mahidol University, Thailand), HU Hongyi (Shanghai University of Traditional Chinese Medicine, China), HU Ling (Anhui University of Chinese Medicine, China), HUA Haoming (Nanjing University of Chinese Medicine, China), Ka-Kit HUI (UCLA Center for East-West Medicine, USA), Lonny S. JARRETT (Spirit Path Press, USA), Ji Guang (Shanghai University of Traditional Chinese Medicine, China), Ji Lijin (Fujian University of Traditional Chinese Medicine, China), JIA Bo (Chengdu University of Traditional Chinese Medicine, China), Paul JOHNSON (The City College of Acupuncture University, United Kingdom), Ketmanee JONGJAMDEE (Faculty of Medicine Siriraj Hospital, Mahidol University, Thailand), Ted J. KAPTCHUK (Harvard Medical School, USA), LI Candong (Fujian University of Traditional Chinese Medicine, China), LI Keda (Liaoning University of Traditional Chinese Medicine, China), LI Min (Naval Medical University, China), LI Shaoping (University of Macau, Macao SAR, China), LI Ting (Macau University of Science and Technology, Macao SAR, China), LI Yachan (WHO Collaborating Center for Traditional Medicine, Health Bureau, Macao SAR, China), LIN Zhongpeng (World Academic Society of Medical Qigong, China), LIU Hongxiao (Guang'anmen Hospital, China Academy of Chinese Medical Sciences, China), LIU Mingjun (Changchun University of Chinese Medicine, China), LO Vivienne Lien-Ying (UCL China Centre for Health and Humanity, United Kingdom), LU Bingchen (Henan Province Hospital of Traditional Chinese Medicine, China), LU Zhaoxue (Oregon College of Oriental Medicine, USA), LUO Songping (The First Affiliated Hospital of Guangzhou University of Chinese Medicine, China), MA Shuran (Beijing University of Chinese Medicine, China), MA Xuesheng (University of the Western Cape, South Africa), Yair MAIMON (Integrative Cancer Research Center, Sheba Hospital, Israel), Edward NEAL (Xinglin Institute for East Asian Medical Research, USA), Arya NIELSEN (New York teaching hospital, Beth Israel Medical

Center, USA), John E. PIROG (Northwestern Health Sciences University, USA), Michael POTTER (East Medicine Research Centre, University of Westminster, United Kingdom), Elizabeth QI (Hong Kong Baptist University, Hong Kong SAR, China), Elisa ROSSI (Milan Medical Board for Non-Conventional Medicine, Italy), SANG Zhen (Shuguang Hospital Affiliated to Shanghai University of Traditional Chinese Medicine, China), Steven B. SCHRAM (Acupuncture Society of New York, USA), SHEN Yuandong (Institute of TCM International Standardization, Shanghai University of Traditional Chinese Medicine, China), TAN Koon Yaw (Singapore College of Traditional Chinese Medicine, Singapore), TEO Eng Kiat (Singapore College of Traditional Chinese Medicine, Singapore), Paul UNSCHULD (Charité-Medical University Berlin, Germany), Manmas VANNABHUM (Faculty of Medicine Siriraj Hospital, Mahidol University, Thailand), Arnaud VERSLUYS (Institute of Classics in East Asian Medicine, Chinese Herbal Medicine Research, USA), Sivarama Prasad VINJAMURY (Southern California University of Health Sciences, USA), Charles WAMBEBE (Tshwane University of Technology, South Africa), WANG Heming (Fujian University of Traditional Chinese Medicine, China), WANG Jiulin (MacEwan University, Canada), WANG Tianfang (Beijing University of Chinese Medicine, China), WANG Tong (Beijing University of Chinese Medicine, China), WANG Yue (The First Clinical Medical College of Nanjing University of Chinese Medicine, China), WANG Zhihong (Changchun University of Chinese Medicine, China), WEI Zixiao (Xiyuan Hospital, China Academy of Chinese Medical Sciences), John WELDEN (Institute of Clinical Acupuncture and Oriental Medicine, USA), Sabine WILMS (School of Classical Chinese Medicine, National University of Natural Medicine, USA), WU Qingguang (Guangzhou University of Chinese Medicine, China), XIAN Shaoxiang (The First Affiliated Hospital of Guangzhou University of

Chinese Medicine, China), YE Jin (Shanghai University of Traditional Chinese Medicine, China), YU Xiaoping (Shuguang Hospital Affiliated to Shanghai University of Traditional Chinese Medicine, China), Christopher John ZASLAWSKI (University of Technology, Sydney, Australia), ZHANG Chenming (School of Acupuncture and Traditional Chinese Medicine, New Zealand), ZHANG Huaqiong (Shanghai University of Traditional Chinese Medicine, China), ZHANG Zhangjin (School of Chinese Medicine, The University of Hong Kong, Hong Kong SAR, China), ZHANG Zhe (Shandong University of Traditional Chinese Medicine, China), ZHAO Jingsheng (China Academy of Chinese Medical Sciences, China), ZHAO Yijun (China Academy of Chinese Medical Sciences, China), ZHAO Zhongzhen (School of Chinese Medicine, Hong Kong Baptist University, Hong Kong SAR, China), ZHENG Linyun (Shanghai University of Traditional Chinese Medicine, China), ZHONG Gansheng (Beijing University of Chinese Medicine, China), ZHOU Guitong (Tianjin University of Traditional Chinese Medicine, China), ZHOU Wenxin (Shanghai University of Traditional Chinese Medicine, China), ZHU Heming (Maryland University of Integrative Health, USA), ZHU Jianping (China Academy of Chinese Medical Sciences, China), ZHU Jinshan (Shenzhen Hospital of Guangzhou University of Chinese Medicine, China), ZOU Xiaojuan (Hubei University of Traditional Chinese Medicine, China).

The World Health Organization (WHO) gratefully acknowledges the financial support of the National Administration of Traditional Chinese Medicine of the People's Republic of China, and Macao Special Administrative Region of the People's Republic of China, without which the development and production of this document would not have been impossible.

# Introduction

## Why this terminology was developed

Traditional medicine (TM) has a long history of use in health maintenance and disease prevention and treatment. Traditional Chinese Medicine is one of the popularly applied health resources throughout the world. According to the second global survey conducted by the World Health Organization (WHO), acupuncture is the most popular form of traditional and complementary medicine globally (recognized by 113 Member States). The use of other aspects of traditional Chinese medicine is acknowledged by 100 Member States. Therefore, the development of the *WHO International standard terminologies on traditional Chinese medicine* is both fundamental and critical to promoting safe and effective traditional Chinese medicine health services.

Although the needs and demands for norms and standards of traditional, complementary and integrative medicine (TCIM) to support the training, education, research, health care and information exchange in traditional Chinese medicine practice are increasing, the work in this area remains weak at the international level. WHO is developing benchmarking resources for training and practice of traditional Chinese medicine, and there is an urgent need to develop standard terminologies to support the development and use of these benchmarking documents, as well as other traditional Chinese medicine technical materials. Based on the needs of Member States, traditional Chinese medicine terminology aims to reduce gaps by providing concise and clear definitions for the essential terms that form the basis of traditional Chinese medicine.

## How was the terminology prepared?

The years between 2016 and 2021 have witnessed the development and completion of the *WHO International standard terminologies on traditional Chinese medicine*. This terminology was prepared with intensive technical support from both Chinese and international experts, as well as related institutions and organizations. The key experts were identified from WHO Collaborating Centres for TCIM and relevant institutions/organizations across WHO regions.

This project was initiated in 2016 by the WHO Traditional, Complementary and Integrative Medicine (TCI) Unit of the Integrated Health Service Department (IHS). In line with WHO established principles and processes for norms and standards development, the TCI made the planning proposal and clarified the scope of work. Experts from Shanghai University of Traditional Chinese Medicine and the Translation Committee of China Association of Chinese Medicine were identified as local hosts for drafting and revising the Chinese and English version of the standard terminologies in traditional Chinese medicine. In December 2016, 23 experts in China were invited to attend the first preliminary meeting, which was followed by weekly consultation meetings. In June 2017, the first draft of the Chinese version was completed. In July 2017, a nationwide meeting was held to review the draft. By the end of 2017, the draft of the English version was completed. In early 2018, a total of 48 experts were invited to review the English version. In April 2018, the draft of Chinese and English versions were submitted to WHO for review.

In November 2018, the WHO Working Group Meeting on Standard Terminology in Traditional Chinese Medicine was held in Macao SAR, China. Experts from Australia, Canada, Germany, Hong Kong SAR China, Macao SAR China, Singapore, South Africa, Thailand, the United States and the United Kingdom reviewed the draft. After another two years of international peer reviews and further revisions, more than 30 international experts from across the WHO Region of the Americas, the European Region, the South-East Asia Region and the Western Pacific Region attended the second WHO Working Group Meeting on Standard Terminology in Traditional Chinese Medicine (virtual) meeting in September 2020. This meeting marked the conclusion of the technical consultation process and consensus reached on the latest version of the terminology on traditional Chinese medicine before technical editing and publication.

## What does this terminology cover?

This document covers fundamental theories, diagnoses, therapies, interventions, disorders, patterns, prevention, health preservation and rehabilitation. A total of 3415 terms were included, in which 3387 terms have detailed descriptions and 28 are terms of main categorization.

The following key principles were followed in the terminology development process:

- Providing comprehensive definition for all terms included.
- Use of English as the primary language.
- Building on the related work and following WHO relevant principles.
- Keeping the integrity of the theoretical framework of traditional Chinese medicine.
- Keeping definitions concise and clear, and focusing on the underlying, core terms in traditional Chinese medicine.
- Full use of the resources of professional domestic and international organizations of traditional Chinese medicine, WHO Collaborating Centres for TCIM and the WHO Expert Panel for TCIM.

## Who is this terminology for?

By setting related norms and standards, this document helps to address the issues related to terminology on traditional Chinese medicine. It offers an essential tool and useful reference point for traditional Chinese medicine professionals, policy-makers, health workers and the general public.



Qi Zhang, Head  
Unit of Traditional, Complementary  
and Integrative Medicine  
Department of Integrated Health Services  
World Health Organization

# 1 Fundamentals of traditional Chinese medicine

## 一、中医基础理论术语

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1	1 Fundamentals of traditional Chinese medicine			一、中医基础理论术语		
2	1.1 Yin/Yang			1.1 阴阳类		
3	Yin-yang		A concept defined as the opposing but complementary qualities of interrelated entities/ phenomena in the natural world.	阴阳	yīn yáng	
4	Yin		Yin is the opposite of yang. The qualities of yin include cold/cool, dimness, descending, stillness, introversion, heaviness, etc.	阴	yīn	
5	Yang		Yang is the opposite of yin. The qualities of yang include warm/hot, bright, ascending, movement, extroversion, light, clearness, etc.	阳	yáng	
6	Yin qi		Yin qi is the opposite of yang qi. The qualities of yin qi include condensation, moistening, inhibition, etc.	阴气	yīn qì	
7	Yang qi		Yang qi is the opposite of yin qi. The qualities of yang qi include warming, activating, excitation, etc.	阳气	yáng qì	
8	Yin and yang mutually interact	Yin-yang intertwining; yin-yang resonance	Yin and yang mutually affect and interact with one another.	阴阳交感	yīn yáng jiāo gǎn	阴阳相错
9	Yin and yang mutually oppose		Yin and yang mutually oppose and restrain one another.	阴阳相反	yīn yáng xiāng fǎn	
10	Yin and yang mutually support		Yin and yang mutually support one another.	阴阳相成	yīn yáng xiāng chéng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
11	Yin and yang reciprocally root	Yin–yang interdependence	Yin and yang have reciprocal roots and cannot be separated.	阴阳互根	yīn yáng hù gēn	
12	Yin and yang wax and wane		Dynamic waxing and waning between yin and yang.	阴阳消长	yīn yáng xiāo zhǎng	
13	Yin and yang mutually transform		Under certain circumstances, yin may transform into yang and yang into yin.	阴阳转化	yīn yáng zhuǎn huà	
14	Extreme yin transforming into yang		When yin develops to its extremity, it will transform into yang.	重阴必阳	zhòng yīn bì yáng	
15	Extreme yang transforming into yin		When yang develops to its extremity, it will transform into yin.	重阳必阴	zhòng yáng bì yīn	
16	Balance between yin and yang	Balanced yin with contained yang	A harmonious state between yin and yang, when yin qi is in balance and yang qi is secured within the body.	阴平阳秘	yīn píng yáng mì	
17	Spontaneous harmonization between yin and yang		The tendency for yin and yang to spontaneously and mutually harmonize.	阴阳自和	yīn yáng zì hé	
18	Yin alone cannot be generated		Without yang, yin cannot come into being.	孤阴不生	gū yīn bù shēng	
19	Yang alone cannot grow	Solitary yang failing to grow	Without yin, yang cannot grow and develop.	独阳不长	dú yáng bù zhǎng	
20	Yin within yin		When yin is further divided into yin and yang, the yin aspect of yin is called yin within yin.	阴中之阴	yīn zhōng zhī yīn	
21	Yang within yin		When yin is further divided into yin and yang, the yang aspect of yin is called yang within yin.	阴中之阳	yīn zhōng zhī yáng	
22	Yang within yang		When yang is further divided into yin and yang, the yang aspect of yang is called yang within yang.	阳中之阳	yáng zhōng zhī yáng	
23	Yin within yang		When yang is further divided into yin and yang, the yin aspect of yang is called yin within yang.	阳中之阴	yáng zhōng zhī yīn	
24	Yang germinates and yin grows		When yang qi brings things to life, yin qi grows and enables endurance.	阳生阴长	yáng shēng yīn zhǎng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
25	Yang kills and yin stores		In regard to the changing seasons, it is the nature of yang to kill and break things down and the nature of yin to store.	阳杀阴藏	yáng shā yīn cáng	
26	Three yin and three yang		A collective term for Jueyin, Shaoyin and Taiyin; Shaoyang, Yangming and Taiyang.	三阴三阳	sān yīn sān yáng	
27	<b>1.2 The five elements</b>			<b>1.2 五行类</b>		
28	Five elements	Five phases	The interactions and changes among the five categories of phenomena represented by wood, fire, earth, metal and water.	五行	wǔ xíng	
29	Wood is characterized by bending and straightening		The nature of wood is to bend and straighten as it grows. The wood element is used to express growth, bearing upwards, effusion, free flow, etc.	木曰曲直	mù yuē qū zhí	
30	Fire is characterized by flaming upward		The nature of fire is to flame upwards. The fire element is used to express warmth, rising, flourishing, etc.	火曰炎上	huǒ yuē yán shàng	
31	Earth is characterized by sowing and reaping		The soil of the earth is where crops are sown and reaped. The earth element is used to express transformation, carrying, embracing, etc.	土爰稼穡	tǔ yuán jià sè	
32	Metal is characterized by yielding and changing		The nature of metal is to be adaptable and changeable. The metal element is used to express chilliness, descending, purification, etc.	金曰从革	jīn yuē cóng gé	
33	Water is characterized by moistening and descending		The nature of water is to be moist and flow downwards. The water element is used to express coldness, moistening, downward movement, storing, etc.	水曰润下	shuǐ yuē rùn xià	
34	The five elements mutually generate	Mutual generation among the five elements	The five elements mutually engender and support one another. The sequential engendering and supporting relationships among the five elements are, specifically, wood generates fire, fire generates earth, earth generates metal, metal generates water and water generates wood.	五行相生	wǔ xíng xiāng shēng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
35	The five elements mutually restrain	Mutual controlling among the five elements	The five elements mutually control and restrain one another. The sequential restraining relationships among the five elements are, specifically, wood restrains earth, earth restrains water, water restrains fire, fire restrains metal, and metal restrains wood.	五行相克	wǔ xíng xiāng kè	
36	The five elements mutually control and transform		A balanced, harmonized state maintained by mutual generating and restraining relationships among the five elements.	五行制化	wǔ xíng zhì huà	
37	The five elements overcome and retaliate		The five elements have the actions of overcoming and retaliating with one another.	五行胜复	wǔ xíng shèng fù	
38	The five elements mutually over-restrain one another	Overacting among the five elements	Excessive restraint of an element over the element it controls.	五行相乘	wǔ xíng xiāng chéng	
39	The five elements mutually counter-restrain one another	Reverse restraining/insulting among the five elements	A restraining element becomes controlled by the element it controls.	五行相侮	wǔ xíng xiāng wǔ	
40	Mother qi		In the five elements, the qi of one element gives birth to the succeeding element.	母气	mǔ qì	
41	Child qi		In the five elements, the qi of one element is born from the previous element.	子气	zǐ qì	
42	Mother passing illness to child		In the five elements, when an illness in the mother organ is passed to the child organ.	母病及子	mǔ bìng jí zǐ	
43	Child's illness affects the mother	Child stealing the mother's qi	In the five elements, when an illness in a child organ affects the mother organ.	子病犯母	zǐ bìng fàn mǔ	子盗母气
44	Five directions	Five bearings	The five directions are east, west, south, north and center. In the five elements, they are associated with wood, metal, fire, water and earth respectively.	五方	wǔ fāng	
45	Late summer		A fifth seasonal period occurring between the seasons of summer and autumn. It can also refer to the period of the last eighteen days of each season.	长夏	cháng xià	



WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
46	Five seasons		The five seasons are spring, summer, late summer, autumn and winter. In the five elements, they are associated with wood, fire, earth, metal and water respectively.	五时	wǔ shí	
47	Five qi		The prevailing climate qualities of the five seasons are wind, summer heat, dampness, dryness and cold. In the five elements, they are associated with wood, fire, earth, metal and water respectively.	五气	wǔ qì	
48	Five transformations		The five transformative states are birth, growth, transformation, harvest and storage. In the five elements, they are associated with wood, fire, earth, metal and water respectively.	五化	wǔ huà	
49	Five colours		The five colours are green, red, yellow, white and black. In the five elements, they are associated with wood, fire, earth, metal and water respectively.	五色	wǔ sè	
50	Five flavours		The five flavours are sour, bitter, sweet, pungent and salty. In the five elements, they are associated with wood, fire, earth, metal and water respectively.	五味	wǔ wèi	
51	Five notes	Five tones	The five musical notes are jué (mi), zhǐ(sol), gōng(do), shāng(re), and yǔ(la). In the five elements, they are associated with wood, fire, earth, metal and water respectively.	五音	wǔ yīn	
52	<b>1.3 Zang-xiang theory</b>			<b>1.3 藏象</b>		
53	Zang-xiang	Visceral manifestations	The word “zang” means the internal organs; and the word “xiang” means the outward manifestations of physiological functions and pathological changes of the internal organs.	藏象	zàng xiàng	
54	Zang-fu		A collective term for the internal organs of human beings, including five zang organs, six fu organs and extraordinary organs.	脏腑	zàng fǔ	
55	Five zang organs		A collective term for the five internal organs—the heart, liver, spleen/pancreas, lung and kidney.	五脏	wǔ zàng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
56	Six fu organs		A collective term for the six internal organs: gallbladder, stomach, large intestine, small intestine, urinary bladder, and sanjiao (literally translated into “triple energizer”).	六腑	liù fǔ	
57	Extraordinary fu organs		A collective term for brain, marrow, bone, vessels, gallbladder and uterus. These organs are extraordinary because they store like zang organs.	奇恒之腑	qí héng zhī fǔ	
58	Zang–fu organs mutually interconnect		The zang–fu organs mutually correspond with one another, with a (yin) interior–(yang) exterior connection between the zang and fu organs. Specifically, the heart is internally–externally connected with the small intestine, the lung with the large intestine, the spleen with the stomach, the liver with the gallbladder, the kidney with the urinary bladder, and the pericardium with sanjiao.	脏腑相合	zàng fǔ xiāng hé	
59	Storage of the five zang organs		The heart stores the spirit; the lung stores the corporeal soul; the liver stores the ethereal soul; the spleen stores the intent; and the kidney stores the will.	五脏所藏	wǔ zàng suǒ cáng	
60	Governance of the five zang organs		The heart governs blood vessels; the lung governs the skin; the spleen governs the flesh; the liver governs the sinew/tendon; and the kidney governs the bones.	五脏所主	wǔ zàng suǒ zhǔ	
61	Fluids of the five zang organs		The fluid of the heart is sweat; the fluid of the lung is nasal mucus; the fluid of the spleen is thin saliva; the fluid of the liver is tears; and the fluid of the kidney is the thick saliva.	五脏化液	wǔ zàng huà yè	
62	Lustres of the five zang organs		The lustre of the heart shows in the face; the lustre of the lung shows in the skin hair; the lustre of the spleen shows in the lips; the lustre of the liver shows in the nails; and the lustre of the kidney shows in the hair.	五脏外华	wǔ zàng wài huá	
63	Opening of the five zang organs		The heart opens into the tongue; the lung opens into the nose; the spleen opens into the mouth; the liver opens into the eyes; and the kidney opens into the ears.	五脏开窍	wǔ zàng kāi qiào	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
64	Emotions of the five zang organs		The emotion of the heart is joy; the emotion of the lung is grief; the emotion of the spleen is overthinking; the emotion of the liver is anger; and the emotion of the kidney is fear.	五脏在志	wǔ zàng zài zhì	
65	Dislikes of the five zang organs		The heart dislikes heat; the lung dislikes cold; the spleen dislikes dampness; the liver dislikes wind; and the kidney dislikes dryness.	五脏所恶	wǔ zàng suǒ wù	
66	Heart qi		The qi stored by the heart, as opposed to heart blood. It is the driving force of physiological activities of the heart.	心气	xīn qì	
67	Heart blood		The blood stored by the heart, as opposed to heart qi. It is the material foundation of physiological activities of the heart.	心血	xīn xuè	
68	Heart yin		The yin essence of the heart, as opposed to heart yang. It refers to the quiescent and moistening aspect of the heart's function.	心阴	xīn yīn	
69	Heart yang		The yang qi of the heart, as opposed to heart yin. It refers to the activating, impelling and warming aspect of the heart's function.	心阳	xīn yáng	
70	Heart system	Heart connections	A functional system composed of the heart, small intestine, blood vessels, face, tongue and heart meridian.	心系	xīn xì	
71	Foundation of life		It refers to the heart, the foundation of human life.	生之本	shēng zhī běn	
72	The monarch organ	The office of monarch	It refers to the heart. The heart is called the organ of monarch because it stores the spirit (i.e. the foundation of life).	君主之官	jūn zhǔ zhī guān	
73	The heart governs the bright spirit	The heart governs spirit and/or mind The heart governs mental activities	The heart dominates the vital activities and governs mental, conscious and thinking activities.	心主神明	xīn zhǔ shén míng	心主神志; 心藏神
74	The heart governs the blood and vessels		The normal functioning of the heart in pumping blood to circulate within the vessels.	心主血脉	xīn zhǔ xuè mài	
75	The lustre of the heart shows in the face	The lustre of the heart shows in complexion	The colour and lustre of the face manifest the functioning of the heart.	心其华在面	xīn qí huá zài miàn	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
76	The heart opens into the tongue		The tongue is nourished by heart qi and blood. It is the opening orifice of the heart.	心开窍于舌	xīn kāi qiào yú shé	
77	The tongue is the expression of the heart		The physiological functions and pathological changes of heart can manifest on the tongue.	舌为心之苗	shé wéi xīn zhī miáo	
78	The fluid of the heart is sweat		Sweat is associated with the heart.	心在液为汗	xīn zài yè wéi hàn	
79	The vessels are the tissue of the heart		The blood vessels are associated with the heart.	心在体合脉	xīn zài tǐ hé mài	
80	The emotion of the heart is joy		Joy is associated with the heart.	心在志为喜	xīn zài zhì wéi xǐ	
81	The heart dislikes heat		The heart is intolerant of heat. It is fire in nature and can be easily damaged by fire heat.	心恶热	xīn wù rè	
82	The pairing between the heart and small intestine		The heart is externally-internally paired with the small intestine through meridians.	心合小肠	xīn hé xiǎo cháng	
83	Pericardium	The pericardium connections	The membrane that encircles and protects the heart.	心包	xīn bāo	心包络
84	Coordination between the heart and the kidney	Coordination between water and fire/harmony; between the heart and the kidney	The coordinated balance between ascending heart fire (yang) and descending kidney water (yin).	心肾相交	xīn shèn xiāng jiāo	水火既济
85	Disharmony between the heart and the kidney	Lack of coordination between water and fire	The disharmony between ascending heart fire (yang) and descending kidney water (yin).	心肾不交	xīn shèn bù jiāo	水火不济
86	Lung qi		The qi stored in the lung. It is the driving force of physiological activities of the lung.	肺气	fèi qì	
87	Lung yin		The yin essence of the lung, as opposed to lung yang. It refers to the quiescent and moistening aspect of the lung's function.	肺阴	fèi yīn	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
88	Lung yang		The yang qi of the lung, as opposed to lung yin. It refers to the activating, impelling and warming aspect of the lung's function.	肺阳	fèi yáng	
89	Lung system	Lung connections	A functional system composed of the lung, large intestine, skin, body hair, nose and lung meridian.	肺系	fèi xì	
90	Foundation of qi		It refers to the lung. The lung is the root of the qi of the entire body.	气之本	qì zhī běn	
91	The prime minister organ	The office of the prime minister	It refers to the lung. The lung governs qi and assists the heart to circulate blood; therefore, the lung is compared to the prime minister of a government.	相傅之官	xiāng fù zhī guān	
92	The lung governs qi		The lung dominates respiration and the qi of the entire body.	肺主气	fèi zhǔ qì	
93	The lung governs breathing		The lung dominates breathing in the clean qi and breathing out the stale qi.	肺司呼吸	fèi sī hū xī	
94	The lung governs upward and outward diffusion		This refers to the upward and outward diffusion of lung qi.	肺主宣发	fèi zhǔ xuān fā	
95	The lung governs descent and purification		This refers to the downward and inward depuration of lung qi.	肺主肃降	fèi zhǔ sù jiàng	
96	The lung governs water circulation		The lung regulates water circulation and metabolism through dispersing and descending of lung qi.	肺主行水	fèi zhǔ xíng shuǐ	
97	Upper source of water		It refers to the lung. The lung is located on the highest position among other zang-fu organs. It regulates water metabolism of the body.	水之上源	shuǐ zhī shàng yuán	
98	The lung regulates waterways		The lung regulates waterways through the diffusion of lung qi.	肺主通调水道	fèi zhǔ tōng tiáo shuǐ dào	
99	The lung presides over the hundred vessels		The lung presides over vessels of the whole body to assist the heart's function in circulating blood.	肺朝百脉	fèi cháo bǎi mài	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
100	The lung governs management and regulation		The lung manages and regulates physiological activities of the entire body.	肺主治节	fèi zhǔ zhì jié	
101	The lung governs the skin and body hair	The lung is connected with the skin and body hair	The lung warms and nourishes the skin and body hair, regulates the opening and closing of the sweat pores and safeguards the surface of the body.	肺主皮毛	fèi zhǔ pí máo	肺合皮毛
102	The outer aspect of the lung is the skin		The skin is associated with the lung.	肺在体合皮	fèi zài tǐ hé pí	
103	The lustre of the lung shows in the body hair		The colour and lustre of the body hair manifest the functioning of the lung.	肺其华在毛	fèi qí huá zài máo	
104	The lung opens into the nose		The nose is the opening of the lung.	肺开窍于鼻	fèi kāi qiào yú bí	
105	The emotion of the lung is grief		Grief is associated with the lung.	肺在志为悲	fèi zài zhì wéi bēi	
106	The fluid of the lung is nasal discharge		Nasal discharge is associated with the lung.	肺在液为涕	fèi zài yè wéi tì	
107	The Lung stores the Corporeal Soul (Po)		The lung helps to maintain the instinctive perception and immediate reactivity.	肺藏魄	fèi cáng pò	
108	The lung dislikes cold		The lung is intolerant of cold and connected with the skin and body hair. Lung qi is easily damaged by exogenous pathogenic cold.	肺恶寒	fèi wù hán	
109	The pairing between the lung and large intestine		The lung is internally–externally paired with the large intestine through meridians.	肺合大肠	fèi hé dà cháng	
110	Spleen qi		The qi stored in the spleen. It is the driving force of physiological activities of the spleen.	脾气	pí qì	
111	Spleen yin		The yin essence of the spleen, as opposed to spleen yang. It refers to the quiescent and moistening aspect of the spleen's function.	脾阴	pí yīn	
112	Spleen yang		The yang qi of the spleen, is opposite to spleen yin. It refers to the activating, impelling and warming aspect of the spleen's function.	脾阳	pí yáng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
113	Spleen system	Spleen connections	A functional system composed of the spleen, stomach, muscle, lips, mouth and spleen meridian.	脾系	pí xì	
114	Postnatal foundation		Refers to the spleen. The spleen transports and transforms nutrients from water and food (i.e. the essential material foundation to maintain vital activities).	后天之本	hòu tiān zhī běn	
115	The granary organ	The office of the granaries	Refers to the spleen. The spleen transports and transforms nutrients from water and food. It is compared to an officer of the granaries.	仓廩之官	cāng lǐn zhī guān	
116	The spleen governs transportation and transformation		A collective term used to describe the spleen's functions in transporting and transforming water, food and fluids. The spleen digests water and food, absorbs and distributes nutrients and regulates water metabolism.	脾主运化	pí zhǔ yùn huà	
117	The spleen contains blood	The spleen holds blood	The spleen qi controls the blood to circulate within small vessels.	脾主统血	pí zhǔ tǒng xuè	
118	The spleen ascends the nutrients		Opposite to the “stomach descends the turbid”, the spleen qi ascends and distributes nutrients to the heart and lungs, and maintains normal positions of the internal organs.	脾主升清	pí zhǔ shēng qīng	
119	The spleen governs the limbs		The spleen distributes nutrients of water and food to the four limbs to maintain their normal activities.	脾主四肢	pí zhǔ sì zhī	
120	The spleen governs muscles		The spleen distributes nutrients of water and food to muscles to maintain their normal activities.	脾主肌肉	pí zhǔ jī ròu	
121	The spleen governs the four seasons		There are four seasons in one year. The spleen is associated with the last 18 days in each season.	脾主四时	pí zhǔ sì shí	
122	The lustre of the spleen shows in the lips		The colour and lustre of the lips manifest the functioning of the spleen.	脾其华在唇	pí qí huá zài chún	
123	The spleen opens into the mouth		The spleen receives water and food from the mouth and the mouth is the opening of the spleen.	脾开窍于口	pí kāi qiào yú kǒu	
124	The emotion of the spleen is overthinking		The spleen is associated with thoughtfulness.	脾在志为思	pí zài zhì wéi sī	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
125	The fluid of the spleen is thin saliva		Thin saliva is associated with the spleen.	脾在液为涎	pí zài yè wéi xián	
126	The spleen stores intent		The spleen assists the heart in mental/thinking activities.	脾藏意	pí cáng yì	
127	The spleen dislikes dampness		The spleen is intolerant of dampness. As an earth organ, the spleen is intolerant and affected by dampness.	脾恶湿	pí wù shī	
128	The pairing between the spleen and stomach		The spleen is externally-internally paired with the spleen through meridians.	脾合胃	pí hé wèi	
129	Liver qi		The qi stored in the liver, as opposed to liver blood. It is the driving force of physiological activities of the liver.	肝气	gān qì	
130	Liver blood		The blood stored in the liver, as opposed to liver qi. It is the material foundation of physiological activities of the liver.	肝血	gān xuè	
131	Liver yin		The yin essence of the liver, as opposed to liver yang. It refers to the quiescent and moistening aspect of the liver's functions.	肝阴	gān yīn	
132	Liver yang		The yang qi of the liver, as opposed to liver yin. It refers to the activating, impelling and warming aspect of the liver's functions.	肝阳	gān yáng	
133	Liver system	Liver connections	A functional system composed of the liver, gallbladder, tendons, nails and liver meridian.	肝系	gān xì	
134	The liver is the foundation for fatigue endurance		Refers to the liver. The liver stores blood, and the blood nourishes tendons/sinew and helps to endure fatigue.	罢极之本	pǐ jí zhī běn	
135	The general organ	The office of army generals	Refers to the liver. The liver is resolute and helps with developing and planning strategies. It is compared to an army general.	将军之官	jiāng jūn zhī guān	
136	The liver governs the free flow of qi		The liver maintains free flow of qi over the entire body.	肝主疏泄	gān zhǔ shū xiè	
137	The liver governs strategic planning	The liver controls planning	The liver helps with developing and planning strategies.	肝主谋虑	gān zhǔ móu lǜ	



WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
138	The liver stores blood		The liver stores blood, regulates blood volume and prevents bleeding.	肝藏血	gān cáng xuè	
139	The liver governs ascending and dispersing		The physiological feature of the liver in the free ascending of yang qi.	肝主升发	gān zhǔ shēng fā	
140	The liver is the resolute organ		As the resolute organ, the liver likes free will; liver yang (qi) is susceptible to becoming hyperactive.	肝为刚脏	gān wéi gāng zàng	
141	The liver likes free will and hates to be suppressed		The liver is an organ of wind and wood. Liver qi needs to be soft and unobstructed. Free flow of qi guarantees its normal physiological functions.	肝喜条达而恶抑郁	gān xǐ tiáo dá ér wù yì yù	
142	The emotion of the liver is anger		Anger is associated with the liver.	肝在志为怒	gān zài zhì wéi nù	
143	The tissue of the liver is sinew		Sinews are associated with the liver.	肝在体合筋	gān zài tǐ hé jīn	
144	Nails are the extension of sinews		Nails, as the extension of sinews, are nourished by liver blood.	爪为筋之余	zhǎo wéi jīn zhī yú	
145	The lustre of the liver shows in the nails		The colour and lustre of the nails manifest the functioning of the liver.	肝其华在爪	gān qí huá zài zhǎo	
146	The liver opens into the eyes		The eyes are nourished by liver qi and blood and therefore the opening orifice of the liver.	肝开窍于目	gān kāi qiào yú mù	
147	The fluid of the liver are tears		Tears are associated with the liver.	肝在液为泪	gān zài yè wéi lèi	
148	The liver stores the Ethereal Soul (Hun)		The liver has the ability to help the heart in making strategic plans and balancing caution and courage.	肝藏魂	gān cáng hún	
149	The liver dislikes wind		The liver is intolerant of wind. It is associated with wood and susceptible to being affected by wind.	肝恶风	gān wù fēng	
150	The pairing between the liver and gallbladder		The liver is paired externally-internally with the gallbladder through meridians.	肝合胆	gān hé dǎn	
151	Yin organ with yang functions		The liver is a yin organ because it stores (yin) blood; however, it maintains the free flow of qi (yang).	体阴而用阳	tǐ yīn ér yòng yáng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
152	Liver and kidney share the same source	Yi (liver) and Gui (kidney) share the same source	The liver stores blood and the kidney stores essence, blood and essence can mutually transform into each other. The liver belongs to Yi (the second heavenly stems) wood, while the kidney belongs to Gui (the twelfth heavenly stems) water.	肝肾同源	gān shèn tóng yuán	乙癸同源
153	Kidney essence		The essence stored in the kidney. It is inherited from one's parents and nourished by water and food. It is known as the foundation of physiological activities of the kidney.	肾精	shèn jīng	
154	Kidney qi		Transformed by kidney essence, it is the driving force of physiological activities of the kidney.	肾气	shèn qì	
155	Kidney yin	Primordial yin; genuine yin	The yin essence of the kidney. Opposite to kidney yang, it refers to the quiescent and moistening aspect of the kidney's functions.	肾阴	shèn yīn	元阴;真阴
156	Kidney yang	Primordial yang; genuine yang	Opposite to kidney yin, it refers to the activating, impelling and warming aspects of the kidney's functions.	肾阳	shèn yáng	元阳;真阳
157	Kidney system	Kidney connections	A functional system composed of the kidney, urinary bladder, bones, hair, ears, urethra, anus, and kidney meridian.	肾系	shèn xì	
158	Congenital foundation	Innate root	Refers to the kidney. The kidney essence inherited from parents is fundamental to the growth and reproduction.	先天之本	xiān tiān zhī běn	
159	The foundation of sealing and storing		Refers to the kidney. The kidney stores and secures essential qi, absorbs clean qi, and holds urine in the urinary bladder.	封藏之本	fēng cáng zhī běn	
160	The organ of strenuous work	The office of strenuous work	Refers to the kidney. The kidney stores essence, generates marrow, and dominates bones. It is associated with the ability to do and strive, and therefore, compared to an organ of strenuous work.	作强之官	zuò qiáng zhī guān	
161	The kidney stores essence		The kidney stores and secures the essence of human body.	肾藏精	shèn cáng jīng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
162	The kidney governs reproduction		The function of kidney essence and qi in boosting the maturity of reproductive organs and maintaining reproductive ability.	肾主生殖	shèn zhǔ shēng zhí	
163	Tian Gui	Heavenly water	A material substance transformed and generated by abundant kidney essence. Tian Gui boosts the maturity of reproductive organs and maintains the reproductive function.	天癸	tiān guǐ	
164	The kidney governs qi reception		The kidney receives and holds the clear qi inhaled by the lung to maintain the depth of breathing.	肾主纳气	shèn zhǔ nà qì	
165	The kidney governs water and fluids		The kidney governs and regulates water metabolism.	肾主水液	shèn zhǔ shuǐ yè	
166	The kidney governs hibernation	The kidney governs storing and sealing	The kidney seals, stores and keeps essence within the body.	肾主蛰	shèn zhǔ zhé	
167	The kidney governs the bones		The kidney essence generates marrow to nourish bones.	肾主骨	shèn zhǔ gǔ	
168	Teeth are the extension of the bone		The teeth and the bones share the same source – kidney essence.	齿为骨之余	chǐ wéi gǔ zhī yú	
169	The kidney generates marrow		The kidney essence transforms into and generates bone marrow.	肾生髓	shèn shēng suǐ	
170	The lustre of the kidney shows in the hair		The colour and lustre of hair manifest the functioning of the kidney.	肾其华在发	shèn qí huá zài fà	
171	The kidney opens into the ears		The ears are nourished by kidney essence and qi and are the opening orifice of the kidney.	肾开窍于耳	shèn kāi qiào yú ěr	
172	The kidney opens into the urethra and anus		The kidney secures essence and dominates the urethra and anus. The urethra and anus are the opening orifices of the kidney.	肾开窍于二阴	shèn kāi qiào yú èr yīn	
173	The emotion of the kidney is fear		Fear is associated with the kidney.	肾在志为恐	shèn zài zhì wéi kǒng	
174	The fluid of the kidney is thick saliva		Thick saliva is associated with the kidney.	肾在液为唾	shèn zài yè wéi tuò	
175	The kidney stores will		The kidney assists the heart in governing willpower and memory.	肾藏志	shèn cáng zhì	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
176	The kidney dislikes dryness		The kidney is intolerant of dryness. The kidney stores essence and dominates body fluids. Dryness may damage yin fluids and impair kidney essence.	肾恶燥	shèn wù zào	
177	The pairing between the kidney and urinary bladder		The kidney is internally-externally paired with the urinary bladder through meridians.	肾合膀胱	shèn hé páng guāng	
178	The origin of vital qi		The vital qi between two kidneys. It is the origin of the qi of life.	生气之原	shēng qì zhī yuán	肾间动气
179	The gate of life		The root of life and origin of qi transformation. It is closely associated with the functions of the kidney.	命门	mìng mén	
180	The fire of the gate of life		Opposite to the water of life gate, it refers to the warming, impelling and qi transformation function of kidney yang.	命门之火	mìng mén zhī huǒ	
181	The water of the gate of life		Opposite to the fire of life gate, it refers to the cooling, moistening, quiescent and nourishing function of kidney yin.	命门之水	mìng mén zhī shuǐ	
182	The house of central essence		Refers to the gallbladder. The gallbladder stores bile.	中精之府	zhōng jīng zhī fǔ	
183	Gallbladder qi		The essential qi of gallbladder. It secretes and discharges bile and dominates decision-making.	胆气	dǎn qì	
184	The impartial and righteous organ	The office of impartiality and rectitude	Refers to the gallbladder. The gallbladder is involved with judgment and decision-making. It is therefore compared to the role of justice.	中正之官	zhōng zhèng zhī guān	
185	The gallbladder governs decision-making		The gallbladder helps with judgment and decision-making ability.	胆主决断	dǎn zhǔ jué duàn	
186	The great granary		Refers to the stomach. The stomach decomposes water and food. Stomach qi nourishes all five zang and six fu organs.	太仓	tài cāng	
187	Stomach duct	Stomach cavity	A collective term for the stomach organ. Its upper duct includes cardia; the lower duct includes pylorus; and between is the middle duct.	胃脘	wèi wǎn	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
188	Stomach qi		Qi of the stomach or of the spleen and stomach, coupled with their physiological functions.	胃气	wèi qì	
189	Stomach yang		The yang qi of the stomach, as opposed to stomach yin. It refers to the activating, impelling and warming aspect of the stomach's function.	胃阳	wèi yáng	
190	Stomach yin		The yin essence of the stomach, as opposed to stomach yang. It refers to the quiescent and moistening aspect of the stomach's function.	胃阴	wèi yīn	
191	The stomach governs receiving and holding	The stomach governs receiving	The stomach receives and holds the water and food.	胃主受纳	wèi zhǔ shòu nà	
192	The stomach governs decomposition	The stomach governs digestion	The stomach primarily digests water and food and forms chyme.	胃主腐熟	wèi zhǔ fǔ shú	
193	The stomach governs smooth downbearing		Stomach qi needs to be unobstructed and flows downward, so as to pass the primarily digested chyme down to the small intestine.	胃主通降	wèi zhǔ tōng jiàng	
194	The stomach descends the turbid		Stomach qi descends the initially digested chyme to the small intestine and eliminates the waste from the body.	胃主降浊	wèi zhǔ jiàng zhuó	
195	The stomach likes softening and moisturizing		In five-element theory the stomach is a fu organ and associated with the earth. It is dry in nature and its normal functioning relies on the moistening of yin fluids.	胃喜柔润	wèi xǐ róu rùn	
196	The receiving and holding organ	The office of receiving and holding	Refers to the small intestine. The small intestine receives the chyme from the stomach and separates the clear (useful substances) from the turbid (wastes). It is therefore compared to a receptacle or container.	受盛之官	shòu shèng zhī guān	
197	The small intestine governs receiving and holding		The small intestine receives and holds the decomposed water and food.	小肠主受盛	xiǎo cháng zhǔ shòu shèng	
198	The small intestine governs transforming		The small intestine further digests the water and food, absorbs nutrients and passes the waste down to the large intestine.	小肠主化物	xiǎo cháng zhǔ huà wù	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
199	The small intestine governs thick body fluids		The small intestine further absorbs the nutrients while separating the clear from the turbid.	小肠主液	xiǎo cháng zhǔ yè	
200	The small intestine separates the clear from the turbid		The small intestine absorbs nutrients and body fluids and passes the food residue and water down to the large intestine.	小肠泌别清浊	xiǎo cháng mì bié qīng zhuó	
201	The conveyance organ	The office of conveyance	Refers to the large intestine, since it eliminates the waste out of the body.	传导之官	chuán dǎo zhī guān	
202	The large intestine governs conveyance		The large intestine conducts wastes and discharges faeces.	大肠主传导	dà cháng zhǔ chuán dǎo	
203	The large intestine governs the thin body fluids		The large intestine absorbs the thin, clear fluids while eliminating waste.	大肠主津	dà cháng zhǔ jīn	
204	The reservoir organ	The office of reservoir	Refers to the urinary bladder – the organ in charge of the water in the three jiao.	州都之官	zhōu dū zhī guān	
205	Qi transformation of the urinary bladder		The bladder relies on kidney qi transformation to store and excrete urine.	膀胱气化	páng guāng qì huà	
206	The dredging and draining organ	The office of dredging and draining	Refers to sanjiao – the water passage within the human body. Its function is compared to someone who is responsible for dredging a ditch.	决渎之官	jué dú zhī guān	
207	Sanjiao	The three jiao; triple energizer	A fu organ. A collective term for upper jiao, middle jiao and lower jiao. It serves as a pathway for qi and water circulation and dominates qi transformation.	三焦	sān jiāo	
208	Upper jiao		The upper jiao is located above the diaphragm and includes the heart and lung.	上焦	shàng jiāo	
209	Middle jiao		The middle jiao is located between the diaphragm and navel and includes the spleen, stomach, liver and gallbladder.	中焦	zhōng jiāo	
210	Lower jiao		The lower jiao is located below the navel and includes the kidney, urinary bladder, large intestine, and small intestine.	下焦	xià jiāo	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
211	Upper jiao resembles mist		The heart and lung distribute qi and blood. Their function is compared with the permeation of mist and dew.	上焦如雾	shàng jiāo rú wù	
212	Middle jiao resembles foam		The spleen and stomach decompose water and food. Their function is compared to fermentation.	中焦如沤	zhōng jiāo rú òu	
213	Lower jiao resembles a sluice		The kidney and urinary bladder regulate water discharge. Their function is compared to an unobstructed ditch.	下焦如渎	xià jiāo rú dú	
214	The house of the original spirit	The house of original Shen	Refers to the brain – the source of mental activities.	元神之府	yuán shén zhī fǔ	
215	The house of bright essence		Refers to the head – a place where the spirit, qi, essence and marrow converge.	精明之府	jīng míng zhī fǔ	
216	Marrow		An extraordinary organ. A collective term for brain marrow, spinal cord and bone marrow. Marrow is transformed from kidney essence.	髓	suǐ	
217	Bone		An extraordinary organ that stores bone marrow, supports the body, protects the internal organs, and helps with body movements.	骨	gǔ	
218	Vessel		An extraordinary organ, referring to the pathway for qi and blood circulation.	脉	mài	
219	Hair is the extension of blood		The growth of hair depends on the nourishment of blood.	发为血之余	fà wéi xuè zhī yú	
220	Uterus		An extraordinary organ. A collective term for female internal genital organs.	女子胞	nǚ zǐ bāo	
221	The servant and messenger organ	The office of the servant and messenger	It refers to the pericardium that acts to protect the heart against exogenous pathogenic factors.	臣使之官	chén shǐ zhī guān	
222	<b>1.4 Essence, qi, blood and body fluids</b>			<b>1.4 精气血津液类</b>		
223	Essence		All tangible nutrients of the human body. It can also specifically refer to the kidney essence.	精	jīng	
224	Qi		The intangible, high-mobility nutritive substance that maintains vital activities.	气	qì	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
225	Blood		The red liquid that circulates within the blood vessels to moisten and nourish the body. It is an essential substance to maintain life activities.	血	xuè	
226	Body fluids		A collective term for thinner part of fluids (jin) and thicker part of liquid (ye). Body fluids are essential to maintain life activities.	津液	jīn yè	
227	Innate essence	Pre-heaven essence; prenatal essence; congenital essence	The original substance of life inherited from one's parents and contributed to the generation of offspring.	先天之精	xiān tiān zhī jīng	
228	Acquired essence	Post-heaven essence; post-natal essence	The nutritive substances obtained through qi transformation of the zang-fu organs after birth.	后天之精	hòu tiān zhī jīng	
229	Essence qi		A collective term for essence and qi. It serves as the fundamental substance of the human body and maintains vital activities.	精气	jīng qì	
230	Qi transformation		A general term referring to various changes generated by qi movement. All things in the universe are transformed by qi.	气化	qì huà	
231	Qi movement		Qi movement can be classified into four basic forms, namely ascending, descending, exiting and entering.	气机	qì jī	
232	Genuine qi	True qi/Essential qi	A collective term for qi of the entire body, including innate qi and acquired qi.	真气	zhēn qì	
233	Innate qi	Pre-heaven qi; prenatal qi; congenital qi	The qi inherited from one's parents and stored in the kidney.	先天之气	xiān tiān zhī qì	
234	Acquired qi	Post-heaven qi; post-natal qi	The qi transformed from the essential qi of water and food as well as the clean qi (fresh air inhaled in the lung) of the nature.	后天之气	hòu tiān zhī qì	
235	Yuan-primordial qi	Yuan-original qi; Yuan-source qi	Rooted in the kidney, Yuan-primordial qi consists of innate essence qi and Ying-nutrients qi transformed from water and food. It includes primordial yin qi and primordial yang qi.	元气	yuán qì	



WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
236	Zong-pectoral qi	Ancestral qi/ gathering qi	The qi that accumulates in the chest. It consists of clean qi (fresh air inhaled in the lung) in the nature and qi transformed from water and food.	宗气	zōng qì	
237	Ying-nutrient qi		Opposite to Wei-defensive qi. Ying-nutrients qi is transformed from water and food and travels within the blood vessels.	营气	yíng qì	
238	Ying-nutrient blood		The qi within blood and yin within qi. When used in combination with blood, it often represents yin blood. Alternatively, it generally refers to blood.	营血	yíng xuè	
239	Ying-nutrient circulates within the vessels		Ying-nutrient is yin and flexible in nature and travels within the vessels.	营行脉中	yíng xíng mài zhōng	
240	Wei-defensive qi		Opposite to the Ying-nutrient qi. It travels outside the vessels and is transformed from the nutrients of water and food.	卫气	wèi qì	
241	Wei-defence circulates outside the vessels		Wei-defence is yang and resolute in nature. It travels outside the vessels.	卫行脉外	wèi xíng mài wài	
242	Qi of the zang-fu organs		The qi stored in the zang-fu organs and maintains normal physiological functions of the zang-fu organs.	脏腑之气	zàng fǔ zhī qì	
243	Qi of the middle jiao	Central qi	It is also known as qi of the spleen and stomach.	中气	zhōng qì	
244	Qi of meridians		The qi circulates within the meridians and falls under the category of healthy qi.	经气	jīng qì	经络之气
245	Ascending, descending, entering and exiting		The basic forms of qi movement.	升降出入	shēng jiàng chū rù	
246	Qi governs warming		Qi has the function of warming the body.	气主煦之	qì zhǔ xù zhī	
247	Blood governs nourishing and moistening		Blood has the function of nourishing and moistening the body.	血主濡之	xuè zhǔ rú zhī	
248	Thin fluids	Jin; thin body fluids	The thin, clear and high-mobility body fluids that distribute over the skin, muscles or orifices and permeates into blood vessels. This part of fluids moistens the body.	津	jīn	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
249	Thick fluids	Ye; thick body fluids	The thick, low-mobility body fluids that perfuse into the bones, joints, zang-fu organs, brain and marrows. This part of fluids nourishes the body and lubricates the bones/joints.	液	yè	
250	Qi is the commander of the blood		This refers to the functions of qi in transforming, circulating and governing blood.	气为血之帅	qì wéi xuè zhī shuài	
251	Qi engenders blood	Qi generates blood	Qi can transform into blood. Blood is transformed from nutrients from water and food and Ying-nutrient qi within the blood vessels.	气能生血	qì néng shēng xuè	
252	Qi circulates blood	Qi moves blood	The heart qi, lung qi and liver qi maintain the normal circulation of blood.	气能行血	qì néng xíng xuè	
253	Qi controls blood	Qi holds blood; Qi contains blood	This refers to the normal functioning of spleen qi and liver qi in keeping the blood circulating within the blood vessels.	气能摄血	qì néng shè xuè	
254	Blood is the mother of qi		Blood transforms into and carries qi.	血为气之母	xuè wéi qì zhī mǔ	
255	Blood carries qi		The function of tangible blood in carrying intangible qi.	血能载气	xuè néng zài qì	
256	Qi engenders body fluids	Qi generates body fluids	Qi of the zang-fu organs transforms into and engenders body fluids.	气能生津	qì néng shēng jīn	
257	Qi circulates body fluids	Qi moves body fluids	Qi of the zang-fu organs promotes the normal distribution of body fluids.	气能行津	qì néng xíng jīn	
258	Qi controls body fluids	Qi holds body fluids; qi contains body fluids	Qi keeps the body fluid within the waterways and maintains its normal circulation.	气能摄津	qì néng shè jīn	
259	Body fluids carries qi		The function of tangible body fluids in carrying intangible qi.	津能载气	jīn néng zài qì	
260	Body fluids and blood share the same source		Body fluids and blood are both transformed from nutrients found in water and food; the two mutually generate each other.	津血同源	jīn xuè tóng yuán	
261	Essence and blood share the same source		Essence qi and blood are both transformed from nutrients of water and food; the two mutually generate each other.	精血同源	jīng xuè tóng yuán	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
262	Blood and sweat share the same source		Since blood is composed of body fluids and Ying-nutrient qi and sweat is transformed from body fluids, the blood and sweat share the same source.	血汗同源	xuè hàn tóng yuán	
263	Moderate fire		The normal fire that benefits growth.	少火	shào huǒ	
264	Moderate fire generates qi		The normal fire generates the Yuan-primordial qi and maintains vital activities.	少火生气	shào huǒ shēng qì	
265	<b>1.5 Etiological factors</b>			<b>1.5 病因类</b>		
266	Causative factors		All causes of diseases.	病因	bìng yīn	
267	To differentiate pattern to reveal an etiology		A method to seek the etiological factors according to clinical manifestations.	辨证求因	biàn zhèng qiú yīn	
268	Theory of three etiological categories		A theory that classifies etiological factors into internal, external and neither internal nor external.	三因学说	sān yīn xué shuō	
269	Internal pathogenic factors		These mainly refer to seven emotional disturbances.	内所因	nèi suǒ yīn	
270	External etiological factors		These mainly refer to six exogenous pathogenic factors.	外所因	wài suǒ yīn	
271	Neither internal nor external etiological factors	Other etiological factors	Pathogenic factors that are not categorized as external or internal, such as improper diet, over-exertion, traumatic injuries, animal/insect bites, drowning etc.	不内外因	bù nèi wài yīn	
272	Exogenous etiological factors		Pathogenic factors that attack the body through the skin, mouth and nose, including six pathogenic factors and epidemic qi.	外感病因	wài gǎn bìng yīn	
273	Endogenous etiological factors		Internal dysfunctions due to extreme emotions, over-exertion, and improper diet.	内伤病因	nèi shāng bìng yīn	
274	Pathogenic qi	Evil qi	Opposite to healthy qi, it is a collective term for all pathogenic factors.	邪气	xié qì	
275	Yang pathogens		Opposite to yin pathogens, refers to pathogenic factors of yang nature, such as wind, summer-heat or fire-heat.	阳邪	yáng xié	
276	Yin pathogens		Opposite to yang pathogens, refers to pathogenic factors of yin nature, such as cold or dampness.	阴邪	yīn xié	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
277	Deficiency pathogens		Opposite to excess pathogens, it is a collective term for exogenous pathogenic factors that invade the body when the body is weak. Alternatively, it refers to pathogenic qi that transmits from the mother organ to the son organ.	虚邪	xū xié	
278	Excess pathogens		Opposite to deficiency pathogens, it is a collective term for pathogenic factors. Alternatively, it refers to pathogenic qi that transmits from the son organ to the mother organ.	实邪	shí xié	
279	Seasonal pathogenic factors		A collective term for epidemic, etiological factors associated with the four seasons.	时邪	shí xié	
280	Exogenous pathogenic factors		External pathogenic factors that damage the human body.	客邪	kè xié	
281	Six pathogenic factors	Six excesses	A collective term for six exogenous pathogenic factors: wind, cold, summer-heat, dampness, dryness and fire.	六淫	liù yín	
282	Pestilence qi		A collective term for exogenous pathogenic factors with high contagiousness.	疠气	lì qì	
283	Epidemic pathogenic factor		A pathogenic factor with high contagiousness.	瘟邪	wēn xié	
284	Seven emotions		Seven normal emotions include joy, anger, anxiety, overthinking, grief, fear and fright.	七情	qī qíng	
285	Seven emotions causing internal damage		A collective term for damage caused by extreme emotions including joy, anger, anxiety, overthinking, grief, fear and fright.	七情内伤	qī qíng nèi shāng	
286	Five emotions transforming into fire		Fire pattern transformed from disturbance of joy, anger, grief, overthinking and fear.	五志化火	wǔ zhì huà huǒ	
287	Improper diet		Diet harmful to health, including unhealthy dietary habits, ingestion of contaminated food, dietary preference, etc.	饮食失宜	yǐn shí shī yí	
288	Work–rest imbalance		A collective term for over-exertion and physical inactivity.	劳逸失度	láo yì shī dù	
289	Medical malpractice	Medical errors	A pathogenic factor that induces or aggravates medical conditions by errors of health care professionals.	医过	yī guò	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
290	Animal/insect bites		Harm to the body by animals or insects.	虫兽伤	chóng shòu shāng	
291	Pathogenic wind	Wind	A pathogenic factor characterized by opening the skin pores, high mobility and upward/outward movement.	风邪	fēng xié	
292	Wind opens and disperses		Wind loosens the interspace between skin/muscle fibers and opens the skin pores, resulting in sweating and aversion to wind.	风性开泄	fēng xìng kāi xiè	
293	Wind floats and ascends		Wind is characterized by upward flowing. It easily affects the head, face, surface of the body and yang meridians.	风性轻扬	fēng xìng qīng yáng	
294	Wind causes movement		Wind is characterized by constant moving. It causes the limbs to tremble.	风性主动	fēng xìng zhǔ dòng	
295	Wind moves and changes swiftly		Wind is characterised by swift changes. Diseases caused by wind are marked by a sudden onset of symptoms in moving locations.	风善行数变	fēng shàn xíng shuò biàn	
296	Wind is the leading cause of diseases	Wind is the spearhead of a hundred diseases	Wind may cause a wide variety of conditions. It is the spearhead of exogenous pathogenic factors and liable to associate itself with cold, dampness, dryness and heat.	风为百病之长	fēng wéi bǎi bìng zhǎng	风为百病之首
297	Pathogenic cold	Cold	A pathogenic factor characterized by coldness, stagnation, congealing and contraction.	寒邪	hán xié	
298	Cold tends to impair yang		Cold is yin in nature and can easily impair yang qi.	寒易伤阳	hán yì shāng yáng	
299	Cold congeals and stagnates		Pathogenic cold causes qi/blood to stagnate, blocks meridians, and causes pain.	寒性凝滞	hán xìng níng zhì	
300	Cold causes contraction/contracture		Pathogenic cold constricts qi, blocks the skin pores, and causes contractions.	寒性收引	hán xìng shōu yǐn	
301	Pathogenic summer heat	Summer heat	A pathogenic factor commonly seen between the summer solstice and beginning of autumn. It is characterized by flames ascending and dispersing.	暑邪	shǔ xié	
302	Summer heat causes flaming heat		Pathogenic summer heat is characterized by extreme hotness. Often causes hyperactive yang heat.	暑性炎热	shǔ xìng yán rè	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
303	Summer heat ascends and disperses		Summer heat ascends and disperses. Often directly affects the qi phase, opens the sweating pores and damages body fluids.	暑性升散	shǔ xìng shēng sàn	
304	Summer heat often combines with dampness		Summer is hot, humid and rainy. The summer heat provokes dampness and is often liable to mix itself with dampness.	暑多夹湿	shǔ duō jiā shī	
305	Pathogenic dampness	Dampness	A pathogenic factor that obstructs the flow of qi. It is characterized by heaviness, turbidity, stickiness and downward flowing.	湿邪	shī xié	
306	Dampness obstructs qi movement		Dampness is a tangible pathogenic factor and is easy to obstruct qi movement.	湿阻气机	shī zǔ qì jī	
307	When damp prevails, yang declines	Dampness damages yang qi	Dampness is yin in nature and can easily damage yang qi. It is tangible and can obstruct the flow of yang qi.	湿胜阳微	shī shèng yáng wēi	
308	Dampness is heavy and turbid		Pathogenic dampness is characterized by its heaviness and turbidity. The diseases caused by it may lead to heaviness of the body and turbidity of secretions and excrements.	湿性重浊	shī xìng zhòng zhuó	
309	Dampness is sticky and stagnant		Dampness is characterized by stickiness and stagnation. It causes sticky, viscous secretions and discharges. Dampness-induced conditions often last a long time.	湿性黏滞	shī xìng nián zhì	
310	Dampness tends to descend		Dampness move downward and affects the yin and lower parts of the body.	湿性趋下	shī xìng qū xià	
311	Pathogenic dryness	Dryness	A pathogenic factor that consumes body fluids and tends to damage the lung.	燥邪	zào xié	
312	Dryness tends to desiccate		Dryness desiccates by consuming body fluids and causing body fluid deficiency and lack of moisture.	燥性干涩	zào xìng gān sè	
313	Dryness easily damages the lung		Dryness invades the body through the nose, mouth and skin pores. It easily damages the lung fluids and impairs the dispersing of lung qi.	燥易伤肺	zào yì shāng fèi	
314	Pathogenic fire	Fire (Heat)	A pathogenic factor that flames upward, consumes qi and body fluids, engenders wind, stirs blood, and harasses the heart spirit.	火邪	huǒ xié	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
315	Pathogenic heat		A pathogenic factor that causes excessive pathological changes of hot and yang nature.	热邪	rè xié	
316	Pathogenic warmth		A collective term for pathogenic warm heat, including spring warmth, wind warmth, summer heat warmth, damp warmth, autumn dryness, winter warmth, pestilence warmth, warm toxin, warm malaria, etc.	温邪	wēn xié	
317	Toxic pathogens		Toxic pathogens include toxins transformed from six exogenous pathogenic factors, toxic fire from sores/ulcers, toxic heat, snake venom, rabies or toxic lacquer.	毒邪	dú xié	
318	Fire flames upward		The nature of pathogenic fire flames upward. It causes heat symptoms and often affects the upper part of the body.	火性炎上	huǒ xìng yán shàng	
319	Fire tends to generate wind		Fire tends to stir liver wind. Extreme heat can cause stirring of wind.	火易生风	huǒ yì shēng fēng	
320	Fire tends to cause bleeding		Since fire may burn the vessels and collaterals and cause the blood to move recklessly, it often results in bleeding or macular eruption.	火易动血	huǒ yì dòng xuè	
321	Fire consumes qi and body fluids		Since fire consumes healthy qi and scorches yin fluids, it often causes deficiency of both qi and thin fluids.	火耗气伤津	huǒ hào qì shāng jīn	
322	Fire tends to disturb the heart spirit	Fire tends to disturb the heart Shen	Since fire tends to disturb the heart spirit, it often causes mental restlessness.	火易扰心神	huǒ yì rǎo xīn shén	
323	Fire tends to cause sores/ulcers		Since fire heat tends to enter the blood and remain in a fixed location, it often causes sores/ulcers.	火易生疮疡	huǒ yì shēng chuāng yáng	
324	Hyperactive fire		Hyperactive, pathogenic fire that consumes healthy qi.	壮火	zhuàng huǒ	
325	Excessive anger damages the liver		Excessive anger damages liver qi, impairs the function of liver in maintaining the free flow of qi, causes the qi to rise, and results in disordered qi and blood.	怒伤肝	nù shāng gān	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
326	Excessive joy damages the heart		Excessive joy damages heart spirit, consumes heart qi and results in mental derangement.	喜伤心	xǐ shāng xīn	
327	Excessive overthinking damages the spleen		Excessive overthinking damages spleen qi, causes qi to stagnate, and impairs the function of the spleen in transportation and transformation.	思伤脾	sī shāng pí	
328	Excessive grief damages the lung		Excessive grief damages and consumes lung qi and impairs the dispersal of lung qi.	悲伤肺	bēi shāng fèi	
329	Excessive fear damages the kidney		Excessive fear damages kidney qi, causes kidney qi to descend, and impairs the function of the kidney in storing essence.	恐伤肾	kǒng shāng shèn	
330	Dietary irregularities		Improper diet, including excessive hunger and binge eating.	饮食不节	yǐn shí bù jié	
331	Consumption of unclean food		Intake of contaminated or poisonous food.	饮食不洁	yǐn shí bù jié	
332	Dietary predilections		Excessive indulgence in specific food, including cold or hot food, certain flavours or alcohol.	饮食偏嗜	yǐn shí piān shì	
333	Flavour preference	Flavour predilections	The five flavours are spicy, sweet, sour, bitter and salty. Habitual preference for a particular flavour or taste may bring about adverse reactions or damage the five zang organs.	五味偏嗜	wǔ wèi piān shì	
334	Overwork	Burnout	Overwork can be physical, mental or sexual.	过劳	guò láo	
335	Physical overwork		Excessive physical activities damage the zang–fu organs and cause qi deficiency of the zang organs.	劳力过度	láo lì guò dù	
336	Mental overwork		Excessive mental activities tend to damage heart blood and spleen qi.	劳神过度	láo shén guò dù	
337	Sexual overindulgence		Excessive sexual activities consume and damage kidney essence.	房劳过度	fáng láo guò dù	
338	Physical inactivity		Physical inactivity leads to imbalances in the flow of qi and blood, weak tendons and bones, stagnant qi of the spleen and stomach. In severe cases, it may even cause other secondary diseases.	过逸	guò yì	



WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
339	Five exhaustions		The five exhaustions are listed as follows: Long-time observation damages blood; long-time lying damages qi; long-time sitting damages muscles; long-time standing damages bones; and long-time walking damages sinews. Alternatively, the five overstrains refer to deficiencies of the five zang organs (i.e. liver, heart, spleen, lung and kidney).	五劳	wǔ láo	
340	Six stagnations		A collective term for stagnation of qi, blood, phlegm, fire, food and dampness. Often results from qi stagnation of the liver and spleen.	六郁	liù yù	
341	Seven damages	Seven harms	Refers to the seven pathogenic factors that lead to deficiency and consumption, including improper diet, anxiety, drink, sex, hunger, over-exertion, and damage to meridians, collaterals, Ying-nutrients, Wei-defense and qi.	七伤	qī shāng	
342	Phlegm		Associated with fluid retention. It refers to the viscous, turbid pathological products that accumulate in the body due to disordered water metabolism. It can be an etiological factor for a variety of diseases.	痰	tán	
343	Tangible phlegm		Tangible phlegm is visible, touchable and audible when it is secreted from the airways.	有形之痰	yǒu xíng zhī tán	
344	Intangible phlegm		Intangible phlegm is invisible and impalpable; however, it can cause pathogenic features of phlegm.	无形之痰	wú xíng zhī tán	
345	The source of phlegm generation		The spleen governs transportation and transformation of water and food. The failure of the spleen to transport and transform water fluids may cause internal retention of water dampness and generate phlegm.	生痰之源	shēng tán zhī yuán	
346	The receptacle to hold phlegm	The container of phlegm	The lung dominates water and regulates the water passage. The failure of the lung to disperse qi may cause internal retention of phlegm fluids.	贮痰之器	zhù tán zhī qì	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
347	Fluid retention	Retained fluids	Fluid retention is relative to phlegm. It refers to the thin, clear pathological products that accumulate in the body due to disordered water metabolism. It can also be an etiological factor for a variety of diseases.	饮	yǐn	
348	Prolonged fluid retention		Fluid retention that lasts a long period of time. It is one type of fluid retention.	留饮	liú yǐn	
349	Deep-lying fluid retention		A type of fluid retention that is deeply located and hard to remove.	伏饮	fú yǐn	
350	Static blood	Stagnant blood	A pathological product formed during slow blood flow or as blood coagulates. It is also a secondary pathogenic factor.	瘀血	yū xuè	
351	Stone	Calculus	The gravel-like substance that accumulates in the human body, especially in the ducts and cavities of zang-fu organs. It is also a secondary pathogenic factor.	结石	jié shí	
352	Maternal-to-fetal transmission		An inherited etiological factor that transmits the body constitution and disease of the mother to her fetus.	胎传	tāi chuán	
353	fetal toxin		A pre-birth toxin. It is a pathogenic factor that causes infantile skin rashes.	胎毒	tāi dú	
354	Congenital weakness		A collective term for a congenitally weak constitution and a deficiency of qi and blood. It is a major contributing factor to a deficiency of healthy qi.	胎弱	tāi ruò	
355	Constitutional insufficiency		Congenital constitutional weakness is an internal etiological factor of healthy qi deficiency.	禀赋不足	bǐng fù bù zú	
356	Five endogenous pathogenic factors		The five pathological states of wind, fire, cold, dryness and dampness due to dysfunctions of the zang-fu organs.	内生五邪	nèi shēng wǔ xié	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
357	Internal wind	Endogenous wind	Opposite to external wind, it is a pathological state of yang qi hyperactivity and wind stirring due to disordered qi and blood of the zang-fu organs. This includes extreme heat generating wind, liver yang transforming into wind, blood deficiency generating wind and yin deficiency stirring wind.	内风	nèi fēng	
358	Internal cold	Endogenous cold	Opposite to external cold, it is a pathological state of deficiency cold due to yang qi deficiency of the zang-fu organs.	内寒	nèi hán	
359	Internal dampness	Endogenous dampness	Opposite to external dampness, it is a pathological state of retained water, dampness, phlegm and turbidity due to dysfunctions of the zang-fu organs and disordered water metabolism.	内湿	nèi shī	
360	Internal dryness	Endogenous dryness	Opposite to external dryness, it is a pathological state of body fluids failing to moisten the body.	内燥	nèi zào	
361	Internal fire	Endogenous fire	Opposite to external fire, it is a pathological state of fire heat due to disordered qi, blood, yin and yang of the zang-fu organs.	内火	nèi huǒ	
362	Yin fire		The pathogenic fire produced from improper diet, fatigue, joy, anger, grief, overthinking, qi deficiency or yang deficiency.	阴火	yīn huǒ	
363	<b>1.6 Pathogenesis</b>			<b>1.6 病机类</b>		
364	Pathogenesis		The mechanism of the occurrence, progress, and change of the disease.	病机	bìng jī	
365	Healthy qi	Anti-pathogenic qi	Opposite to pathogenic factors, it is a collective term for physiological functions of the body, including the body's ability to adapt to the external environment, defend against pathogens and recover from diseases.	正气	zhèng qì	
366	New contraction		Opposite to the latent pathogenic qi in the theory of warm disease, it often causes a sudden onset of disease.	新感	xīn gǎn	
367	Latent pathogenic qi		Opposite to exposure to acute pathogenic qi in the theory of febrile diseases, it causes the occurrence of diseases after a period of time.	伏邪	fú xié	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
368	Sudden onset	Acute onset	A rapid appearance of symptoms after being in contact with a pathogen.	卒发	cù fā	
369	Gradual onset	Chronic/insidious onset	A gradual appearance of symptoms after being in contact with a pathogen.	徐发	xú fā	
370	Recurrence		Relapse of diseases due to etiological or inducing factors.	复发	fù fā	
371	Recurrence due to improper diet		Relapse of diseases due to intake of improper diet or intake of contaminated food.	食复	shí fù	
372	Recurrence due to overwork		Relapse of disease due to the damage to healthy qi by overwork	劳复	láo fù	
373	Damage to paired meridians		A pathological state of pathogenic factors affecting two meridians that are interior-exteriorly connected.	两感	liǎng gǎn	
374	Transmission and transformation		Transmission and transformation of diseases among five zang organs.	传化	chuán huà	
375	Combined pathogens		Two or more external pathogenic factors invade the body. Alternatively, it means exogenous pathogenic factors triggering previously existing diseases.	合邪	hé xié	
376	Pathogenic factors attacking orifices		Pathological states caused by pathogenic factors invading the mouth, nose, ears and eyes.	邪害空窍	xié hài kōng qiào	
377	Struggle between anti-pathogenic qi and pathogenic factors		The struggle between healthy qi and pathogenic factors determines the pathogenic nature of diseases. Alternatively, it is specifically used to explain the pathogenesis of alternating fever and chills in Shaoyang disease due to cold damage.	正邪相争	zhèng xié xiāng zhēng	
378	Waxing and waning of anti-pathogenic qi and pathogenic factors		The pathological states due to the struggle between healthy qi and pathogenic factors.	邪正盛衰	xié zhèng shèng shuāi	
379	Excess		Opposite to deficiency, it is a hyperactive pathological state due to a fierce struggle between excessive pathogenic factors and normal healthy qi.	实	shí	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
380	Deficiency		Opposite to excess, it is a hypoactive pathological state due to the struggle between weak healthy qi and mild/moderate pathogenic factors.	虚	xū	
381	Combined deficiency and excess	Mixed deficiency and excess	A pathological state due to deficiency of healthy qi and excess of pathogenic factors. This includes deficiency complicated with excess and excess complicated with deficiency.	虚实错杂	xū shí cuò zá	虚实夹杂
382	Deficiency complicated with excess		A pathological state that mainly manifests as a deficiency of healthy qi, accompanied by excessive pathogenic factors.	虚中夹实	xū zhōng jiā shí	
383	Excess complicated with deficiency		A pathological state that mainly manifests as excess of pathogenic factors, accompanied by a deficiency of healthy qi.	实中夹虚	shí zhōng jiā xū	
384	True or false deficiency and excess		The false symptoms contrary to the true nature of the disease. This includes true deficiency with false excess and true excess with false deficiency.	虚实真假	xū shí zhēn jiǎ	
385	True deficiency with false excess		The false excess symptoms due to extreme deficiency of healthy qi.	真虚假实	zhēn xū jiǎ shí	
386	True excess with false deficiency		The false deficiency symptoms due to extreme excess of pathogenic factors.	真实假虚	zhēn shí jiǎ xū	
387	Deficiency–excess transformation		The mutual transformation between deficiency of healthy qi and excess of pathogenic factors. This includes excess transforming into deficiency and deficiency into excess.	虚实转化	xū shí zhuǎn huà	
388	Excess transforming into deficiency		A transformation from an excess pattern (hyperactivity of pathogenic factors) to a deficiency pattern (deficiency of healthy qi).	由实转虚	yóu shí zhuǎn xū	
389	Deficiency transforming into excess		A transformation from a deficiency pattern (deficiency of healthy qi) to an excess pattern (hyperactivity of pathogenic factors).	因虚致实	yīn xū zhì shí	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
390	Disharmony between yin and yang		A general term for pathological states due to waxing and waning of yin and yang. This includes excess of yin or yang, deficiency of yin or yang, mutual impairment between yin and yang, rejection between yin and yang, transformation between yin and yang, and depletion/loss of yin or yang.	阴阳失调	yīn yáng shī tiáo	
391	Excess yin or yang	Preponderance of yin or yang	Pathological states due to excess of yin or yang.	阴阳偏盛	yīn yáng piān shèng	
392	Yin waxing with yang waning		Coexisting yin waxing and yang waning. Over time, excess yin cold may damage yang qi and result in yang depletion.	阴盛阳衰	yīn shèng yáng shuāi	
393	Yang deficiency with yin excess		Mutual restraint between yin and yang maintains relative yin–yang equilibrium. The failure of yang to restrain yin may cause relative yin excess.	阳虚阴盛	yáng xū yīn shèng	
394	Yang waxing with yin waning		Coexisting yang waxing and yin waning. Often develops when waxing yang severely damages yin; however, yin damage is more severe.	阳盛阴衰	yáng shèng yīn shuāi	
395	When yang prevails, yin fluids will be consumed.		A pathological state of overwhelming yang heat consuming yin fluids.	阳胜则阴病	yáng shèng zé yīn bìng	
396	Yang excess leading to heat		A pathological state of overwhelming yang leading to excess heat.	阳胜则热	yáng shèng zé rè	
397	When yin prevails, yang qi will be impaired.		A pathological state of excess yin cold consuming yang qi.	阴胜则阳病	yīn shèng zé yáng bìng	
398	Yin excess leading to cold		A pathological state of overwhelming yin leading to excess cold.	阴胜则寒	yīn shèng zé hán	
399	Waning of yin or yang		Pathological states due to deficiency of yin or yang.	阴阳偏衰	yīn yáng piān shuāi	
400	Yang deficiency leading to cold		A pathological state of yang qi deficiency leading to deficiency cold.	阳虚则寒	yáng xū zé hán	
401	Yin deficiency leading to heat		A pathological state in which yin fluid fails to control yang and causes a relative hyperactivity of yang and deficiency heat.	阴虚则热	yīn xū zé rè	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
402	Yin deficiency leading to yang hyperactivity		A pathological state in which yin fluid fails to control yang and causes a relative hyperactivity of yang.	阴虚阳亢	yīn xū yáng kàng	
403	Yin deficiency leading to fire hyperactivity		A pathological state in which yin fluid fails to control yang and causes a relative hyperactivity of yang and deficiency fire.	阴虚火旺	yīn xū huǒ wàng	
404	Mutual impairment between yin and yang		A pathological state of deficiency of both yin and yang. Often results from severe deficiency of yin affecting yang or vice versa. This includes yin deficiency affecting yang and yang deficiency affecting yin.	阴阳互损	yīn yáng hù sǔn	
405	Deficiency of yang affecting yin		A pathological state in which yang qi deficiency impedes the generation of yin, resulting in deficiency of both yin and yang with a preponderance of yang deficiency.	阳损及阴	yáng sǔn jí yīn	
406	Impairment of yin affecting yang		A pathological state in which consumption of yin affects yang qi, resulting in deficiency of both yin and yang with a preponderance of yin deficiency.	阴损及阳	yīn sǔn jí yáng	
407	Dual deficiency of yin and yang		A pathological state of coexisting yin deficiency and yang deficiency.	阴阳两虚	yīn yáng liǎng xū	
408	Yin–yang rejection	Repellence between yin and yang	A serious pathological state in which extremely excessive yin in the interior forces the deficient yang to spread outward or extremely excessive yang in the interior keeps deficient yin on the outside, forming pseudo-heat or pseudo-cold. This includes excessive yin rejecting yang and excessive yang rejecting yin.	阴阳格拒	yīn yáng gé jù	
409	Excessive yin rejecting yang	Excessive yin repelling yang	A pathological state of true cold with false heat when interior yin cold due to extreme yang deficiency forces the deficient yang to float on the exterior of the body.	阴盛格阳	yīn shèng gé yáng	
410	Excessive yang rejecting yin	Excessive yang repelling yin	A pathological state of true heat with false cold when interior yang heat blocks the movement of qi and forces the yin to float on the exterior of the body.	阳盛格阴	yáng shèng gé yīn	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
411	Floating upward of deficiency yang		A pathological state of upward floating of yang qi due to excessive yin rejecting yang or loss/consumption of essence blood.	虚阳上浮	xū yáng shàng fú	
412	Collapse of yin or yang		A critical state of sudden, heavy loss of yin fluid or yang qi. This includes yin collapse and yang collapse.	阴阳亡失	yīn yáng wáng shī	
413	Yin collapse	Yin depletion	A critical state of massive loss and sudden failure of yin fluid.	亡阴	wáng yīn	
414	Yang collapse	Yang depletion	A critical state of massive loss and sudden failure of yang qi.	亡阳	wáng yáng	
415	Yin exhaustion and yang collapse		A pathological state of exhaustion of yin fluid and loss of yang qi.	阴竭阳脱	yīn jié yáng tuō	
416	Yin–yang separation		A critical state of separation between yin and yang due to extreme deficiency of yin and yang.	阴阳离决	yīn yáng lí jué	
417	Disordered qi activity		Disordered activity of qi in ascending, descending, entering and exiting. It may cause qi stagnation, adverse qi flow, qi sinking, qi blockage and qi exhaustion.	气机失调	qì jī shī tiáo	
418	Impaired qi activity	Impaired qi movement	A general term for dysfunctions of the zang–fu organs. It is often used to explain dysfunctions of qi of the zang–fu organs in ascending the clear and descending the turbid. It may cause hiccups, chest stuffiness, abdominal distension/pain and irregular bowel/bladder movements.	气机不利	qì jī bú lì	
419	Qi deficiency		A pathological state of decreased zang–fu functions or body weakness due to deficiency of qi.	气虚	qì xū	
420	Qi collapse	Qi exhaustion	A pathological state in which extreme deficiency of qi causes qi to float on the exterior of the body.	气脱	qì tuō	
421	Qi blockage		A pathological state in which qi is obstructed inside.	气闭	qì bì	
422	Qi counterflow		A pathological state of reversed upflow of qi. Either excessive upward flow of qi or inhibited downward flow of qi.	气逆	qì nì	



WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
423	Qi sinking	Qi falls	A pathological state in which qi fails to lift or hold but flows downward.	气陷	qì xiàn	
424	Qi impediment		A pathological state in which the movement of qi is inhibited.	气滞	qì zhì	
425	Qi stagnation		Stagnant movement of qi. It is often associated with emotions and disorder of qi and blood. Often refers to liver qi stagnation.	气郁	qì yù	
426	Qi stagnation transforming into fire		A pathological state of prolonged qi stagnation transforming into fire heat.	气郁化火	qì yù huà huǒ	
427	Blood deficiency		A pathological state in which deficient blood fails to nourish the zang-fu organs and meridians/channels.	血虚	xuè xū	
428	Blood stasis		A pathological state of slow, coagulated or stagnant circulation of blood.	血瘀	xuè yū	
429	Blood cold		A pathological state in which cold enters the blood phase and causes the blood to stagnate or coagulate.	血寒	xuè hán	
430	Blood heat		A pathological state in which heat enters the blood phase and causes the blood to move recklessly.	血热	xuè rè	
431	Blood failing to flow within the vessels		A pathological state in which blood moves recklessly out of the vessels.	血不归经	xuè bù guī jīng	血不循经
432	Blood failing to nourish the sinews		A pathological state in which liver blood fails to nourish the sinews and causes muscle/tendon spasm.	血不养筋	xuè bù yǎng jīn	
433	Qi-blood disharmony		Any failure in the mutually coordinating relationship between qi and blood.	气血失调	qì xuè shī tiáo	
434	Dual deficiency of qi and blood		A pathological state of malnourishment of the body or weakened bodily function due to simultaneous presence of qi deficiency and blood deficiency.	气血两虚	qì xuè liǎng xū	
435	Qi disorder affecting the blood		A pathological state in which the dysfunction of qi affects the blood and causes blood deficiency, stagnant blood or bleeding.	气病及血	qì bìng jí xuè	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
436	Reckless flow of blood due to heat		A pathological state of bleeding due to heat in the blood stirring or consuming blood and forcing it out of the vessels.	血热妄行	xuè rè wàng háng	
437	Qi collapse following loss of thick fluids		A critical state in which a massive loss of bodily fluids causes sudden collapse/loss of yang qi.	气随液脱	qì suí yè tuō	
438	Qi failing to transform thin fluids		A pathological state in which yang qi fails to vaporize water and perform qi transformation.	气不化津	qì bú huà jīn	
439	Water retention obstructing the flow of qi		A pathological state in which retained water within the body impedes the qi ascending, descending and transformation of the zang-fu organs.	水停气阻	shuǐ tíng qì zǔ	
440	Blood stasis due to qi stagnation		A pathological state in which stagnant qi affects the circulation of blood and causes simultaneous presence of qi stagnation and blood stasis.	气滞血瘀	qì zhì xuè yū	
441	Blood stasis due to qi deficiency		A pathological state in which qi fails to promote the circulation of blood and causes blood stasis, resulting in simultaneous presence of qi deficiency and blood stasis.	气虚血瘀	qì xū xuè yū	
442	Qi failing to contain blood	Qi failing to control/hold blood	A pathological state in which qi fails to contain blood and allows the blood to flow out of the vessels.	气不摄血	qì bú shè xuè	
443	Qi collapse following heavy blood loss		A critical state in which massive blood loss causes sudden collapse of qi.	气随血脱	qì suí xuè tuō	
444	Blood counterflow with qi	Blood flows with rebellious qi	A pathological state in which upward adverse flow of qi leads to blood rushing upward and results in haematemesis, haemoptysis or stroke.	血随气逆	xuè suí qì nì	
445	Damage to thin body fluid		A pathological state in which the thin, clear fluids are consumed.	伤津	shāng jīn	
446	Exhaustion of thick body fluid		A pathological state of emaciation and functional failures of the zang-fu organs. Alternatively, it can be a life-threatening sign due to major consumption of heavy, thick fluids.	脱液	tuō yè	
447	Fluid exhaustion leading to blood dryness		A pathological state in which fluids fail to supplement blood and causes blood dryness and internal dry heat.	津枯血燥	jīn kū xuè zào	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
448	Dual deficiency of qi and yin		A pathological state of simultaneous presence of qi deficiency and yin deficiency.	气阴两虚	qì yīn liǎng xū	
449	The water gate failing to operate		A pathological state in which dysfunctions of the kidney in qi transformation causes inhibited urination (dysuria) and oedema.	关门不利	guān mén bù lì	
450	Hyperactive fire consuming qi		A pathological state of yin–yang disharmony and hyperactive yang transforming into fire. Alternatively, it occurs when prolonged intake of pungent, warm-property aphrodisiacs generates internal fire toxins and consumes essence qi.	壮火食气	zhuàng huǒ shí qì	
451	Disharmony between the Ying-nutrients and Wei-defence		A pathological state of lack of coordination between the Ying-nutritive qi and Wei-defensive qi.	营卫不和	yíng wèi bù hé	
452	Weak Wei-defence and strong Ying-nutrients		A pathological state of spontaneous sweating without fever due to deficiency of the Wei-defensive qi (in an exterior pattern).	卫弱营强	wèi ruò yíng qiáng	
453	Strong Wei-defence and weak Ying-nutrients		A pathological state of sweating that occurs only during fever in an exterior pattern.	卫强营弱	wèi qiáng yíng ruò	
454	Reckless stirring of ministerial fire	Frenetic stirring of the ministerial fire	A pathological state of upward flame of fire due to yin deficiency of the liver and kidney. Common symptoms may include dizziness, headache, blurred vision, tinnitus, deafness, irritability, dream-disturbed sleep, feverish sensations in the palms, soles and chest, hypersexuality, nocturnal emissions, premature ejaculations, etc.	相火妄动	xiàng huǒ wàng dòng	
455	1.7 Health preservation and prevention	Health promotion and prevention		1.7 养生预防类		
456	Health preservation		The activities to maintain physical and mental health and prevent illnesses.	养生	yǎng shēng	
457	Natural life span		The congenital life expectancy	天年	tiān nián	
458	Preventing a disease before it arises		A concept to prevent a disease before it arises and prevents transmission of a disease after its onset.	治未病	zhì wèi bìng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
459	Preventing a disease before it arises		A method to strengthen the healthy qi and eliminate potential harmful factors to prevent the occurrence of a disease.	未病先防	wèi bìng xiān fáng	
460	Preventing transmission of a disease after its onset		A method to use early diagnosis and early intervention to prevent disease progression and transmission.	既病防变	jì bìng fáng biàn	
461	Protecting yang in spring and summer		Yang qi rises and grows in the spring and the summer. It is necessary to protect and nourish the internal yang qi to keep it sufficient along with the seasons.	春夏养阳	chūn xià yǎng yáng	
462	Nourishing yin in autumn and winter		Everything is stored in the autumn and the winter. It is necessary to protect and store the internal yin essence to keep it internally accumulated along with the seasons.	秋冬养阴	qiū dōng yǎng yīn	
463	Healthy body and mind		The physical appearance and the mental activities are inseparable. The robust physical appearance and sound vitality is the sign of body-mind wellness.	形与神俱	xíng yǔ shén jù	
464	Regulating spirit according to four seasonal qi		The adjustment of mental activities along with the climate of four seasons.	四气调神	sì qì tiáo shén	
465	1.8 Five movements and six qi			1.8 五运六气类		
466	Five movements and six qi		A collective name of wood movement, fire movement, earth movement, metal movement, water movement, and the collective name of wind, summer heat (heat), dampness, dryness, fire, cold in the natural world.	五运六气	wǔ yùn liù qì	
467	Five movements		The collective name of wood movement, fire movement, earth movement, metal movement, and water movement. It reflects the changes of qi of five elements between heaven and earth. Ten heavenly stems of jia, yi, bing, ding, wu, ji, geng, xin, ren, and gui are used to record the movements.	五运	wǔ yùn	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
468	Six qi		The six normal climatic phenomena of wind, summer heat (heat), dampness, dryness, fire, and cold in the natural world. The twelve earthly branches of zi, chou, yin, mou, chen, si, wu, wei, shen, you, xu, and hai are used to record the six qi.	六气	liù qì	
469	Heavenly stems		The collective name of jia, yi, bing, ding, wu, ji, geng, xin, ren, and gui.	天干	tiān gān	十天干; 十干
470	Earthly branches		The collective name of zi, chou, yin, mou, chen, si, wu, wei, shen, you, xu, and hai.	地支	dì zhī	十二地支; 十二支
471	Sixty-year cycle		The heavenly stems pair with the earthly branches, following their orders, from jia–zi to gui–hai, forming a complete cycle of sixty years. The heavenly stems initiate with jia and the earthly branches initiate with zi. The combination is used to number years, months, days and times.	甲子	jiǎ zǐ	六十甲子
472	Movement of the year		The movement governs the year, being jia and ji in category of earth movement, yi and geng in category of metal movement, bing and xin in category of water movement, ding and ren in category of wood movement, and wu and gui in category of fire movement. For example, jia and ji is in category of earth movement, the movement of the year of the jia–zi year is earth.	岁运	sù yùn	
473	Host movement		Each of the five movements dominates in spring, summer, later summer, autumn and winter. Starting from the severe cold and following the order of generating cycle of five elements, the first movement is wood, the second is fire, the third is earth, the fourth is metal, and the fifth is water.	主运	zhǔ yùn	
474	Guest movement		The special climatic changes of the five seasons. It varies in every season in every year. Starting from the movement of the year as the initial movement, calculate in five steps according to the excess and insufficiency order of five elements. Ten years is a complete cycle and covers ten heavenly stems. Ten years is a complete cycle that covers ten heavenly stems. Then the cycle starts all over again.	客运	kè yùn	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
475	Six origins		The combination of wind, cold, dampness, dryness, sovereign fire, ministerial fire with host qi in six steps. The initial qi is in association with Jueyin, wind and wood, the second qi with Shaoyin and sovereign fire, the third qi with Shaoyang and ministerial fire, and the forth qi with Taiyin, dampness and earth, the fifth qi with yang ming, dryness and metal, the sixth (final) qi with Taiyang, cold and water.	六元	liù yuán	
476	Host qi		The collective name of wind, cold, dampness, dryness, sovereign fire and ministerial fire, being opposed to the guest qi. It reflects the normal seasonal climatic changes of the year. The calculation is to relate twenty four solar terms to six qi in six steps. The four solar terms consist of one step, being six steps for one year. The calculation starts from the severe cold.	主气	zhǔ qì	
477	Guest qi		1) Reflects the abnormal climatic changes of the year, being opposed to the host qi. It includes the celestial qi, the terrestrial qi, and the four right and left intervening qi. The first yin is in association with Jueyin, wind, and wood, the second yin with Shaoyin and sovereign fire, and the third yin with Taiyin, dampness, and earth. The first yang is in association with Shaoyang and ministerial fire, the second yang with yang ming, dryness, and metal, the third yang with Taiyang, cold, and water. The calculation is to combine the above yin–yang order with twelve earthly branches. 2) External pathogenic factors.	客气	kè qì	
478	Celestial controlling		The guest qi governing the climatic changes of the first half of the year.	司天	sī tiān	
479	Terrestrial controlling		The guest qi governing the climatic changes of the second half of the year. It is opposite to celestial qi.	在泉	zài quán	
480	Intervening qi		The qi left and right to the celestial qi and the qi left and right to the terrestrial qi.	间气	jiān qì	左右间气

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
481	Upgrade of intervening qi		The intervening qi left to the celestial qi becomes the celestial qi and the intervening qi left to the terrestrial qi becomes the terrestrial qi.	迁正	qiān zhèng	
482	Downgrade		The celestial qi becomes the intervening qi right to the celestial qi and the terrestrial qi becomes the intervening qi right to the terrestrial qi.	退位	tuì wèi	
483	Balanced movements		The excess of qi is restrained and the insufficiency of qi is compensated in the five movements.	平气	píng qì	
484	Compatibility of movements and qi		The five movements and six qi share the same category of the five elements.	运气同化	yùn qì tóng huà	
485	Heavenly complements		The movement qi of the year and the celestial qi share the same category of the five elements in one year.	天符	tiān fú	
486	Annual congruence		The movement qi of the year and the earthly branch of the year share the same category of the five elements in one year.	岁会	sùì huì	
487	Identical heavenly complements		The heavenly stem and the earthly branch of the year are both yang and the movement of the year and the terrestrial qi share the same category of the five elements in one year.	同天符	tóng tiān fú	
488	Identical annual congruence		The heavenly stem and the earthly branch of the year are both yin and the movement of the year and the terrestrial qi share the same category of the five elements in one year.	同岁会	tóng suì huì	
489	Taiyi heavenly complements		The movement of the year, the celestial qi, and earthly branch of the year share the same category of the five elements in one year.	太乙天符	tài yǐ tiān fú	
490	Tip qi, root qi and middle qi		The study of relationship between six qi of heaven and six qi of the human body. It is used to determine the principle of the treatment based on interactions between human and nature.	标本中气	biāo běn zhōng qì	
491	Root qi		Six qi of heaven, being wind, heat, dampness, dryness, cold and fire.	本气	běn qì	
492	Tip qi		Qi of six meridians of Shaoyang, Taiyang, Yangming, Shaoyin, Taiyin and Jueyin.	标气	biāo qì	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
493	Prevailing and retaliation		The relationship between the prevailing qi and the retaliating qi in five movements and six qi. They coexist by increasing and decreasing in the same direction.	胜复	shèng fù	
494	Prevailing qi		The qi that is stronger and restrain another qi in the five movements and six qi.	胜气	shèng qì	
495	Retaliating qi		The qi that is weaker and is restrained from another qi in the five movements and six qi.	复气	fù qì	
496	Sovereign fire		The fire in the heart. It is opposite to the ministerial fire.	君火	jūn huǒ	
497	Ministerial fire		The fire dwelling in the liver, gallbladder, kidney and triple energizer, being opposite to the sovereign fire.	相火	xiàng huǒ	
498	<b>1.9 Others</b>			<b>1.9 其他类</b>		
499	Traditional medicine		The sum total of the knowledge, skills and practices based on the theories, beliefs and experiences indigenous to different cultures, whether explicable or not, used in the maintenance of health as well as in the prevention, diagnosis, improvement or treatment of physical and mental illness.	传统医学	chuán tǒng yī xué	
500	Traditional Chinese medicine		A comprehensive system originated in ancient China that involves the study of life, health and diseases.	中医学; 中医		
501	Fundamentals of traditional Chinese medicine	Basic theory of traditional Chinese medicine	Rational understandings of fundamental knowledge in traditional Chinese medicine. These include essential concepts, regular patterns, theories and principles. These understandings guide the application of traditional Chinese medicine in health preservation and disease prevention, diagnosis and treatment as well as rehabilitation.	中医基础理论	zhōng yī jī chǔ lǐ lùn	
502	Holistic concept	Holistic view	The integral entity of the human body. The integration of human beings with nature and society.	整体观念	zhěng tǐ guān niàn	



WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
503	Man-nature correspondence		Man and nature correspond to each other.	天人相应	tiān rén xiāng yìng	
504	Man-nature unity	Unity of humans and nature	The oneness of human beings, heaven, earth and nature.	天人合一	tiān rén hé yī	
505	Spirit		1) Dominance of life activities. 2) Outer manifestation reflecting the life activities. 3) State of mind, mood and mental activities.	神	shén	
506	Bright spirit		Mind or spirit. Alternatively, it also refers to all natural phenomena and patterns, including the sun, moon and stars.	神明	shén míng	
507	Qi gate		Another name of the sweat pore for inflow and outflow of qi.	气门	qì mén	
508	Mysterious mansion		Another name of the sweat pore for dispersion and flowing of qi and fluid.	玄府	xuán fǔ	元府
509	Interstices		Refers to the striae of the skin, muscle and organs, also to the space between the skin, muscle and organs, the minute passages for the fluid percolation and the flowing of qi and blood.	腠理	còu lǐ	
510	Five wheels		A collective name of blood wheel, wind wheel, flesh wheel, qi wheel and water wheel for the eye, which is closely related to the physiological conditions or/and pathological changes.	五轮	wǔ lún	
511	Blood wheel		Refers to blood vessels at the canthus of eyes, pertaining to the heart. The heart governs blood. Its disorders are related to the heart.	血轮	xuè lún	
512	Wind wheel		Refers to the black part of the eye, pertaining to the liver. The liver is the organ of wind and wood. Its disorders are related to the liver.	风轮	fēng lún	
513	Flesh wheel		Refers to the eyelids, pertaining to the spleen. The spleen governs flesh. Its disorders are related to the spleen.	肉轮	ròu lún	
514	Qi wheel		Refers to the white part of the eye, pertaining to the lung. The lung governs qi. Its disorders are related to the lung.	气轮	qì lún	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
515	Water wheel		Refers to the pupil, pertaining to the kidney. The kidney governs water. Its disorders are related to the kidney.	水轮	shuǐ lún	
516	Seven gates		Seven major places in the digestive tract, being flying gate, door gate, breathing gate, rushing gate, pylorus, screen gate and corporeal gate.	七冲门	qī chōng mén	
517	Flying gate		Another name for lips.	飞门	fēi mén	
518	Door gate		Another name for teeth.	户门	hù mén	
519	Breathing gate		Another name for epiglottis.	吸门	xī mén	
520	Rushing gate		Upper opening of the stomach.	贲门	bēn mén	
521	Pylorus		Lower opening of the stomach.	幽门	yōu mén	
522	Screen gate		Junction between large and small intestines.	阑门	lán mén	
523	Corporeal soul gate		Another name for anus.	魄门	pò mén	
524	Anterior yin		The external genitals.	前阴	qián yīn	
525	Posterior yin		Anus.	后阴	hòu yīn	
526	Four whites of the lips	Muscles around the lips	The area around the lips reflecting the strength and the weakness of the essential qi in the spleen.	唇四白	chún sì bái	
527	Essence chamber		The place where the male stores the essence, including testicles, epididymis, seminal vesicles and prostate. It is associated with reproduction.	精室	jīng shì	
528	Four extremities		1) Four limbs. 2) Distal ends of toes and fingers.	四末	sì mò	
529	Chest center	Danzhong (CV 17)	1) The gathering venue of pectoral qi, at the centre of the two nipples. 2) Another name of pericardium. 3) Name of an acupuncture point located in the midpoint between two nipples.	膻中	dàn zhōng	
530	Xu li		The major collateral of the stomach, one of the sixteen collaterals, located at the apex of heart below the left nipple, which is the gathering venue of pectoral qi.	虚里	xū lǐ	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
531	Muscle interspace		The empty space or depression at the connection of muscles. The large one known as the “valley” and the small one as the “creek”.	溪谷	xī gǔ	
532	Blood chamber		A term used to refer to: 1) uterus; 2) Chong meridian; or 3) liver.	血室	xuè shì	
533	Gathering of muscle around genital region	Ancestral muscles	1) Muscle regions of three yang and three yin meridians gathering at the genital regions. 2) Male external genitalia.	宗筋	zōng jīn	
534	Gaohuang		The space inferior to the heart and superior to the diaphragm. When used as a disease location, it often means that the condition is incurable.	膏肓	gāo huāng	
535	Sense organs and orifices		There are five sense organs, namely, the tongue, nose, mouth, eyes and ears. The throat is also considered as a sense organ. There are a total of nine orifices (seven yang orifices and two yin orifices), namely, the eyes (2), ears (2), nostrils (2), mouth, anterior yin (external genitalia including the external orifice of the urethra) and posterior yin (anus).	官窍	guān qiào	
536	Eight ocular regions		The eyes are categorized into eight regions according to zang-fu theory to match with the eight trigrams. This helps to further categorize and differentiate patterns of eye disease.	八廓	bā kuò	
537	White part of the eyeball	Sclera	The white opaque part of the outer surface of the eyeball, i.e. the conjunctiva and sclera.	白睛	bái jīng	
538	Black part of the eyeball	Cornea and iris	The transparent membranous structure forming the central anterior part of the eye, i.e. the cornea. Since this part corresponds to the liver, corneal eye problems are often associated with the liver and gallbladder.	黑睛	hēi jīng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
539	Pupil		In a narrow sense, it refers to the opening at the centre of the iris, posterior to the cornea, through which light enters the eye. In a broad sense, it refers to the pupil and all attached tissues. Since this part corresponds to the kidney (the water wheel according to the five-wheel theory) and the liver and kidney share the same source, pupil-related eye problems are often associated with the liver and kidney.	瞳神	tóng shén	
540	Aqueous humour		Tears and transparent, watery fluid secreted from the ciliary epithelium.	神水	shén shuǐ	
541	Vitreous humour		The clear, colourless gel that fills the space between the lens and the retina of the eyeball.	神膏	shén gāo	
542	Bright hall		An ancient term for the nose. It also refers to the chart of the twelve meridians and points in Chinese medicine.	明堂	míng táng	
543	Foul turbidity		1) An exogenous pathogenic factor. 2) Special odour of the patients' body, excretion and secretion. 3) Pathological products steamed by damp heat.	秽浊	huì zhuó	

# 2 Terminologies on diagnosis, patterns and constitution

## 二、诊断、病证和体质术语

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
544	2 Terminologies on diagnosis, patterns and constitution			二、诊断、病证和体质术语		
545	2.1 Concept and principles in diagnosis			2.1 诊断基本概念与原则类		
546	Symptom		Abnormal functions reflecting the presence of an unusual state, or of a disease. It includes a patient's subjective feelings or manifestations perceived by a doctor.	症状	zhèng zhuàng	
547	Sign		Abnormal changes that can be objectively measured.	体征	tǐ zhēng	
548	Pattern	Syndrome	A pathological summarization on the disease location, etiological factors, nature, severity and prognosis in a certain stage.	证	zhèng	证候
549	Disease		The whole process of struggle between anti-pathogenic qi and pathogenic factors, yin-yang imbalance and progression, manifesting as specific symptoms and patterns. In a narrow sense, a disease has its specific name.	病	bìng	
550	Pattern identification	pattern differentiation	The process of an overall analysis of clinical data to determine the location, etiological factors and nature of a disease at a certain stage.	辨证	biàn zhèng	
551	Disease differentiation		The process of differentiating a disease from its whole process and its characteristics according to the etiology, underlying pathology, progression and prognosis.	辨病	biàn bìng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
552	Treatment based on pattern identification	Treatment based on pattern differentiation	The whole process of applying theories, principles, prescriptions and medicines to clinical treatment. Pattern differentiation aims to analyse the signs and symptoms collected by the four examination methods according to the fundamental theories of the eight principles, zang–fu organs, etiology and pathogenesis. Treatment refers to specific therapeutic methods directed at the differentiated pattern.	辨证论治	biàn zhèng lùn zhì	
553	Combination of the four diagnostic methods		The process of an overall analysis of clinical data collected through the four diagnostic methods and providing a diagnosis and potential treatment options.	四诊合参	sì zhěn hé cān	
554	Differentiation of disease and pattern		Integrated differentiation of both pattern and disease. This helps to analyse the disease onset and development, and thus provide reliable evidence for practical treatment strategies.	病证结合	bìng zhèng jié hé	
555	Judging the inside from observing the outside		A method to understand internal pathological changes through observing the external manifestations.	司外揣内	sī wài chuǎi nèi	
556	<b>2.2 Four diagnostic methods</b>			<b>2.2 四诊</b>		
557	<b>Inspection</b>			<b>望诊类</b>	<b>wàng zhěn lèi</b>	
558	Inspection	Observation	A method to understand patients' health condition by observing changes in their body, localized body parts, and excreta.	望诊	wàng zhěn	
559	Presence of spirit	Abundance of spirit	Bright eyes with flexible eyeballs, clear consciousness, natural facial expressions, a moist lustrous face, a fit body, smooth body movements, and even breathing. The presence of spirit indicates abundant essential qi or a mild medical condition.	得神	dé shén	有神

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
560	Insufficiency of spirit	Lack of spirit	Dull eyes with sluggish eyeballs, poor spirit, slow response, a complexion lacking lustre, flabby muscle and slow body movements. The insufficiency of spirit indicates insufficiency of healthy qi or mild impairment to essential qi of zang-fu organs.	少神	shǎo shén	神气不足
561	Loss of spirit	Absence of spirit	Dull eyes with sluggish eyeballs, listlessness or unconsciousness, apathetic expression, slow response, a grey/dark complexion lacking lustre, weight loss and difficult body movements. The loss of spirit indicates severe damage to healthy qi and essential qi failure of zang-fu organs.	失神	shī shén	无神
562	False spirit	The last radiance of the setting sun/the last flicker of life in a dying person	Sudden 'better' signs and symptoms in patients with chronic critical conditions: a sudden change from dull eyes with sluggish eyeballs to floating brightness in the eyes; a sudden change from mental unconsciousness or listlessness to clear consciousness and mental restlessness; a sudden change from reluctance to talk and low weak voice into a talkative, clear voice; a sudden change from a grey/dark complexion to flushed cheeks; and a sudden change from no appetite and low food intake into increased appetite and hunger. The false spirit indicates collapse of healthy qi, extreme essential qi failure of zang-fu organs or imminent separation between yin and yang. This is seen as an omen for a dying person.	假神	jiǎ shén	残灯复明;回光返照
563	Carphologia	Carphology	The actions of picking or grasping at imaginary objects, as well as the patient's own clothes or bed linens. Often seen in delirious or semiconscious states, it can be a grave symptom in cases of extreme qi deficiency or approaching qi exhaustion.	循衣摸床	xún yī mō chuáng	捻衣摸床
564	Colour diagnosis	Inspection of colour	A diagnostic method to observe colour changes of the skin, especially to the face.	色诊	sè zhěn	望色
565	Normal complexion		With abundant qi and blood as well as functioning of zang-fu organs, a normal facial colour is moist, lustrous and non-exposed red.	常色	cháng sè	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
566	Host colour		The colour one was born with. It remains throughout life. It is determined by race and prenatal factors.	主色	zhǔ sè	
567	Guest colour		The colour one takes on when physiological, seasonal, climactic, geographic, diet and emotions change the colouring.	客色	kè sè	
568	Morbid colour		Abnormal changes in both colour and lustre of the face under a morbid state.	病色	bìng sè	
569	Benign colour		An abnormal but lustrous complexion, indicating that essential qi of zang-fu organs remain sufficient and stomach qi can ascend to the face. It is often seen in acute, mild conditions or yang pattern that can be easily treated and have a favourable prognosis.	善色	shàn sè	
570	Malignant colour		A grey/dark withered complexion, indicating essential qi failure of zang-fu organs and failure of stomach qi to ascend to the face. It is often seen in chronic, critical conditions or yin pattern that can be difficult to deal with and have an unfavourable prognosis.	恶色	è sè	
571	Conforming/opposing colours		A method to predict prognosis by observing colour changes (in relation to the host colour) according to the five-element theory. Opposing colour often indicates a poor prognosis.	病色相克	bìng sè xiāng kè	
572	Bluish facial complexion		A bluish or bluish-purple facial complexion often indicates cold, pain, qi stagnation, blood stasis or convulsion.	面青	miàn qīng	
573	Red facial complexion		A red facial complexion often indicates heat or hyperactivity of fire due to yin deficiency.	面赤	miàn chì	
574	Yellow facial complexion		A yellow complexion can be sallow or yellow coupled with puffiness. Often indicates internal water retention due to spleen deficiency or insufficiency of qi and blood.	面黄	miàn huáng	
575	White facial complexion		A white facial complexion often indicates yang qi failing to circulate blood, consumption of qi and blood or cold contracting the blood vessels.	面白	miàn bái	



WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
576	Black facial complexion		A black facial complexion often indicates kidney yang failing to transform water or chronic blood stasis.	面黑	miàn hēi	
577	Pale facial complexion		A pale facial complexion is often mixed with bluish or grey. Often results from severe abdominal pain in an interior cold pattern or insufficiency of qi and blood.	面色苍白	miàn sè cāng bái	
578	Bright, pale facial complexion		A pale, white facial complexion coupled with puffiness. Often results from water retention due to yang deficiency.	晄白	huǎng bái	
579	Parched facial complexion		A withered, brown/dark facial complexion. Often results from stomach qi failing to ascend and nourish the face.	面焦	miàn jiāo	
580	Sallow facial complexion		A pale, yellow and withered facial complexion lacking lustre. Often results from deficiency of qi and blood due to weakness of the spleen and stomach.	面色萎黄	miàn sè wěi huáng	
581	Yellow, puffy face		A yellowish facial complexion coupled with puffiness. Often results from internal dampness due to spleen qi deficiency.	面黄胖	miàn huáng pàng	
582	Dark complexion		A dark facial complexion. Often results from kidney yang failing to transform water, internal yin cold, blood failing to nourish the body or stagnation of qi and blood.	面色黧黑	miàn sè lí hēi	
583	Floating yang condition		A pale facial complexion with migratory reddening of the cheeks like wearing blush. It is a critical sign indicating yin rejecting yang due to yang qi failure.	戴阳证	dài yáng zhèng	
584	Red cheeks	Malar flush	Reddening of the cheeks only. Often results from fire hyperactivity due to yin deficiency.	颧红	quán hóng	颧赤
585	True colours of five zang organs		A withered, lustreless facial complexion. Often results from essential qi exhaustion of the five zang organs.	真脏色	zhēn zàng sè	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
586	Bulging fontanels		A noticeable outward curve of the fontanel. Often occurs when pathogenic fire in febrile diseases ascends or when wind heat or damp heat affects the brain.	囟填	xìn tián	
587	Sunken fontanels		A sunken fontanel is characterised by a noticeable inward curve. It is often caused by vomiting, diarrhoea, deficiency of qi and blood, deficiency cold of the spleen and stomach, congenital maldevelopment. It is normal for an infant under 6 months of age to have a sunken fontanel.	囟陷	xìn xiàn	
588	Shaking of the head	Head shaking	Uncontrolled, involuntary shaking or tremor of the head. Often results from internal wind or deficiency of qi and blood.	头摇	tóu yáo	摇头
589	Alopecia areata	Spot baldness	Sudden hair loss in patches, most often on the scalp. Often results from blood deficiency generating wind or emotional stress.	斑秃	bān tū	
590	Seborrheic alopecia		A condition that causes scalp itching, greasy hair, dandruff and hair loss. Often results from blood heat transforming into dryness or internal build up of phlegm dampness.	脂秃	zhī tū	
591	Deviation of the mouth and eyes		Deviation of the mouth and eyes is characterized by the deviation of the mouth corner towards the healthy side, facial muscle flaccidity on the affected side and muscle tension on the healthy side, and an inability to completely close the eye and mouth, frown or blow on the affected side. Often results from wind attacking the meridians or wind phlegm obstructing the meridians.	口眼喎斜	kǒu yǎn wāi xié	
592	Eyes fixed upward		Refers to upward staring with an inability to move the eyes. Often results from internal stirring of liver wind.	戴眼反折	dài yǎn fǎn zhé	
593	Blank staring		Staring blankly with open and fixed eyes. Often results from internal stirring of liver wind or essence exhaustion and loss of spirit.	瞪目直视	dèng mù zhí shì	
594	Twitching of the eyes		Twitching of the eyes often results from external wind heat or failure of qi and blood to nourish meridians.	目瞤	mù shùn	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
595	Protrusion of the eyeballs		Protrusion of the eyeballs often results from pathogenic fire.	睛凸	jīng tū	
596	Drooping eyelid		Drooping eyelid is characterized by an inability to open the eyelid and the drooping of the upper eyelid. Often results from congenital deficiency of the spleen and kidney or disharmony between qi and blood after trauma.	睑废	jiǎn fèi	
597	Sleep with exposed eyeballs		Sleep with exposed eyeballs is more commonly seen in children. Often occurs when clean yang fails to ascend due to spleen deficiency or severe damage to bodily fluids.	睡时露睛	shuì shí lù jīng	昏睡露睛
598	Aural polyps		An aural polyp is a growth in the outside (external) ear canal. Often occurs when damp heat and phlegm fire ascend to cause qi and blood to stagnate in the ear canal.	耳痔	ěr zhì	
599	Nasal polyps		A nasal polyp is a growth within the nose. Often occurs when toxic damp heat accumulates in the nose.	鼻痔	bí zhì	
600	Red, swollen lips	Lip wind	The lips appear red and swollen. Often results from fire heat scorching the lips.	口唇红肿	kǒu chún hóng zhǒng	唇风
601	Bluish, purple lips		The lips appear bluish purple, pale purple or dark purple, without lustre or moisture. Often results from blood stasis.	口唇青紫	kǒu chún qīng zǐ	
602	Pale lips		The lips appear pale and have little redness. Often results from deficiency cold or blood deficiency.	口唇淡白	kǒu chún dàn bái	
603	Chapped lips	Cracked lips	The lips appear dry, peeling or chapped. In severe cases, the lips may turn red, swollen or bleeding. Often results from heat accumulating in the spleen and stomach, insufficiency of yin fluids or dry heat consuming bodily fluids.	口唇焦裂	kǒu chún jiāo liè	唇裂
604	Mouth ulceration		White ulcerations that occur on the mucous membrane of the oral cavity. Often occurs when damp heat and toxic fire in the spleen and stomach scorches the mouth.	口舌糜烂	kǒu shé mí làn	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
605	Pseudomembrane		A yellowish or grey/white patch develops on the ulcerative surface of the throat.	伪膜	wěi mó	
606	Mouth ulcers		A mouth ulcer is often painful. Often results from ascending of accumulated heat in the heart and spleen or fire hyperactivity due to yin deficiency.	口疮	kǒu chuāng	
607	Eversion of the lip		The lips become everted. Often indicates approaching exhaustion of spleen qi.	唇反	chún fǎn	
608	Dry teeth		The teeth appear dry and withered. Often results from damage to yin fluids.	齿焦	chǐ jiāo	
609	Pigeon chest		A malformation of the chest characterized by a protrusion of the sternum and ribs giving the appearance like the chest of a pigeon. Often results from weak bones due to congenital or acquired deficiency of the spleen and kidney.	鸡胸	jī xiōng	
610	Beading of the ribs		Prominent knobs of bone at the costochondral joints that resemble large beads under the skin of the rib cage. Often results from congenital kidney qi deficiency and postnatal malnutrition.	肋如串珠	lèi rú chuàn zhū	
611	Hunchback	Tortoise back	An abnormally excessive convex kyphotic curvature of the spine, resembling the back of a tortoise. Often results from congenital deficiency, postnatal malnutrition and deficiency of the spleen and kidney.	龟背	guī bèi	
612	Marasmus		A form of severe malnutrition characterized by emaciation and protrusions of the spine resembling a saw. Often results from severe essential qi deficiency of the zang-fu organs.	脊疔	jǐ gān	
613	Opisthotonus		Severe hyperextension and spasticity in which an individual's head, neck and spinal column enter into a complete "bridging" or "arching" position. Often occurs when wind attacks the meridians or wind phlegm obstructs the meridians.	角弓反张	jiǎo gōng fǎn zhāng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
614	Limb flaccidity and disuse		Flaccidity, weakness and muscular atrophy of the four extremities, coupled with loss or impairment of functions. Often results from malnourishment of the muscles or sinews due to damp heat or deficiency of essence and fluids.	肢体痿废	zhī tǐ wěi fèi	
615	Contracture of the four extremities		Spasticity of the hands and feet with impaired flexion and extension. Often results from cold affecting the meridians or malnourishment of the extremities due to heat scorching yin fluids and resultant blood dryness.	四肢拘急	sì zhī jū jí	
616	Convulsions of the hands and feet		Slow, weak convulsions of the hands and feet often result from internal stirring of deficiency wind.	手足蠕动	shǒu zú rú dòng	
617	Jerking of the hands and feet	Twitching hands and feet	Twitching hands and feet in small children. Often results from retention of pathogenic wind in fetal stage, coupled with exposure to wind after birth.	手足抽掣	shǒu zú chōu chè	
618	Dry fingernails/toenails		Dry, lustreless fingernails/toenails often result from deficiency of qi and blood, consumption of bodily fluids, external contraction of cold dampness or damage to the liver.	爪枯	zhǎo kū	
619	Fusiform fingers		Fusiform swelling of the fingers coupled with impaired movement. Often occurs when wind dampness and phlegm stasis affect the sinews and joints.	梭状指	suō zhuàng zhǐ	
620	Digital clubbing		Characterized by a focal bulbous enlargement of the terminal segments of the fingers and/or toes, also known as drumstick fingers. Often results from lung qi stagnation or qi deficiency of the lung and kidney.	杵状指	chǔ zhuàng zhǐ	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
621	Inspection of superficial veins on index fingers in children		A method to observe the changes in colour and shape of superficial veins on index fingers in children under the age of 3 years. Normal veins are pale red or slightly purple and appear singular with appropriate thickness (neither thick nor thin). Pathologically, the depth of veins indicates an interior pattern from an exterior pattern, colour/lustres of the veins indicate the disease nature, and shape of the veins indicates deficiency from excess and the three passes (wind pass, qi pass and life pass) indicates the disease severity.	望小儿食指络脉	wàng xiǎo ér shí zhǐ luò mài	
622	Wind pass	Upper gate; the first gate	One of the diagnostic sites for infantile venule of the index finger. The wind gate is the area between the metacarpophalangeal transverse crease and the second transverse crease.	风关	fēng guān	上关;初关
623	Qi pass		One of the diagnostic sites for infantile venule of the index finger. The qi gate is the area between the second and third transverse creases. It indicates a relatively severe condition.	气关	qì guān	
624	Life pass		One of the diagnostic sites for infantile venule of the index finger. The life gate is the area between the third transverse crease and terminal segment of the index finger. It indicates a severe medical condition.	命关	mìng guān	
625	Extension of visible veins through all three passes to the nail		This often indicates a life-threatening condition; however, it is necessary to use this method in combination with the four diagnostic methods. This method applies to infants under the age of 3.	透关射甲	tòu guān shè jiǎ	
626	Muscle twitching		Involuntary muscle twitching and mild body shaking often result from water retention (due to yang qi deficiency) affecting the meridians or malnourishment of the meridians due to consumption of fluids.	肌肉瞤动	jī ròu rún dòng	
627	Rough, scaly skin		Rough, scaly skin is often caused by blood deficiency, exhaustion of fluids or malnourishment of the skin due to chronic blood stasis.	肌肤甲错	jī fū jiǎ cuò	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
628	Yin macules		Yin macules appear bluish purple underneath the skin. Individuals may have a pale complexion, a thready, weak pulse and cold limbs. They often result from the spleen failing to control blood within the vessels or cold retention due to yang deficiency.	阴斑	yīn bān	
629	Yang macules		Yang macules appear red or purple and resemble fabric lines. Individuals may have a red face and fever. They often occur when excessive heat affects the Ying nutrients and blood.	阳斑	yáng bān	
630	Heat rash		Red, raised, bumpy millet-sized skin rashes. They often result from heat accumulating in the lung and stomach and exuberant heat in the Ying nutrients and blood affecting the skin.	疹	zhěn	
631	Miliaria alba	Sweat rashes	Small, raised white blister-like skin lesions. They often result from retention of externally contracted damp heat in the skin.	白痞	bái pǐ	
632	Heat sores	Herpes labialis	Hot, painful millet-sized blisters around the mouth border, lips and nose. They often result from external contraction of wind or ascending of heat accumulated in the lung and stomach.	热气疮	rè qì chuāng	
633	Eczema		Local or generalized red, itchy skin rashes that rapidly develop into papules or blisters, followed by oozing upon scratching. Often results from retention of damp heat on the skin coupled with external contraction of wind.	湿疹	shī zhěn	
634	Tongue diagnosis		A diagnostic method to inspect the patient's tongue body and tongue coating.	舌诊	shé zhěn	
635	Tongue manifestations		This refers to changes in the appearance of the tongue, including changes in the spirit, colour and form of the tongue body and its coating.	舌象	shé xiàng	
636	Sublingual veins		The two major, dark-red longitudinal vessels on both sides of the frenulum of tongue. Their lengths do not exceed 3/5 of the distance between the sublingual caruncle and the tip of the tongue. In most cases, they occur singularly, and double vessels are very rare.	舌下络脉	shé xià luò mài	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
637	Tongue spirit		The tongue spirit includes its colour, moisture and movement. It is often used to predict disease prognosis.	舌神	shé shén	
638	Lustrous tongue		A lustrous tongue is moistened and fresh red in colour, coupled with flexible movement. Often indicates abundant fluids, qi and blood as well as a high spirit.	荣舌	róng shé	
639	Withered tongue		A withered tongue is dull, dark, dry and shrivelled, coupled with slow movement. Often indicates deficiency of body fluids, qi and blood as well as a poor spirit.	枯舌	kū shé	
640	Tongue body		The tongue body includes the musculature and vascular tissue of the tongue.	舌质	shé zhì	舌体
641	Tongue colour		The colour of the tongue body. The normal tongue colour is pale red and lustrous. Abnormal colours are pale, red, deep red and purple. A pale tongue indicates blood deficiency or yang deficiency; a red tongue indicates heat in the Wei-defence and qi phases; and a deep red tongue indicates heat in the Ying nutrients and blood phases.	舌色	shé sè	
642	Pale white tongue	Pale	A tongue less red than normal, indicating yang deficiency or deficiency of qi and blood.	淡白舌	dàn bái shé	
643	Withered white tongue		A tongue that is totally white, indicating collapse of blood and qi.	枯白舌	kū bái shé	
644	Pale red tongue		A lustrous tongue of normal colour, indicating disharmony between qi and blood. It is often seen in healthy person. In patients, a pale red tongue indicates a mild condition.	淡红舌	dàn hóng shé	
645	Red tongue		A tongue redder than normal, indicating a heat pattern.	红舌	hóng shé	
646	Crimson tongue		A tongue deep red in colour, indicating an intense heat pattern.	绛舌	jiàng shé	



WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
647	Purple tongue		A tongue purple in colour, indicating exuberant toxic heat entering the Ying nutrients and blood to consume yin and fluids, and causes stagnation of qi and blood.	紫舌	zǐ shé	
648	Bluish tongue	Blue	A tongue of bluish colour that resembles the exposed blue veins on the skin, indicating blood stagnation due to yin cold obstructing yang qi.	青舌	qīng shé	
649	Pale purple tongue		A tongue of pale, bluish colour, often indicating blood stagnation due to yin cold obstructing yang qi or yang qi failing to circulate blood.	淡紫舌	dàn zǐ shé	
650	Tongue with ecchymosis/petechiae		A tongue with ecchymosis or petechiae in varying sizes, often indicating stagnation of qi and blood.	瘀斑舌	yū bān shé	
651	Moist tongue		A moist tongue is often seen in healthy person. In patients, it indicates that bodily fluids remain undamaged.	舌润	shé rùn	
652	Form of the tongue		The shape of the tongue, including enlargement/thinness, tough/tender, spotted, cracks or teeth marks.	舌形	shé xíng	
653	Tough tongue		A tongue that is firm with rough texture and relatively dark in colour, often indicating a struggle between excessive pathogenic factors and strong anti-pathogenic qi.	老舌	lǎo shé	
654	Tender tongue		A tongue that is soft and delicate with fine texture and pale in colour, often indicating deficiency of qi and blood or internal cold dampness due to yang qi deficiency.	嫩舌	nèn shé	
655	Enlarged tongue	Larger	A tongue that is larger and thicker than normal, often indicating internal retention of water dampness or ascending of phlegm dampness and toxic heat.	胖大舌	pàng dà shé	
656	Thin tongue		A tongue thinner and smaller than normal, often indicating deficiency of qi and blood or fire hyperactivity due to yin deficiency.	瘦薄舌	shòu báo shé	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
657	Spotted tongue		A tongue with red or purple red spots as well as thorn-like protrusions on its surface, often indicating extreme heat in zang-fu organs or exuberant heat in the blood phase.	点刺舌	diǎn cì shé	
658	Fissured tongue	Cracked tongue	A tongue with fissures in varying depths and shapes on its surface, often indicating exuberant heat damaging yin, blood deficiency or internal dampness due to spleen deficiency.	裂纹舌	liè wén shé	
659	Tongue with teeth marks	Teeth-marked Tongue with dental impressions; Scalloped tongue	A tongue with dental indentations on its margin. It is often seen in an enlarged tongue.	齿痕舌	chǐ hén shé	
660	Swollen tongue		A large, bulging, firm and painful tongue that makes the mouth full or difficult to open and may affect the breathing or speech, often indicating sudden, severe heart fire intertwined with turbid phlegm and stagnant blood.	肿胀舌	zhǒng zhàng shé	
661	Bleeding of the tongue		Spontaneous bleeding from the tongue not due to traumatic injury, often indicating exuberant fire of the heart and liver forces the blood to move recklessly.	舌衄	shé nù	
662	Motility of the tongue		The ability of the tongue to move spontaneously. Flexible tongue movement indicates normal functioning of the zang-fu organs with abundant qi and blood.	舌态	shé tài	
663	Stiff tongue		A tongue that is stiff and moves sluggishly, often indicates heat (in febrile conditions) entering the pericardium, stroke, exuberant heat damaging fluids or wind phlegm obstructing the meridians.	舌强	shé jiàng	强硬舌
664	Trembling tongue		A tongue that involuntarily trembles as it moves; in severe cases, the tongue trembles even when it does not move, often indicating internal stirring of liver wind.	颤动舌	chàn dòng shé	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
665	Protruding tongue	Protruded agitated	A tongue that hangs out of the mouth repeatedly and tip is extended fast from and retracted slowly back into the mouth, often indicating heat in the heart and spleen, epidemic toxin attacking the heart or exhaustion of anti-pathogenic qi.	吐舌	tǔ shé	
666	Wagging tongue	Agitated tongue	A tongue that frequently extends from and retracts back into the mouth and moves in a circular motion, often indicating extreme heat stirring wind.	弄舌	nòng shé	
667	Deviated tongue		A tongue that inclines to one side when extended, often indicating wind attacking the meridians or wind phlegm obstructing the meridians.	歪斜舌	wāi xié shé	
668	Flaccid tongue		A tongue that is flabby and cannot move easily, often indicating malnourishment of the sinews or muscles due to deficiency of qi and blood or loss of yin fluids.	痿软舌	wěi ruǎn shé	
669	Contracted tongue		A tongue that cannot be fully extended from the mouth and appears to be shortened. It is often seen in combination with a flaccid tongue, often indicating a critical condition.	短缩舌	duǎn suō shé	
670	Protracted tongue		A tongue that is habitually extended out of the mouth with difficulty retracting or an inability to retract.	舌纵	shé zòng	
671	Tongue paralysis	Paralyzed	A subjective feeling of tongue numbness with inability to move voluntarily. Often occurs when Ying nutrients and blood fail to ascend to nourish the tongue.	舌麻痹	shé má bì	
672	Tongue sluggishness		A tongue that moves sluggishly, coupled with slurred speech, often resulting from accumulated heat in the spleen and stomach scorching bodily fluids.	舌謇	shé jiǎn	
673	Tongue coating		A layer of moss-like material covering the tongue, generated by ascending of stomach qi.	舌苔	shé tāi	
674	Thin coating		A tongue coating through which the underlying tongue surface is faintly visible, indicating normal stomach qi.	薄苔	báo tāi	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
675	Thick coating		A tongue coating through which the underlying tongue surface is not visible, often indicating turbid dampness, phlegm, food retention or heat.	厚苔	hòu tāi	
676	Slippery coating		A moist tongue coating with excessive fluid, feels slippery, often indicating internal accumulation of water dampness.	滑苔	huá tāi	
677	Dry coating		A tongue coating that looks dry and feels dry to the touch, often indicating consumption of bodily fluids.	燥苔	zào tāi	
678	Rough coating		A tongue coating that is rough in texture that looks and feels dry. A rough coating can be a further development of dry coating, often indicating exuberant heat damaging bodily fluids.	糙苔	cāo tāi	
679	Curdy coating		A tongue coating consisting of coarse granules like bean dregs, easy to wipe off, often indicating yang heat steam the undigested food or internal build up of turbid phlegm.	腐苔	fǔ tāi	
680	Rotten-curdy coating	Moulding soymilk coating	A reddish thick tongue coating with black and yellow tinge, often indicating food retention in the stomach and intestines transforming into heat.	霉酱苔	méi jiàng tāi	
681	Suppurative curdy coating		A thick layer of coating that resembles ulcerative pus, often resulting from internal carbuncle or internal retention of toxins.	脓腐苔	nóng fǔ tāi	
682	Greasy tongue		A dense, turbid, greasy tongue coating with fine texture, sticking on the tongue, hard to wipe off, often indicating internal phlegm dampness obstructing yang qi of the stomach.	腻苔	nì tāi	
683	Full coating		A tongue coating that covers the full surface of the tongue, often indicating phlegm dampness.	全苔	quán tāi	
684	Geographical tongue	Mapped tongue	A tongue with irregular shedding of the coating and distinct demarcation between the shed and unshed areas, looking like a map, often indicating phlegm dampness due to qi deficiency or spleen deficiency coupled with parasitic worms.	地图舌	dì tú shé	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
685	Peeled tongue		A tongue coating that has lost its normal coating, giving the appearance of having been peeled, often indicating deficiency of stomach qi and yin.	花剥苔	huā bāo tāi	
686	Mirror tongue		A completely smooth tongue free of coating, like a mirror, often indicating stomach yin exhaustion or collapse of yang qi due to heavy loss of Ying nutrients and blood.	镜面舌	jìng miàn shé	
687	Exfoliated coating		Peeling of the tongue coating leaving an unsmooth tongue surface as if covered with regeneration of coating granules, often indicating blood deficiency or deficiency of qi and blood.	类剥苔	lèi bāo tāi	
688	Rootless coating	False coating	A tongue coating that is easy to wipe off.	无根苔	wú gēn tāi	假苔
689	Rooted coating	True coating	A tongue coating that is firm and sticky on the tongue body, hard to wipe off.	有根苔	yǒu gēn tāi	真苔
690	Stained coating		A tongue coating that is stained, often by food or medicine. A stained coating often resolves spontaneously within a short period of time.	染苔	rǎn tāi	
691	White coating		A tongue coating white in colour. A normal tongue coating is often seen in the middle and back part of the tongue with even, moist granules.	白苔	bái tāi	
692	White, rotten coating		A tongue coating that resembles white erosive spots like rice grains, often indicating extreme stomach heat-steaming fluids.	白霉苔	bái méi tāi	
693	White, sticky coating		A tongue coating that is white in colour and the tongue body is sticky. Often results from retained dampness in the spleen and stomach.	白黏苔	bái nián tāi	
694	Thin, white coating		A tongue coating that is thin, white and moist. It is often seen in a healthy person. In patients, it indicates an early stage of an exterior pattern, a mild interior pattern or internal cold due to yang deficiency.	薄白苔	báo bái tāi	
695	Powdery coating	Mealy coating	A tongue coating that is as white as accumulated powder but not dry to touch, often resulting from turbid dampness intertwined with toxic heat.	积粉苔	jī fěn tāi	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
696	Yellow coating		A tongue coating yellow in colour, often indicating exuberant heat. A darker yellow colour indicates a more intense heat.	黄苔	huáng tāi	
697	Brown–yellow coating		A yellow tongue coating that contains grey dark colour, often indicating extreme heat.	焦黄苔	jiāo huáng tāi	老黄苔
698	Grey coating		A tongue coating grey in colour, often indicating exuberant pathogenic heat, internal yin cold or a build up of phlegm dampness.	灰苔	huī tāi	
699	Black coating		A tongue coating black in colour, indicating either excessive yin cold or extreme heat in the interior.	黑苔	hēi tāi	
700	<b>Auscultation and olfaction</b>	<b>Listening and smelling</b>		闻诊类	wén zhěn lèi	
701	Auscultation		A diagnostic method using listening to the changes in: patients' speech, breathing, cough, internal sounds and smelling the patients' breath and noticing body odours and discharges.	闻诊	wén zhěn	
702	Excess metal failing to sound		An expression figuratively referring to sudden hoarseness or loss of voice due to exogenous wind cold or wind heat impairing the dispersing of lung qi.	金实不鸣	jīn shí bù míng	
703	Broken metal failing to sound		An expression figuratively referring to hoarseness in chronic or severe medical conditions due to essential qi deficiency of the lung and kidney.	金破不鸣	jīn pò bù míng	
704	Faint, low voice		A voice that is faint and low, scarcely audible, often resulting from deficiency of the zang–fu organs.	声怯	shēng qiè	
705	Hoarseness		A low harsh or husky quality of the voice, often resulting from external contraction of wind cold/ heat, qi and yin deficiency of the lung and kidney or impaired lung qi.	声嘶	shēng sī	
706	Delirium		Delirious speech, mental cloudiness and a high-pitched sound, often indicating Yangming fu organ pattern or heat disturbing the heart mind due to pathogenic warmth entering the pericardium.	谵语	zhān yǔ	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
707	Muttering		Unconscious murmuring haltingly with frequent repetitions and a low, faint voice, often indicating great damage to heart qi in late-stage medical conditions.	郑声	zhèng shēng	
708	Disordered speech		A type of dysphasia that the patient frequently employs wrong words but realizes the mistake afterwards, often resulting from heart qi deficiency, malnourishment of the heart mind or kidney essence failing to nourish the brain.	错语	cuò yǔ	
709	Soliloquy		Talking to oneself repeatedly but stopping with the presence of others, often resulting from qi and blood failing to nourish the heart mind or turbid phlegm misting the heart mind.	独语	dú yǔ	
710	Manic raving		Mentally deranged, wild, illogical talk and unreasonable behaviours such as singing or walking without any clothes on, often resulting from qi stagnation transforming into fire or phlegm fire disturbing the heart mind.	狂言	kuáng yán	
711	Slurred speech		Unclear speech and tongue stiffness in individuals with clear mental consciousness. Often results from wind phlegm obstructing the meridians.	语言蹇涩	yǔ yán jiǎn sè	
712	Delirious ravings		Irrational, incoherent, wild or extravagant speech in a delirious state.	谵妄	zhān wàng	
713	Shortness of breath		A subjective experience of rapid breathing and shortness of breath that resembles panting without elevated shoulders or phlegm sounds in the throat. Often results from phlegm fluid, qi stagnation, constitutional weakness or chronic conditions.	短气	duǎn qì	
714	Shallow breathing		A weak, shallow breathing and a low voice. Often results from constitutional weakness or qi deficiency of the lung and kidney due to chronic conditions.	少气	shǎo qì	气微
715	Sighing		An act of exhaling audibly in a long deep breath, as in weariness or relief. Often results from emotional disturbance and liver qi stagnation.	太息	tài xī	叹息

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
716	Rapid breathing		A short, rapid breathing that resemble panting but no phlegm sound. Often results from qi deficiency, external contraction of pathogenic factors or water fluid retention.	气促	qì cù	
717	Hiccups		A brief, involuntary release of qi out of the throat. Often results from stomach qi failing to descend.	呃逆	è nì	
718	Burping	Belching	The release of gas from the stomach through the mouth, often accompanied with burp sounds. Often results from weakness of the spleen and stomach or retention of phlegm, fire or food retention in the stomach, which causes stomach qi to ascend.	嗝气	ǎi qì	
719	Unproductive cough	Dry cough	A cough with no or extremely scanty sputum. Often results from fire, dryness or lung yin deficiency.	干咳	gān ké	
720	Yawning		A response to fatigue or sleepiness.	呵欠	hē qiǎn	
721	Bad breath	Foul breath	A noticeably unpleasant odour is present on the breath. Often occurs when deficiency fire retains in the stomach or when one overeats greasy food.	口臭	kǒu chòu	
722	Snoring		The sound due to obstructed air movement during breathing while sleeping. Often results from obstructed airway.	鼻鼾	bí hān	
723	Bowel sounds	Borborygmus	A gurgling, rumbling, or squeaking noise from the bowels. Often occurs when the spleen fails to transport and transform, resulting in retention of water fluid in the stomach and intestines.	肠鸣	cháng míng	
724	The category of inquiry			问诊类	wèn zhěn lèi	
725	Inquiry		A method to collect information regarding the disease occurrence, progression, previous diagnosis and treatment and present symptoms by talking to the patient or the person who accompanies the patient.	问诊	wèn zhěn	



WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
726	The ten questions		The ten questions include cold/heat, sweating, pains on the head and body, bladder/bowel movements, diet/appetite, chest, hearing (tinnitus/deafness), thirst, previous illnesses and etiological factors.	十问歌	shí wèn gē	
727	Aversion to wind		A subjective feeling of coldness when exposed to wind and the feeling is alleviated by staying away from wind. Often occurs as a result of qì deficiency or exposure to pathogenic wind.	恶风	wù fēng	
728	Aversion to cold		A subjective feeling of coldness that cannot be resolved by putting on more clothes or staying closer to a source of warmth. Often occurs as a result of contracting external cold.	恶寒	wù hán	
729	Cold intolerance	Fear of cold	A subjective feeling of coldness that can be alleviated by putting on more clothes or blankets or staying closer to a source of warmth. Often occurs as a result of yang qì failing to warm the body or cold directly affecting the zang-fu organs or meridians.	畏寒	wèi hán	
730	Chills		A feeling of coldness or shivering. Often results from extreme cold or blocked heat.	寒战	hán zhàn	
731	Fever and chills	Fever and aversion to cold	Concurrent aversion to cold and fever is a key proof in diagnosing an exterior pattern.	恶寒发热	wù hán fā rè	
732	Chills alone	Aversion to cold without fever	Aversion to cold alone without fever is mostly seen in interior cold pattern that results from yang deficiency, cold binding the Wei-defensive qì or cold directly affecting the internal organs.	但寒不热	dàn hán bú rè	
733	High fever		Persistent high-grade fever (>39°C) often results from internal exuberant yang heat steaming the surface of the body upon pathogenic factors entering the interior.	壮热	zhuàng rè	
734	Tidal fever		Fever that recurs or aggravates at a regular time of each day like tide. Often occurs as a result of yang excess, yin deficiency or blood deficiency.	潮热	cháo rè	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
735	Tidal fever in the afternoon	Yangming tidal fever	Noticeable or more pronounced fever from 3 pm to 5 pm. Most commonly seen in heat accumulating in the stomach and large intestine.	日晡潮热	rì bū cháo rè	阳明潮热
736	Tidal fever due to warm dampness		Noticeable fever in the afternoon and inhibited fever (absence of hot sensation on initial palpation but presence of a burning sensation upon palpating for a while). Most commonly seen in damp heat accumulating in the spleen and stomach.	湿温潮热	shī wēn cháo rè	身热不扬
737	Tidal fever due to yin deficiency		Low-grade fever in the afternoon or at night (<38°C) or bone-steaming tidal fever. Most commonly seen in yin fluids failing to contain yang and subsequently, floating of deficiency yang.	阴虚潮热	yīn xū cháo rè	
738	Fever aggravated at night		A subjective feverish sensation that worsens at night. Individuals may not have an elevated temperature. Often results from floating of deficiency yang due to yin deficiency.	身热夜甚	shēn rè yè shèn	
739	Feverish sensations in palms and soles		Feverish sensations in the palms and soles are most commonly caused by internal heat due to yin deficiency or internal retention of fire heat.	手足心热	shǒu zú xīn rè	
740	Cold hands and feet	Cold limbs	The cold sensation in the extremities radiating up to the knees and elbows or beyond. Often occurs as a result of yang qi deficiency, internal accumulation of yin cold, or heat blocking the yang qi from warming up the extremities.	手足厥冷	shǒu zú jué lěng	
741	Feverish sensations in palms, soles and chest		A feeling of restlessness and heat sensation in the chest, along with feverish sensations in the palms and soles. This is most commonly caused by heart blood deficiency, fire hyperactivity due to yin deficiency or internal retention of fire heat after recovery from medical conditions.	五心烦热	wǔ xīn fán rè	
742	Bone-steaming tidal fever		A subjective feverish sensation that the heat is felt to emanate from the bones. It is most commonly caused by fire hyperactivity due to yin deficiency.	骨蒸	gǔ zhēng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
743	Alternating fever and chills	Fever alternating with aversion to cold	Paroxysms of chills and fever that recur at regular/irregular intervals. It is most commonly caused by seesaw struggle between healthy qi and pathogenic factors in between the exterior and interior.	寒热往来	hán rè wǎng lái	往来寒热
744	Absence of sweating		Absence of sweating in an exterior pattern is most commonly caused by external wind cold blocking the skin pores; and absence of sweating in an interior pattern is most commonly caused by yang qi failing to steam and transform yin fluids or insufficient generation of fluids and blood.	无汗	wú hàn	
745	Spontaneous sweating		(See terminologies in sweating disorders).	自汗	zì hàn	
746	Sweating after shivering		A cycle of sudden coldness followed by shivering and sweating. Often seen in fierce struggle between healthy qi and pathogenic factors in externally contracted febrile conditions.	战汗	zhàn hàn	
747	Cold sweats		A feeling of coldness after sweating. Most commonly caused by severe deficiency of yang qi.	冷汗	lěng hàn	
748	Hot sweats		A subjective sensation that the sweats are hot. Most commonly caused by interior heat.	热汗	rè hàn	
749	Head sweating		Excessive sweating on the face and head. Often occurs when retained pathogenic heat ascends to heat the head and face.	头汗	tóu hàn	
750	Sweats in the palms/soles		Excessive sweating in the palms and soles. Often results from internal heat due to yin deficiency, exuberant Yangming heat or damp heat in the middle jiao.	手足心汗	shǒu zú xīn hàn	
751	Exhausted sweating	Collapsing sweating	Oily, sticky sweating in critical, life-threatening conditions. It is most commonly caused by yin-yang separation and yang qi collapse.	脱汗	tuō hàn	绝汗
752	Sweats on the chest		Excessive sweating in the chest. Often results from deficiency of the heart and spleen or disharmony between the heart and kidney.	心胸汗	xīn xiōng hàn	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
753	Sweats in the genital area		Excessive sweating on and around the external genitalia. Often results from damp heat in the lower jiao.	阴汗	yīn hàn	
754	Dull pain		Persistent, tolerable and less pronounced pain. It is most commonly caused by yang, qi, essence and blood failing to nourish the zang-fu organs and meridians.	隐痛	yǐn tòng	
755	Colicky pain	Gripping pain	Sharp pain as if lacerated by a knife. It is most commonly caused by tangible pathogens obstructing the flow of qi or cold contracting the qi activity.	绞痛	jiǎo tòng	
756	Hollow pain	Empty pain	Pain with a hollow sensation. It is most commonly caused by qi, blood, essence and blood failing to nourish the tissues and organs	空痛	kōng tòng	
757	Stabbing pain		Pain as if pricked by a needle. It is most commonly caused by stagnant blood.	刺痛	cì tòng	
758	Cold pain		Pain with a cold sensation that alleviates with warmth and pressure but aggravates with cold. It is most commonly caused by cold affecting the meridians or yang qi failing to warm the zang-fu organs and limbs.	冷痛	lěng tòng	
759	Distending pain		Pain with a sensation of fullness and distension. It is most commonly caused by qi stagnation.	胀痛	zhàng tòng	
760	Heavy pain		Pain with a sensation of heaviness. It is most commonly caused by dampness obstructing the flow of qi.	重痛	zhòng tòng	
761	Burning pain	Scorching pain	Pain with a burning sensation that alleviates with cold. It is most commonly caused by pathogenic fire-heat or fire hyperactivity due to yin deficiency.	灼痛	zhuó tòng	
762	Referred pain	Pulling pain	Pain that occurs in one part of the body but perceives in some other parts of the body. It is most commonly caused by blockage or malnourishment of meridians.	掣痛	chè tòng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
763	Migratory pain	Wandering/moving pain	Pain that migrates from one area to another area. Wandering pain in the rib area, stomach and abdomen is often associated with liver qi stagnation, whereas wandering joint pain is often associated with wind.	窜痛	cuàn tòng	走窜痛
764	Oppressive pain	Suffocating pain	A pain accompanied by feeling of oppression. Oppressive pain is often felt in the chest. Often occurs when phlegm turbidity or damp heat obstructs the flow of qi in the upper jiao. Alternatively, it may be associated with emotions.	闷痛	mèn tòng	
765	Soreness	aching pain	A pain accompanied by a feeling of soreness and weakness. Often occurs as a result of wind cold obstructing the flow of qi and blood, kidney deficiency, or failure of qi and blood to nourish the tissues.	酸痛	suān tòng	
766	Head heaviness as if being wrapped up		A subjective feeling of a bearing down sensation of the head or feeling like a tight band around the head. Often results from phlegm dampness obstructing the head or external contraction of dampness or pestilence.	头重如裹	tóu zhòng rú guǒ	
767	Distending headache		A subjective sensation of distending or splitting headache. It is most commonly caused by external damp heat or internal dysfunctions.	头胀	tóu zhàng	
768	Heavy headache		Headache with a subjective heavy, bearing down sensation or feeling like being wrapped up in a towel. It is most commonly caused by external dampness, phlegm dampness, pestilence qi, or kidney qi deficiency.	头重	tóu zhòng	
769	Headache with neck rigidity		Pain, contracture and discomfort in the head and neck. Often occurs when wind cold affecting the surface of the body or impaired qi flow of Taiyang meridian.	头项强痛	tóu xiàng jiàng tòng	
770	Taiyang headache		Headache that radiates to the occipital region. It is caused by pathogenic factors affecting the Taiyang meridian, which enters the brain from the vertex and comes out of the back of the neck.	太阳头痛	tài yáng tóu tòng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
771	Shaoyang headache		Headache that is located in the temples on both sides. It is caused by pathogenic factors affecting the Shaoyang meridian, which travels along the bilateral sides of the head.	少阳头痛	shào yáng tóu tòng	
772	Yangming headache		Frontal headache that radiates to the supraorbital bone. It is caused by pathogenic factors affecting the Yangming meridian, which follows the hairline from the temporal region to the corner of the forehead.	阳明头痛	yáng míng tóu tòng	
773	Taiyin headache		Headache that often combines with drowsiness, abdominal diarrhoea and spontaneous sweating. It is caused by failure of spleen yang to ascend due to pathogenic factors affecting the Taiyin meridian.	太阴头痛	tài yīn tóu tòng	
774	Shaoyin headache		Headache that often combines with toothache. It is caused by pathogenic factors affecting the Shaoyin meridian. In Chinese medicine, the kidney dominates bones and generates marrow to fill up the brain.	少阴头痛	shào yīn tóu tòng	
775	Jueyin headache		Headache that is located in the parietal region. It is caused by pathogenic factors affecting the Jueyin meridian, which meets with the Du meridian at the vertex of the head.	厥阴头痛	jué yīn tóu tòng	
776	Neck stiffness		Also known as neck rigidity. It is most commonly caused by wind, cold and dampness affecting the Taiyang meridian, external summer heat, and malnourishment of local muscles due to consumption of fluids and blood.	项强	xiàng jiàng	
777	Lassitude	Lack of strength	Weariness of the body. In severe cases, individuals may experience difficulty lifting things or walking, coupled with drowsiness or lack of energy. Often results from qi deficiency or dampness.	乏力	fá lì	
778	Vexation and fever	Heat vexation	Typical clinical symptoms are vexation, fever, restlessness or oppressive, feverish sensations. They are often caused by hyperactivity of liver fire and fire hyperactivity due to yin deficiency.	烦热	fán rè	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
779	Restlessness	Vexation and agitation	Typical clinical symptoms are an oppressive, feverish sensation in the chest and restless hands/feet. They are often caused by fire hyperactivity due to yin deficiency.	烦躁	fán zào	
780	Chest pain radiating to the back		Cardiac pain (precordial region, the pit of the stomach or stomach) pain that radiates to the back. It is often caused by internal build up of yin cold due to severe deficiency of yang qi.	心痛彻背	xīn tòng chè bèi	
781	Pain below the heart		Epigastric pain that is especially located in the pit of the stomach. It is often caused by internal build up of yin cold due to severe deficiency of yang qi.	心下痛	xīn xià tòng	
782	Vexation	Heart vexation	A feeling of restlessness and feverish sensation in the chest. Often results from heat pattern. Occasionally, it may also be caused by cold.	心烦	xīn fán	
783	Feverish sensation in the chest		A subjective feverish, fire-scorching sensation in the chest, coupled with restlessness. Often results from pathogenic factors entering the interior, exuberant heat in the lung and stomach, upward flaming of heart fire or consumption of yin blood.	胸中热	xiōng zhōng rè	
784	Chest stuffiness		A subjective sensation of tightness, fullness and distension in the chest. Often results from impaired qi activity of the heart and lung.	胸痞	xiōng pǐ	
785	Fullness in the chest and sub-costal region		A subjective sensation of fullness, tightness and discomfort in the chest and sub-costal region. Often results from gallbladder qi disorder and gallbladder fire affecting the diaphragm.	胸胁苦满	xiōng xié kǔ mǎn	
786	Heat vexation in the chest		A feeling of restlessness, stuffiness and a fire-scorching sensation in the chest. Often results from exogenous pathogens entering the interior, exuberant heat in the lung and stomach, upward flaming of heart fire, or consumption of yin blood.	胸中烦热	xiōng zhōng fán rè	
787	Distension in the sub-costal region		A subjective sensation of distension, fullness and discomfort on one or both sides of the sub-costal region. Often results from liver qi stagnation, hyperactivity of liver qi or impaired qi activity of the liver and gallbladder meridians.	胁胀	xié zhàng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
788	Stomach stuffiness		(See terminologies of disorders)	脘痞	wǎn pǐ	
789	Lower abdominal pain		Pain in the central area of the lower abdomen. Often results from damp heat, stagnant blood, obstructed flow of abdominal qi, or kidney deficiency.	小腹痛	xiǎo fù tòng	
790	Bilateral lower abdominal pain		Pain on both sides of the lower abdomen. Often occurs when the liver fails to maintain free flow of qi.	少腹痛	shào fù tòng	
791	Lower abdominal cramp		A subjective sensation of contracture or tension below the umbilicus. Often results from deficiency cold of kidney qi and impaired qi transformation of the urinary bladder.	少腹拘急	shào fù jū jí	
792	Body ache	Generalized pain	Pain in the head, neck, chest, back, back/low back or extremities. Often results from cold damage, sun stroke, dampness or bi-impediment.	身痛	shēn tòng	
793	Body heaviness		A sensation of body heaviness, lassitude and impaired movement. Often results from internal dampness or retention of water dampness due to deficiency of the spleen and kidney.	身重	shēn zhòng	
794	Low back soreness		Soreness/pain between the sub-costal regions and iliac spine, and within the posterior axillary lines. Often results from ageing, chronic diseases, over-exertion, emotions or sexual indulgence. Alternatively, it may also occur when exogenous pathogens or traumatic injuries damage the flow of meridian qi and blood.	腰痠	yāo suān	
795	Masses in the sub-costal region		A sensation of string-like masses in the sub-costal region. Individuals may experience pain when coughing or swallowing. Often results from water fluid retention in the sub-costal region and may develop from persistent pleural fluid retention.	悬癖	xuán pǐ	
796	Dry throat		A subjective feeling of dryness in the throat. Often results from deficiency fire (due to yin deficiency of the liver and kidney) ascends to scorch the throat, the failure of lung yin to nourish and moisten the throat, or upward fire flaming of the lung and stomach.	咽干	yān gān	



WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
797	Dry eyes		A sensation of eye dryness. Often results from yin deficiency of the liver and kidney, liver blood deficiency, lung yin deficiency or yin deficiency-induced fire hyperactivity.	目干涩	mù gān sè	
798	Light sensitivity	Photophobia	Eye pain when exposed to bright light. Individuals may also experience watery eyes, dry eyes or difficulty keeping the eyes open. Often results from ascending of wind fire/heat or deficiency of yin blood.	目羞明	mù xiū míng	畏光
799	Blurred vision		Blurred vision is a sensation of losing sharpness of the eyesight and feeling the objects out of focus. Often results from deficiency of liver blood and kidney essence or ascending of liver yang or wind fire that carries turbid phlegm.	目眩	mù xuàn	
800	Itchy eyes		A feeling of itching on the margins of eyelid or within the canthus. In severe cases, the itching can radiate to the eyeballs; however, the vision is normal. Often results from wind, fire, damp, heat, or blood deficiency.	目痒	mù yǎng	
801	Ear pain	Earache	Pain in the auricles or within the ear canal. Often results from deficiency fire or wind heat affecting the liver and gallbladder meridians.	耳痛	ěr tòng	
802	Hearing impairment		A symptom of decreased sense of hearing or distorted/repeated hearing. Often results from hyperactivity of deficiency fire or pathogenic factors affecting the meridians around the ears.	重听	chóng tīng	重耳
803	Hemiplegia		An inability of one side of the body to move voluntarily. Often results from age-related weakness of the Ying nutrients and Wei-defence coupled with contraction of exogenous pathogens, blood stasis due to qi deficiency, or essential qi deficiency.	半身不遂	bàn shēn bù suí	
804	Hemilateral numbness		Numbness or tingling sensation on one side of the body. Often results from spleen qi deficiency, qi deficiency of the spleen and lung, or obstructed flow of qi.	半身麻木	bàn shēn má mù	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
805	Insensitivity of the skin		A symptom of decreased or no perception to external stimulus (cold, heat, pain). Often occurs when Ying nutrients, Wei-defence, qi and blood fail to nourish the skin after the pathogenic factors attack the body.	肌肤不仁	jī fū bù rén	
806	Numbness of hands/feet		Impaired or loss of sensation in the extremities. Often results from internal stirring of liver wind due to deficiency of qi and blood or phlegm stasis obstructing the meridians.	手足麻木	shǒu zú má mù	
807	Shivering		A sensation of chills with trembling. Often results from a sudden contraction of cold or heart fire obstructing yang qi.	战栗	zhàn lì	
808	Muscle twitching and cramp		A symptom of short spastic muscle contraction. Often results from malnourishment of muscles or sinews due to blood deficiency or consumption of body fluids. It may also occur when cold dampness damage yang and fail to transform water and qi.	筋惕肉瞤	jīn tì ròu rún	
809	Hungry but with no appetite		A sensation of feeling hunger but no desire to eat food. Often results from stomach yin deficiency.	饥不欲食	jī bú yù shí	
810	Fast digestion with rapid hunger		A symptom of increased appetite and food intake but recurrence of hunger sensation shortly after eating. Often results from excessive heat in the spleen and stomach.	消谷善饥	xiao gǔ shàn jī	
811	Poor appetite		A symptom of no desire to eat food, decreased food intake, tasteless or not feeling hungry. Often results from dampness affecting the spleen or the spleen failing to transport and transform.	纳呆	nà dāi	纳差; 纳少
812	Aversion to food		A symptom of aversion to food or the smell of food. Often results from damp heat in the spleen and stomach or in the liver and gallbladder.	厌食	yàn shí	
813	Nausea		A sensation of unease and discomfort in the upper stomach with an involuntary urge to vomit. Often results from cold, heat, dampness, phlegm or food stagnation.	恶心	ě xin	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
814	Regurgitation	Acid reflux	A symptom of vomiting sour-tasting fluids. Often results from deficiency cold of the spleen and stomach or liver heat (transformed from qi stagnation) affecting the stomach.	泛酸	fàn suān	
815	Belching		A symptom of expelling air from the stomach through the mouth, coupled with a foul breath. Often results from weakness of the spleen and stomach or food retention due to an improper diet.	嗝腐	ài fǔ	
816	Anguish		A feeling of heat vexation and oppression in the heart and chest, coupled with restlessness. Often results from heat retention in the diaphragm due to inappropriate treatment of febrile diseases or internal retention of damp heat.	懊惱	ào nǎo	
817	Sudden spurt of appetite prior to collapse		A sudden increase in food intake in patients with critical conditions who had no appetite previously. Often occurs as a result of qi exhaustion of the spleen and stomach.	除中	chú zhōng	
818	Vomiting blood	Hematemesis	Blood ejection out of the mouth without nausea, vomiting or cough. Often results from exuberant stomach heat, liver qi stagnation transforming into heat or deficiency of spleen qi and heart blood. Contributing factors may include alcohol drinking, ingestion of spicy, oily food, anger, worries or over exertion.	吐血	tù xiě	
819	Dry mouth		A subjective feeling of insufficient saliva in the mouth. Often occurs when exuberant heat consumes or scorches bodily fluids.	口干	kǒu gān	
820	Thirst		A subjective feeling of dry mouth and thirst. Often occurs as a result of exuberant heat entering the Ying nutrients and blood, internal retention of water fluids, lung dryness consuming fluids, or fire hyperactivity due to yin deficiency.	口渴	kǒu kě	
821	Thirst with desire to drink		A dry mouth with desire to drink water often occurs when insufficient bodily fluids impair qi transformation and fluid distribution.	口渴欲饮	kǒu kě yù yǐn	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
822	Thirst with no desire to drink		A dry mouth or thirst but with no desire to drink water or only drink a small amount of water. Often results from yin deficiency, damp heat, phlegm fluid retention or stagnant blood.	渴不欲饮	kě bú yù yǐn	
823	A bland taste		A diminished sensitivity of taste, with no pleasant flavour left after eating. Often occurs as a result of qi deficiency of the spleen and stomach.	口淡	kǒu dàn	
824	A bitter taste		A subjective bitter sensation in the mouth. Often occurs when internal heat causes the bile to ascend.	口苦	kǒu kǔ	
825	A sticky, greasy taste		A subjective sticky, greasy sensation in the mouth. In severe cases, individuals may feel that the food has no taste. Often occurs when damp heat in the spleen and stomach or internal phlegm heat affect qi transformation of the spleen and stomach and causes the turbid qi to ascend to the mouth.	口黏膩	kǒu nián nì	
826	A sour taste		A subjective sour, vinegar-like sensation in the mouth. In severe cases, individuals may have a sour breath. Often results from ascending of liver heat, liver heat affecting the spleen or food retention.	口酸	kǒu suān	
827	A sweet taste		A subjective sugary or honey-like sensation. Often results from damp heat in the spleen and stomach, damage to qi and yin or deficiency heat scorching spleen fluids.	口甜	kǒu tián	
828	A salty taste		A subjective salty sensation in the mouth. Sometimes individuals may experience salty salivation. Often results from deficiency cold or kidney heat.	口咸	kǒu xián	
829	A pungent taste	An acrid taste	A subjective strong hot, spicy sensation in the mouth. Often results from lung heat.	口辛	kǒu xīn	
830	A puckering taste		A subjective dry, puckering feeling in the mouth. Often results from stomach heat consuming fluids or wind phlegm obstructing the meridians.	口涩	kǒu sè	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
831	Mouth numbness		A subjective feeling of numbness inside the mouth. It is often caused by wind transformed from liver yang.	口麻	kǒu má	
832	Irregular bowel movements		Irregular bowel movements are characterized by alternating loose and dry stools. They often result from liver stagnation coupled with spleen deficiency or qi deficiency of the spleen and stomach.	溏结不调	táng jié bù tiáo	
833	Tenesmus		Tenesmus is characterized by abdominal pain, a feeling of constantly needing to pass stools, weight-bearing sensation of the anus and a sense of incomplete evacuation after bowel movements. Often results from damp heat obstructing intestinal qi.	里急后重	lǐ jí hòu zhòng	
834	Indigestion of food	Poor digestion of food	Presence of undigested food in stools. Often results from deficiency cold of the spleen and stomach or vital fire decline due to kidney deficiency.	完谷不化	wán gǔ bú huà	
835	Early morning diarrhea	Diarrhea before dawn	A type of diarrhoea that occurs before dawn. It is mainly caused by kidney yang deficiency. Food retention, alcohol drinking or liver fire may also play a role.	五更泄泻	wǔ gēng xiè xiè	
836	A burning sensation of the anus		A subjective burning sensation of the anus during a bowel movement. Often results from damp heat in the large intestine or heat affecting the rectum.	肛门灼热	gāng mén zhuó rè	
837	Yellow, reddish urine		Urine that is more yellow than usual and sometimes appears reddish. Often results from internal heat or damp heat.	小便黄赤	xiǎo biàn huáng chì	溺赤
838	Urinary dribbling	Dribbling urination	A feeling of needing to pass urine after urination, a sense of incomplete emptying or urinary dribbling. Often results from cold retention in the urinary bladder due to kidney deficiency.	余沥不尽	yú lì bú jìn	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
839	Frequent urination		Increased frequency in passing of urine. If often occurs when 1) kidney yang fails to perform qi transformation of the urinary bladder; 2) the spleen fails to transport and transform water; 3) the lung fails to regulate water passage; and/or 4) liver qi stagnation affects the urinary bladder.	小便频数	xiǎo biàn pín shuò	
840	Difficult, painful urination		Difficulty passing urine accompanied with a painful sensation. Often occurs when damp heat flows downward to the urinary bladder.	小便涩痛	xiǎo biàn sè tòng	
841	Excessive dreaming	Dream-disturbed sleep	Interrupted sleep by strange dreams or frightening nightmares. Individuals often have a clear memory of the dreams. Often results from hyperactivity of liver yang, deficiency of qi and blood or yin deficiency of the liver and kidney.	多梦	duō mèng	
842	Sleepwalking		A phenomenon of getting out of bed, walking about or performing other activities during an apparent state of sleep. This may last minutes to hours. Sleepwalkers then come back to bed and return to sleep. They often have little or no memory of the incident. Contributing factors include disharmony between yin and yang, insufficiency of Ying nutrients and blood, deficiency of qi and yin, phlegm turbidity, fire heat, or stagnant blood.	梦游	mèng yóu	
843	Curled tongue with contracted scrotum		An inability to extend the tongue body with contraction of the scrotum. This is often seen in the critical stage of febrile diseases.	舌卷囊缩	shé juǎn náng suō	
844	White leukorrhea		1) Physiological vaginal discharge. 2) Persistent, profuse vaginal discharge with abnormal changes in colour, quality and odour.	白带	bái dài	
845	Yellow leukorrhea		Pale yellow, sticky vaginal discharge. In some cases, the discharge may have a colour that resembles thick tea and a strong odour. Often occurs when dampness transforms into heat and affects the Ren and Dai meridians.	黄带	huáng dài	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
846	Red and white leukorrhea		Persistent red vaginal discharge that contains white mucus. Often occurs when damp heat flows downward to damage the Chong and Ren meridians. The dampness here is often caused by spleen deficiency, and the heat is transformed from liver qi stagnation.	赤白带下	chì bái dài xià	
847	Threatened abortion	Restless fetus; Excessive movement of foetus	Threatened abortion often starts with a bearing-down sensation, low back soreness, and abdominal pain/discomfort, followed by a small amount of vaginal bleeding. Often results from insecurity of the Chong and Ren meridians due to qi deficiency, blood deficiency, kidney deficiency, blood heat, or traumatic injuries.	胎动不安	tāi dòng bù ān	
848	The category of palpation			切诊类	qiè zhěn lèi	
849	Palpation		A diagnostic method to feel, touch, palpate and press certain areas of the body.	切诊	qiè zhěn	
850	Pulse diagnosis	Pulse-taking	A diagnostic method to understand the condition of illness by feeling a patients' pulse and perceiving the sensations under the fingers.	脉诊	mài zhěn	切脉
851	Diagnosis methods using the three positions and nine indicators		Pulse examination on three regions of the body: the head, upper limbs and lower limbs. Each region is sub-divided into upper, middle and lower sections. Altogether they form nine pulse-taking positions.	三部九候遍诊法	sān bù jiǔ hòu biàn zhěn fǎ	
852	Palpation diagnosis		A method to directly touch or press certain areas of the body to feel the local temperature, moistness, softness, tenderness, lumps or other abnormal changes, and thus to determine the location, nature and severity of the pathology.	按诊	àn zhěn	
853	Overall pulse diagnosis		A diagnostic method to feel three parts and nine depths. The three parts are head, hand and feet. Each part has three depths (heaven, earth and man), and thus there are a total of nine divisions.	三部九候诊法		
854	Abdominal palpation		A diagnostic method to mainly press and palpate the patients' chest and abdomen to understand the condition of illness.	腹诊	fù zhěn	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
855	Diagnosis in three arteries		A diagnostic method used to feel three arteries: carotid artery at Renyin (ST 9), radial artery at Cunkou and dorsal artery of the foot at Chongyang (ST 42). The Cunkou area is felt for conditions of the twelve regular meridians; the Renyin (ST 9) and Chongyang (ST 42) are felt for stomach qi. Alternatively, Taixi (KI 3) is felt for kidney qi.	三部诊法	sān bù zhěn fǎ	
856	Diagnosis in Cunkou area		A diagnostic method used to feel the pulse at the Cunkou area located at the medial aspect of the styloid process where the radial artery pulsates. The Cunkou area is divided into Cun, Guan and Chi positions. Each position is further divided into superficial, intermediate and deep depths. This method is known as three positions and three regions and nine positions in Cunkou area.	寸口诊法	cùn kǒu zhěn fǎ	
857	Finger positioning method		The positioning of the fingers in pulse diagnosis. First, to locate the Guan (medial aspect of the styloid process) position with the middle finger; then, to locate the Cun (anterior to Guan) position with the index finger and the Chi (posterior to Guan) position with the ring finger. The three fingers are slightly flexed, presenting the shape of an arc. The fingertips are kept on the same horizontal level and the pulse is felt with the palmar aspects of the fingers.	指法	zhǐ fǎ	
858	Locate the Guan position with the middle finger		A doctor places the middle finger on the Guan position (the medial side of the styloid process) for pulse examination.	中指定关	zhōng zhǐ dìng guān	
859	Overall pulse examination		A method of pulse diagnosis where the three fingers are simultaneously positioned on the wrist to feel the pulse in Cun, Guan and Chi positions.	总按	zǒng àn	
860	Lifting, pressing and searching		A method of moving and exerting different finger pressures on positions for pulse examination. Lifting is to place the fingers gently on the Cunkou artery pulsation. Pressing is to exert finger pressure to reach deeper area. Searching is to gradually increase or decrease the finger pressure, moving finger contact areas to locate the best position with obvious pulsation.	举、按、寻	jǔ、àn、xún	



WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
861	Finger positioning		Positioning of fingers in pulse examination. Generally, a doctor places the middle finger of the right hand to feel the Guan position of a patient's left hand, the index finger to feel the Cun position, the ring finger to feel the Chi position, and adjust the distances between the fingers according to the patient's height.	布指	bù zhǐ	
862	Pulse conditions		The pulse sensations, including such elements as the rate, rhythm, length, smoothness, tension and width.	脉象	mài xiàng	
863	Abnormal pulses		Pulses that are not normal or beyond physiological variations of a normal pulse.	病脉	bìng mài	
864	Stomach qi, spirit and root		The three main elements to distinguish deficiency from excess. A pulse with stomach qi feels relaxed, moderate and smooth. A pulse with spirit feels soft, forceful and rhythmic. A pulse with root feels forceful at the Chi position upon heavy pressure. In summary, a pulse with stomach qi, spirit and root indicates abundant stomach qi and normal functioning of qi and blood.	胃、神、根	wèi, shén, gēn	
865	Fifty beats		When feeling the pulse, it is advisable to measure at least 50 beats to identify an abrupt or regularly/irregularly intermittent pulse.	五十动	wǔ shí dòng	
866	Feeling the pulse with fingertips		Refers to the area between fingertips and finger pulps, and the middle part connecting the two corners of the fingernails.	指目	zhǐ mù	
867	Pulse rate		A pulse-taking terminology, referring to pulse rates in one breath (a breathing cycle). A normal pulse is 4–5 beats in one breath. A rapid pulse is more than 5 beats in one breath. A slow pulse is less than 4 beats in one breath.	至数	zhì shù	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
868	Twenty-eight pulse conditions		1) The 28 pulse conditions, namely, superficial (floating in other texts), deep, slow, rapid, slippery, hesitant, deficient, excessive, long, short, surging, feeble, tight, delayed, wiry, hollow, drumskin, soft, weak, scattered, thready, hidden, stirring, abrupt, knotted, intermittent and large (or swift). 2) The 28 meridians, including the 24 meridians of the both hands and feet, plus the Ren meridian, Du meridian, Yinqiao meridian and Yangqiao meridian.	二十八脉	èr shí bā mài	
869	Overall analysis on the pulse and colour		Refers to comprehensive analysis on the pulse and facial complexion. Since the condition of the pulse and the five colours share a common pathological mechanism, the combined analysis provides a more accurate diagnosis of conditions and can predict prognosis.	脉色合参	mài sè hé cān	
870	Comprehensive analysis on pulse and symptoms		A comprehensive analysis on the pulse and symptoms in diagnosing medical conditions. Sometimes the pulse is consistent with the symptoms, for example, a superficial, rapid pulse in a yang heat pattern or a thready, weak pulse in a deficiency pattern. Sometimes, the pulse is not consistent with the symptoms, for example, a deep, thready pulse in a yang heat pattern or a surging, large pulse in a deficiency pattern.	脉症合参	mài zhèng hé cān	
871	Precedence of symptoms over the pulse		When there is an inconsistency between the pulse and symptoms, sometimes the treatment strategy is more based on symptoms than the pulse if symptoms manifest the pathological nature.	舍脉从症	shě mài cóng zhèng	
872	Precedence of the pulse over symptoms		When there is an inconsistency between the pulse and symptoms, sometimes the treatment strategy is more based on the pulse than symptoms if the pulse manifests the pathological nature.	舍症从脉	shě zhèng cóng mài	
873	Pulse bereft of stomach qi		A pulse that has lost its usual rhythm, frequency and evenness, manifesting as wiry, tight, hard or scattered, rootless and irregular. It is often a life-threatening sign, indicating an exhaustion of stomach qi and vital qi failure of the five zang organs.	脉无胃气	mài wú wèi qì	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
874	Correspondence between the pulse and the four seasons		Physiological variations of normal pulses in four seasons. These include a mild wiry pulse in warm spring, a mild surging pulse in hot summer, a mild superficial pulse in cool autumn and a mild deep pulse in cold winter. The inconsistency or contradiction between the pulse and seasons indicates an abnormal body condition.	脉从四时	mài cóng sì shí	脉应四时
875	Wiry pulse in spring		In spring, yang qi ascends, everything comes out of hibernation and stretches in all directions, and qi and blood within the body starts to flow outward. Hence, the pulse is wiry and straight.	春脉如弦	chūn mài rú xián	
876	Hooked pulse in summer		In summer, yang qi flourishes and everything grows. As a result, the pulse is surging, large, and forceful, like roaring waves that crash onto the shore powerfully and slowly fade away.	夏脉如钩	xià mài rú gōu	
877	Superficial pulse in autumn	Floating pulse in autumn	In autumn, yang qi starts to constrict and the pulsation decreases. As a result, the pulse is mild, superficial and comes in a rush and becomes scattered.	秋脉如浮	qiū mài rú fú	
878	Deep pulse in winter		In winter, yang qi hides inside, and the skin pore is closed. As a result, the pulse is deep.	冬脉如营	dōng mài rú yíng	
879	Feeble yang and wiry yin		Feeble yang results from yang qi deficiency of the upper jiao. Wiry yin results from excess yin cold in the lower jiao. Yin cold obstructing chest yang may cause chest bi-impediment or cardiac pain.	阳微阴弦	yáng wēi yīn xián	
880	Rejected yang and blocked yin		When the carotid pulsation feels four times stronger than normal, it is called rejected yang. It results from the three yang meridians (with overflow of qi and blood) rejecting the three yin meridians. When the radial pulsation is felt four times stronger than normal, it is called blocked yang. It results from the three yin meridians (with overflow of qi and blood) rejecting the three yang meridians. These conditions are also referred to as blockage between the upper and lower bodies.	格阳关阴	gé yáng guān yīn	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
881	External blockage and internal rejection		Refers to radial pulsation felt at Yuji (LU 10), indicating that yang qi is blocked outside, whereas yin qi is rejected inside.	外关内格	wài guān nèi gé	
882	Floating, medium and deep		Three levels in feeling the pulse by using light, moderate and heavy powers respectively.	浮、中、沉	fú、zhōng、chén	
883	Cun, Guan and Chi		The three sections over the radial artery for feeling the pulse. Specifically, the Guan position is central to the styloid process at the wrist, where the tip of the physician's middle finger is placed; the Chi position is next to it on the distal aspect where the tip of the physicians' index finger is placed; and the Cun position is on the proximal aspect where the tip of the physicians' ring finger is placed.	寸关尺	cùn guān chǐ	
884	The Cun pulsation		One of the three positions at the Cunkou area: the pulsation of the radial artery felt at the radial styloid process.	寸脉	cùn mài	
885	The Guan pulsation		One of the three positions at the Cunkou area: the pulsation of the radial artery felt at the ulnar side of the radial styloid process.	关脉	guān mài	
886	The Chi pulsation		One of the three positions at the Cunkou area: the pulsation of the radial artery felt at the cubital side of the radial styloid process.	尺脉	chǐ mài	
887	Pressing with one finger		A pulse diagnosis method to feel the pulse on one hand with just one finger to differentiate the conditions of Cun, Guan and Chi pulses. For example, to lift the index and ring fingers while feeling the Guan position with the middle finger.	单按	dān àn	
888	Normal pulse	Healthy pulse	A pulse that can be felt at all three regions, with a frequency of 4–5 beats (60–75 beats per minute (bpm)) in one breath. It is neither superficial nor deep. It is relaxed, smooth, soft, forceful and rhythmic. It is marked by the three essential elements: stomach qi, spirit and root.	平脉	píng mài	常脉
889	Floating pulse	Superficial	A pulse that can be easily felt with gentle touch but become insufficient or weak when pressing down. Often indicates an exterior pattern or yang qi deficiency.	浮脉	fú mài	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
890	Deep pulse		A pulse that is difficult to feel with light or moderate pressure but can be felt on heavy pressure. It indicates an interior pattern. Specifically, a deep, forceful pulse indicates an interior excess pattern; whereas a deep, weak pulse indicates an interior deficiency pattern.	沉脉	chén mài	
891	Slow pulse		A pulse with less than 4 beats in one breath (<60 bpm). It indicates a cold pattern.	迟脉	chí mài	
892	Rapid pulse		A pulse with more than 5 beats in one breath (>75 bpm). It indicates a heat pattern. Specifically, a rapid, forceful pulse indicates an excess heat pattern; whereas a rapid, weak pulse indicates a deficiency heat pattern.	数脉	shuò mài	
893	Surging pulse		A pulse that is broad, large and forceful like roaring waves that crash onto the shore powerfully and slowly fade away. Often indicates an excess heat pattern.	洪脉	hóng mài	
894	Large pulse		A pulse that is broad and can be felt on all three fingers. It indicates pathogenic factors prevailing over anti-pathogenic qi. A large, forceful pulse indicates an excess heat pattern; whereas a large, weak pulse indicates a deficiency pattern or loss of qi.	大脉	dà mài	
895	Feeble pulse	Indistinct pulse	A pulse that is extremely thin, soft and barely palpable. It may be felt and then sometimes is lost. It indicates deficiency of yin, yang, qi and blood.	微脉	wēi mài	
896	Thready pulse	Thin pulse	A pulse that feels thin and soft, like a silken thread. It indicates deficiency or dampness.	细脉	xì mài	
897	Scattered pulse		A pulse that feels superficial without root. With light pressure, it is irregularly and chaotic. With heavy pressure, it is impalpable. It indicates critical conditions with dispersion of Yuan-primordial qi.	散脉	sǎn mài	
898	Deficient pulse	Feeble Fine	A pulse that is weak at all three regions, with emptiness feeling when pressed with force. It indicates a deficiency pattern.	虚脉	xū mài	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
899	Excess pulse	Forceful Full Strong	A pulse that is forceful at all three regions using different pressure. It indicates an excess pattern.	实脉	shí mài	
900	Slippery pulse		A pulse that feels smooth like pearls rolling on a dish. Beats come and go fluently and smoothly, feeling slick to the fingers. It indicates phlegm-fluid retention, indigestion and excess heat. Physiologically, it can be considered as a normal pulse. It can also be seen in healthy people or women during pregnancy, indicating abundant and harmonious qi and blood.	滑脉	huá mài	
901	Hesitant pulse	Rough Choppy	A pulse that feels stagnant and obstructive, like a knife scraping bamboo. It indicates consumption of essence, blood/fluids insufficiency, or qi stagnation and blood stasis.	涩脉	sè mài	
902	Long pulse		A pulse that can be felt beyond the Cun, Guan and Chi positions. It is straight from head to tail. It is straight and long like a pole. It indicates yang excess with internal heat.	长脉	cháng mài	
903	Short pulse		A pulse that cannot reach its location or range. It can be felt most clearly at the Guan position, more indistinct at the Cun and the Chi positions. A short, forceful pulse indicates qi stagnation; whereas a short, weak pulse indicates qi deficiency.	短脉	duǎn mài	
904	Wiry pulse	String-like pulse	A pulse that feels straight, long and tense, like the feeling of pressing a tight string of a musical instrument. It indicates liver/gallbladder problems, pain, wind, or phlegm-fluid retention.	弦脉	xián mài	
905	Hollow pulse	Scallion-like pulse	A pulse that feels superficial, large but empty in the centre, like a scallion (spring onion) stalk. It could be due to a sudden loss of blood and/or fluid causing the emptiness, resulting in severe yin deficiency and subsequent massive dispersion of yang.	芤脉	kōu mài	
906	Tight pulse		A pulse that feels like pulling a twisted rope. It indicates a cold pattern, pain pattern or indigestion.	紧脉	jǐn mài	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
907	Slowdown pulse	Moderate	A pulse with about 4 beats in one breath (60 bpm). The beats come and go slowly. It indicates dampness, weakness of the spleen and stomach, or low ability to energize the pulse due to qi deficiency.	缓脉	huǎn mài	
908	Tympanic pulse	Drum-skin	A pulse that can be easily felt with gentle touch. It is superficial with an empty centre, feeling like the head of a drum. It indicates loss of blood/essence and insecurity of healthy qi.	革脉	gé mài	
909	Firm pulse		A pulse that feels deep, excessive, string-taut and long. It is indistinct on light or moderate pressure but stable on heavy pressure. It indicates internal cold, perhaps hernia and abdominal masses.	牢脉	láo mài	
910	Weak pulse		A pulse that feels thready, soft, deep and weak. It indicates deficiency of qi and blood.	弱脉	ruò mài	
911	Soft pulse	Soggy	A pulse that is superficial, thready and can be felt with light pressure but indistinct upon heavy pressure. It indicates loss of yin blood or dampness.	濡脉	rú mài	
912	Hidden pulse		A pulse that is difficult to feel and requires heavy pressure down to the bone. It indicates severe stagnation of pathogenic factors.	伏脉	fú mài	
913	Skipping pulse	Hasty pulse	A pulse that arrives as urgent and forceful but irregularly interrupted. It indicates excess heat, stagnation of qi, blood, phlegm-fluid retention or swelling/pain.	促脉	cù mài	
914	Knotted pulse	Bound	A pulse that arrives unhurriedly and stops at irregular intervals. It indicates qi stagnation due to excess yin, blood stasis due to cold phlegm or deficiency of qi and blood.	结脉	jié mài	
915	Regularly intermittent pulse	Intermittent	A pulse that arrives fast, and stops regularly for a relatively longer period of time. It indicates qi deficiency of the zang organs, fear or traumatic injuries.	代脉	dài mài	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
916	Racing pulse	Swift pulse	A pulse that arrives swiftly and has a faster rate than a rapid pulse. It indicates acute febrile conditions, exhaustion of yin and impending exhaustion of Yuan-primordial qi.	疾脉	jí mài	极脉
917	Pulse on the back of the wrist		A physiological variation of a normal pulse: the changes of the anatomic position of the radial artery shifts the pulse normally at the Cunkou region to the back of the wrist from the Chi position.	反关脉	fǎn guān mài	
918	Oblique flying pulse	Oblique running pulse	A physiological variation of a normal pulse: the changes of the anatomic position of the radial artery shifts the pulse normally at the Cunkou region to the dorsum of the hand from the Chi position.	斜飞脉	xié fēi mài	
919	Anterior tibial (Fuyang) pulse		A pulse located at the anterior tibial artery of the dorsum of the foot. It is also known as surging yang (Chongyang) pulse. It is used to indicate the sufficiency of the qi and blood of spleen and stomach.	趺阳脉	fū yáng mài	
920	Hooked pulse		A pulse that feels firm, surging and large. It comes powerfully and fades away slowly. It is normal in summer.	钩脉	gōu mài	
921	Abnormal frequency pulse		A pulse with one beat or three beats in one breath. It is often seen in a pregnant woman about to give birth.	离经脉	lí jīng mài	
922	Six yang pulse		One of the normal pulses: constitutional surging and large on Cun, Guan and Chi positions of both hands.	六阳脉	liù yáng mài	
923	Six yin pulse		One of the normal pulses: constitutional deep and thready on Cun, Guan and Chi positions of both hands.	六阴脉	liù yīn mài	
924	Calm breathing		Normal breathing frequency used in ancient times as a reference in measuring patients' breathing frequencies.	平息	píng xī	
925	Carotid pulsation	Renying pulsation	The pulsation of the carotid artery, easily felt on both sides of the laryngeal prominence.	人迎脉	rén yíng mài	



WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
926	Strange pulse	True visceral pulse; exhaustion pulse; failure pulse; critical pulse	A pulse that has no root (stomach qi). Often occurs in later stage of critical conditions, indicating qi exhaustion of zang-fu organs and collapse of stomach qi.	怪脉	guài mài	真脏脉; 败脉; 死脉; 绝脉
927	Menstruation pulse		A pulse (usually slippery) often seen in healthy menstruating women. It indicates harmony between qi and blood during the period.	月经脉	yuè jīng mài	
928	Pregnancy pulse		A pulse characterized by slippery and rapid on the Chi positions, because the Chi position corresponds to the kidney and the uterus is associated with the kidney. A slippery, rapid pulse results from moving of fetal qi.	妊娠脉	rèn shēn mài	
929	Combined pulses		Presence of two or more pulse conditions.	相兼脉	xiāng jiān mài	
930	2.3 Pattern differentiation methods			2.3 辨证方法类		
931	Pattern differentiation by the eight principles		A method to differentiate diseases into yin, yang, exterior, interior, cold, heat, deficiency and excess patterns through analysing the data collected by the four diagnostic methods. The analysis focuses on the disease location, nature and strength between anti-pathogenic qi and pathogenic factors.	八纲辨证	bā gāng biàn zhèng	
932	Concurrent exterior and interior pattern		The coexistence of exterior pattern and interior pattern. Often occurs when exogenous pathogenic factors enter the interior before exterior pattern is resolved. Alternatively, it may occur when biao (branch) is affected before the ben (root) disorders are resolved.	表里同病	biǎo lǐ tóng bìng	
933	Entering of exterior pattern and exiting of interior pattern		The disease progression when pathogenic factors in the exterior enter the interior or when pathogenic factors in the interior move out to the exterior.	表里出入	biǎo lǐ chū rù	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
934	Exterior pathogen entering the interior		Refers to unresolved pathogenic factors in the exterior entering the interior. Contributing factors include weakened anti-pathogenic qi, excessive pathogenic factors, improper care, and wrong or inappropriate treatment.	表邪入里	biǎo xié rù lǐ	表邪内陷
935	Interior pathogen moving out to the exterior		Refers to pathogenic factors in interior pattern moving out to the exterior through proper care and strengthened anti-pathogenic qi.	里邪出表	lǐ xié chū biǎo	里病出表
936	Cold enveloping fire		A condition characterized by chills, fever, absence of sweating, headache, body ache, stuffy/runny nose, cough with sticky phlegm, asthma, loss of voice, red, swollen and painful eyes, swollen, painful gums, and thirst. The tongue coating is thin and yellow. The pulse is superficial, slippery and rapid. Often occurs when external wind cold envelops internal heat.	寒包火	hán bāo huǒ	
937	True/false of cold and heat		Refers to how extreme cold or heat may cause false symptoms in critical conditions, such as extreme cold manifesting as heat or extreme heat manifesting as cold.	寒热真假	hán rè zhēn jiǎ	
938	True cold with false heat		A yin pattern with apparent yang symptoms. These include fever but prefer more clothes or blanket; thirst but no desire to drink water; and restless hands and feet but mental tranquillity. The tongue coating is black but slippery and moist. The pulse is large and surging, but weak upon pressure. It is commonly seen in people with constitutional deficiency cold coupled with contraction of external pathogens or floating of deficiency yang (interior cold rejecting yang) due to over-exertion or dysfunctions of the zang-fu organs.	真寒假热	zhēn hán jiǎ rè	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
939	True heat with false cold		A yang pattern with apparent yin symptoms. These include aversion to cold but no desire for more clothes or blanket; cold hands and feet but a burning sensation in the chest and abdomen; and watery diarrhoea with dry or strong-smelling stools. The pulse is deep but wiry, slippery and forceful upon pressure. In addition, excessive thirst, a dry mouth, a foul breath, a dry, white tongue coating, and yellow urine may be present. Often occurs when pathogenic factors enter the interior to transform into heat and causes yang excess to reject yin.	真寒假寒	zhēn rè jiǎ hán	
940	Cold-heat transformation		Refers to cold pattern transforming into heat or heat pattern transforming into cold due to radical changes in yin, yang and a struggle between anti-pathogenic qi and pathogenic factors.	寒热转化	hán rè zhuǎn huà	
941	Cold pattern transforming into heat		This refers to originally a cold pattern followed by presence of heat pattern coupled with absence or insignificant cold pattern. Contributing factors include external contraction of cold or cold dampness coupled with hyperactivity of yang qi or damage to yin fluids by overuse of dry/warm-property medicines for a cold pattern.	寒证化热	hán zhèng huà rè	
942	Heat pattern transforming into cold		This refers to an initial heat pattern followed by presence of cold pattern coupled with absent or insignificant heat. Contributing factors include excessive heat consuming qi or damage to yang qi by overuse of cool/cold-property medicines for a heat pattern.	热证转寒	rè zhèng zhuǎn hán	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
943	Cold-heat rejection		1) A condition when pathogenic cold or heat rejects the normal treatment with cold- or heat-property medicines. For example, exuberant pathogenic heat may reject the cool-/cold-property medicines; likewise, exuberant pathogenic cold may reject warm or pungent medicines. In these cases, it is advisable to add a small dose of warm-heat-property medicines in a formula that mainly consists of cool-/cold-property ingredients to clear exuberant heat, or vice versa. 2) This type of contrasting pathological state could exist when extreme yin cold rejects yang heat or extreme yang heat rejects yin cold.	寒热格拒	hán rè gé jù	
944	Deficiency and excess		Two of the eight principles in differentiating the strength between pathogenic factors and anti-pathogenic qi. Excess means exuberant pathogenic factors, and deficiency means insufficiency of anti-pathogenic qi.	虚实	xū shí	
945	Pattern differentiation of deficiency and excess		A method to differentiate deficiency pattern or excess patterns according to the relative strength of pathogenic factors and anti-pathogenic qi.	虚实辨证	xū shí biàn zhèng	
946	Pattern differentiation of yin and yang		A method to differentiate yin pattern and/or yang pattern according to the basic properties of yin and yang and disease nature.	阴阳辨证	yīn yáng biàn zhèng	
947	Concurrent patterns		The coexistence of multiple patterns, excluding those with opposite disease nature. Examples include exterior deficiency pattern, exterior cold pattern, interior excess pattern, interior deficiency cold pattern, etc.	证候相兼	zhèng hòu xiāng jiān	
948	Pattern transformation		This refers to mutual transformation of patterns with opposite nature under certain conditions.	证候转化	zhèng hòu zhuǎn huà	
949	Pattern differentiation of etiological factors		A pattern differentiation method to analyse clinical signs and symptoms to identify etiological factors according to their pathogenic factors. There are generally five categories of etiological factors: six exogenous pathogenic factors, emotional disturbance, an improper diet, over-exertion/physical inactivity and traumatic injury.	病因辨证	bìng yīn biàn zhèng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
950	Pathogenic wind pattern		Characterized by aversion to wind, fever, sweating, headache, stuffy/runny nose, and a dry throat. The tongue coating is thin and white. The pulse is superficial and delayed. Often occurs when exogenous pathogenic wind attacks the exterior.	风淫证	fēng yín zhèng	
951	Pathogenic cold pattern		Characterized by chills, fever, absence of sweating, headache, body ache, rapid breathing, and coughing. The tongue coating is thin and white. The pulse is superficial and tight. Alternatively, contracture of the hands and feet, cold limbs, abdominal pain, bowel sounds, diarrhoea and vomiting may be present. Often occurs when exogenous pathogenic cold damages yang qi and obstructs the flow of qi and blood.	寒淫证	hán yín zhèng	
952	Pathogenic summer heat pattern		Characterized by aversion to heat, sweating, thirst, fatigue, and yellow urine. The tongue is red with a white or yellow coating. The pulse is deficient and rapid. Often occurs when exogenous pathogenic summer heat consumes qi, damages fluids or binds with dampness.	暑淫证	shǔ yín zhèng	
953	Pathogenic dampness pattern		Characterized by distending headache, chest stuffiness, no thirst, body heaviness, body ache, fever, fatigue and turbid urine. The tongue coating is white and slippery. The pulse is soft or delayed. Often occurs when pathogenic dampness affects the skin, muscles, sinews or bones.	湿淫证	shī yín zhèng	
954	Pathogenic dryness pattern		Characterized by mild headache, aversion to cold, absence of sweating, coughing, scratchy throat, and nasal obstruction. The tongue is dry and pale. The pulse is superficial and tight. Alternatively, fever, sweating, thirst, a dry throat, cough-induced chest pain or blood-stained sputum may be present. The tongue is dry with a yellow coating. The pulse is superficial and rapid.	燥淫证	zào yín zhèng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
955	Pathogenic fire pattern		Characterized by high fever, thirst, a red face and eyes, restlessness, delirium, nosebleed and hematemesis. The tongue is deep red. The pulse is surging and rapid or thready and rapid. Often occurs when fire, heat or warmth enters the Ying-nutrients and blood phase to consume and stir blood, forcing the blood to move recklessly.	火淫证	huǒ yín zhèng	
956	Excessive worry pattern		Characterized by listlessness, lassitude, feeling depressed, a low voice and reluctance to talk, feeling sadness, poor sleep, dream-disturbed sleep and a dull headache. The tongue is pale with a white coating. The pulse is weak. Often results from qi stagnation due to excessive worries.	忧证	yōu zhèng	
957	Excessive anger pattern		Characterized by chest tightness, frequent sighing, restlessness, irritability, flushed face and ears, distending pain in the sub-costal region, dizziness, blurred vision, insomnia, dream-disturbed sleep, and aggressiveness. In severe cases, hallucination, fainting or vomiting of blood may be present. The tongue is red with a thin, yellow coating. The pulse is wiry. Often results from liver qi stagnation due to sudden rage or inhibited anger for a long period of time.	怒证	nù zhèng	
958	Excessive thinking pattern		Characterized by lassitude, insomnia, dream-disturbed sleep, dizziness, poor memory, a poor appetite, abdominal fullness/distension, mild or severe palpitations, mental distraction, flaccid muscles, and limb weakness. The tongue is pale with a white coating. The pulse is weak and thready. Often occurs when too much thinking or mental exertion causes qi of the spleen and stomach to stagnate.	思证	sī zhèng	
959	Excessive fear pattern		Characterized by mental stress, jumpiness or easily startled, difficulty sleeping, interrupted sleep, mild or severe palpitations, and uneasiness. Often occurs when shocking and horrifying incidents causes qi to descend.	恐证	kǒng zhèng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
960	Excessive fright pattern		Characterized by palpitations, poor, interrupted sleep, panic, easily startled, spontaneous sweating, lassitude, and frequent urination with profuse, clear urine. The tongue is pale red with a thin, white coating. The pulse is short or stirring. Often occurs when sudden fright causes qi disorder and mental restlessness.	惊证	jīng zhèng	
961	Excessive joy pattern		Characterized by mental distraction, mild or severe palpitations, limb weakness, incoherent speech, uncontrollable episodes of laughing, and strange behaviour. In severe cases, mental aberration may be present. The tongue is pale with a thin coating. The pulse is delayed. Often occurs when excessive joy causes qi to slack.	喜证	xǐ zhèng	
962	Excessive grief pattern		Characterized by talking to oneself, mental distraction, restlessness, loneliness, chest tightness, sadness, mild or severe palpitations, poor memory, insomnia, dream-disturbed sleep, a low voice, a pale, lustreless facial complexion, and lying in a curled up position with little or no physical activity. Often occurs when excessive grief consumes lung qi and affects the heart mind.	悲证	bēi zhèng	
963	Pattern differentiation of qi, blood and bodily fluids		A pattern differentiation method to analyse pathologies of qi, blood and bodily fluids according to the relevant theories of the zang-fu organs.	气血津液辨证	qì xuè jīn yè biàn zhèng	
964	Pattern differentiation of zang-fu organs		A pattern differentiation method to analyse signs and symptoms according to physiology and pathology of zang-fu organs to deduce the disease location and nature, as well as the strength between anti-pathogenic qi and pathogenic factors.	脏腑辨证	zàng fǔ biàn zhèng	
965	Pattern differentiation of Wei-defence, qi, Ying nutrients and blood		A pattern differentiation method for pathological phases of externally contracted febrile diseases. It includes Wei-defence phase pattern, qi phase pattern, Ying nutrients phase pattern and blood phase pattern, indicating the depth, severity and transmission of epidemic febrile diseases.	卫气营血辨证	wèi qì yíng xuè biàn zhèng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
966	Non-sequential transmission		Refers to pathogenic factors directly entering the Ying nutrients and blood phases from the Wei-defence phase (skipping the qi phase). Often indicates a more severe condition.	逆传	nì chuán	
967	Pathogenic warmth entering the pericardium		Characterized by a high-grade fever, unconsciousness, delirium and restlessness. The tongue is deep red. The pulse is rapid. Often occurs when pathogenic warmth attacks the Wei-defence first and then directly enters the pericardium.	逆传心包证	nì chuán xīn bāo zhèng	
968	Pattern involving both the Wei-defence and Ying nutrients		Characterized by Ying nutrients phase symptoms including fever that worsens at night, mental cloudiness and a deep red tongue as well as Wei-defence phase symptoms including aversion to cold, cough and a thin, white tongue coating. Often occurs when a Wei-defence phase pattern transmits to the pericardium or to the Ying nutrients phase; however, pathogenic factors still retain in the Wei-defence phase.	卫营同病	wèi yíng tóng bìng	
969	Pattern differentiation of six meridians		A pattern differentiation method developed by Zhang Zhongjing for externally contracted conditions according to the six meridians established in the Huang Di Nei Jing: Taiyang meridian, Yangming meridian, Shaoyang meridian, Taiyin meridian, Shaoyin meridian and Jueyin meridian.	六经辨证	liù jīng biàn zhèng	
970	Combined disorder		This means one meridian pattern develops before another meridian pattern resolves.	并病	bìng bìng	
971	Concurrent meridian pattern		Refers to pattern involving two or three meridians simultaneously.	合病	hé bìng	
972	Meridian transmission		Refers to the pattern of one meridian transforming into the pattern of another meridian during pathological processes of cold damage diseases.	传经	chuán jīng	
973	Sequential meridian transmission		This means that externally contracted conditions transmit according to the sequence of six meridians.	循经传	xún jīng chuán	



WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
974	Non-sequential meridian transmission		This means that externally contracted conditions skip one or two meridians and directly transmit to the next meridian.	越经传	yuè jīng zhuàn	
975	Paired meridian transmission		This means that externally contracted conditions transmit to the exteriorly-interiorly connected meridians.	表里传	biǎo lǐ chuán	
976	Direct attack to yin meridians		This means that instead of transmitting from yang meridians, pathogenic factors directly attack the yin meridians.	直中	zhí zhòng	
977	Patterns of the three yang meridians		The patterns of six meridians are categorized into two types: patterns of the three yang meridians and patterns of the three yin meridians. Patterns of the three yang meridians include Taiyang pattern, Yangming pattern and Shaoyang pattern. They often manifest as heat and excess due to a fierce struggle between anti-pathogenic qi and pathogenic factors.	三阳病证	sān yáng bìng zhèng	
978	Patterns of the three yin meridians		The patterns of six meridians are categorized into two types: patterns of the three yang meridians and patterns of the three yin meridians. Patterns of the three yin meridians include Taiyin pattern, Shaoyin pattern, and Jueyin pattern. They often manifest as cold and deficiency due to weakness of anti-pathogenic qi.	三阴病证	sān yīn bìng zhèng	
979	Pattern differentiation of the three jiao	Pattern differentiation of the triple energizer	A pattern differentiation method based on the three transmission stages (upper jiao, middle jiao and lower jiao) of febrile diseases developed by a Qing dynasty physician Wu Jutong (1758-1836). The upper jiao pattern involves the lung and pericardium, the middle jiao pattern involves the spleen and stomach, and the lower jiao pattern involves the liver and kidney.	三焦辨证	sān jiāo biàn zhèng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
980	Pattern transmission along the three jiao	Pattern transmission along triple energizer	Febrile diseases first affect the upper jiao, then the middle jiao and further to the lower jiao. This is known as the sequential transmission, indicating a mild-to-severe pathological process. Direct transmission from the lung Wei-defence to pericardium is known as nonsequential transmission. It is often a critical condition due to exuberant pathogenic heat.	三焦传变	sān jiāo chuán biàn	
981	Upper jiao pattern		Characterized by fever, sweating, coughing and panting. Unconsciousness and delirium may also be present. Often occurs when pathogenic warm heat attacks the lung and pericardium meridians.	上焦病证	shàng jiāo bìng zhèng	
982	Middle jiao pattern		Characterized by fever, thirst, abdominal fullness and constipation. Alternatively, subjective feverish sensation without elevated temperature, nausea, vomiting, stomach stuffiness and loose stools. Often occurs when pathogenic warm heat affects the spleen and stomach and transforms into dryness or dampness.	中焦病证	zhōng jiāo bìng zhèng	
983	Lower jiao pattern		Characterized by fever, flushed cheeks, and twitching or spasms of hands/feet. The tongue is deep red with a scanty coating. Often occurs when pathogenic warm heat attacks the lower jiao and impairs yin of the liver and kidney.	下焦病证	xià jiāo bìng zhèng	
984	Pattern differentiation of meridians		A pattern differentiation method based on meridian theory. It aims to analyse clinical signs and symptoms, identify specific meridians and related zang-fu organs and then conclude the etiological factors, pathological nature and pathological mechanism.	经络辨证	jīng luò biàn zhèng	
985	Patterns of the eight extra meridians		The eight extra meridians include Chong, Ren, Du, Dai, Yinwei, Yangwei, Yinqiao and Yangqiao meridians. They facilitate the connections among the twelve regular meridians and harmonize yin, yang, qi and blood. Pathologically, the eight extra meridians manifest as problems along their pathways or disorders associated with their special functions.	奇经八脉病证	qí jīng bā mài bìng zhèng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
986	Stroke of meridians		A condition characterized by limb heaviness, hemiplegia and slurred speech. Often occurs when qi and blood fail to circulate through the limbs after wind attacks the meridians.	中经	zhòng jīng	
987	Stroke of collaterals		A condition characterized by skin numbness, impaired movement and deviation of eyes and mouth border. Often occurs when wind attacks and blocks the collaterals.	中络	zhòng luò	
988	2.4 Patterns	Patterns		2.4 证候		
989	Patterns according to the eight principles	Principle-based pattern		八纲证类	bā gāng zhèng lèi	
990	Yang pattern		Causes outward, upward symptoms and manifests as conditions characterized by excitability, hyperactivity, restlessness, and brightness. It encompasses exterior pattern, heat pattern and excess pattern.	阳证	yáng zhèng	
991	Yin pattern		Causes inward, downward symptoms and manifests as conditions characterized by inhibition, listlessness, tranquillity and gloominess. It encompasses interior pattern, cold pattern and deficiency pattern.	阴证	yīn zhèng	
992	Heat pattern		Characterized by fever, a red face, thirst, constipation and yellow or red urine. Alternatively, malar flush, night sweats, feverish sensations in the palms, soles and chest, a dry, red tongue and a thready, rapid pulse may be present. It is sub-categorized into patterns of exterior heat, interior heat, deficiency heat and excess heat. Often results from contracting pathogenic heat or hyperactivity of yang due to yin deficiency.	热证	rè zhèng	
993	Cold pattern		Characterized by aversion to cold, cold intolerance, cold pain with preference for warmth, absence of thirst, thin, clear phlegm and nasal discharge, clear, profuse urine, loose stools and a pale complexion. The tongue is purple with a white coating. The pulse is tight or slow. Often results from excess of yin qi or cold attacking the interior.	寒证	hán zhèng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
994	Excess pattern		Characterized by high fever, thirst, chest tightness, panting, rapid breathing, phlegm sounds in the throat, restlessness, delirium, abdominal distension/pain/tenderness, and scanty, dark-yellow urine or hesitant, painful urination. The tongue is rough with a dry, yellow coating. The pulse is replete and forceful. Contributing factors may include six pathogenic factors, parasites or dysfunctions of the zang-fu organs (subsequent food stagnation, retention of phlegm/fluid/water/dampness and blood stasis).	实证	shí zhèng	
995	Deficiency pattern		Characterized by general weakness, a weak pulse and abdominal softness. Often results from insufficiency of qi, yin, yang or blood.	虚证	xū zhèng	
996	Exterior pattern		Characterized by aversion to wind/cold, fever, headache, and body aches. The tongue coating is thin. The pulse is floating. These signs and symptoms are often seen in the early stage of externally contracted conditions that have a sudden onset, superficial location and a short duration. Often occurs when exogenous pathogenic factors affect the interstices, joints and head.	表证	biǎo zhèng	
997	Interior pattern		A group of patterns caused by entering of external pathogens into the interior, improper diet, over exhaustion, emotional disturbance or phlegm stasis, resulting in disorders and dysfunctions in qi, blood, yin, yang, zang-fu organs and meridian systems.	里证	lǐ zhèng	
998	True cold with false heat pattern		Characterized by true-cold signs and symptoms such as cold hands/feet, profuse, clear urine, a pale tongue with a white coating, coupled with false-heat signs and symptoms such as fever but with a desire to put on more clothes, flushed cheeks and thirst with a desire for hot water. Often results from blockage of external yang by severe interior yin and cold.	真寒假热证	zhēn hán jiǎ rè zhèng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
999	Combined cold and heat pattern		Characterized by simultaneous occurrence of cold pattern and heat pattern in one individual patient at a certain pathological stage.	寒热错杂证	hán rè cuò zá zhèng	寒热夹杂证
1000	True excess with false deficiency pattern		An excess pattern that displays false deficiency symptoms.	真实假虚证	zhēn shí jiǎ xū zhèng	
1001	Exterior cold with interior heat pattern		Characterized by aversion to cold, fever, body aches, absence of sweating, vexation, panting, and thirst. The tongue is red with a yellow, white coating. The pulse is floating and rapid. Often occurs when pathogenic cold binds the exterior and blocks the heat inside.	表寒里热证	biǎo hán lǐ rè zhèng	
1002	Exterior heat with interior cold pattern		Characterized by aversion to cold, fever, sweating, headache, sore throat, clear urine, loose stools, and abdominal fullness and distension. Often caused by constitutional yang deficiency coupled with contraction of external heat.	表热里寒证	biǎo rè lǐ hán zhèng	
1003	Exterior-interior excess cold pattern		Characterized by aversion to cold, cold limbs, headache, body aches, and absence of sweating. Alternatively, coughing with white phlegm, cold pain in the stomach and abdomen, vomiting and diarrhoea with clear and watery discharge may also be present. Often occurs when pathogenic cold affects both the exterior and interior.	表里实寒证	biǎo lǐ shí hán zhèng	表里俱寒证
1004	Exterior-interior excess heat pattern		Characterized by fever, mild aversion to wind/cold, headache, body aches, vexation, panting, thirst, constipation and yellow urine. The tongue is red with a thin, yellow coating. The pulse is floating and rapid. Often occurs when pathogenic wind heat or pestilence affects both the exterior and interior.	表里实热证	biǎo lǐ shí rè zhèng	表里俱热证
1005	Upper excess with lower deficiency pattern		Characterized by deficiency of the liver and kidney coupled with accumulation of phlegm heat in the upper body.	上盛下虚证	shàng shèng xià xū zhèng	
1006	Upper heat with lower cold pattern		Characterized by heat retention in the upper body but cold retention in the lower body.	上热下寒证	shàng rè xià hán zhèng	
1007	Upper cold with lower heat pattern		Characterized by cold retention in the upper body but heat retention in the lower body.	上寒下热证	shàng hán xià rè zhèng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1008	Neither exterior nor interior pattern	Half exterior and half interior (commonly used but wrong in meaning)	Characterized by alternating fever and aversion to cold, fullness in the chest and sub-costal area, vexation, vomiting, poor appetite, a bitter mouth, a dry throat and blurred vision. The pulse is wiry. Often occurs when anti-pathogenic qi fights with pathogenic factors between the exterior and interior: exogenous pathogenic factors have not entered the interior or internal pathogenic factors have not reached the exterior.	半表半里证	bàn biǎo bàn lǐ zhèng	
1009	Exterior-interior excess pattern		Characterized by fever, aversion to heat, absence of sweating, headache, neck stiffness, restlessness, abdominal distension and constipation. In severe cases, mania may be present. The tongue coating is dry and thick. The pulse is slippery and rapid. Often results from unresolved pathogenic factors in the exterior coupled with internal retention of undigested food, accumulated heat, phlegm fluid, water dampness, stagnant blood, dry faeces, pus, parasites and stones.	表里俱实证	biǎo lǐ jù shí zhèng	
1010	Exterior excess with interior deficiency pattern		Characterized by aversion to cold, absence of sweating, and fever. Associated symptoms include lassitude, shortness of breath, a poor appetite, fatigue, palpitations and lower back pain. The tongue is pale with a white coating. The pulse is superficial. Often occurs as a result of the struggle between anti-pathogenic qi and pathogenic factors coupled with deficiency of anti-pathogenic qi. Alternatively, it may result from deficiency of the heart, spleen and kidney coupled with external contraction of wind cold. It may also result from inappropriate use of purgative therapy for external contraction of wind cold.	表实里虚证	biǎo shí lǐ xū zhèng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1011	Exterior deficiency with interior excess pattern		Characterized by aversion to wind, sweating, coughing with profuse phlegm, and abdominal distension/pain with tenderness, and constipation. The tongue is dark with a yellow, thick coating. Often results from deficiency of Wei-defensive qi coupled with build up of internal heat. Alternatively, it may occur when retained food in the stomach and intestines transform into heat, along with external contraction of wind. It may also result from inappropriate treatment of an exterior pattern or inappropriate use of sweating therapy for an interior excess pattern.	表虚里实证	biǎo xū lǐ shí zhèng	
1012	Exterior excess pattern		Characterized by aversion to cold, fever, absence of sweating, headache and body aches. The pulse is superficial and tense. Often occurs when the struggle between yang qi and pathogenic factors closes the skin striae.	表实证	biǎo shí zhèng	
1013	Combined deficiency and excess pattern		Characterized by coexistence of excess of pathogenic factors and deficiency of anti-pathogenic qi. It may present as a deficiency pattern coupled with excess, an excess pattern coupled with deficiency, or mixed deficiency and excess.	虚实夹杂证	xū shí jiā zá zhèng	
1014	Patterns related to causative factors	Environmental factor patterns		病因证类	bìng yīn zhèng lèi	
1015	Wind attacking the exterior pattern	Wind invading the exterior pattern	Characterized by aversion to wind, fever, sweating and a superficial pulse. Alternatively, skin itching, oedema, cough, sore throat, headache or body aches may be present. Often occurs when wind attacks the surface of the body and affects the normal functioning of the Wei-defence.	风邪袭表证	fēng xié xí biǎo zhèng	风邪犯表证; 风邪外袭证
1016	Wind heat exterior pattern	Wind heat invading the exterior pattern	Characterized by fever, mild aversion to cold/wind, sweating, thirst, and red, sore throat. The tongue tip is red with a thin, yellow coating. The pulse is superficial and rapid. Often occurs when wind heat attacks the surface of the body and affects the normal functioning of the Wei-defence.	风热表证	fēng rè biǎo zhèng	风热外侵证; 风热犯表证

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1017	Wind heat and dampness pattern		Characterized by fever, thirst with little water intake, and limb heaviness. Alternatively, skin rashes, blisters, itching or oozing may be present. The tongue is red with a yellow, greasy coating. Often occurs when wind heat that carries dampness affects the skin.	风湿夹湿证	fēng rè jiā shī zhèng	
1018	Wind dampness transformed heat pattern	Wind dampness transformed fire pattern	Characterized by limb soreness/heaviness, and joint swelling, pain and impaired movement. Alternatively, skin itching, oozing, fever, and thirst may be present. The tongue is red with a dry, yellow/white coating. Often occurs when retained wind dampness transforms into heat.	风湿化热证	fēng shī huà rè zhèng	风湿化火证
1019	Wind cold transformed heat pattern		Characterized by aversion to cold, fever, headache, body ache and joint soreness/pain. Associated symptoms include cough with thick phlegm, and a sore/scratchy throat. The tongue tip is red with a dry, yellow/white coating. The pulse is rapid. Often occurs when retained wind cold transforms into heat and enters the interior.	风寒化热证	fēng hán huà rè zhèng	风寒郁热证
1020	Wind cold exterior pattern	Cold/wind cold binding the exterior pattern	Characterized by severe aversion to cold, fever, absence of sweating, headache, and body aches. Alternatively, nasal obstruction, clear nasal discharge, and cough may be present. The tongue coating is thin and white. The pulse is superficial and tense. Often occurs when wind cold blocks the skin pores.	风寒表证	fēng hán biǎo zhèng	寒邪束表证; 风寒束表证
1021	Wind dampness attacking the exterior pattern		Characterized by body soreness/heaviness, headache with a heavy sensation, aversion to cold, fever that cannot be resolved by sweating, chest tightness, and absence of thirst. The tongue coating is white, slippery or greasy. The pulse is soft and delayed. Often occurs when wind dampness attacks the surface of the body and obstructs the flow of Wei-defensive qi.	风湿袭表证	fēng shī xí biǎo zhèng	
1022	Wind toxin attacking the exterior pattern		Characterized by sudden skin itching, papules or wheals. The pulse is superficial. Often occurs when wind toxin attacks the surface of the body.	风毒犯表证	fēng dú fàn biǎo zhèng	



WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1023	Wind toxin pattern	Exuberance of wind toxin pattern	Characterized by sudden skin swelling, numbness, itching or pain and redness, swelling and pain of the head/face/mouth/nose and eyes. Alternatively, wheals may be present. The pulse is superficial and rapid. Often occurs when wind toxin attacks the skin.	风毒证	fēng dú zhèng	风毒炽盛证
1024	Wind dampness accumulating in the skin pattern		Characterized by skin itching, ulceration, rashes or oozing. Often occurs when wind dampness retains in the skin.	风湿蕴肤证	fēng shī yùn fū zhèng	
1025	Wind toxin accumulating in the skin pattern		Characterized by skin redness, itching, pain, rashes or wheals. In severe cases, skin ulcer or peeling may be present. Often occurs when wind toxin retains in the skin.	风毒蕴肤证	fēng dú yùn fū zhèng	
1026	Excess cold pattern		Characterized by aversion to cold, cold limbs, abdominal pain with tenderness, bowel sounds, diarrhoea, loss of sense of taste with profuse salivation, and clear, profuse urine. The tongue coating is white and moist. The pulse is slow or tight. Often occurs when pathogenic cold attacks the body.	实寒证	shí hán zhèng	
1027	Deficiency cold pattern		Characterized by a bright, pale complexion, cold intolerance, and clear, profuse urine. The tongue is pale with a white coating. The pulse is deep, slow or deep, thready and weak. Contributing factors may include constitutional yang qi deficiency, chronic internal dysfunctions or inappropriate treatment damaging yang qi.	虚寒证	xū hán zhèng	
1028	Exterior cold pattern		Characterized by severe aversion to cold, mild fever, headache, and joint soreness/pain. The tongue coating is thin and white. The pulse is superficial and tight. Often occurs when wind cold attacks the surface of the body.	表寒证	biǎo hán zhèng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1029	Cold induced qi stagnation pattern		Characterized by headache, body aches, and joint pain with a cold sensation, and contracture of hands/feet. Alternatively, abdominal distension, fullness and pain with a cold sensation, vomiting of clear saliva, bowel sounds, and diarrhoea may be present. The tongue coating is white and moist. The pulse is wiry and tight. Often occurs when retained cold blocks the free flow of qi.	寒凝气滞证	hán níng qì zhì zhèng	
1030	Cold induced blood stasis pattern		Characterized by cold intolerance, cold pain that alleviates with warmth, bluish, cold limbs, delayed periods, and dysmenorrhea with dark, purple blood and clots. The tongue is dark purple with a white coating. The pulse is deep, slow and hesitant. Often occurs when cold blocks the circulation of blood.	寒凝血瘀证	hán níng xuè yū zhèng	
1031	Retained cold dampness in the skin pattern		Characterized by skin numbness, stiffness, swelling, insensitivity and cold upon palpation. Often occurs when cold dampness retains in the skin.	寒湿蕴肤证	hán shī yùn fū zhèng	
1032	Retained excess cold in the chest pattern		Characterized by pain below the heart and cold limbs. Alternatively, chest pain, abdominal distension and pain with tenderness and cough with white, thin phlegm may be present. The tongue coating is white. The pulse is deep, wiry and tight. Often occurs when pathogenic cold enters the interior or retains in the chest area due to the inappropriate use of purging therapy for Taiyang disease. It may also result from cold phlegm retention in the thoracic diaphragm.	寒实结胸证	hán shí jié xiōng zhèng	
1033	Summer heat pattern	Internal retention of summer heat pattern	Characterized by fever, thirst, dizziness, sweating, lassitude, chest tightness, and scanty, yellow urine. The tongue is red with a dry, yellow coating. The pulse is rapid. Often occurs when summer heat or pestilence attacks the body to cause a severe struggle between anti-pathogenic qi and pathogenic factors or a depletion of qi and fluids.	暑热证	shǔ rè zhèng	暑热内郁证

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1034	Summer heat and dampness pattern	Internal retention of summer heat and dampness	Characterized by alternating chills and fever, inhibited sweating, limb heaviness, thirst, restlessness, dusty complexion, chest tightness, nausea, vomiting, loose stools with a sensation of incomplete evacuation, and scanty, hesitant urination. The tongue is red with a yellow, greasy coating. The pulse is slippery and rapid. Often occurs when summer heat and dampness or pestilence enter and remain in the body.	暑湿证	shǔ shī zhèng	暑湿内蕴证
1035	Summer heat and dampness obstructed spleen pattern		Characterized by abdominal discomfort, poor appetite, a sticky, greasy taste in the mouth, thirst with little water intake, limb soreness/heaviness/pain, dizziness and headache with a distending sensation. Alternatively, waves of fever in the afternoon, limb oedema, loose stools, and scanty urine may be present. The tongue is pale and enlarged with a yellow, greasy coating. The pulse is slippery and rapid. Often occurs when summer heat and dampness obstruct the qi activities of the spleen and stomach.	暑湿困脾证	shǔ shī kùn pí zhèng	
1036	Summer heat and dampness attacking the exterior pattern		Characterized by fever, mild aversion to wind cold, body heaviness, sweating/absence of sweating, and thirst. The tongue is red with a yellow coating. The pulse is soft and rapid. Often occurs when summer heat and dampness attack the surface of the body and affect the normal functioning of the Wei-defensive qi.	暑湿袭表证	shǔ shī xí biǎo zhèng	
1037	Summer heat stirring wind pattern		Characterized by persistent high fever, unconsciousness, mania, delirium, and convulsions of the limbs. Alternatively, opisthotonus and trismus may be present. Often occurs when summer heat/dampness or pestilence stir the liver wind.	暑热动风证	shǔ rè dòng fēng zhèng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1038	Summer heat consuming qi and yin pattern	Summer heat consuming qi and fluids pattern	Characterized by persistent high fever, thirst with a desire to drink water, dry skin, lassitude, and shortness of breath. Alternatively, gastric discomfort, abdominal distension, frequent vomiting, and diarrhoea may be present. The tongue is dry and red with a dry, yellow coating. The pulse is thready and rapid. Often occurs when summer heat or pestilence consumes qi and damages yin.	暑耗气阴证	shǔ hào qì yīn zhèng	暑伤津气证;暑伤气津证
1039	Dampness affecting spleen yang pattern	Dampness affecting the middle jiao pattern	Characterized by gastric discomfort, abdominal distension, a greasy taste in the mouth, nausea, vomiting, loss of sense of taste, absence of thirst, abdominal pain, loose stools, and head/body heaviness. Alternatively, dark, yellowish eyes and body skin may be present. The tongue is pale and enlarged with a white, greasy coating. The pulse is soft and delayed. Often occurs when retained dampness impairs spleen yang.	湿伤脾阳证	shī shāng pí yáng zhèng	
1040	Damp heat pattern	Damp heat accumulation pattern	Characterized by inhibited body fever, body heaviness, gastric discomfort, thirst with little water intake/absence of thirst, scanty, yellow urine and loose stools with a sensation of incomplete evacuation. The tongue is red with a yellow, greasy coating. The pulse is slippery and rapid. Often occurs when damp binds with heat, resulting in difficulty clearing heat and resolving dampness.	湿热证	shī rè zhèng	湿热蕴结证
1041	Damp heat downflow pattern		Characterized by frequent, urgent, dribbling or painful urination. Alternatively, strong-smelling, loose stools, yellow, smelly vaginal discharge, eczema and itching of the external genitalia, and leg sores/ulcers may be present. The tongue coating is yellow and greasy. Often occurs when damp heat flows downward to affect the intestines, urinary bladder, uterus, external genitalia, and legs.	湿热下注证	shī rè xià zhù zhèng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1042	Retained damp heat in the skin pattern		Characterized by skin redness, swelling, ulcers, itching, and oozing. The tongue is red with a yellow, greasy coating. The pulse is slippery and rapid. Often occurs when damp heat affects the surface of the body.	湿热蕴肤证	shī rè yùn fū zhèng	
1043	Damp toxin pattern	Accumulation of damp toxin pattern	Characterized by chronic, progressive development of ulcerative oozing that is difficult to heal. Often occurs when long-term dampness transforms into toxins.	湿毒证	shī dú zhèng	湿毒蕴结证
1044	Wind dryness attacking the exterior pattern	External dryness affecting the exterior pattern	Characterized by mild fever, aversion to wind cold, headache, absence of sweating, a dry mouth and throat, and thirst. The pulse is superficial. Often occurs when wind dryness blocks the Wei-defensive qi and consumes body fluids.	风燥袭表证	fēng zào xí biǎo zhèng	外燥袭表证
1045	Dryness toxin pattern	Dryness pattern	Characterized by red, swollen, sore and ulcerative throat, constipation, dark yellow urine, thirst with a desire to drink water and dry nose and skin. Alternatively, red, ulcerative eyes may be present. The tongue is dry. The pulse is thready and hesitant. Often occurs when toxic dry heat attacks the body.	燥毒证	zào dú zhèng	
1046	Fire toxin pattern	Exuberance of toxic/pathogenic/fire heat	Characterized by red, swollen, ulcerative and painful skin boils with a burning sensation, fever, and thirst. The tongue is red with a yellow coating. The pulse is rapid. Often occurs when fire heat transforms into toxins.	火毒证	huǒ dú zhèng	热毒炽盛证; 邪热炽盛证; 火热炽盛证
1047	Interior heat pattern	Excess heat pattern	Characterized by persistent high fever, red face and eyes, restlessness, thirst with a desire to drink cold water, constipation and scanty, dark yellow urine. In severe cases, unconsciousness and delirium may be present. The tongue is red with a dry, yellow coating. The pulse is deep and excessive. Often occurs when external pathogenic warm heat enters the interior.	里热证	lǐ rè zhèng	实热证

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1048	Exterior heat pattern	Exterior heat pattern	Characterized by fever, aversion to wind, headache, thirst, sore throat, and cough with yellow phlegm. Sores, ulcers or boils may also be present. The tongue coating is thin and white or slightly yellow. The pulse is superficial and rapid. Often occurs when wind, heat or summer dryness attacks the surface of the body.	表热证	biǎo rè zhèng	
1049	Interior heat toxin pattern	Interior fire toxin pattern; fire/heat toxin blocking the interior pattern	Characterized by a high-grade fever, thirst, unconsciousness, delirium, a dark red complexion, constipation and yellow urine. The tongue is dark red with a yellow coating. The pulse is deep and rapid. Often occurs when exuberant fire/heat toxins enters the zang-fu organs.	热毒内陷证	rè dú nèi xiàn zhèng	火毒内陷证;火毒内闭证;热毒内闭证
1050	Exuberant heat damaging yin pattern	Pathogenic heat damaging yin pattern	Characterized by fever, thirst with a desire to drink cold water, dry stools, and scanty, dark yellow urine. The tongue is dry and red with a dry, yellow coating. The pulse is thready and rapid. Often occurs when exuberant fire/heat damages yin fluids.	热盛伤阴证	rè shèng shāng yīn zhèng	邪热伤阴证
1051	Exuberant heat affecting the chest pattern		Characterized by pain below the heart with tenderness, constipation, and fever or waves of fever. Alternatively, chest or abdominal distension/pain and cough may be present. The tongue coating is yellow. The pulse is deep and wiry. Often occurs when pathogenic factors affect the heart/chest due to inappropriate treatment of Taiyang disease. It may also occur as a result of phlegm-fluid retention in the thoracic diaphragm.	热实结胸证	rè shí jié xiōng zhèng	
1052	Exuberant heat damaging fluids pattern	Exuberant heat consuming fluids pattern	Characterized by fever, thirst with a desire to drink water, dry, withered skin, sunken eyes, dry stools, and scanty, yellow urine. The tongue is dry and red. The pulse is thready and rapid. Often occurs when exuberant fire/heat consumes or damages bodily fluids.	热盛伤津证	rè shèng shāng jīn zhèng	热盛耗液证

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1053	Warm toxin attacking the exterior pattern		Characterized by fever, mild aversion to cold, body aches (like being beaten with a stick), and splitting headache. The tongue is red with a yellow, white coating. The pulse is superficial and rapid. Often occurs when fire/heat or pestilence attacks the Wei-defensive exterior.	温毒袭表证	wēn dú xí biǎo zhèng	
1054	Retained heat toxin in the skin pattern	Fire toxin accumulating in the skin pattern	Characterized by red, swelling and painful skin sores/ulcers/boils with a burning sensation. Alternatively, thirst and constipation may be present. The tongue is red with a yellow coating. The pulse is rapid. Often occurs when toxic fire heat accumulates or remains in the skin.	热毒蕴肤证	rè dú yùn fū zhèng	火毒蕴结肌肤证
1055	Wind fire/heat toxin pattern		Characterized by red, swollen, itchy, numb or painful skin sores/boils, coupled with a burning sensation. Alternatively red, swollen and painful face, nose and eyes, fever, thirst, unconsciousness, delirium, constipation and yellow urine may be present. The tongue is deep red with brown/yellow coating. The pulse is surging and rapid. Often occurs when toxic wind-fire/heat accumulates in the skin.	风火热毒证	fēng huǒ rè dú zhèng	
1056	Toxin entering the Ying-nutrients blood pattern		Characterized by a high fever, excessive thirst, unconsciousness, delirium and dark purple maculae or bleeding of dark red blood. The tongue is deep red. The pulse is rapid. Often occurs when toxic fire/heat enters the Ying nutrients and blood.	毒入营血证	dú rù yíng xuè zhèng	
1057	Retained toxin pattern		Characterized by a persistent low-grade fever and toxin-based symptoms. Often occurs when residual toxin remains in the body.	余毒未清证	yú dú wèi qīng zhèng	
1058	Toxic pus pattern	Accumulation of toxic pus pattern	Characterized by sores/ulcers with the discharge of pus with a strong odour, fever and thirst. The tongue coating is putrid and greasy. The pulse is slippery and rapid. Often occurs when toxic pus accumulates in the body.	脓毒证	nóng dú zhèng	脓毒蕴积证

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1059	Epidemic toxin blocking the heart spirit pattern		Characterized by unconsciousness, delirium, sound of phlegm in the throat, difficulty breathing and constipation. Often occurs when epidemic toxin blocks the heart spirit.	疫毒内闭证	yì dú nèi bì zhèng	
1060	Pathogenic factors hidden in the pleurodiaphragmatic interspace pattern		Characterized by alternating chills and fever at fixed hours, a severe, splitting headache, body pain, distension and tightness in the sub-costal region, and vomiting of phlegm and saliva. The tongue coating appears like white powder. Often occurs when epidemic pathogens hide in between the exterior and interior.	邪伏膜原证	xié fú mó yuán zhèng	
1061	Wind water pattern	Pattern of wind and water contending with each other	Characterized by sudden oedema in the eyelids, head, face and four limbs. Alternatively, wheals, mild aversion to wind cold and scanty urine may be present. The pulse is superficial. Often occurs when external wind affects the dispersing of lung qi and results in internal water retention.	风水证	fēng shuǐ zhèng	风水相搏证
1062	Residual heat pattern	Lingering of residual heat pattern	Characterized by persistent low fever or fever at night, restlessness, thirst, constipation, yellow urine, and fatigue. The tongue is dry and red. The pulse is thready and rapid. Often occurs when pathogenic heat is not completely removed.	余热未清证	yú rè wèi qīng zhèng	
1063	Interior blockage and exterior collapse pattern		Characterized by fever, cough, and panting. Alternatively, tenesmus, urine retention, constipation, cardiac or abdominal colic, a pale face, cold limbs, cold sweats, and faint breathing may be present. The pulse is extremely feeble. Often occurs when excessive pathogenic factors block the interior and anti-pathogenic qi becomes extremely deficient.	内闭外脱证	nèi bì wài tuō zhèng	
1064	Cold phlegm pattern		Characterized by coughing with white phlegm, chest tightness, gastric stuffiness, panting, wheezing sounds, cold intolerance, and cold limbs. The tongue coating is white and greasy. The pulse is wiry, slippery or wiry and tense. Often occurs when pathogenic cold binds with turbid phlegm.	寒痰证	hán tán zhèng	



WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1065	Heat phlegm pattern		Characterized by coughing with yellow phlegm, fever and thirst. The tongue is red with a yellow, greasy coating. The pulse is slippery and rapid. Often occurs when turbid phlegm binds with pathogenic heat.	热痰证	rè tán zhèng	
1066	Damp phlegm pattern		Characterized by cough with easy expectoration of profuse, sticky phlegm, limb heaviness, dizziness, tinnitus, chest stuffiness, and tightness, a low food intake, a greasy taste and a foreign body sensation in the throat. The tongue coating is white and greasy. The pulse is soft and slippery. Often results from the internal build up of phlegm dampness.	湿痰证	shī tán zhèng	痰湿证
1067	Wind phlegm pattern		Characterized by vomiting of foamy phlegm, chest tightness, dizziness, headache, eye distension/pain, sound of phlegm in the throat, and deviation of the eyes and mouth border. The tongue coating is white and greasy. The pulse is wiry and slippery. Often occurs when external wind that carries turbid phlegm attacks the body or liver wind that carries turbid phlegm affects the body.	风痰证	fēng tán zhèng	
1068	Dry phlegm pattern	Accumulation of dry phlegm	Characterized by cough with difficult expectoration of sticky or blood-stained phlegm, chest tightness/pain, and a dry mouth and nose. The tongue is dry with a greasy coating. The pulse is hesitant. Often results from internal build up of dry heat and turbid phlegm.	燥痰证	zào tán zhèng	燥痰蕴结证
1069	Phlegm qi stagnation pattern	Intermingled phlegm and qi pattern	Characterized by emotional depression, insomnia, dream-disturbed sleep, a foreign body sensation in the throat, fullness, and tightness in the sub-costal region and profuse phlegm. The tongue coating is white and greasy. The pulse is wiry and slippery. Often results from phlegm binding with qi.	痰气互结证	tán qì hù jié zhèng	痰气郁结证

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1070	Phlegm qi obstructing the diaphragm pattern		Characterized by diaphragm fullness and tightness, a sensation of food being stuck or held up, hiccups, and vomiting of phlegm or saliva and the sensation is alleviated after belching. The tongue coating is greasy or slippery. The pulse is wiry. Often occurs when turbid phlegm obstructs the flow of qi in the diaphragm.	痰气阻隔证	tán qì zǔ gé zhèng	
1071	Phlegm and blood stasis transformed heat pattern		Characterized by local swelling and hardness coupled with a burning sensation and stabbing pain, chest tightness, and expectoration of yellow phlegm that may contain blood. The tongue is dark red or with ecchymosis and a yellow, greasy coating. The pulse is wiry and hesitant. Often occurs when retained phlegm and blood stasis transform into heat.	痰瘀化热证	tán yū huà rè zhèng	
1072	Phlegm and blood stasis obstructed the diaphragm pattern		Characterized by diaphragm stuffiness, tightness and stabbing pain, a sensation of food being stuck or blocked, and vomiting of phlegm or saliva. The tongue is purple or with ecchymosis and a greasy coating. The pulse is hesitant. Often occurs when stagnant blood and turbid phlegm obstruct the diaphragm.	痰瘀阻隔证	tán yū zǔ gé zhèng	
1073	Intertwined phlegm and blood stasis pattern		Characterized by local lumps with stabbing pain, limb numbness or flaccidity, chest tightness, and profuse phlegm that may contain dark purple clots. The tongue is dark purple or with ecchymosis and a greasy coating. The pulse is wiry and hesitant. Often occurs when turbid phlegm intertwines with stagnant blood.	痰瘀互结证	tán yū hù jié zhèng	
1074	Phlegm heat stagnated qi pattern		Characterized by restlessness, irritability, distension and tightness in the subcostal region, a burning wandering pain, coughing, panting, expectoration of yellow phlegm, fever, and thirst. The tongue is red with a yellow, greasy coating. The pulse is wiry and rapid. Often occurs when phlegm heat obstructs the flow of qi.	痰热气滞证	tán rè qì zhì zhèng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1075	Phlegm fire blocked the heart spirit pattern	Phlegm heat blocked the interior pattern	Characterized by fever, thirst, a red face, rapid breathing, restlessness, mania, unconsciousness, delirium, sound of phlegm in the throat, constipation and yellow urine. The tongue is red with a yellow, greasy coating. The pulse is slippery and rapid. Often occurs when intertwined fire heat and turbid phlegm blocks the heart mind.	痰火闭窍证	tán huǒ bì qiào zhèng	痰热内闭证
1076	Phlegm heat stirring wind pattern		Characterized by distension and tightness in the subcostal region, cough, panting, fever, thirst, expectoration of yellow, sticky phlegm, sound of phlegm in the throat, convulsions of the limbs, dizziness, nausea, and vomiting. The tongue is red with a yellow, greasy coating. The pulse is slippery and wiry. Often occurs when internal phlegm heat stirs liver wind.	痰热动风证	tán rè dòng fēng zhèng	
1077	Phlegm heat affecting the chest pattern		Characterized by a feverish sensation in the chest, chest stuffiness, distension and pain, coughing with yellow phlegm, abdominal hardness and fullness with tenderness. The tongue is red with a yellow, greasy coating. The pulse is slippery and rapid. Often occurs when turbid phlegm and heat remain in the chest.	痰热结胸证	tán rè jié xiōng zhèng	
1078	Intermingled phlegm and food stagnation pattern		Characterized by chest stuffiness, tightness, distension and pain, coughing with phlegm, a low food intake, abdominal distension, and vomiting of phlegm and undigested food. The tongue coating is putrid and greasy. The pulse is wiry and slippery. Often occurs when turbid phlegm and undigested food obstruct the flow of qi.	痰食互结证	tán shí hù jié zhèng	
1079	Retained phlegm nodules pattern		Characterized by painless, subcutaneous nodules on the neck and limbs. These nodules are hard, smooth and mobile. They do not appear red or feel warm. The tongue coating is greasy. The pulse is wiry and slippery. Often occurs when turbid phlegm remains in the body.	痰核留结证	tán hé liú jié zhèng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1080	Blood stasis stirring blood pattern		Characterized by bleeding of dark purple blood with clots, localized stabbing pain with a fixed position or bluish lumps. The tongue is purple or with ecchymosis. The pulse is hesitant. Often occurs when stagnant blood causes the blood to flow out of the vessels.	血瘀动血证	xuè yū dòng xuè zhèng	
1081	Blood stasis transformed heat pattern	Stasis transforming into heat pattern	Characterized by stabbing pain with a burning sensation, bluish lumps, afternoon or night fever, and a dry mouth with no desire to drink water. The tongue is dark red or with ecchymosis. The pulse is hesitant and rapid. Often occurs when prolonged blood stasis transforms into heat.	血瘀化热证	xuè yū huà rè zhèng	瘀滞化热证
1082	Blood stasis induced water retention pattern		Characterized by abdominal masses with a stabbing pain, abdominal bulging, inhibited urination, amenorrhoea or oedema. Alternatively, bluish, diffuse swelling and distending pain may be present. The tongue is pale purple or with ecchymosis. The pulse is hesitant. Often occurs when stagnant blood causes water retention.	血瘀水停证	xuè yū shuǐ tíng zhèng	
1083	Stagnant blood obstructed the diaphragm pattern		Characterized by stabbing pain in the diaphragm or epigastric area with a fixed location or difficulty in swallowing food. The tongue is purple or with ecchymosis. The pulse is wiry and hesitant. Often occurs when stagnant blood retains in the thoracic diaphragm.	瘀血阻膈证	yū xuè zǔ gé zhèng	
1084	Fluids overflowing into the limbs pattern		Characterized by body pain/heaviness, and joint pain. Other associated symptoms include cough, panting, chest tightness, and fatigue. Often occurs when fluid overflows to the limbs and the surface of the body.	饮溢四肢证	yǐn yì sì zhī zhèng	
1085	Water-fluid retention pattern	Internal retention of water fluids pattern	Characterized by inhibited urination, lower abdominal distension/fullness, thirst, palpitations, dizziness, cough, panting, oedema, cold limbs and diarrhoea. The tongue is enlarged with a slippery coating. Often occurs when abnormal distribution of bodily fluids causes water-damp retention.	水饮证	shuǐ yǐn zhèng	水饮内停证

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1086	Chest/subcostal fluid retention pattern		Characterized by subcostal distension/fullness, pain in the subcostal region induced by cough, swallowing, breathing or turning around. Retching or shortness of breath may also be present. Often occurs when fluid remains in the subcostal region.	饮溢胸胁证	yǐn yì xiōng xié zhèng	饮停胸胁证
1087	Chest/subcostal stasis pattern	Stasis retention in the chest/subcostal region pattern	Characterized by pain in the chest/subcostal region with a fixed location, tenderness, chest tightness, and cyanosis of the lips. The tongue is dark or with ecchymosis. The pulse is wiry and hesitant. Often occurs when stagnant blood obstructs the chest and subcostal region.	瘀阻胸胁证	yū zǔ xiōng xié zhèng	瘀滞胸胁证
1088	Fetal toxin and heat accumulation pattern	Accumulation of fetal toxin pattern	Characterized by skin ulceration and peeling. Symptoms may include mouth ulceration, ulceration of the eyes, or stools with a strong odour (that may contain blood). Often results from contraction of toxic heat as a fetus.	胎毒蕴热证	tāi dú yùn rè zhèng	胎毒蕴结证;胎毒内蕴证;胎毒证
1089	Fear/fright damaging the kidney pattern		Characterized by panic, impotence, nocturnal emissions, timidity, paranoia, and bladder/bowel incontinence. Often occurs when severe fear or fright damages kidney qi.	惊恐伤肾证	jīng kǒng shāng shèn zhèng	
1090	Emotional stagnation pattern	Excessive worry damaging spirit qi pattern	Characterized by depression, apathetic facial expression, insomnia, dream-disturbed sleep, dizziness, lassitude, and a poor appetite. The pulse is wiry. Often occurs when excessive worry damages the mind.	情志郁结证	qíng zhì yù jié zhèng	忧伤神气证
1091	Patterns of yin, yang, qi, blood, bodily fluids, essence and marrow			阴阳气血津液精髓证类	yīn yáng qì xuè jīn yè jīng suǐ zhèng lèi	
1092	Yang deficiency pattern		Characterized by cold intolerance, cold limbs, lassitude, fatigue, shortness of breath, tastelessness, absence of thirst or preference for hot water, clear urine, and loose stools. Alternatively, scanty urine, oedema and a pale face may be present. The tongue is pale and enlarged. The pulse is deep, slow and weak. Often occurs when yang qi fails to warm and nourish the zang-fu organs.	阳虚证	yáng xū zhèng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1093	Yang depletion pattern	Yang exhaustion pattern/Yang collapse pattern	Characterized by cold sweats, cold body/limbs, lassitude, faint breathing, and a pale complexion. The tongue is pale with a moist coating. The pulse is extremely feeble. Often results from yang qi exhaustion or collapse.	亡阳证	wáng yáng zhèng	
1094	Floating of deficiency yang pattern		Characterized by toothache, mouth ulceration, insomnia, dizziness, hot flushes, feverish sensations in the palms and soles, red, swollen lips, profuse, clear urine, and loose or dry stools. Often occurs when internal cold retention (due to kidney yang deficiency) causes the deficiency yang qi to float outward.	虚阳外越证	xū yáng wài yuè zhèng	虚阳浮越证
1095	Yang deficiency induced water retention pattern		Characterized by cold limbs, swelling of the limbs, inhibited urination, palpitations, panting, abdominal distension and diarrhoea. The tongue is pale and enlarged with a white, slippery coating. Often occurs when yang qi fails to warm the body and transform water fluids.	阳虚水泛证	yáng xū shuǐ fàn zhèng	阳虚水停证
1096	Yin deficiency pattern	Insufficiency of yin fluids pattern	Characterized by feverish sensations in the palms, soles and chest, bone-steaming fever, flushed cheeks, dizziness, tinnitus, dry lips, nose, throat and skin, night sweats, nocturnal emissions, and constipation. The tongue is red with a dry, scanty coating. The pulse is thready, rapid and weak. Alternatively, the tongue is deep red with a peeled coating. Often results from consumption of yin fluids and relative hyperactivity of yang qi.	阴虚证	yīn xū zhèng	阴液亏虚证
1097	Yin depletion pattern	Yin exhaustion pattern/yin collapse pattern	Characterized by fever, oily sweating, thirst with a preference for cold water, restlessness and flushed cheeks. The tongue is dry and red. The pulse is thready and rapid. Often results from massive exhaustion of yin fluids and essence.	亡阴证	wáng yīn zhèng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1098	Yin deficiency stirring wind pattern		Characterized by dizziness, blurred vision, limb numbness, weight loss, feverish sensations in the palms, soles and chest, a dry mouth and throat, scanty, yellow urine and constipation. Alternatively, convulsions or tremor of the hands/feet may be present. The tongue is red with a scanty coating. The pulse is thready and rapid. Often occurs when deficiency of yin fluids causes malnourishment of meridians and stirring of deficiency wind.	阴虚动风证	yīn xū dòng fēng zhèng	
1099	Yin fluids deficiency pattern		Characterized by a dry mouth, throat and skin, sunken eyes, scanty, yellow urine, constipation, weight loss, and night sweats. The tongue is red with a dry, scanty coating. The pulse is thready and rapid. Often occurs when yin fluids fail to nourish the body.	阴虚津亏证	yīn xū jīn kuī zhèng	阴液亏虚证
1100	Yin deficiency-induced internal heat pattern		Characterized by a persistent low-grade fever, night sweats, flushed cheeks, a dry mouth with a desire to drink water, scanty, yellow urine and constipation. The tongue is dry and red. The pulse is thready and rapid. Often occurs when deficiency of yin fluids generates internal heat.	阴虚内热证	yīn xū nèi rè zhèng	
1101	Yin deficiency-induced yang hyperactivity pattern		Characterized by tidal fever, night sweats, flushed cheeks, dizziness, blurred vision, restlessness, and insomnia. The tongue is dry and red. The pulse is thready and rapid. Often occurs when yin fluids fails to restrain yang.	阴虚阳亢证	yīn xū yáng kàng zhèng	
1102	Yin and yang deficiency pattern		Characterized by dizziness, tinnitus, cold intolerance, cold limbs, feverish sensations in the palms, soles and chest, palpitations and low back soreness. The tongue is dry and pale. The pulse is weak and rapid. Often results from a deficiency of yin fluids and yang qi of the zang-fu organs.	阴阳两虚证	yīn yáng liǎng xū zhèng	阴阳亏虚证
1103	Yin exhaustion and yang collapse pattern		Characterized by panting, more exhalation than inhalation, restlessness, breathing with an open mouth and elevated shoulders and oily sweating. Often results from yang collapse following exhaustion of yin fluids.	阴竭阳脱证	yīn jié yáng tuō zhèng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1104	Yin deficiency-induced blood dryness pattern		Characterized by dizziness, blurred vision, a dry mouth and throat, dry, itchy skin, dry hair, tidal fever in the afternoon, night sweats and flushed cheeks. The tongue is dry and red. The pulse is thready and rapid. Often occurs when deficiency of yin fluids generates internal heat to consume blood and bodily fluids.	阴虚血燥证	yīn xū xuè zào zhèng	
1105	Qi deficiency pattern		Characterized by shortness of breath, fatigue, lassitude, reluctance to talk, and spontaneous sweating. The tongue is pale. The pulse is deficient. Often results from hypofunctions of the zang-fu organs.	气虚证	qì xū zhèng	
1106	Qi stagnation pattern		Characterized by migratory distension, fullness and pain in the subcostal region and abdomen that alleviate after sighing, belching, bowel sounds and flatus. The pulse is wiry. Often results from qi stagnation of the zang-fu organs or in the localized area.	气滞证	qì zhì zhèng	
1107	Qi counterflow pattern		Characterized by dizziness, blurred vision, vomiting, belching, hiccups, and acid reflux. In severe cases, sudden fainting or panting may be present. Often results from counterflow of qi or disordered qi activity.	气逆证	qì nì zhèng	
1108	Qi sinking pattern		Characterized by dizziness, blurred vision, lassitude, a bearing-down sensation in the abdomen, rectal prolapse, and prolapsed internal organs or uterus. The tongue is pale with a white coating. The pulse is weak. Often occurs when qi fails to ascend.	气陷证	qì xiàn zhèng	
1109	Qi collapse pattern		Characterized by a sudden pale complexion, cyanotic lips, sweating, cold limbs and faint breathing. The tongue is pale. The pulse is thready and rapid. Often results from sudden and rapid leaking of qi.	气脱证	qì tuō zhèng	



WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1110	Qi blockage pattern		Characterized by colic or paroxysmal abdominal pain, absence of bowel sounds or flatus, and obstruction of the bladder and bowel movements. Alternatively, sudden fainting, trismus and limb rigidity may be present. Often results from blockage of qi activity.	气闭证	qì bì zhèng	
1111	Qi deficiency induced qi stagnation pattern		Characterized by lassitude, shortness of breath, fatigue, and distension, tightness and migratory pain in the chest or abdomen. The tongue is pale. The pulse is wiry and delayed. Often occurs when qi fails to move and causes qi stagnation.	气虚气滞证	qì xū qì zhì zhèng	
1112	Blood deficiency pattern		Characterized by a pale or sallow complexion, pale lips, tongue and fingernails, dizziness, blurred vision, palpitations, dream-disturbed sleep, hands/feet numbness, scanty menstruation with a pale menstrual colour, and delayed period or amenorrhea. The pulse is thready. Often occurs when blood fails to nourish the zang-fu organs, meridians and other body tissues.	血虚证	xuè xū zhèng	
1113	Blood stasis pattern		Characterized by local bluish lumps with tenderness. Alternatively, abdominal masses with stabbing pain in a fixed location or dark purple haemorrhagic spots may be present. The tongue is purple or with ecchymosis. The pulse is wiry and hesitant. Often occurs when stagnant blood obstructs the circulation of blood.	血瘀证	xuè yū zhèng	
1114	Blood heat pattern		Characterized by haemoptysis, haematemesis, nosebleed, bloody urine, bloody stools with a bright red, sticky colour, and earlier period with heavy menstruation. Alternatively, red, swollen and painful sores/boils, restlessness, thirst, and fever may be present. The tongue is deep red. The pulse is slippery and rapid. Often occurs when exuberant fire heat in the zang-fu organs causes the blood to flow recklessly.	血热证	xuè rè zhèng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1115	Blood cold pattern		Characterized by pain in the hands/feet with a dark purple colour and cold sensation, the pain alleviates with warmth and aggravates with cold. Alternatively, lower abdominal pain, cold limbs and delayed period with a dark purple menstrual colour and clots may be present. The tongue is pale dark with a white coating. The pulse is deep, slow and hesitant. Often occurs when cold causes the qi and blood to stagnate.	血寒证	xuè hán zhèng	血寒凝滞证
1116	Blood dryness pattern		Characterized by flaking of grey-white dandruff and dry scalp. Often results from blood/fluid deficiency, spleen deficiency or heat-damaging yin.	血燥证	xuè zào zhèng	
1117	Blood collapse pattern		Characterized by a pale face, dizziness, blurred vision, mild to severe palpitations, shortness of breath, and cold limbs. The tongue is pale. The pulse feels like a scallion stalk. Often results from sudden or chronic blood loss.	血脱证	xuè tuō zhèng	
1118	Blood deficiency stirring wind pattern	Blood deficiency generating wind pattern	Characterized by a lustreless complexion, dry fingernails, dream-disturbed sleep, blurred vision, limb numbness, and skin itching. Often occurs when blood fails to nourish the body and causes stirring of internal wind.	血虚动风证	xuè xū dòng fēng zhèng	血虚生风证
1119	Blood deficiency-induced wind dryness pattern		Characterized by dry, rough, itchy and scaly skin, malnourishment and loss of hair, skin numbness, contraction of the hands/feet, a pale, lustreless complexion, pale white fingernails, dizziness, and blurred vision. The tongue is pale. The pulse is thready. Often occurs when blood fails to nourish the skin, tendons and muscles.	血虚风燥证	xuè xū fēng zào zhèng	血虚风盛证
1120	Blood and fluids deficiency pattern		Characterized by a pale, lustreless complexion, withered skin, pale white lips and fingernails, dry nose, throat and eyes, scanty urination and constipation. The tongue is dry and red. The pulse is thready and hesitant. Often occurs when blood and body fluids fail to nourish and moisten the body.	血虚津亏证	xuè xū jīn kuī zhèng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1121	Cold retention with blood deficiency pattern		Characterized by a pale dark complexion, dizziness, blurred vision, dark purple lips and tongue, cold hands/feet, and localized coldness, pain and numbness. Alternatively, delayed period, scanty menstrual volume in purple colour, clots, dysmenorrhea or amenorrhoea may be present. The tongue coating is white. The pulse is deep, thready and hesitant. Often results from blood deficiency coupled with cold retention.	血虚寒凝证	xuè xū hán níng zhèng	
1122	Qi and blood deficiency pattern		Characterized by lassitude, shortness of breath, reluctance to talk, a pale white or sallow complexion, dizziness, blurred vision, pale lips and fingernails, palpitations and insomnia. The tongue is pale. The pulse is weak. Often occurs when qi and blood fail to nourish the body.	气血两虚证	qì xuè liǎng xū zhèng	
1123	Blood loss-induced qi collapse pattern		Characterized by a pale complexion, cold limbs, profuse sweating, and weak breathing. In severe cases, fainting may be present. The pulse is extremely feeble, or deficient and large. Often occurs when heavy blood loss causes qi to collapse.	气随血脱证	qì suí xuè tuō zhèng	
1124	Qi failing to hold blood pattern	Qi failing to control blood pattern	Characterized by bloody stools, subcutaneous haemorrhage, nosebleed, gum bleed, uterine bleeding, heavy menstruation, lassitude, shortness of breath, reluctance to talk and a lustreless complexion. The tongue is pale. The pulse is weak. Often occurs when qi fails to control blood within the vessels.	气不摄血证	qì bù shè xuè zhèng	气不统血证
1125	Qi and yin deficiency pattern	Insufficiency of qi and yin pattern	Characterized by lassitude, shortness of breath, reluctance to talk, a dry mouth and throat, tidal fever, spontaneous sweating, night sweats, scanty urine, and constipation. The tongue is red or enlarged with a dry, scanty coating. The pulse is thready, weak or deficient and rapid. Often results from qi deficiency coupled with consumption of yin fluids.	气阴两虚证	qì yīn liǎng xū zhèng	气阴亏虚证

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1126	Qi stagnation and blood stasis pattern		Characterized by stabbing or migratory migratory pain in a fixed location. Movable masses may be present. The tongue is purple or with ecchymosis. The pulse is wiry and hesitant. Often occurs when qi stagnation affects the flow of blood.	气滞血瘀证	qì zhì xuè yū zhèng	
1127	Qi stagnation with phlegm retention pattern		Characterized by distension, tightness and migratory pain in the chest, subcostal region, and abdomen. Alternatively, masses, skin hardness/ numbness, depression and white phlegm may be present. The tongue coating is white and greasy. The pulse is wiry and slippery. Often results from qi stagnation coupled with internal retention of turbid phlegm.	气滞痰凝证	qì zhì tán níng zhèng	气郁痰凝证; 气郁痰阻证; 气滞痰阻证
1128	Qi stagnation with dampness retention pattern		Characterized by distension, tightness and migratory pain in the chest, subcostal region and abdomen, nausea, vomiting, body heaviness, dizziness and drowsiness. Oedema may also be present. The tongue coating is white and greasy. The pulse is wiry and slippery, or soft and delayed. Often results from qi stagnation coupled with internal retention of turbid dampness.	气滞湿阻证	qì zhì shī zǔ zhèng	气滞湿困证; 湿阻气滞证
1129	Qi stagnation transformed fire pattern		Characterized by depression, restlessness, irritability, distension, tightness and burning pain in the subcostal region, and a dry, bitter mouth. The tongue is red with a yellow coating. The pulse is wiry and rapid. Often occurs when qi stagnation transforms into fire.	气郁化火证	qì yù huà huǒ zhèng	气滞化火证; 气滞化热证; 气郁化热证
1130	Qi stagnation induced water retention pattern		Characterized by limb oedema, inhibited urination, body heaviness and distension, tightness and migratory pain in the chest, subcostal region, and abdomen. The tongue is pale with a white, slippery coating. The pulse is wiry and delayed. Often occurs when qi stagnation causes water retention.	气滞水停证	qì zhì shuǐ tíng zhèng	
1131	Qi deficiency induced fever pattern		Characterized by a persistent low-grade fever that aggravates upon fatigue, low food intake, fatigue, shortness of breath, and reluctance to talk. The tongue is pale. The pulse is weak. Often results from qi deficiency and floating of yang qi.	气虚发热证	qì xū fā rè zhèng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1132	Qi deficiency with phlegm retention pattern		Characterized by shortness of breath, fatigue, cough with phlegm, mental confusion, and skin numbness. The tongue coating is greasy. The pulse is slippery. Alternatively, goiter or scrofula may be present. Often results from qi deficiency coupled with internal retention of turbid phlegm.	气虚痰结证	qì xū tán jié zhèng	气虚痰阻证
1133	Qi deficiency with dampness retention pattern		Characterized by low food intake, fatigue, body heaviness and chest tightness. Abdominal distension and diarrhoea may also be present. The tongue is enlarged with a greasy coating. The pulse is soft. Often results from qi deficiency coupled with dampness retention.	气虚湿困证	qì xū shī kùn zhèng	气虚湿阻证
1134	Qi deficiency induced blood stasis pattern		Characterized by a pale, dark-grey complexion, fatigue, shallow breathing, reluctance to talk, and severe pain with a fixed location. The tongue is pale purple or with ecchymosis. The pulse is deep and hesitant. Often occurs when qi fails to circulate blood.	气虚血瘀证	qì xū xuè yū zhèng	气虚血凝证
1135	Qi deficiency with external contraction pattern		Characterized by aversion to cold, fever, spontaneous sweating, headache, nasal obstruction, a low, weak voice, shortness of breath and lassitude. The pulse is superficial and weak. Often results from constitutional deficiency, insecure Wei-defence and exposure to external pathogenic factors.	气虚外感证	qì xū wài gǎn zhèng	
1136	Blood deficiency induced internal heat pattern		Characterized by a lustreless complexion and fever. The tongue is pale. The pulse is weak. Often results from blood deficiency generating internal heat.	血虚内热证	xuè xū nèi rè zhèng	
1137	Fluids deficiency pattern	Fluid deficiency pattern	Characterized by dry mouth, nose, throat and lips, thirst with a desire to drink water, scanty urine and constipation. The tongue is dry and red. The pulse is thready, rapid and weak. Often occurs when bodily fluids fail to nourish the zang-fu organs and tissues.	津液亏虚证	jīn yè kuī xū zhèng	伤津证

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1138	Fluids deficiency with heat accumulation pattern		Characterized by fever, thirst, dry lips and tongue, inhibited urination, constipation and restlessness. The tongue is red with a yellow coating. The pulse is rapid. Often results from fluids insufficiency coupled with internal retention of heat.	津亏热结证	jīn kuī rè jié zhèng	
1139	Fluids loss pattern	Fluid exhaustion pattern	Characterized by weight loss, dry, cracked lips, dry, withered skin, sunken eyes, impaired joint movement, scanty urination and constipation. The tongue is dry. The pulse is thready and weak. Often results from a severe deficiency of bodily fluids.	液脱证	yè tuō zhèng	
1140	Essence and qi deficiency pattern	Essence deficiency pattern Essential qi insufficiency	Characterized by weight loss, dizziness, tinnitus cranii, short stature, slow movements and mental retardation. Alternatively, low sperm count, impotence or premature ejaculation may be present. Often results from essential qi deficiency.	精气亏虚证	jīng qì kuī xū zhèng	精气不足证
1141	Essence and blood deficiency pattern		Characterized by dizziness, poor memory, tinnitus, palpitations, a pale face and delayed wound healing. Often results from a deficiency of essence and blood due to chronic diseases or insufficient generation of qi and blood.	精血亏虚证	jīng xuè kuī xū zhèng	
1142	Marrow deficiency pattern		Characterized by dizziness, tinnitus, headache with a hollow sensation, low back soreness/weakness, slow movements, limb flaccidity. Often occurs when essence and marrow fail to nourish the body.	髓亏证	suǐ kuī zhèng	
1143	Patterns of the zang-fu organs and meridians	Organ system patterns		脏腑经络证类	zàng fǔ jīng luò zhèng lèi	
1144	Patterns of the heart system	Heart system patterns		心系证类	xīn xì zhèng lèi	
1145	Heart qi deficiency pattern		Characterized by palpitations, shortness of breath and lassitude that aggravate upon physical exertion. Spontaneous sweating and a pale face may also be present. The tongue is pale. The pulse is deficient. This pattern often occurs when heart qi fails to help with the heart to pump blood.	心气虚证	xīn qì xū zhèng	心气亏虚证

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1146	Deficiency of heart qi and blood pattern	Dual deficiency of heart qi and blood pattern	Characterized by palpitations, shortness of breath, lassitude, fatigue, dizziness, forgetfulness, dream-disturbed sleep and a pale face. The tongue is pale. The pulse is thready and weak. This pattern often occurs when qi and blood fail to nourish the heart and heart mind.	心气血两虚证	xīn qì xuè liǎng xū zhèng	
1147	Deficiency of heart qi and yin pattern		Characterized by palpitations, shortness of breath, lassitude, dizziness, insomnia, dream-disturbed sleep and flushed cheeks. The tongue is red with a scanty coating. The pulse is rapid or weak. This pattern often occurs when qi and yin fail to nourish the heart and heart mind.	心气阴两虚证	xīn qì yīn liǎng xū zhèng	
1148	Heart yang deficiency pattern		Characterized by mild to severe palpitations, chest tightness, cold intolerance, cold limbs, a bright pale face, shortness of breath, and spontaneous sweating. Oedema in the leg and dark lips may also be present. The tongue is purple with a white, slippery coating. The pulse is weak or regularly/irregularly intermittent. This pattern can be a further progression of heart qi deficiency. It may also occur when heart yang fails to warm the body.	心阳虚证	xīn yáng xū zhèng	心阳亏虚证
1149	Sudden collapse of heart yang pattern	Heart yang collapse pattern	Characterized by cold sweats, cold limbs, faint breathing, mild to severe palpitations, a pale complexion and mental confusion or unconsciousness. The pulse is extremely weak. This pattern can be a further progression of heart yang deficiency. It may also occur as a result of sudden blockage or attack by excess pathogens.	心阳暴脱证	xīn yáng bào tuō zhèng	
1150	Heart blood deficiency pattern		Characterized by palpitations, dizziness, dream-disturbed sleep, forgetfulness, a pale white or sallow complexion and pale lips. The tongue is pale. The pulse is thready. This pattern often occurs when heart blood fails to nourish the heart and heart spirit.	心血虚证	xīn xuè xū zhèng	心血亏虚证

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1151	Heart yin deficiency pattern		Characterized by palpitations, restlessness, insomnia, dream-disturbed sleep, dizziness, forgetfulness, hot flushes and night sweats. The tongue is red with a scanty coating. The pulse is thready and rapid. This pattern often occurs when heart yin fails to nourish the heart and heart spirit.	心阴虚证	xīn yīn xū zhèng	心阴亏虚证
1152	Heart vessels stasis pattern	Heart blood stagnation pattern; heart vessel obstruction pattern	Characterized by chest tightness, palpitations, and stabbing cardiac pain that radiates to the shoulder and back. The tongue is dark purple. The pulse is thready and hesitant or regularly/irregularly intermittent. This pattern often occurs when stagnant blood obstructs the heart vessels.	心脉瘀阻证	xīn mài yū zǔ zhèng	心血瘀滞证; 心脉瘀阻证; 心脉痹阻证
1153	Phlegm obstructing the heart vessels pattern		Characterized by chest tightness, chest pain, obesity, profuse phlegm, a heavy sensation of the body, and a dark complexion. The tongue is pale purple with a white, greasy coating. The pulse is slippery. This pattern often occurs when phlegm turbidity obstructs the flow of heart blood.	痰阻心脉证	tán zǔ xīn mài zhèng	
1154	Fluid retention affecting the pericardium pattern		Characterized by mild to severe palpitations, chest fullness and tightness, panting, and an inability to lie flat. The tongue is pale purple with a white, slippery coating. The pulse is deep, hidden or weak. This pattern often occurs when retained fluid in the pericardium obstructs the flow of qi and blood.	饮停心包证	yǐn tíng xīn bāo zhèng	
1155	Upward flaming of heart fire pattern	Heart fire flaming upward pattern	Characterized by fever, thirst, restlessness, a red face and red and painful mouth/tongue ulcerations. The pulse is rapid. This pattern often occurs when hyperactive fire ascends to the mouth/tongue along the heart meridian.	心火上炎证	xīn huǒ shàng yán zhèng	
1156	Heat blocking the pericardium pattern	Heat blocking the heart mind pattern	Characterized by fever, thirst, and mental unconsciousness. Delirium, mania, a red face and rapid breathing may also be present. The tongue is red with a yellow coating. The pulse is slippery and rapid. This pattern often occurs when exuberant excessive heat disturbs the heart spirit.	热闭心包证	rè bì xīn bāo zhèng	热闭心神证



WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1157	Heat disturbing the heart spirit pattern	Fire harassing heart spirit pattern Fire disturbing the heart mind	Characterized by palpitations, restlessness, insomnia and dream-disturbed sleep. Delirium, fever, thirst and a red face may also be present. The tongue is red with a yellow coating. The pulse is slippery and rapid. This pattern often occurs when exuberant excessive heat disturbs the heart spirit.	热扰心神证	rè rǎo xīn shén zhèng	火扰心神证
1158	Phlegm fire disturbing the heart pattern	Phlegm-fire harassing the heart system pattern Phlegm fire/heat disturbing the mind; phlegm heat disturbing the heart	Characterized by hyperactivity, talkativeness, restlessness, impulsiveness, uncontrollable behaviour, inattention, feverish sensation in the chest, vexation, a poor appetite, a bitter mouth, constipation, and dark-yellow urine. The tongue is red with a yellow, greasy coating. The pulse is slippery and rapid. This pattern often occurs as a result of an internal build-up of phlegm fire.	痰火扰心证	tán huǒ rǎo xīn zhèng	痰火扰神证; 痰热扰神证; 痰热扰心证
1159	Phlegm misting the heart pattern	Phlegm obstructing the heart; phlegm blocking the heart; phlegm blocking the heart spirit	Characterized by dull expression, clouding of consciousness, depression, weird behaviour, an inability to recognize people, phlegm sounds in the throat, chest tightness, profuse phlegm, and a dark, grey complexion. The tongue coating is greasy. The pulse is slippery. This pattern often occurs when phlegm turbidity mists the heart spirit.	痰迷心窍证	tán mí xīn qiào zhèng	痰蒙心窍证;痰阻心窍证;痰闭心窍证;痰蒙心神证;痰阻心神证;痰迷心神证
1160	Blood stasis obstructing the brain collaterals pattern	Stasis obstructing the brain pattern	Characterized by dizziness, persistent stabbing headache in a fixed location, and a dark grey complexion. Some patients may experience transient unconsciousness or poor memory after head trauma. The tongue is dark purple or with ecchymosis/petechiae. The pulse is thready and hesitant. This pattern often occurs when stagnant blood blocks the brain collaterals.	瘀阻脑络证	yū zǔ nǎo luò zhèng	瘀阻脑窍证
1161	Disquieted heart spirit pattern	Heart spirit restlessness pattern	Characterized by palpitations, panic, restlessness, insomnia, dream-disturbed sleep, and jumpy or easily startled. This pattern often results from emotional disturbance or medical conditions.	心神不宁证	xīn shén bù níng zhèng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1162	Excess heat in the small intestine pattern	Small intestine excess heat pattern	Characterized by fever, thirst, restlessness, insomnia, mouth/tongue ulcerations, scanty, yellow urine and painful urination with a burning sensation. In severe cases, bloody urine may also be present. The tongue is red with a yellow coating. The pulse is rapid. This pattern often occurs when heart fire flows downward to the small intestine or when damp heat retains in the small intestine.	小肠实热证	xiǎo cháng shí rè zhèng	
1163	Small intestine qi stagnation pattern	Small intestine qi stagnation pattern	Characterized by abdominal fullness/distension/pain that aggravates upon emotional disturbance and is alleviated upon belching or flatus. The pulse is wiry. This pattern often results from qi stagnation in the small intestine.	小肠气滞证	xiǎo cháng qì zhì zhèng	
1164	Deficiency cold in the small intestine pattern	Small intestine deficiency cold pattern	Characterized by undigested food in stools, dull abdominal pain that alleviates upon warmth, thirst with a desire to drink warm water, cold limbs, inhibited urination and loose stools. The tongue is pale with a white, slippery coating. The pulse is deep, weak and slack. This pattern often occurs when internal cold (due to yang qi deficiency) affects the functions of the small intestine in separating the clear from turbid.	小肠虚寒证	xiǎo cháng xū hán zhèng	
1165	Patterns of the lung system	Lung system patterns		肺系证类	fèi xì zhèng lèi	
1166	Lung qi/yin deficiency pattern	Lung qi and yin deficiency pattern	Characterized by weak, unproductive coughs, shortness of breath, panting, a low/hoarse voice and feverish sensations in the palms, soles and chest. The pulse is thready and weak. This pattern often results from a deficiency of lung qi and yin.	肺气阴两虚证	fèi qì yīn liǎng xū zhèng	
1167	Lung yang deficiency pattern	Lung yang deficiency pattern	Characterized by panting, weak coughs with thin, white phlegm, chest tightness, a low voice, shallow breathing, shortness of breath, and cold limbs. The tongue is pale, purple, enlarged and tender with a white, slippery coating. The pulse is deep, slow and weak. This pattern often occurs when yang qi fails to warm the lung.	肺阳虚证	fèi yáng xū zhèng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1168	Lung yin deficiency pattern	Lung yin deficiency pattern Insufficiency of lung yin pattern	Characterized by unproductive coughs or coughing with scanty, sticky phlegm or blood-stained phlegm, a dry mouth and throat, a hoarse voice, hot flushes, flushed cheeks, and night sweats. The tongue is dry and red. The pulse is thready and rapid. This pattern often occurs when lung yin deficiency generates internal heat.	肺阴虚证	fèi yīn xū zhèng	肺阴亏虚证
1169	Lung qi deficiency pattern	Lung qi deficiency pattern Defense qi deficiency pattern Lung deficiency with exterior weakness pattern Lung and defense qi insecurity pattern Insecurity of lung Wei-defence	Characterized by weak coughing and panting, and shortness of breath that aggravate upon physical exertion, expectoration of thin clear phlegm, a low voice, spontaneous sweating, wind intolerance and susceptibility to common colds. The tongue is pale. The pulse is weak. This pattern often results from lung qi deficiency and decreased lung function.	肺气虚证	fèi qì xū zhèng	肺卫气虚不固证;肺卫气虚证
1170	Excess heat in the lung pattern	Excess lung heat pattern; exuberance of lung heat pattern	Characterized by fever, thirst, cough, rapid breathing and panting. Chest pain, sore throat, nasal flaring, constipation and yellow urine may also be present. The tongue is red with a yellow coating. The pulse is rapid. This pattern often occurs when pathogenic heat affects the lung.	肺实热证	fèi shí rè zhèng	肺热壅盛证;肺热炽盛证
1171	Lung heat and yin deficiency pattern	Lung heat damaging fluids pattern; lung dryness due to yin/fluids deficiency pattern	Characterized by fever, thirst, cough with scanty phlegm, panting, constipation and yellow urine. The tongue is red with a dry, yellow coating. The pulse is rapid. This pattern often occurs when exuberant lung heat consumes yin fluids.	肺热阴虚证	fèi rè yīn xū zhèng	肺热津伤证;阴虚肺燥证;肺燥津亏证

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1172	Wind heat attacking the lung pattern	Wind heat invading the lung pattern	Characterized by cough, panting, fever, mild aversion to wind cold, and body ache or sore throat. The tongue tip is red with a thin, yellow coating. The pulse is superficial and rapid. This pattern often occurs when wind heat invades the lung defence and affects the dispersing and descending of lung qi.	风热犯肺证	fēng rè fàn fèi zhèng	
1173	Phlegm heat accumulating in the lung pattern	Phlegm heat obstructing the lung pattern Phlegm fire/heat accumulating in the lung; phlegm heat obstructing the lung	Characterized by fever, thirst, cough, panting, expectoration of yellow, sticky phlegm, and chest tightness. The tongue is red with a yellow, greasy coating. The pulse is slippery and rapid. This pattern often occurs when phlegm heat accumulates in the lung.	痰热壅肺证	tán rè yōng fèi zhèng	痰火壅肺证; 痰火蕴肺证; 痰热蕴肺证; 痰热闭肺证
1174	Phlegm dampness accumulating in the lung pattern	Turbid phlegm accumulation in the lung pattern Phlegm-dampness obstructing the lung; phlegm dampness accumulating in the lung	Characterized by cough with profuse phlegm (white and sticky/thick/thin and clear, especially in the morning, cough alleviates upon expectoration of phlegm), heavy, turbid coughing sounds, chest tightness, abdominal fullness/distension, and a poor appetite. The tongue coating is white and greasy. The pulse is soft and slippery. This pattern often occurs when phlegm-dampness affects the dispersing and descending of lung qi.	痰湿蕴肺证	tán shī yùn fèi zhèng	痰湿阻肺证; 痰湿蕴肺证; 痰浊蕴肺证; 痰浊阻肺证
1175	Phlegm and blood stasis obstructing the lung pattern	Phlegm stasis obstructing the lung pattern	Characterized by cough, panting, chest tightness coupled with a stabbing pain, and profuse or blood-stained phlegm. The tongue is pale purple with a greasy coating. The pulse is wiry and slippery or wiry and hesitant. This pattern often occurs when stagnant blood and turbid phlegm accumulate in the lung.	痰瘀阻肺证	tán yū zǔ fèi zhèng	痰瘀阻肺证
1176	Wind cold attacking the lung pattern	Wind cold fettering the lung pattern Wind cold binding the lung	Characterized by aversion to cold, fever, absence of sweating, cough, chest tightness, panting and expectoration of white phlegm. The tongue coating is thin and white. The pulse is superficial and tense. This pattern often occurs when wind cold affects the dispersing of lung qi.	风寒袭肺证	fēng hán xí fèi zhèng	风寒束肺证

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1177	Cold fluids affecting the lung pattern	Retention of cold fluids in the lung pattern	Characterized by frequent, violent coughs with profuse, thin and white phlegm, rapid breathing and chest tightness. In severe cases, panting, an inability to lie flat, fever and aversion to cold may also be present. The tongue coating is white and greasy. The pulse is superficial and tense. This pattern often occurs when retained fluid combined with external cold affect the dispersing and descending of lung qi.	寒饮伏肺证	hán yǐn fú fèi zhèng	寒饮停肺证
1178	Cold phlegm obstructing the lung pattern	Cold phlegm obstructing the lung pattern Retention of cold phlegm in the lung	Characterized by cough, panting, phlegm sounds in the throat, chest fullness/tightness, white, sticky or thin/clear phlegm, shortness of breath upon physical exertion, an inability to lie flat, cold limbs, and cold intolerance. Fever and aversion to cold may also be present. The tongue coating is white and greasy. The pulse is tense. This pattern often occurs when retained phlegm and external cold affect the descending of lung qi.	寒痰阻肺证	hán tán zǔ fèi zhèng	寒痰停肺证
1179	Exterior cold with lung heat pattern	Exterior cold with lung heat pattern	Characterized by aversion to cold, fever, thirst, absence of sweating, restlessness, cough, panting and chest tightness. The tongue coating is yellow mixed with white. The pulse is superficial and rapid. This pattern often occurs when cold binds the Wei-defence and causes internal lung heat.	表寒肺热证	biǎo hán fèi rè zhèng	
1180	Wind dryness damaging the lung pattern	Dryness invading the lung pattern Dryness damaging/attacking the lung	Characterized by unproductive coughs or cough with scanty, sticky or blood-stained phlegm, dry nose and throat, and a dry mouth. The tongue tip is red with a dry, thin and yellow coating. The pulse is thready and rapid. This pattern often occurs when wind dryness consumes body fluids and affects the dispersing and descending of lung qi.	风燥伤肺证	fēng zào shāng fèi zhèng	燥邪伤肺证;燥邪犯肺证
1181	Cool dryness pattern	Cool dryness attacking the lung pattern	Characterized by severe aversion to cold, mild fever, headache, absence of sweating, a dry mouth/nose/throat, and cough with scanty phlegm. The tongue coating is thin, white and dry. The pulse is superficial and tense. This pattern often occurs when cool dryness affects the lung.	凉燥证	liáng zào zhèng	凉燥袭肺证

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1182	Warm dryness pattern	Warm dryness damaging/attacking the lung pattern	Characterized by fever, mild aversion to wind cold, unproductive cough, thirst, dry skin/nose/throat, and scanty, yellow urine. The tongue coating is thin and yellow. The pulse is superficial and rapid. This pattern often occurs when warm dryness consumes yin fluids.	温燥证	wēn zào zhèng	温燥伤肺证; 温燥袭肺证
1183	Lung dryness affecting the large intestine pattern	Lung dryness with intestinal obstruction pattern	Characterized by cough, thirst, panting, constipation, and abdominal fullness/distension/pain. The tongue coating is yellow and dry. The pulse is deep and excessive. This pattern often occurs when lung dryness consumes body fluids and blocks intestinal qi.	肺燥肠闭证	fèi zào cháng bì zhèng	
1184	Stasis obstructing the lung collaterals pattern		Characterized by stabbing chest pain, and cough with haemoptysis (coughing up of dark red blood or clots). The tongue is dark purple or with ecchymosis. The pulse is wiry and hesitant. This pattern often occurs when stagnant blood obstructs the lung collaterals.	瘀阻肺络证	yū zǔ fèi luò zhèng	
1185	Damp heat in the intestine pattern	Large intestine dampness heat pattern	Characterized by abdominal distension/pain, sudden, fulminant diarrhoea, diarrhoea with blood, tenesmus, a sensation of incomplete evacuation, sticky, strong-odoured stools, a burning sensation around the anus, fever, thirst, and scanty urine. The tongue is red with a yellow, greasy coating. The pulse is slippery and rapid. This pattern often occurs when internal damp heat obstructs the intestine.	肠道湿热证	cháng dào shī rè zhèng	
1186	Deficiency cold in the large intestine pattern	Large intestine deficiency cold pattern	Characterized by chronic diarrhoea/dysentery, dull abdominal pain that alleviates upon warmth and pressure, cold intolerance and cold limbs. The tongue is pale with a white, slippery coating. The pulse is deep, slow and weak. This pattern often occurs when yang qi fails to secure the large intestine.	大肠虚寒证	dà cháng xū hán zhèng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1187	Intestinal dryness pattern	Large intestine fluid deficiency pattern Fluid insufficiency in the large intestine	Characterized by extremely dry stools (like sheep droppings), one bowel movement in several days, abdominal distension/pain, palpable abdominal masses, and thirst. The tongue is dry. The pulse is wiry and hesitant. This pattern often occurs when body fluids fail to nourish the large intestine.	肠燥津亏证	cháng zào jīn kuī zhèng	大肠液亏证; 大肠津亏证
1188	Heat stagnation in the large intestine pattern	Large intestine excess heat pattern Excess heat in the large intestine	Characterized by fever, thirst, constipation, abdominal distension/hardness/fullness and abdominal pain with tenderness. The tongue is red with a dry, yellow coating. The pulse is deep and rapid. This pattern often occurs when exuberant interior heat blocks the intestinal qi.	大肠热结证	dà cháng rè jié zhèng	肠道热结证; 肠道实热证; 大肠实热证
1189	Intestinal dryness due to blood deficiency pattern		Characterized by difficulty passing of dry stools, one bowel movement in several days, and a pale face. Bloody stools may also be present. The tongue is pale. The pulse is thready and hesitant. This pattern often occurs when blood fails to nourish the large intestine.	血虚肠燥证	xuè xū cháng zào zhèng	血虚肠结证
1190	Intestinal dryness due to yin deficiency pattern		Characterized by difficulty passing of dry stools (like sheep droppings), one bowel movement in several days, and a dry mouth/nose/throat/skin. The tongue is dry and red. The pulse is thready, rapid and hesitant. This pattern often occurs when yin fluids fail to nourish the large intestine.	阴虚肠燥证	yīn xū cháng zào zhèng	
1191	Dampness obstructing the large intestine pattern		Characterized by abdominal distension/dull pain, and thin, clear and loose stools or sticky, strong-odoured stools. The tongue coating is white and slippery. The pulse is soft and slack. This pattern often occurs when dampness affects the conduction of the large intestine.	湿阻肠道证	shī zǔ cháng dào zhèng	
1192	Cold retention in the stomach and intestines pattern		Characterized by cold, intense pain in the stomach/abdomen that alleviates upon warmth, vomiting, diarrhoea of thin, clear stools, aversion to cold and cold limbs. The tongue coating is white. The pulse is wiry. This pattern often occurs when cold obstructs the qi flow of the stomach and intestines.	寒滞胃肠证	hán zhì wèi cháng zhèng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1193	Wind damaging intestinal collaterals pattern		Characterized by bright red stool, dry stools and itching around the anus. In severe cases, the passing of pure blood may be present. The tongue is red with a yellow coating. The pulse is wiry. This pattern often occurs when wind fire damages the intestinal collaterals, resulting in intestinal bleeding.	肠风伤络证	cháng fēng shāng luò zhèng	风伤肠络证
1194	Patterns of the spleen system	Spleen system patterns		脾系证类	pí xì zhèng lèi	
1195	Spleen qi deficiency pattern	Spleen qi deficiency pattern Spleen qi depletion pattern Spleen qi insecurity pattern Insufficiency of spleen	Characterized by low food intake, abdominal distension that aggravates after eating food, loose stools, and lassitude. The tongue is pale with a white coating. The pulse is slack and weak. This pattern often occurs when spleen qi fails to transport and transform.	脾气虚证	pí qì xū zhèng	脾气亏虚证
1196	Spleen qi sinking pattern	Spleen qi sinking pattern Middle qi sinking pattern Qi sinking of the middle jiao	Characterized by a bearing-down sensation in the abdomen that aggravates after eating food. Frequent urges to defaecate with a bearing-down sensation of the anus, persistent diarrhoea, rectal prolapse, prolapsed uterus or cloudy urine may be present. Associated symptoms may include shortness of breath, fatigue, lassitude, reluctance to talk, dizziness, blurred vision, a pale, lustreless face, poor appetite and loose stools. The tongue is pale with a white coating. The pulse is delayed and weak. This pattern often develops from severe spleen qi deficiency and occurs when spleen qi fails to ascend.	脾气下陷证	pí qì xià xiàn zhèng	中气下陷证
1197	Insecurity of spleen qi pattern		Characterized by persistent diarrhoea, shortness of breath, a bearing-down sensation, a poor appetite, and abdominal distension. In severe cases, faecal incontinence may also be present. The tongue is pale. The pulse is weak. This pattern often occurs when spleen qi fails to secure the intestines.	脾气不固证	pí qì bù gù zhèng	



WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1198	Spleen failing to control blood pattern	Spleen failing to hold blood within the vessels	Characterized by chronic bleeding, purpura, uterine bleeding, heavy menstrual flow, early menstruation, poor appetite, abdominal distension, loose stools and fatigue. The tongue is pale. The pulse is weak. This pattern often occurs when spleen qi fails to keep the blood within the vessels.	脾不统血证	pí bù tǒng xuè zhèng	脾不摄血证
1199	Spleen deficiency generating wind pattern		Characterized by mild twitching of the hands/feet, cold limbs, faint breathing from the nose and mouth and sleep with eyes open. Often occurs when chronic vomiting/diarrhoea or overuse of purgative medicine damage spleen qi. In children, this pattern occurs when congenital spleen and kidney deficiency generates internal wind.	脾虚生风证	pí xū shēng fēng zhèng	
1200	Spleen yang deficiency pattern	Spleen yang insufficiency pattern	Characterized by cold abdominal pain that alleviates upon warmth, vomiting of clear water, cold limbs, cold intolerance, loose stools, and clear, profuse urine. The tongue is pale, enlarged and tender with a white, moist coating. The pulse is deep and slow. This pattern often results from spleen yang deficiency coupled with internal cold.	脾阳虚证	pí yáng xū zhèng	脾阳亏虚证;脾阳不足证
1201	Spleen yin deficiency pattern	Spleen yin depletion pattern Insufficiency of spleen yin	Characterized by a poor appetite, abdominal distension, constipation, weight loss, lassitude, scanty saliva, dry lips, and a low-grade fever. The tongue is red with a scanty coating. The pulse is thready and rapid. This pattern often occurs when spleen yin deficiency affects the transportation and transformation of the spleen and stomach.	脾阴虚证	pí yīn xū zhèng	脾阴亏虚证
1202	Spleen deficiency with qi stagnation pattern		Characterized by low food intake, abdominal distension/pain, loose stools with a sensation of incomplete evacuation, bowel sounds, flatus and lassitude. The pulse is wiry. This pattern often results from spleen qi deficiency with an obstructed flow of qi.	脾虚气滞证	pí xū qì zhì zhèng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1203	Spleen deficiency with water retention pattern	Spleen deficiency with qi stagnation pattern	Characterized by low food intake, abdominal distension, loose stools, lassitude, a pale complexion, and facial puffiness. Ascites may also be present. The tongue is pale and enlarged with a white, slippery coating. The pulse is soft. This pattern often occurs when spleen qi fails to transport and transform, resulting in water retention.	脾虚水泛证	pí xū shuǐ fàn zhèng	脾气虚水停证; 脾气虚水湿证
1204	Spleen yang deficiency with water retention pattern		Characterized by low food intake, abdominal distension, loose stools, cold intolerance, facial puffiness, and leg oedema. Ascites may also be present. The tongue is pale and enlarged with a white, slippery coating. The pulse is soft or weak. This pattern often occurs when spleen yang fails to warm and transport, resulting in water retention.	脾阳虚水泛证	pí yáng xū shuǐ fàn zhèng	脾阳虚水停证
1205	Spleen deficiency with dampness pattern	Spleen deficiency with dampness accumulation pattern Spleen deficiency with dampness encumbrance pattern Spleen dampness with dampness accumulation pattern	Characterized by low food intake, abdominal distension, loose stools, and body heaviness or mild oedema. The tongue is pale and enlarged with a white, moist or greasy coating. The pulse is soft and slack. This pattern often results from internal retention of turbid dampness due to spleen qi deficiency.	脾虚湿困证	pí xū shī kùn zhèng	脾虚湿蕴证; 脾虚湿盛证; 脾虚湿泛证
1206	Spleen deficiency with damp heat pattern		Characterized by low food intake, abdominal distension, loose stools, feverish sensation but no fever, and body heaviness. The tongue is red and enlarged with a yellow, greasy coating. The pulse is slippery and rapid. This pattern often results from spleen qi deficiency coupled with internal build-up of damp heat.	脾虚湿热证	pí xū shī rè zhèng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1207	Spleen deficiency with phlegm dampness pattern		Characterized by low food intake, abdominal distension, loose stools, obesity, body heaviness, fatigue, and drowsiness. The tongue is pale and enlarged with a white, greasy coating. The pulse is soft and slack. This pattern often results from spleen qi deficiency coupled with internal build up of phlegm dampness.	脾虚痰湿证	pí xū tán shī zhèng	
1208	Spleen deficiency with food retention pattern	Spleen deficiency with ingestion of food pattern	Characterized by low food intake, abdominal distension, frequent diarrhoea, frequent abdominal distension/pain, acid reflux, a sensation of incomplete evacuation after diarrhoea, and strong-odoured stools. The tongue is pale with a greasy coating. This pattern often results from food retention in the stomach and intestines due to spleen failing to transport and transform.	脾虚食积证	pí xū shí jī zhèng	脾虚夹食证
1209	Spleen deficiency with blood deficiency pattern	Spleen deficiency with blood insufficiency pattern	Characterized by low food intake, abdominal distension, loose stools, dizziness, fatigue, amenorrhea, delayed period, scanty menstruation, and a pale face. The tongue is pale. The pulse is thready and weak. This pattern often occurs when spleen qi fails to generate sufficient blood.	脾虚血亏证	pí xū xuè kuī zhèng	
1210	Damp heat affecting the spleen pattern	Damp heat accumulating in the spleen pattern	Characterized by abdominal fullness/upset, a poor appetite, nausea, vomiting, loose stools with a sensation of incomplete evacuation, body heaviness, thirst but drink a small amount of water, feverish sensation (but no fever) that cannot be resolved after sweating. The tongue is red with a yellow, greasy coating. The pulse is soft and rapid. This pattern often occurs when internal damp heat affects the functioning of the spleen and stomach.	湿热困脾证	shī rè kùn pí zhèng	湿热蕴脾证

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1211	Cold dampness affecting the spleen pattern	Cold dampness encumbering the spleen system pattern Cold dampness accumulating in the spleen pattern	Characterized by abdominal distension/tightness, a greasy taste, a poor appetite, nausea, vomiting, tastelessness, abdominal pain, loose stools, and heaviness of the head and body. Dark yellow eyes/skin, profuse leucorrhoea, and obesity may also be present. The tongue is pale and enlarged with a white, greasy coating. The pulse is soft and delayed. This pattern often occurs when internal cold dampness obstructs spleen yang.	寒湿困脾证	hán shī kùn pí zhèng	寒湿蕴脾证
1212	Worry damaging the spleen pattern	Anxiety damaging the spleen system pattern Overthinking damaging spleen qi	Characterized by worries, suspiciousness, dizziness, lassitude, palpitations, timidity, insomnia, forgetfulness, a poor appetite, and a lustreless complexion. The tongue is pale with a thin, white coating. The pulse is thready. This pattern often results from qi stagnation due to thinking too much, mental over-exertion or emotional disturbance.	思虑伤脾证	sī lǜ shāng pí zhèng	思伤脾气证
1213	Stomach qi deficiency pattern		Characterized by gastric distension/tightness and dull pain that alleviates upon pressure or after eating food, a poor appetite, and fatigue. The tongue is pale and tender. The pulse is weak. This pattern often occurs when stomach qi fails to perform absorption and transportation.	胃气虚证	wèi qì xū zhèng	胃气亏虚证
1214	Ascending of stomach qi pattern	Stomach qi reverse flow pattern Stomach qi uprising pattern	Characterized by vomiting, hiccups, and belching. This pattern often occurs when cold, heat, diet or emotions causes stomach qi to ascend.	胃气上逆证	wèi qì shàng nì zhèng	
1215	Heat-induced ascending of stomach qi pattern	Fire-induced ascending of stomach qi pattern	Characterized by vomiting, hiccups, belching, a burning stomach ache and thirst. The tongue is red with a yellow coating. The pulse is rapid. This pattern often occurs when fire/heat or hot, spicy food disturbs the descending of stomach qi.	胃热气逆证	wèi rè qì nì zhèng	胃火气逆证
1216	Cold-induced ascending of stomach qi pattern		Characterized by vomiting, hiccups, belching, and cold stomach ache. The tongue coating is white. The pulse is wiry and tense. This pattern often occurs when cold affects the descending of stomach qi.	胃寒气逆证	wèi hán qì nì zhèng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1217	Stomach yin deficiency pattern		Characterized by a dry mouth and throat, hunger but no desire to eat food, and a dull stomach ache with a burning sensation. Gastric upset/distension, retching, hiccups and constipation may also be present. The tongue is dry and red. The pulse is thready and rapid. This pattern often occurs when yin fluids fail to nourish the stomach.	胃阴虚证	wèi yīn xū zhèng	胃阴亏虚证
1218	Stomach fire pattern	Stomach heat exuberance pattern; stomach fire exuberance pattern Excess stomach heat pattern Stomach heat pattern	Characterized by a burning stomach pain with tenderness, thirst with a preference for cold drinks, gum swelling and pain, gum bleeding, constipation and scanty, yellow urine. Hunger after eating food and a foul breath may be present. The tongue is red with a yellow coating. The pulse is rapid. This pattern often occurs when accumulated fire heat in the stomach affects the descending of stomach qi.	胃火证	wèi huǒ zhèng	胃热炽盛证; 胃火炽盛证; 胃实热证; 胃热证
1219	Stomach heat with yin deficiency pattern		Characterized by a burning stomach ache, thirst, feverish sensations in the palms, soles and chest, and constipation. The tongue is dry and red with a scanty coating. The pulse is thready and rapid. This pattern often occurs when exuberant stomach heat consumes yin fluids.	胃热阴虚证	wèi rè yīn xū zhèng	
1220	Stomach dryness due to loss of fluids pattern		Characterized by stomach upset and stuffiness, hunger but no appetite, thirst, constipation, and a dry tongue. This pattern often occurs when fluids fail to moisten the stomach.	胃燥津伤证	wèi zào jīn shāng zhèng	胃燥津亏证
1221	Cold attacking the stomach pattern		Characterized by cold, intense stomach ache that alleviates upon warmth, vomiting of clear saliva, aversion to cold, and cold limbs. The tongue coating is white. The pulse is wiry. This pattern often occurs when cold affects the descending of stomach qi.	寒邪犯胃证	hán xié fàn wèi zhèng	
1222	Cold fluids retention in the stomach pattern	Stomach cold with fluids retention pattern	Characterized by gastric masses/distension, splashing sounds in the stomach, and vomiting of thin, clear saliva. The tongue coating is white and slippery. The pulse is wiry. This pattern often occurs when cold fluids remain in the stomach.	寒饮停胃证	hán yǐn tíng wèi zhèng	胃寒饮停证

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1223	Stasis obstructing the stomach collaterals pattern		Characterized by a stabbing stomach ache, tenderness or palpable stomach masses. Some patients may experience vomiting of dark-coloured blood or blood clots. The tongue has ecchymosis. The pulse is wiry and hesitant. This pattern often occurs when stagnant blood obstructs the stomach collaterals.	瘀阻胃络证	yū zǔ wèi luò zhèng	
1224	Yin deficiency of the spleen and stomach pattern	Yin deficiency/deficiency heat of the middle jiao pattern Deficiency heat of the spleen and stomach pattern	Characterized by a dry mouth and throat, hunger but no desire to eat food, weight loss, and constipation. Gastric upset, dull abdominal pain/distension, retching, and hiccups may also be present. The tongue is dry and red. The pulse is thready and rapid. This pattern often occurs when yin fluids fail to nourish the spleen and stomach.	脾胃阴虚证	pí wèi yīn xū zhèng	中焦阴虚证;中焦虚热证;脾胃虚热证
1225	Yang deficiency of the spleen and stomach pattern	Deficiency cold of the spleen and stomach pattern Yang deficiency/deficiency cold of the middle jiao pattern	Characterized by abdominal distension, low food intake, cold abdominal pain that alleviates with warmth and pressure, cold intolerance, cold limbs, and loose stools. The tongue is pale with a white, moist coating. The pulse is deep, slow and weak. This pattern often occurs when yang qi fails to warm the spleen and stomach.	脾胃阳虚证	pí wèi yáng xū zhèng	脾胃虚寒证;中焦阳虚证;中焦虚寒证
1226	Excess heat in the spleen and stomach pattern	Heat accumulating in the spleen and stomach/middle jiao pattern Excess heat in the spleen and stomach/middle jiao pattern	Characterized by a burning stomach ache that alleviates after eating cool-property food, fever, thirst, abdominal pain/distension, and constipation. A foul breath, red, painful mouth ulcerations, gum swelling, pain, and bleeding may also be present. The tongue is red with a yellow coating. The pulse is rapid. This pattern often occurs when exuberant fire heat accumulates in the spleen and stomach.	脾胃实热证	pí wèi shí rè zhèng	脾胃积热证;脾胃热盛证;中焦实热证;中焦积热证;中焦热盛证
1227	Damp heat in the spleen and stomach pattern	Damp heat in the middle jiao pattern	Characterized by feverish sensation (but no fever) that worsens in the afternoon, abdominal masses/distension, nausea, vomiting, a poor appetite, thirst but drink only a small amount of water, yellow urine, and loose stools. This pattern often occurs when damp heat affects the spleen and stomach.	脾胃湿热证	pí wèi shī rè zhèng	中焦湿热证

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1228	Dampness affecting the spleen and stomach pattern	Dampness weakening the spleen and stomach	Characterized by stomach stuffiness, abdominal distension, a greasy taste, poor appetite, nausea, vomiting, tastelessness, absence of thirst, abdominal pain, loose stools and a heavy sensation of the head and body. Yellow eyes and body skin may also be present. The tongue is pale and swollen with a white, greasy coating. The pulse is soft and delayed. This pattern often occurs when internal turbid dampness obstructs the middle jiao.	湿困脾胃证	shī kùn pí wèi zhèng	
1229	Disharmony between the spleen and stomach pattern	Disharmony of the middle jiao pattern Qi stagnation of the spleen and stomach pattern Qi stagnation of the middle jiao pattern	Characterized by gastric or abdominal stuffiness, distension and discomfort, and poor appetite. Alternatively, abdominal distension after eating food, loose stools with a sensation of incomplete evacuation, belching and bowel sounds may be present. The pulse is wiry. This pattern often occurs when qi of the spleen and stomach becomes stagnant.	脾胃不和证	pí wèi bù hé zhèng	中焦不和证;脾胃气滞证;中焦气滞证
1230	Damp heat in the stomach and intestines pattern		Characterized by abdominal masses/distension, vomiting, nausea, a poor appetite, loose stools with a sensation of incomplete evacuation, fever and thirst. Stools containing pus or blood, tenesmus, vomiting and violent diarrhoea may also be present. The tongue is red with a yellow, greasy coating. The pulse is slippery and rapid. This pattern often occurs when damp heat accumulates in the stomach and intestines.	胃肠湿热证	wèi cháng shī rè zhèng	
1231	Excess heat in the stomach and intestines pattern	Heat accumulating in the stomach and intestines pattern	Characterized by a high fever or severe feverish sensation in the afternoon, a burning stomach ache that alleviates after eating cool-property food, thirst, sweating, abdominal pain/hardness/distension with tenderness, constipation, strong-odoured stools, and scanty, yellow urine. In severe cases, unconsciousness, delirium, mania and faecal impaction with watery diarrhoea may also be present. The tongue is red with a dry, yellow coating. Alternatively, the tongue may be dark brown with thorns. The pulse is rapid or deep, replete and forceful. This pattern often occurs when exuberant heat accumulates in the stomach and intestines.	胃肠实热证	wèi cháng shí rè zhèng	胃肠积热证

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1232	Qi stagnation of the stomach and intestines pattern		Characterized by gastric or abdominal masses/distension/(migratory) pain that alleviates upon belching or flatus. The pulse is wiry. This pattern often occurs when qi of the stomach and intestines becomes stagnant.	胃肠气滞证	wèi cháng qì zhì zhèng	
1233	Blood stasis in the stomach and intestines pattern	Stasis obstructing the stomach and intestines pattern	Characterized by stabbing gastric or abdominal pain with tenderness, palpable masses, haematemesis, and stools containing dark blood clots. The tongue has ecchymosis. The pulse is wiry and hesitant. This pattern often occurs when stagnant blood obstructs the stomach and intestines.	胃肠瘀滞证	wèi cháng yū zhì zhèng	瘀滞胃肠证
1234	Phlegm dampness accumulating in the spleen pattern	Phlegm turbidity obstructing the middle jiao Phlegm fluid obstructing the middle jiao Phlegm-dampness accumulating in the spleen pattern	Characterized by a greasy taste, a poor appetite, nausea, vomiting, abdominal masses/distension, splashing sounds in the stomach and loose stools. The tongue is pale and enlarged with a white, greasy coating. The pulse is soft and slack. This pattern often occurs when phlegm dampness obstructs the stomach and intestines.	痰湿中阻证	tán shī zhōng zǔ zhèng	痰浊中阻证;痰饮中阻证;痰湿蕴脾证
1235	Patterns of the liver system	Liver system patterns		肝系证类	gān xì zhèng lèi	
1236	Liver yin deficiency pattern		Characterized by dizziness, blurred vision, dry eyes, poor eyesight, flushed cheeks, feverish sensations in the palms, soles and chest. A burning pain in the subcostal region may be present. The tongue is red with a scanty coating. The pulse is thready and rapid. This pattern often occurs when yin fluid fails to nourish the liver.	肝阴虚证	gān yīn xū zhèng	
1237	Liver blood deficiency pattern	Liver blood deficiency pattern Insufficiency of liver blood	Characterized by dizziness, dry eyes, poor eyesight, limb numbness, dry fingernails and toenails, insomnia, dream-disturbed sleep, scanty menstrual volume with a pale menstrual colour, a pale complexion and lips. In severe cases, amenorrhoea may be present. The tongue is pale. The pulse is thready. This pattern often occurs when blood fails to nourish the liver.	肝血虚证	gān xuè xū zhèng	



WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1238	Liver qi deficiency pattern	Liver yang insufficiency pattern	Characterized by distension/tightness in the subcostal region, low mood, fatigue, shortness of breath, dizziness and blurred vision. The tongue is pale. The pulse is weak. This pattern often occurs when yang qi becomes deficient, and the liver fails to maintain the free flow of qi.	肝气虚证	gān qì xū zhèng	肝阳亏虚证
1239	Hyperactivity of liver yang pattern	Liver yang ascendant hyperactivity pattern Liver yang disturbing the mind	Characterized by dizziness, blurred vision, tinnitus, lower back pain, limb numbness, feverish sensations in the palms, soles and chest, flushed cheeks, restlessness, irritability, and a dry and bitter mouth. The tongue is red with a scanty coating. The pulse is thready and rapid. This pattern often occurs when liver yin fails to control liver yang.	肝阳上亢证	gān yáng shàng kàng zhèng	
1240	Liver qi stagnation pattern	Liver qi stagnation pattern Liver depression and qi stagnation pattern Liver meridian stagnated heat pattern Liver stagnation	Characterized by emotional depression, frequent sighing, distension/tightness/migratory pain in the chest, subcostal region or bilateral lower abdomen, breast distension/pain in women and irregular menstruation. The pulse is wiry. This pattern often occurs when the liver fails to maintain the free flow of qi.	肝郁气滞证	gān yù qì zhì zhèng	肝郁证
1241	Liver qi stagnation with blood deficiency pattern	Liver stagnation pattern	Characterized by dizziness, blurred vision, distension in the subcostal region, emotional depression, dream-disturbed sleep, poor memory, and a pale complexion. The pulse is wiry and thready. This pattern often occurs as a result of blood deficiency and liver qi stagnation.	肝郁血虚证	gān yù xuè xū zhèng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1242	Liver qi stagnation with blood stasis pattern	<p>Pattern of liver blood stasis and stagnation</p> <p>Pattern of liver stasis with qi stagnation</p> <p>Liver depression and blood stasis pattern</p>	Characterized by distending or stabbing pain in the rib area, subcostal or lower abdominal masses and emotional depression. The tongue is dark purple or with ecchymosis. The pulse is wiry and hesitant. This pattern often occurs when liver qi stagnation causes blood stasis.	肝郁血瘀证	gān yù xuè yū zhèng	
1243	Liver qi stagnation with yin deficiency pattern		Characterized by distending or burning pain in the subcostal region, feverish sensations in the palms, soles and chest, dizziness, blurred vision, and a dry, bitter mouth. The tongue is dark red with a scanty coating. The pulse is wiry and thready. This pattern often occurs as a result of liver qi stagnation and liver yin deficiency.	肝郁阴虚证	gān yù yīn xū zhèng	
1244	Liver qi stagnation transforming into heat pattern		Characterized by a burning sensation and stabbing pain/masses in the subcostal region with tenderness, and a dry, bitter mouth. The tongue is dark purple or with ecchymosis, and a yellow coating. The pulse is wiry and hesitant. This pattern often occurs when prolonged liver qi stagnation and liver blood stasis transform into heat.	肝瘀化热证	gān yū huà rè zhèng	
1245	Liver blood stasis pattern		Characterized by stabbing pain/masses with a fixed location in the subcostal region, and tenderness. The tongue is dark purple or with ecchymosis. The pulse is wiry and hesitant. This pattern often occurs when blood stasis obstructs the liver collaterals.	肝血瘀滞证	gān xuè yū zhì zhèng	肝血瘀阻证
1246	Liver qi stagnation transforming into fire pattern	Qi stagnation transforming into fire pattern	Characterized by distending pain in the subcostal region, restlessness, irritability, a dry, bitter mouth and dark yellow urine. The tongue is red with a yellow coating. The pulse is wiry and rapid. This pattern often occurs when prolonged liver qi stagnation transforms into heat/fire.	肝郁化火证	gān yù huà huǒ zhèng	气郁化火证

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1247	Liver stagnation with phlegm fire pattern		Characterized by a distending/burning pain in the subcostal region, restlessness, irritability, insomnia, dream-disturbed sleep, vertigo, headache and expectoration of yellow phlegm. The tongue is red with a yellow, greasy coating. The pulse is wiry and rapid. This pattern often occurs as a result of liver qi stagnation and internal build up of phlegm heat.	肝郁痰火证	gān yù tán huǒ zhèng	肝郁痰热证
1248	Liver stagnation with phlegm retention pattern		Characterized by masses, distending or stabbing pain and tenderness in the subcostal region, along with phlegm in the throat. The tongue is purple or with ecchymosis and a greasy coating. The pulse is wiry and hesitant. This pattern often occurs when stagnant qi and phlegm accumulate in the liver.	肝瘀痰结证	gān yū tán jié zhèng	肝瘀痰阻证
1249	Upward flaming of liver fire pattern	Liver fire flaming upward pattern Hyperactivity of liver fire pattern	Characterized by fever, thirst, restlessness, insomnia, and headache. Alternatively, eye redness, swelling and pain, sudden tinnitus/deafness, haematemesis, nosebleed and a red face may be present. The tongue is red with a yellow coating. The pulse is wiry and rapid. This pattern often occurs when exuberance liver fire flows upward.	肝火上炎证	gān huǒ shàng yán zhèng	
1250	Liver heat stirring wind pattern	Liver heat stirring wind pattern Pattern of heat stirring liver wind	Characterized by a high-grade fever, thirst, unconsciousness, delirium, convulsions of the limbs, and opisthotonos. The tongue is red with a yellow coating. The pulse is rapid. This pattern often occurs when exuberant heat generates wind.	肝热动风证	gān rè dòng fēng zhèng	
1251	Wind heat affecting the liver meridian pattern		Characterized by fever, mild aversion to wind and/or cold, vertex headache. Red, swollen and painful eyes may be present. The tongue coating is thin and yellow. The pulse is superficial and rapid. This pattern often occurs when wind heat attacks the liver meridian.	肝经风热证	gān jīng fēng rè zhèng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1252	Damp heat affecting the liver meridian pattern	Liver meridian damp heat pattern	Characterized by distending pain in the subcostal region, itching, swelling and pain of the external genitalia or yellow, sticky vaginal discharge. Earache with discharge may also be present. The tongue is red with a yellow, greasy coating. The pulse is slippery and rapid. This pattern often occurs when damp heat affects the liver meridian.	肝经湿热证	gān jīng shī rè zhèng	
1253	Liver qi stagnation with damp heat retention pattern	Liver stagnation with damp heat pattern	Characterized by distending pain/masses in the subcostal region, thirst, and a bitter mouth. Yellowish skin and eyes may also be present. The tongue is red with a yellow, greasy coating. The pulse is slippery and rapid. This pattern often results from internal accumulation of damp heat, coupled with liver qi stagnation.	肝郁湿热证	gān yù shī rè zhèng	肝滞湿热证
1254	Heat toxin affecting the liver pattern	Heat toxin retention in the liver pattern	Characterized by burning pain or masses in the subcostal region, a high-grade fever, thirst, yellowish skin and eyes, and a red face. In severe cases, mental unconsciousness may be present. The tongue is red with a yellow coating. The pulse is wiry and rapid. This pattern often occurs when toxic fire/heat remains in the liver.	热毒淤肝证	rè dú yū gān zhèng	热毒瘀肝证
1255	Liver heat with blood stagnation pattern		Characterized by a stabbing pain in the subcostal region with a burning sensation, and a dry, bitter mouth. The tongue is deep red with a yellow coating. The pulse is hesitant and rapid. This pattern often results from internal build up of heat and liver blood stagnation.	肝热血瘀证	gān rè xuè yū zhèng	
1256	Liver heat with yin deficiency pattern		Characterized by a dull pain in the subcostal region with a burning sensation, feverish sensations in the palms, soles and chest, insomnia, dream-disturbed sleep, restlessness, irritability and a dry, bitter mouth. The tongue is red with a scanty, yellow coating. The pulse is wiry, thready and rapid. This pattern often results from internal build up of heat and liver yin deficiency.	肝热阴虚证	gān rè yīn xū zhèng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1257	Cold retention in the liver meridian pattern	Cold stagnation in liver meridian pattern Liver cold pattern Liver meridian cold stagnation pattern Liver meridian excess cold pattern	Characterized by pain in the lateral lower abdomen with a cold sensation, aversion to cold and cold limbs. Alternatively, genital pain with contraction or parietal headache may be present, which aggravates with cold and alleviates with warmth. The tongue coating is white. The pulse is wiry and tight. This pattern often occurs when cold remains in the liver meridian.	寒滞肝脉证	hán zhì gān mài zhèng	寒滞肝经证
1258	Internal stirring of liver wind pattern	Internal stirring of liver wind Liver wind stirring the interior pattern	Characterized by convulsions of the four limbs, vertigo and tremor. This pattern often results from wind yang, fire heat and yin blood deficiency.	肝风内动证	gān fēng nèi dòng zhèng	
1259	Liver yang transforming into wind pattern	Liver yang transforming into wind pattern	Characterized by vertigo, headache with a distending sensation, limb numbness, tinnitus, restlessness, irritability and a red face. The tongue is red. The pulse is wiry. This pattern often occurs when hyperactive liver yang stirs liver wind.	肝阳化风证	gān yáng huà fēng zhèng	
1260	Ascending of liver qi pattern		Characterized by vertigo, headache, chest tightness, flushed face, tinnitus, deafness and migratory pain in the subcostal region. The symptoms are associated with emotions. In severe cases, patients may experience vomiting of blood or irregular menstruation. This pattern often occurs when emotional disturbance causes liver qi to stagnate and ascend.	肝气上逆证	gān qì shàng nì zhèng	
1261	Liver qi affecting the spleen pattern		Characterized by dizziness, irritability, a bitter mouth, chest tightness, pain in the subcostal region, abdominal stuffiness/fullness after eating food and loose stools. The pulse is wiry and delayed. This pattern often occurs when hyperactive liver qi affects the spleen.	肝气犯脾证	gān qì fàn pí zhèng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1262	Gallbladder qi deficiency pattern		Characterized by jumpiness or easily startled, palpitations, insomnia, nightmares, shortness of breath, spontaneous sweating, tinnitus, blurred vision, limb oedema, loss of taste during eating, and restlessness. The tongue is pale with a greasy coating. The pulse is deep and delayed. This pattern often results from gallbladder qi deficiency and dysfunctions of the zang-fu organs.	胆气虚证	dǎn qì xū zhèng	胆气亏虚证
1263	Excess heat in the gallbladder pattern		Characterized by yellowish sclera, skin and urine, distending pain in the subcostal region, vomiting of bile, headache, dizziness, a bitter mouth and a dry, sore throat. This pattern often occurs when exuberant damp heat accumulates in the gallbladder.	胆实热证	dǎn shí rè zhèng	
1264	Gallbladder heat with phlegm disturbance pattern		Characterized by a bitter mouth, restlessness, timidity, jumpiness or easily startled, distension and fullness in the subcostal region, insomnia, dream-disturbed sleep, vertigo and a bitter mouth. The tongue is red with a yellow, greasy coating. The pulse is wiry and rapid. This pattern often results from gallbladder heat coupled with internal phlegm retention.	胆热痰扰证	dǎn rè tán rǎo zhèng	
1265	Gallbladder stagnation with phlegm disturbance pattern		Characterized by restlessness, timidity, jumpiness or easily startled, insomnia, dream-disturbed sleep, distension and fullness in the subcostal region, repeated sighing, vertigo, nausea, vomiting and vomiting of phlegm and salivation. The tongue coating is white and greasy. The pulse is wiry and delayed. This pattern often occurs when internal turbid phlegm disturbs the dispersal of gallbladder qi.	胆郁痰扰证	dǎn yù tán rǎo zhèng	
1266	Parasitic roundworms disturbing the gallbladder pattern		Characterized by paroxysmal drilling pain in the upper abdomen coupled with a pale complexion, cold limbs, vomiting of bitter saliva or roundworms. The pulse is wiry. This pattern often occurs when roundworms disturb the gallbladder.	胆腑虫扰证	dǎn fǔ chóng rǎo zhèng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1267	Damp heat in the liver and gallbladder pattern		Characterized by yellowish skin and eyes, fever, a bitter mouth, distending pain or masses in the subcostal region, poor appetite, nausea, vomiting, aversion to oily food, and yellowish urine. The tongue is red with a yellow, greasy coating. The pulse is slippery and rapid. This pattern often occurs when internal damp heat affects the qi flow of the liver and gallbladder.	肝胆湿热证	gān dǎn shī rè zhèng	
1268	Stagnant heat in the gallbladder meridian pattern		Characterized by restlessness, irritability, distension in the subcostal region, a bitter mouth, ear distension/pain, tinnitus, headache on one side, insomnia and dream-disturbed sleep. The tongue is red with a yellow coating. The pulse is wiry and rapid. This pattern often occurs when internal fire/heat remains in the gallbladder meridian.	胆经郁热证	dǎn jīng yù rè zhèng	
1269	Patterns of the kidney system			肾系证类	shèn xì zhèng lèi	
1270	Kidney deficiency pattern		Characterized by low back soreness, back pain, dizziness, insomnia, a poor memory, hearing decline, decreased libido and reproductive function. This pattern often results from congenital deficiency, postnatal over-exertion or chronic diseases.	肾虚证	shèn xū zhèng	
1271	Kidney qi deficiency pattern	Kidney qi depletion pattern Kidney qi insufficiency	Characterized by low back soreness, tinnitus, low libido, dizziness, and poor memory. The pulse is weak. This pattern often results from kidney qi deficiency.	肾气虚证	shèn qì xū zhèng	肾气亏虚证
1272	Kidney qi insecurity pattern	Kidney insecurity	Characterized by urgent, frequent urination with clear, dribbling urine, bladder or bowel incontinence, impotence, premature ejaculation, dribbling menstruation, threatened miscarriage, tinnitus, and low back/knee soreness and weakness. The pulse is weak. This pattern often occurs when kidney qi fails to seal and store.	肾气不固证	shèn qì bú gù zhèng	肾虚不固证

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1273	Water retention due to kidney deficiency pattern		Characterized by leg oedema, scanty urine, tinnitus, and low back/knee soreness and weakness. The tongue is pale with a white, slippery coating. The pulse is weak. This pattern often occurs when kidney essence, qi and yang fail to perform qi transformation, resulting in water retention.	肾虚水泛证	shèn xū shuǐ fàn zhèng	肾虚水停证
1274	Water retention due to kidney qi deficiency pattern	Kidney qi deficiency with water retention pattern Kidney qi deficiency with water flooding pattern	Characterized by leg oedema, scanty urine, and low back/knee soreness and weakness. The tongue is pale and enlarged with a white, slippery coating. The pulse is weak. This pattern often occurs when kidney qi fails to perform qi transformation, resulting in water retention.	肾气虚水泛证	shèn qì xū shuǐ fàn zhèng	
1275	Kidney failing to absorb qi pattern	Kidney failing to receive qi pattern	Characterized by shortness of breath, dyspnoea, panting or sweating upon physical exertion, and more exhalation than inhalation. In severe cases, facial puffiness and leg oedema may be present. The pulse is thready or deficient, floating and rootless. This pattern often occurs when kidney qi fails to absorb lung qi.	肾不纳气证	shèn bú nà qì zhèng	
1276	Kidney yang deficiency pattern	Kidney yang deficiency with water flooding pattern Kidney yang deficiency with water retention pattern Life-gate fire depletion pattern Primordial yang deficiency pattern	Characterized by cold intolerance, cold limbs (especially below the lower back and knee joints), a bright, pale or dark complexion, profuse, clear urine and frequent urination at night. The tongue is pale. The pulse is weak. This pattern often occurs when kidney yang fails to warm the body.	肾阳虚证	shèn yáng xū zhèng	



WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1277	Kidney yin deficiency pattern	Genuine yin deficiency pattern Kidney water depletion and deficiency pattern Primordial yin deficiency pattern	Characterized by low back/knee soreness and weakness, lassitude, dizziness, blurred vision, deafness, tinnitus, nocturnal emissions, a dry mouth, sore throat, flushed cheeks, feverish sensations in the palms, soles and chest, and tidal fever in the afternoon. The tongue is red with no or scanty coating. The pulse is thready and rapid. Often results from kidney yin deficiency.	肾阴虚证	shèn yīn xū zhèng	肾阴虚热证
1278	Kidney essence deficiency pattern	Kidney qi/essence deficiency	Characterized by delayed growth in children, decreased reproductive function, premature ageing, tinnitus, hair loss, loose teeth, and poor memory. This pattern often results from kidney essence deficiency.	肾精亏虚证	shèn jīng kuī xū zhèng	肾气亏虚证; 肾精不足证
1279	Kidney marrow deficiency pattern	Kidney deficiency with marrow depletion pattern	Characterized by delayed growth and development, delayed healing of bone fracture, low back/knee soreness and weakness, dizziness, tinnitus, poor memory and dementia. This pattern often results from kidney essence/marrow deficiency.	肾虚髓亏证	shèn xū suǐ kuī zhèng	
1280	Deficiency of kidney yin and yang pattern	Kidney yin and yang deficiency pattern	Characterized by low back soreness, back pain, dizziness, insomnia, poor memory, hearing decline, low libido and decreased reproductive function. This pattern often results from congenital deficiency, over-exertion or chronic diseases.	肾阴阳两虚证	shèn yīn yáng liǎng xū zhèng	
1281	Cold dampness due to kidney deficiency pattern	Cold dampness in the kidney meridian pattern	Characterized by low back/knee heaviness and pain with a cold sensation, limited movement, cold intolerance and cold limbs. The tongue coating is white and slippery. The pulse is soft and delayed. This pattern often occurs when cold dampness remains in the kidney meridian.	肾虚寒湿证	shèn xū hán shī zhèng	肾经寒湿证
1282	Damp heat accumulating in the kidney pattern		Characterized by a burning distension/pain in the low back, hesitant, painful urination, bloody urine (possibly pyuria), fever, thirst or yellow, sticky vaginal discharge. The tongue is red with a yellow, greasy coating. The pulse is slippery and rapid. This pattern often occurs when damp heat retains in the kidney.	湿热蕴肾证	shī rè yùn shèn zhèng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1283	Damp heat in the urinary bladder pattern	Bladder dampness heat pattern	Characterized by urgent, frequent and painful urination with a burning sensation, fever and thirst. Alternatively, the urine may be turbid or contain stones. The tongue is red with a yellow, greasy coating. The pulse is slippery and rapid. This pattern often occurs when damp heat accumulates in the urinary bladder.	膀胱湿热证	páng guāng shī rè zhèng	
1284	Heat accumulating in the urinary bladder pattern	Bladder heat accumulation pattern Bladder heat excess pattern Bladder heat retention pattern Excess heat in the urinary bladder	Characterized by lower abdominal hardness, fullness and contracture, hot, painful urination, fever without aversion to cold, and mania. This pattern often occurs when heat enters the urinary bladder.	膀胱蕴热证	páng guāng yùn rè zhèng	膀胱实热证;膀胱积热证;膀胱蓄热证
1285	Taiyang water retention pattern	Bladder water accumulation pattern Water amassment in the bladder pattern Water retention in the urinary bladder	Characterized by lower abdominal bulging, distension and pain and inhibited urination. This pattern often occurs when the bladder fails to perform qi transformation, resulting in water retention.	太阳蓄水证	tài yáng xù shuǐ zhèng	膀胱蓄水证
1286	Taiyang blood retention pattern	Blood accumulation in the bladder pattern Blood and heat build up in the bladder pattern Blood retention in the urinary bladder	Characterized by lower abdominal distension and stabbing pain with a fixed location, and normal urination. The tongue is purple with ecchymosis. The pulse is wiry and hesitant. This pattern often results from abdominal injury or occurs when heat affects the urinary bladder, causing blood accumulating in the urinary bladder.	太阳蓄血证	tài yáng xù xuè zhèng	膀胱蓄血证

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1287	Deficiency cold of the urinary bladder pattern	Bladder deficiency cold pattern	Characterized by cold intolerance, cold limbs, lower abdominal pain with a cold sensation, urinary incontinence, inhibited urination, frequent urination at night with clear, profuse urine. The tongue coating is white and slippery. This pattern often occurs when kidney yang fails to secure the qi transformation of the urinary bladder.	膀胱虚寒证	páng guāng xū hán zhèng	
1288	Qi failing to secure the urinary bladder pattern		Characterized by frequent urge to urinate but unable to pass, white urine, lower abdominal tightness and distension, a bearing-down sensation of the anus, body heaviness, lassitude, reluctance to talk and shortness of breath. The tongue is pale and enlarged with a thin, white coating. The pulse is thready, weak or soft. This pattern often occurs when kidney qi fails to secure the urinary bladder.	膀胱失约证	páng guāng shī yuē zhèng	
1289	Patterns involving multiple zang-fu organs			脏腑兼证类	zàng fǔ jiān zhèng lèi	
1290	Disharmony between the heart and kidney pattern	Heart and kidney systems disharmony pattern Yin deficiency of the heart and kidney	Characterized by palpitations, restlessness, insomnia, tinnitus, low back/knee and soreness and weakness. The tongue is red with a scanty coating. The pulse is thready, rapid and weak. This pattern often results from lack of coordination between heart fire and kidney water.	心肾不交证	xīn shèn bù jiāo zhèng	心肾阴虚证
1291	Yang deficiency of the heart and kidney pattern	Heart and kidney yang deficiency pattern Deficiency cold of the heart and kidney	Characterized by cold intolerance, cold limbs, mild to severe palpitations, dysuria, leg oedema and low back/knee soreness and coldness. The tongue is pale purple with a white, slippery coating. The pulse is weak. This pattern often occurs when yang qi of the heart and kidney fails to warm the body.	心肾阳虚证	xīn shèn yáng xū zhèng	心肾虚寒证

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1292	Water retention affecting the heart pattern		Characterized by cold intolerance, cold limbs, leg oedema, palpitations, an inability to lie flat, and cough with thin, white sputum. The tongue is pale and enlarged with a white, slippery coating. The pulse is weak. This pattern often occurs when water retention (due to yang qi deficiency of the heart and kidney) affects the heart.	水气凌心证	shuǐ qì líng xīn zhèng	
1293	Qi deficiency of the heart and kidney pattern	Heart and kidney qi deficiency pattern	Characterized by palpitations, shortness of breath, low back/knee soreness and weakness, frequent urination and urinary dribbling. The tongue is pale. The pulse is weak. This pattern often results from qi deficiency of the heart and kidney.	心肾气虚证	xīn shèn qì xū zhèng	
1294	Qi deficiency of the heart and lung pattern	Heart and lung qi deficiency pattern	Characterized by palpitations, cough, shortness of breath, panting, chest tightness and lassitude. The tongue is pale. The pulse is weak. This pattern often results from qi deficiency of the heart and lung.	心肺气虚证	xīn fèi qì xū zhèng	
1295	Yin deficiency of the heart and lung pattern	Heart and lung yin deficiency pattern	Characterized by palpitations, cough, feverish sensations in the palms, soles and chest, flushed cheeks and night sweats. The tongue is red with a scanty coating. The pulse is thready and rapid. This pattern often occurs when yin fluids of the heart and lung become deficient.	心肺阴虚证	xīn fèi yīn xū zhèng	
1296	Yang deficiency of the heart and lung pattern		Characterized by palpitations, cough, cold intolerance, cold limbs, chest tightness and cough with thin, white sputum. The tongue is pale purple. The pulse is weak. This pattern often results from yang qi deficiency of the heart and lung.	心肺阳虚证	xīn fèi yáng xū zhèng	
1297	Exuberant heat in the heart and lung pattern	Excess heat/fire hyperactivity in the heart and lung pattern	Characterized by panting, cough with yellow, sticky sputum, restlessness and insomnia. In severe cases, unconsciousness and delirium may be present. The tongue is red with a yellow coating. The pulse is rapid and forceful. This pattern often occurs when exuberant fire/heat disturbs the heart and lung.	心肺热盛证	xīn fèi rè shèng zhèng	心肺实热证; 心肺火旺证

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1298	Deficiency of the heart and spleen pattern	Heart and spleen systems deficiency pattern	Characterized by palpitations, lassitude, low food intake, abdominal distension and loose stools. The tongue is pale. The pulse is weak. This pattern often occurs when heart blood and spleen (yang) qi become deficient.	心脾两虚证	xīn pí liǎng xū zhèng	
1299	Qi deficiency of the heart and spleen pattern	Heart and spleen qi deficiency pattern	Characterized by palpitations, lassitude, dizziness, poor memory, low food intake, abdominal distension and loose stools. The tongue is pale. The pulse is weak. This pattern often occurs as a result of qi deficiency of the heart and spleen.	心脾气虚证	xīn pí qì xū zhèng	
1300	Yang deficiency of the heart and spleen pattern	Deficiency cold of the heart and spleen/Heart and spleen yang deficiency pattern	Characterized by cold intolerance, cold limbs, palpitations, lassitude, low food intake, abdominal distension and loose stools. The tongue is pale purple with a white, slippery coating. The pulse is weak. This pattern often occurs when yang qi of the heart and spleen fails to warm the body and transport the water and food.	心脾阳虚证	xīn pí yáng xū zhèng	心脾虚寒证
1301	Heat accumulating in the heart and spleen pattern	Excess heat in the heart and spleen pattern	Characterized by fever, thirst and painful mouth/tongue ulcerations. The tongue is red with a yellow coating. The pulse is rapid and forceful. This pattern often occurs as a result of pathogenic heat accumulating in the heart and spleen.	心脾积热证	xīn pí jī rè zhèng	心脾实热证
1302	Fire hyperactivity of the heart and liver pattern	Excess heat in the heart and liver pattern	Characterized by fever, thirst, restlessness, irritability, red face and eyes, pain in the subcostal region, a bitter mouth, insomnia and dream-disturbed sleep. The tongue is red with a yellow coating. The pulse is rapid and forceful. This pattern often occurs when exuberant fire/heat affects the heart and liver.	心肝火旺证	xīn gān huǒ wàng zhèng	心肝实热证; 心肝热盛证
1303	Blood stasis in the heart and liver pattern		Characterized by headache, stabbing pain in the subcostal region, and palpitations. Alternatively, amenorrhoea may be present. The tongue is purple or with ecchymosis. The pulse is wiry and hesitant. This pattern often occurs when blood of the heart and liver becomes stagnant.	心肝血瘀证	xīn gān xuè yū zhèng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1304	Blood deficiency of the heart and liver pattern	Heart and liver blood deficiency pattern	Characterized by palpitations, dream-disturbed sleep, poor memory, dizziness, blurred vision, dull pain in the subcostal region, scanty menstrual volume and pale face/tongue/fingernails. The pulse is thready. This pattern often occurs when blood fails to nourish the heart and liver.	心肝血虚证	xīn gān xuè xū zhèng	
1305	Yin deficiency of the heart and liver pattern	Heart and liver yin deficiency pattern	Characterized by palpitations, insomnia, feverish sensations in the palms, soles and chest, a low-grade fever, flushed cheeks, dizziness and blurred vision. The tongue is red with a scanty coating. The pulse is thready and rapid. This pattern often occurs when yin fluids deficiency of the heart and liver causes deficiency heat.	心肝阴虚证	xīn gān yīn xū zhèng	
1306	Qi deficiency of the heart and gallbladder pattern	Heart and gallbladder qi deficiency pattern	Characterized by palpitations, insomnia, timidity, jumpiness or easily startled, dizziness and chest tightness. The pale is tongue. This pattern often occurs as a result of heart qi deficiency and gallbladder qi uneasiness.	心胆气虚证	xīn dǎn qì xū zhèng	
1307	Deficiency of the liver and kidney pattern	Deficiency of liver blood and kidney essence Liver and kidney yin deficiency pattern	Characterized by pale, lustreless complexion, pale lips and fingernails, dizziness, tinnitus, dry eyes, palpitations, insomnia, dream-disturbed sleep, jumpiness or easily startled, irregular menstruation, scanty menstrual volume, amenorrhoea and low back soreness. The tongue is red. The pulse is thready. This pattern often results from chronic diseases or age-related liver blood/kidney essence deficiency.	肝肾两虚证	gān shèn liǎng xū zhèng	肝肾亏虚证; 肝肾精血亏损证
1308	Yin deficiency of the liver and kidney pattern	Liver and kidney yin deficiency pattern Deficiency fire of the liver and kidney	Characterized by dizziness, tinnitus, feverish sensations in the palms, soles and chest, a low-grade fever, flushed cheeks, pain in the subcostal region, and low back/knee soreness and weakness. The tongue is red with a scanty coating. The pulse is thready and rapid. This pattern often occurs when yin deficiency of the liver and kidney causes deficiency heat.	肝肾阴虚证	gān shèn yīn xū zhèng	肝肾虚火证

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1309	Deficiency of the liver and spleen pattern		Characterized by dull pain in the subcostal region, dizziness, blurred vision, a low food intake, abdominal distension and loose stools. This pattern often results from deficiency of the liver and spleen.	肝脾两虚证	gān pí liǎng xū zhèng	
1310	Disharmony between the liver and spleen pattern	Disharmony of liver and spleen systems pattern Liver depression and spleen deficiency pattern Imbalance between liver and spleen pattern	Characterized by distension and pain in the subcostal region, emotional depression, a poor appetite, abdominal distension and loose stools. The pulse is wiry and delayed. This pattern often occurs when liver qi stagnation affects the transportation and transformation of the spleen.	肝脾不和证	gān pí bù hé zhèng	
1311	Liver hyperactivity with spleen deficiency pattern	Liver stagnation with spleen deficiency pattern	Characterized by distension pain in the subcostal region, emotional depression, a poor appetite, low food intake, abdominal distension and loose stools. This pattern often occurs as a result of liver qi stagnation coupled with spleen deficiency.	肝旺脾虚证	gān wàng pí xū zhèng	肝滞脾虚证; 肝郁脾虚证
1312	Damp heat in the liver and spleen pattern	Damp heat in the middle jiao pattern	Characterized by distension in the subcostal region, abdominal bloating, nausea and aversion to oil. Alternatively, jaundice and a sensation of incomplete evacuation after bowel movements. The tongue is red with a yellow, greasy coating. The pulse is wiry, slippery and rapid. This pattern often occurs when damp heat affects the free flow of liver qi and transportation and transformation of the spleen.	肝脾湿热证	gān pí shī rè zhèng	中焦湿热证
1313	Qi stagnation of the liver and spleen pattern		Characterized by distension and pain in the subcostal region, abdominal bloating, bowel sounds, and a sensation of incomplete evacuation after bowel movements. The pulse is wiry. This pattern often results from the qi stagnation of the liver and spleen.	肝脾气滞证	gān pí qì zhì zhèng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1314	Blood stasis of the liver and spleen pattern	Stasis of the liver and spleen pattern	Characterized by abdominal pain, fullness and distension, skin ecchymosis or petechiae, masses in the subcostal region or stabbing pain with tenderness. The tongue is dark or with ecchymosis. The pulse is wiry and hesitant. This pattern often occurs when stagnant blood affects the liver and spleen.	肝脾血瘀证	gān pí xuè yū zhèng	肝脾瘀滞证
1315	Disharmony between the liver and stomach pattern	Disharmony of liver and stomach systems pattern Liver qi invading the stomach pattern Liver–stomach disharmony pattern Incoordination between the liver and stomach	Characterized by gastric distension, fullness and pain, a poor appetite, belching, nausea, vomiting, dizziness, pain in the subcostal region, and restlessness. The pulse is wiry. This pattern often occurs when liver qi stagnation affects the descending of stomach qi.	肝胃不和证	gān wèi bù hé zhèng	肝胃不调证
1316	Exuberant heat in the liver and stomach pattern	Heat accumulating in the liver and stomach pattern	Characterized by fever, thirst, restlessness, irritability, pain in the subcostal region, a bitter mouth and a burning pain in the stomach. The tongue is red with a yellow coating. The pulse is rapid and forceful. This pattern often occurs when exuberant fire/heat affects the liver and stomach.	肝胃热盛证	gān wèi rè shèng zhèng	肝胃积热证
1317	Liver fire affecting the stomach pattern	Liver fire invading the stomach system pattern	Characterized by a burning pain in the stomach and subcostal region, a dry, bitter mouth, constipation and yellow urine. The tongue is red with a yellow coating. The pulse is wiry and rapid. This pattern often occurs when liver fire affects the descending of stomach qi.	肝火犯胃证	gān huǒ fàn wèi zhèng	
1318	Liver qi affecting the stomach pattern	Qi stagnation of the liver and stomach pattern	Characterized by vomiting, acid reflux, repeated belching, gastric discomfort, and distending pain in the chest and subcostal region that aggravate upon emotional disturbance. The tongue coating is thin and white. The pulse is wiry. This pattern often occurs when liver qi stagnation affects the stomach.	肝气犯胃证	gān qì fàn wèi zhèng	肝胃气滞证



WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1319	Yin deficiency of the liver and stomach pattern		Characterized by a dry, bitter mouth, dull pain in the subcostal region and stomach, constipation and yellow urine. The tongue is dry and red. The pulse is wiry, thready and rapid. This pattern often results from yin fluid deficiency of the liver and stomach.	肝胃阴虚证	gān wèi yīn xū zhèng	
1320	Deficiency cold of the liver and stomach pattern		Characterized by distension in the subcostal region, gastric discomfort and pain with a cold sensation that alleviates upon pressure and a low food intake. The tongue is pale. The pulse is deep and slow. This pattern often occurs as a result of yang qi deficiency and disharmony between the liver and stomach.	肝胃虚寒证	gān wèi xū hán zhèng	
1321	Liver fire affecting the lung pattern	Liver fire invading the lung system pattern Wood fire tormenting metal pattern	Characterized by a burning pain in the chest and subcostal region, restlessness, irritability, a dry, bitter mouth and paroxysmal coughs. In severe cases, haemoptysis may be present. The tongue is red with a thin, yellow coating. The pulse is wiry and rapid. This pattern often occurs when exuberant liver fire affects the descending of lung qi.	肝火犯肺证	gān huǒ fàn fèi zhèng	
1322	Deficiency of the spleen and lung pattern	Lung and spleen deficiency pattern Qi deficiency of the spleen and lung	Characterized by low-pitched cough with thin, clear sputum, shortness of breath, panting, a low food intake, abdominal bloating and loose stools. The tongue is pale with a white, slippery coating. The pulse is weak. This pattern often results from qi deficiency of the lung and spleen.	脾肺两虚证	pí fèi liǎng xū zhèng	脾肺气虚证
1323	Yang deficiency of the spleen and kidney pattern	Spleen and kidney yang deficiency pattern Deficiency cold of the spleen and kidney	Characterized by cold intolerance, cold limbs, a bright, pale complexion, low back soreness, abdominal pain with a cold sensation, chronic diarrhoea with stools that contain undigested food. Alternatively, oedema and scanty urine may be present. The tongue is pale and enlarged with a white, slippery coating. The pulse is deep, slow and weak. This pattern often occurs when yang qi deficiency of the spleen and kidney causes internal deficiency cold.	脾肾阳虚证	pí shèn yáng xū zhèng	脾肾虚寒证

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1324	Qi deficiency of the spleen and kidney pattern		Characterized by lassitude, shortness of breath, a low food intake, abdominal bloating, loose stools, chronic diarrhoea, low back soreness/pain, and tinnitus. The tongue is pale. The pulse is weak. This pattern often results from qi deficiency of the spleen and kidney.	脾肾气虚证	pí shèn qì xū zhèng	
1325	Deficiency of the spleen and kidney pattern	Insufficiency of the spleen and kidney pattern	Characterized by a low food intake, abdominal bloating, loose stools, low back soreness/pain, and tinnitus. This pattern often occurs as a result of deficiency of the spleen and kidney.	脾肾两虚证	pí shèn liǎng xū zhèng	脾肾亏虚证
1326	Insecurity of the spleen and kidney pattern	Qi deficiency of the spleen and kidney pattern	Characterized by turbid urine or urinary incontinence, shortness of breath, and a bearing-down sensation. The tongue is pale. The pulse is weak. This pattern often results from sinking of spleen qi and insecurity of kidney qi.	脾肾不固证	pí shèn bú gù zhèng	脾肾气虚不固证
1327	Yin deficiency of the lung and kidney pattern	Lung and kidney yin deficiency pattern	Characterized by cough with scanty phlegm or blood-stained sputum, a dry throat or hoarseness, low back/knee soreness and weakness, weight loss, bone-steaming tidal fever, night sweats and flushed cheeks. The tongue is red with a scanty coating. The pulse is thready and rapid. This pattern often occurs when yin fluids deficiency of the lung and kidney causes deficiency heat.	肺肾阴虚证	fèi shèn yīn xū zhèng	
1328	Qi deficiency of the lung and kidney pattern	Insufficient qi of the lung and kidney pattern Kidney failing to receive qi pattern Lung-kidney deficiency pattern	Characterized by more exhalation than inhalation, weak coughs that aggravate upon physical exertion, expectoration of thin, clear sputum, a low voice and spontaneous sweating. Cough-induced urine leaking may also be present. The tongue is pale purple. The pulse is weak. This pattern often results from qi deficiency of the lung and kidney.	肺肾气虚证	fèi shèn qì xū zhèng	
1329	Yang deficiency of the lung and kidney pattern		Characterized by cold intolerance, cold limbs, cough with profuse, thin and clear sputum, panting, leg oedema and scanty urine. The tongue is pale and enlarged with a white, slippery coating. The pulse is weak. This pattern often occurs when water retention (due to kidney yang deficiency) affects the lung.	肺肾阳虚证	fèi shèn yáng xū zhèng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1330	Wind heat affecting the lung and stomach pattern		Characterized by fever, thirst, cough and skin rashes. The tongue is red with a thin, yellow coating. The pulse is superficial and rapid. This pattern often occurs when wind heat affects the lung and stomach.	肺胃风热证	fèi wèi fēng rè zhèng	
1331	Fire heat in the lung and stomach pattern	Exuberant heat in the lung and stomach pattern	Characterized by fever, thirst, profuse sweating, cough, panting, a burning pain in the stomach, constipation and yellow urine. The tongue is red with a yellow coating. The pulse is slippery and rapid. This pattern often occurs when exuberant heat affects the lung and stomach.	肺胃火热证	fèi wèi huǒ rè zhèng	肺胃热盛证
1332	Yin deficiency of the lung and stomach pattern	Fluids insufficiency of the lung and stomach pattern	Characterized by thirst with a desire to drink water, unproductive cough, gastric discomfort and rapid hunger after eating food. The tongue is dry and red. The pulse is thready and rapid. This pattern often results from yin fluids deficiency of the lung and stomach.	肺胃阴虚证	fèi wèi yīn xū zhèng	肺胃津亏证
1333	Lung heat transmitting to the large intestine pattern		Characterized by fever, thirst, cough, panting, abdominal bloating and constipation. The tongue is red with a yellow coating. The pulse is rapid or replenish. This pattern often occurs when exuberant lung heat transmits downward to the large intestine.	肺热移肠证	fèi rè yí cháng zhèng	
1334	Toxin entering the heart and liver pattern		Characterized by fever, unconsciousness, delirium, convulsions of the limbs, and dark purple skin rashes. Alternatively, nosebleed or a dark purple complexion may be present. The tongue is dark red. The pulse is deep, thready and rapid. This pattern often occurs when toxin enters the heart and liver.	毒陷心肝证	dú xiàn xīn gān zhèng	
1335	Qi stagnation of the liver and large intestine pattern		Characterized by distending pain in the subcostal region and abdomen, bowel sounds, flatus, diarrhoea upon abdominal pain and a bearing-down sensation of the anus. The pulse is wiry. This pattern often occurs when liver qi stagnation affects the large intestine.	肝肠气滞证	gān cháng qì zhì zhèng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1336	Patterns involving the essence chamber			精室证类	jīng shì zhèng lèi	
1337	Phlegm obstructing the essence chamber pattern		Characterized by impotence, low sperm count, low libido, obesity, and fatigue. The tongue is pale with a white, greasy coating. The pulse is slippery. This pattern often occurs when phlegm dampness affects the essence chamber.	痰阻精室	tán zǔ jīng shì zhèng	
1338	Stasis obstructing the essence chamber pattern	Stasis/stagnant blood obstructing the essence chamber pattern	Characterized by stabbing pain in the perineum with a fixed location and tenderness. Alternatively, lumps, low sperm count, impotence or pain during ejaculation may be present. The tongue is dark purple or with ecchymosis. The pulse is wiry and hesitant. This pattern often occurs when stagnant blood affects the essence chamber.	精室瘀阻证	jīng shì yū zǔ zhèng	瘀阻精室证; 瘀血阻滞精室证
1339	Patterns involving the uterus			胞宫证类	bāo gōng zhèng lèi	
1340	Phlegm retention in the uterus pattern	Phlegm obstructing the uterus pattern Phlegm-dampness obstructing the uterus pattern Phlegm congealment in the uterus pattern Phlegm obstructing the uterus	Characterized by profuse, white vaginal discharge or amenorrhoea/infertility, obesity and fatigue. The tongue is pale with a white, greasy coating. The pulse is slippery or soft and delayed. This pattern often occurs when phlegm-dampness obstructs the uterus.	痰凝胞宫证	tán níng bāo gōng zhèng	痰阻胞宫证
1341	Blood stasis obstructing the uterus pattern		Characterized by stabbing pain in the lower abdomen with a fixed location and tenderness, possibly abdominal lumps, and delayed period with a scanty volume, dark purple colour and clots. Amenorrhoea or uterine bleeding may also be present. The tongue is dark purple or with ecchymosis. The pulse is wiry and hesitant. This pattern often occurs when stagnant blood affects the uterus.	胞宫瘀阻证	bāo gōng yū zǔ zhèng	瘀阻胞宫证

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1342	Cold retention in the uterus pattern	Cold congealment in the uterus pattern Cold stagnation in the uterus pattern	Characterized by lower abdominal pain with a cold sensation that alleviates upon warmth. Dysmenorrhoea, delayed period with dark purple colour, white, thin and clear vaginal discharge and infertility may also be present. The tongue coating is white. The pulse is deep and tight. This pattern often occurs when cold remains in the uterus.	寒凝胞宫证	hán níng bāo gōng zhèng	
1343	Deficiency cold in the uterus pattern	Uterine deficiency cold pattern Uterine yang deficiency pattern Yang deficiency of the uterus	Characterized by cold intolerance, cold limbs, lower abdominal pain with a cold sensation that alleviates upon warmth and pressure and a pale menstrual colour and thin quality of menses. Alternatively, thin, clear vaginal discharge, infertility, miscarriage and a pale complexion may be present. The tongue is pale with a white coating. The pulse is deep and weak. This pattern often occurs when yang qi fails to warm the uterus.	胞宫虚寒证	bāo gōng xū hán zhèng	胞宫阳虚证
1344	Damp heat in the uterus pattern	Dampness heat in the uterus pattern	Characterized by profuse, yellow, sticky and smelly vaginal discharge, and itching and ulceration of the vulva. The tongue is red with a yellow, greasy coating. The pulse is slippery and rapid. This pattern often occurs when damp heat remains in the uterus.	胞宫湿热证	bāo gōng shī rè zhèng	
1345	Blood heat in the uterus pattern	Blood and heat accumulation in the uterus pattern Blood heat build up in the uterus pattern Heat accumulating in the uterus	Characterized by a burning pain in the lower abdomen, and earlier period with profuse volume and bright red colour. Yellow, sticky and smelly vagina discharge may also be present. The tongue is red with a yellow coating. The pulse is rapid. This pattern often occurs when heat accumulates in the uterus.	胞宫血热证	bāo gōng xuè rè zhèng	胞宫积热证
1346	Disharmony between the Chong and Ren pattern		Characterized by irregular menstruation and lower abdominal distension/pain. This pattern often results from functional disorder of the Chong and Ren meridians.	冲任失调证	chōng rèn shī tiáo zhèng	冲任不调证

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1347	Insecurity of the Chong and Ren pattern		Characterized by dribbling menses. Alternatively, uterine bleeding, profuse vaginal discharge or miscarriage may be present. This pattern often occurs when qi of the Chong and Ren fails to secure the uterus.	冲任不固证	chōng rèn bú gù zhèng	
1348	Blood stasis obstructing the Chong and Ren pattern		Characterized by dark purple menstrual colour with clots. The tongue is dark purple or with ecchymosis. The pulse is deep and wiry. This pattern often occurs when stasis obstructs the uterus. Contributing factors may include inappropriate care during period or after childbirth, contraction of external pathogenic qi or emotional disturbance. It may also develop from further progression of qi stagnation of Chong and Ren.	冲任瘀阻证	chōng rèn yū zǔ zhèng	
1349	Heat entering the blood chamber pattern		Characterized by a burning pain in the lower abdomen, tenderness, and profuse menstrual volume. Alternatively, amenorrhoea, fever, thirst and restlessness may be present. The tongue is deep red with a yellow coating. The pulse is rapid. This pattern often occurs when heat affects the blood chamber.	热入血室证	rè rù xuè shì zhèng	
1350	Patterns involving the meridians	Meridian and collateral patterns		经络证类	jīng luò zhèng lèi	
1351	Wind attacking the meridians pattern		Characterized by skin numbness and itching or sudden deviation of the eyes and mouth corner. This pattern often occurs when wind attacks the meridians.	风中经络证	fēng zhòng jīng luò zhèng	
1352	Wind phlegm entering the meridians pattern	Wind phlegm obstructing the meridians pattern	Characterized by limb numbness or paralysis, skin numbness or itching, dizziness and salivation. The tongue coating is greasy. This pattern often occurs when liver wind that carries phlegm affects the meridians.	风痰入络证	fēng tán rù luò zhèng	风痰阻络证
1353	Wind heat affecting the meridians pattern	Wind heat attacking the meridians pattern	Characterized by localized numbness, burning pain, itching and redness. This pattern often occurs when wind heat impairs the flow of meridian qi.	风热阻络证	fēng rè zǔ luò zhèng	风热中络证

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1354	Cold retention in the meridians pattern		Characterized by aversion to cold, limb coldness, pain, contracture or numbness and a dark purple or pale complexion. The tongue coating is white. The pulse is wiry and tight. This pattern often occurs when retained cold affects the flow of blood within meridians.	寒滞经络证	hán zhì jīng luò zhèng	
1355	Damp heat obstructing the meridians pattern		Characterized by fever, mild thirst, limb heaviness, pain and numbness, and localized ulceration and itching. The tongue coating is yellow and greasy. The pulse is slippery and rapid. This pattern often occurs when damp heat affects the meridians.	湿热阻络证	shī rè zǔ luò zhèng	
1356	Cold dampness obstructing the meridians pattern	Cold dampness entering the meridians pattern	Characterized by limb or localized heaviness, coldness, pain, numbness or swelling, aversion to cold and cold limbs. The tongue coating is white and slippery. This pattern often occurs when cold damp affects the meridians.	寒湿阻络证	hán shī zǔ luò zhèng	寒湿入络证
1357	Phlegm-dampness obstructing the meridians pattern	Phlegm-dampness affecting the limbs/joints pattern	Characterized by limb or joint numbness and swelling, and skin swelling, hardness, numbness and itching. The tongue coating is white and greasy. This pattern often occurs when turbid phlegm-dampness obstructs the meridians.	痰湿阻络证	tán shī zǔ luò zhèng	痰湿阻痹证
1358	Stasis and heat entering the meridians pattern		Characterized by a low-grade fever and redness of the affected area with a burning pain. The tongue is deep red or purple. The pulse is thready, hesitant and rapid. This pattern often occurs when intertwined heat and stagnant blood obstruct the meridians.	瘀热入络证	yū rè rù luò zhèng	
1359	Stagnant blood obstructing the meridians pattern		Characterized by a stabbing pain with a fixed location. Alternatively, purple macules, lumps or bleeding of dark blood may be present. The tongue is purple or with petechiae. The pulse is hesitant. This pattern often occurs when stagnant blood obstructs the meridians.	瘀血阻络证	yū xuè zǔ luò zhèng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1360	Patterns of the twelve regular meridians	Main meridian patterns		十二正经证类	shí èr zhèng jīng zhèng lèi	
1361	Lung meridian pattern		Characterized by cough, panting, shortness of breath, haemoptysis, chest fullness/distension, a sore, swollen throat, pain in the clavicle and along the anterior border of the medial aspect of the arm, and pain with a cold sensation in the shoulder and back. This pattern often results from impaired flow of lung meridian qi.	手太阴肺经证	shǒu tài yīn fèi jīng zhèng	
1362	Large intestine meridian pattern		Characterized by abdominal pain, bowel sounds, diarrhoea, constipation, dysentery, a sore, swollen throat, toothache, clear nasal discharge, nosebleed, and pain, hot or cold sensation along the meridian pathway. This pattern often results from impaired qi flow of the large intestine meridian.	手阳明大肠经证	shǒu yáng míng dà cháng jīng zhèng	
1363	Stomach meridian pattern		Characterized by bowel sounds, abdominal distension, oedema, stomach ache, vomiting, fast hunger after eating food, thirst, a sore, swollen throat, nosebleed, pain in the chest or knee, fever and mania. This pattern often results from impaired qi flow of the stomach meridian.	足阳明胃经证	zú yáng míng wèi jīng zhèng	
1364	Spleen meridian pattern		Characterized by gastric pain, vomiting immediately after eating food, belching, abdominal distension, loose stools, jaundice, body heaviness and weakness, pain or stiffness of the base of the tongue, swelling along the medial side of the leg and cold limbs. This pattern often results from impaired qi flow of the spleen meridian.	足太阴脾经证	zú tài yīn pí jīng zhèng	
1365	Heart meridian pattern		Characterized by cardiac pain, a dry throat, thirst, yellowish eyes, pain in the subcostal region and along the medial aspect of the arm, and a feverish sensation in the palms. This pattern often results from impaired qi flow of the heart meridian.	手少阴心经证	shǒu shào yīn xīn jīng zhèng	



WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1366	Small intestine meridian pattern		Characterized by lower abdominal pain, lower back pain, lower back pain that radiates towards the testis, deafness, yellowish eyes, swollen cheek, a sore, swollen throat and pain along the posterior border of the lateral aspect of the shoulder and arm. This pattern often results from impaired qi flow of the small intestine meridian.	手太阳小肠经证	shǒu tài yáng xiǎo cháng jīng zhèng	
1367	Bladder meridian pattern		Characterized by inhibited urination, enuresis, mania, alternating fever and chills, eye pain, lacrimation with exposure to wind, nasal obstruction with discharge, nosebleed, headache and pain along the neck, back, low back, buttocks and posterior aspect of the leg. This pattern often results from impaired qi flow of the bladder meridian.	足太阳膀胱经证	zú tài yáng páng guāng jīng zhèng	
1368	Kidney meridian pattern		Characterized by haemoptysis, panting, a dry tongue, a sore, swollen throat, oedema, constipation, diarrhoea, lower back pain, lower back pain, pain along the posterior of the spine and thigh, flaccidity and a feverish sensation in the soles. This pattern often results from impaired qi flow of the kidney meridian.	足少阴肾经证	zú shào yīn shèn jīng zhèng	
1369	Sanjiao meridian pattern	Triple energizer meridian pattern Triple burner meridian pattern Triple warmer meridian pattern	Characterized by abdominal distension, oedema, enuresis, inhibited urination, deafness, tinnitus, a sore throat, red, swollen and painful eyes, swollen cheeks, and pain behind the ears and along the lateral aspect of the shoulder, arm and elbow. This pattern often results from impaired qi flow of the Sanjiao meridian.	手少阳三焦经证	shǒu shào yáng sān jiāo jīng zhèng	
1370	Pericardium meridian pattern	Heart governor meridian pattern Heart ruler meridian pattern	Characterized by cardiac pain, chest tightness, restlessness, mania, armpit swelling, arm contracture and a feverish sensation in the palms. This pattern often results from impaired qi flow of the pericardium meridian.	手厥阴心包经证	shǒu jué yīn xīn bāo jīng zhèng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1371	Gallbladder meridian pattern		Characterized by a bitter mouth, blurred vision, alternating fever and chills, headache, pain in the chin, outer canthus and clavicle, armpit swelling, pain along the chest, subcostal region, thigh and lateral aspect of the leg and foot, and a feverish sensation along the lateral aspect of the foot. This pattern often results from impaired qi flow of the gallbladder meridian.	足少阳胆经证	zú shào yáng dǎn jīng zhèng	
1372	Liver meridian pattern		Characterized by lower back pain, lower back pain, chest fullness, hiccups, enuresis, inhibited urination, hernia and lower abdominal swelling. This pattern often results from impaired qi flow of the liver meridian.	足厥阴肝经证	zú jué yīn gān jīng zhèng	
1373	Patterns of the eight extra meridians	Extra meridian patterns		奇经八脉证类	qí jīng bā mài zhèng lèi	
1374	Du meridian pattern	Governor vessel pattern	Characterized by spinal pain/stiffness and opisthotonos. This pattern often results from impaired qi flow of the Du meridian.	督脉证	dū mài zhèng	
1375	Ren meridian pattern	Conception vessel pattern	Characterized by hernia, vaginal discharge and abdominal masses. This pattern often results from impaired qi flow of the Ren meridian.	任脉证	rèn mài zhèng	
1376	Chong meridian pattern	Thoroughfare vessel pattern	Characterized by abdominal contracture due to qi counterflow. This pattern often results from impaired qi flow of the Chong meridian.	冲脉证	chōng mài zhèng	
1377	Yinwei meridian pattern	Yin link vessel pattern	Characterized by cardiac pain and melancholy. This pattern often results from impaired qi flow of the Yinwei meridian.	阴维脉证	yīn wéi mài zhèng	
1378	Yangwei meridian pattern	Yang link vessel pattern	Characterized by aversion to cold, fever and lower back pain, lower back pain. This pattern often results from impaired qi flow of the Yangwei meridian.	阳维脉证	yáng wéi mài zhèng	
1379	Dai meridian pattern	Belt vessel pattern	Characterized by abdominal fullness and a cold sensation in the lower back (like sitting in water). This pattern often results from impaired qi flow of the Dai meridian.	带脉证	dài mài zhèng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1380	Yangqiao meridian pattern	Yang heel vessel pattern	Characterized by eye pain (inner canthus) and insomnia. This pattern often results from impaired qi flow of the Yangqiao meridian.	阳跷脉证	yáng qiāo mài zhèng	
1381	Yinqiao meridian pattern	Yin heel vessel pattern	Characterized by hypersomnia and urinary retention. This pattern often results from impaired qi flow of the Yinqiao meridian.	阴跷脉证	yīn qiāo mài zhèng	
1382	Sanjiao patterns	Three region patterns Triple burner patterns Triple energizer patterns Triple energizer stage patterns Wenbing Sanjiao Patterns		三焦证类	sān jiāo zhèng lèi	
1383	Damp heat affecting the three jiao pattern	Damp heat affecting triple energizer pattern	Characterized by fever that cannot be resolved after sweating, body heaviness, gastric discomfort and masses, absence of thirst or thirst with little water intake, scanty, yellow urine and a sensation of incomplete evacuation after bowel movements. The tongue is red with a yellow, greasy coating. The pulse is slippery and rapid. This pattern often occurs when damp is mixed with heat.	湿热弥漫三焦证	shī rè mí màn sān jiāo zhèng	
1384	Damp heat in the upper jiao pattern	Dampness and heat in the upper energizer pattern	Characterized by fever, aversion to cold, body heaviness, cough, chest tightness and absence of sweating. The tongue coating is yellow and white. The pulse is soft and delayed. This pattern often occurs when damp heat affects the upper jiao.	上焦湿热证	shàng jiāo shī rè zhèng	
1385	Dry heat in the upper jiao pattern	Upper energizer dryness and heat pattern Upper energizer dryness heat pattern	Characterized by fever, aversion to wind cold, thirst, unproductive cough, headache, scanty sweating, dry lips, a dry, sore throat, tinnitus, red eyes, gum swelling and dry skin. The tongue coating is white. The pulse is rapid and large. This pattern often occurs when dry heat affects the dispersing and descending of lung qi.	上焦燥热证	shàng jiāo zào rè zhèng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1386	Damp heat in the middle jiao pattern	Dampness and heat in the middle energizer pattern Middle energizer dampness and heat pattern	Characterized by fever that cannot be resolved after sweating and become more pronounced in the afternoon, abdominal masses and distension, nausea, vomiting, a poor appetite, thirst with little water intake, yellow urine and loose stools. This pattern often occurs when damp heat affects the spleen and stomach.	中焦湿热证	zhōng jiāo shī rè zhèng	
1387	Heat accumulating in the middle jiao pattern	Excess heat in the middle jiao	Characterized by fever, thirst, abdominal distension and pain, constipation and scanty, yellow urine. The tongue is red with a dry, yellow coating. The pulse is rapid and forceful. This pattern often occurs when heat accumulates in the middle jiao.	中焦积热证	zhōng jiāo jī rè zhèng	中焦实热证
1388	Damp heat in the lower jiao pattern	Dampness and heat in the lower energizer pattern	Characterized by urinary dribbling with a painful urination, loose stools with a strong odour, and lower abdominal distension and pain. Alternatively, urine retention, constipation, yellow, white and smelly vaginal discharge, fever and thirst may be present. The tongue is red with a yellow, greasy coating. The pulse is slippery and rapid. This pattern often occurs when damp heat affects the large intestine or urinary bladder.	下焦湿热证	xià jiāo shī rè zhèng	
1389	Stasis obstructing the lower jiao pattern	Stasis obstructing the lower energizer pattern	Characterized by stabbing or distending pain in the lower abdomen, tenderness. Alternatively, palpable masses and bloody urine/stools may be present. The tongue is dark purple or with ecchymosis. The pulse is wiry and hesitant. This pattern often occurs when stagnant blood affects the intestines, urinary bladder and uterus.	瘀阻下焦证	yū zǔ xià jiāo zhèng	
1390	Patterns involving the skin, tendons and bones			肌肤筋骨证类	jī fū jīn gǔ zhèng lèi	
1391	Stasis affecting the skin pattern		Characterized by dry, rough, scaly or numb skin, scratchy or painful blood streaks or dark purple ecchymosis in the skin. The pulse is superficial, thready and hesitant. This pattern often occurs when stagnant blood affects the skin.	瘀滞肌肤证	yū zhì jī fū zhèng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1392	Heat affecting the bones/joints pattern		Characterized by red, swollen, hot and painful joints. This pattern often occurs when wind, dampness and heat, especially heat, affect the tendons, bones and joints.	热邪阻痹证	rè xié zǔ bì zhèng	
1393	Damp heat affecting the bones/joints pattern		Characterized by fever and swollen, heavy, hot and painful joints. The tongue is red with a yellow, greasy coating. The pulse is slippery and rapid. This pattern often occurs when damp heat accumulates in tendons, bones and joints.	湿热阻痹证	shī rè zǔ bì zhèng	
1394	Cold dampness affecting the low back pattern		Characterized by a cold sensation and pain in the low back that worsens with cold. This pattern often occurs when cold dampness affects the lumbar region.	寒湿着腰证	hán shī zhuó yāo zhèng	
1395	<b>Six meridians patterns</b>			六经证类	liù jīng zhèng lèi	
1396	Disorders of the six meridians	Six stage patterns Shanghan Patterns	A group of disorders of the six meridians according to the cold damage theory.	六经病证	liù jīng bìng zhèng	
1397	Taiyang pattern	Early yang stage pattern Greater yang pattern	Characterized by manifestations of Taiyang meridian pattern and Taiyang-fu organ pattern. This pattern often occurs when the struggle between anti-pathogenic qi and pathogenic factors affects the normal functioning of the Wei-defence and Ying nutrients.	太阳病证	tài yáng bìng zhèng	
1398	Taiyang meridian pattern		Characterized by fever, aversion to wind/cold, headache, body ache, lower back pain, nasal obstruction with clear discharge, and sweating. The pulse is superficial and delayed or superficial and tight. This pattern often occurs when wind cold affects the Taiyang meridian and disturbs the normal functioning of the Ying nutrients and Wei-defence.	太阳经证	tài yáng jīng zhèng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1399	Taiyang wind attack pattern		Characterized by fever, aversion to cold/wind and sweating. The pulse is superficial and delayed. Alternatively, headache, neck rigidity, body ache, lower back pain, nasal obstruction with clear discharge and a thin, white tongue coating may be present. This pattern often occurs when wind cold attacks the Taiyang meridians and disturbs the harmony between the Ying nutrients and Wei-defence.	太阳中风证	tài yáng zhōng fēng zhèng	
1400	Taiyang cold attack pattern		Characterized by aversion to cold, fever, headache, neck pain and rigidity, absence of sweating, and panting. The pulse is superficial and tight. This pattern often occurs when external wind cold obstructs Wei-defensive yang and closes the skin striae.	太阳伤寒证	tài yáng shāng hán zhèng	
1401	Taiyang–fu organ pattern		Characterized by thirst, restlessness, insomnia, mania, lower abdominal hardness/fullness, inhibited urination and vomiting immediately after drinking water. The pulse is deep and hesitant or deep and knotted. This pattern often occurs when pathogenic heat enters the fu organs and affects the qi transformation of the urinary bladder. It may also occur when heat and stagnant blood affects the lower abdomen.	太阳腑证	tài yáng fǔ zhèng	
1402	Yangming disorders	Middle yang stage pattern Yang brightness pattern	A group of disorders caused by hyperactive yang heat in Yangming meridians or fu organs.	阳明病证	yáng míng bìng zhèng	
1403	Yangming meridian pattern		Characterized by a high-grade fever, aversion to heat instead of cold, profuse sweating, and excessive thirst with a strong desire to drink water. Alternatively, restlessness, panting, and a red face may be present. The tongue coating is dry and yellow. The pulse is surging and large. This pattern often occurs when hyperactive heat affects the Yangming meridians and the entire body.	阳明经证	yáng míng jīng zhèng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1404	Excess Yangming-fu organ pattern	Yangming-fu organ pattern	Characterized by fever that aggravates in the afternoon, sweating of hands/feet, abdominal fullness, distension and pain with tenderness, and constipation. In severe cases, unconsciousness, delirium, restlessness, and insomnia may be present. The tongue coating is dry, yellow and thick or charred black with thorns. The pulse is deep and forceful, or slippery and rapid. This pattern often occurs when pathogenic heat enters the intestine and mixes with dry faeces.	阳明腑实证	yáng míng fǔ shí zhèng	阳明腑证
1405	Shaoyang pattern	Late yang stage pattern Lesser yang pattern	Characterized by a bitter mouth, a dry throat, dizziness, blurred vision, fever alternating with aversion to cold, fullness in the chest and subcostal region, no desire to eat or drink, restlessness, and vomiting. The pulse is wiry. This pattern often occurs when pathogenic factors affect the qi flow of Shaoyang meridians.	少阳病证	shào yáng bìng zhèng	
1406	Taiyin pattern	Early yin stage pattern Greater yin pattern	Characterized by abdominal fullness, vomiting, a poor appetite, diarrhoea, absence of thirst and occasional abdominal pain. The pulse is deep and delayed or weak. This pattern often results from exposure to wind cold and retention of cold dampness due to spleen yang deficiency.	太阴病证	tài yīn bìng zhèng	
1407	Shaoyin pattern	Lesser yin pattern Middle yin stage pattern	Characterized by manifestations of Shaoyin cold transformation pattern and Shaoyin heat transformation. This pattern often results from hypofunction of the heart and kidney as well as general deficiency of yin and yang.	少阴病证	shào yīn bìng zhèng	
1408	Shaoyin cold transformation pattern		Characterized by aversion to cold without fever, diarrhoea with undigested food in stools, and cold limbs. The pulse is feeble and thready. This pattern often occurs when pathogenic factors enter the Shaoyin meridians and transform into cold, coupled with yang qi failure of the heart and kidney.	少阴寒化证	shào yīn hán huà zhèng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1409	Shaoyin heat transformation pattern		Characterized by restlessness, insomnia, and a dry mouth/throat. The pulse is thready and rapid. This pattern often occurs when pathogenic factors enter the Shao meridian and transform into heat, coupled with yang hyperactivity due to yin deficiency.	少阴热化证	shào yīn rè huà zhèng	
1410	Jueyin pattern	Late Yin stage Pattern Reverting yin pattern	Characterized by wasting, extreme thirst, qi surging up to the heart, pain and feverish sensation in the heart, hunger but no desire to eat food and vomiting of roundworm after eating. This pattern often occurs in the advanced stage of six meridian transmission and manifests as extreme heat or cold, or alternating cold and heat.	厥阴病证	jué yīn bìng zhèng	
1411	Patterns of Wei-defence, qi, Ying nutrients and blood	Four phase patterns Wenbing aspect patterns		卫气营血证类	wèi qì yíng xuè zhèng lèi	
1412	Wei-defence phase pattern	Defence phase pattern Wei aspect pattern	Characterized by fever and mild aversion to wind cold. The pulse is superficial and rapid. This pattern often occurs when pathogenic warm heat affects the normal functioning of Wei-defensive qi and disturbs the dispersing and descending of lung qi.	卫分证	wèi fēn zhèng	
1413	Dampness blocking Wei-defensive yang pattern	Dampness obstructing the defence yang pattern	Characterized by fever, aversion to cold, mild sweating, headache, lassitude, chest tightness, a poor appetite and absence of thirst. The tongue coating is thin, white or greasy. The pulse is delayed. This pattern often occurs when dampness blocks the flow of Wei-defensive qi.	湿遏卫阳证	shī è wèi yáng zhèng	
1414	Toxin attacking the lung defence	Heat attacking the lung defence pattern Warm attacking the lung defence pattern Pathogenic warmth affecting the Wei-defence	Characterized by fever, headache, mild aversion to wind cold, mild/no sweating, cough, mild thirst and sore throat. The tongue coating is thin white or yellow. The pulse is floating and rapid. This pattern often occurs when pathogenic warm heat attacks the Wei-defence and affects the dispersing of lung qi.	温邪侵袭肺卫证	wēn xié qīn xí fèi wèi zhèng	毒侵肺卫证



WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1415	Qi phase pattern		Characterized by fever without aversion to cold. The tongue coating turns yellow. This pattern often occurs when pathogenic warm transforms into heat.	气分证	qì fèn zhèng	气分热盛证
1416	Heat entering the qi phase	Heat entering the qi phase pattern	Characterized by fever, thirst, dark yellow urine, and constipation. The tongue is red with a yellow coating. The pulse is slippery and rapid. This pattern often occurs when toxic fire/heat struggles with anti-pathogenic qi in the qi phase.	热入气分证	rè rù qì fèn zhèng	
1417	Damp heat in the qi phase	Qi phase dampness and heat pattern	Characterized by unresolved fever after sweating, chest tightness, abdominal distension, yellowish pigmentation of the skin and eyes, limb weakness, nausea, vomiting and yellow urine. The tongue is red with a yellow, greasy coating. The pulse is soft and rapid or slippery and rapid. This pattern often occurs when damp heat affects the qi phase.	气分湿热证	qì fèn shī rè zhèng	
1418	Dampness obstructing the qi phase	Dampness obstructing the qi phase pattern	Characterized by fever that cannot be resolved by sweating, thirst with no desire to drink water, chest or gastric discomfort, nausea, vomiting, and a sensation of incomplete evacuation after bowel movements. Associated symptoms may include diarrhoea, body heaviness and fatigue. The tongue is red with a slightly yellow, slippery and greasy coating. The pulse is soft and rapid. This pattern often occurs when dampness affects the qi phase.	湿阻气分证	shī zǔ qì fèn zhèng	
1419	Ying nutrients phase pattern	Nutrient phase patterns Ying aspect patterns Exuberant heat in the Ying nutrients phase	Characterized by fever that aggravates at night, restlessness and insomnia. The tongue is deep red. The pulse is thready and rapid. This pattern often occurs when pathogenic heat consumes the Ying nutrient yin and disturbs the heart mind.	营分证	yíng fèn zhèng	营分热盛证
1420	Disharmony between the Ying nutrients and Wei-defence pattern	Nutrient qi and defence qi disharmony pattern	Characterized by spontaneous sweating without fever. Alternatively, patients may present with fever and spontaneous sweating, or neither. This pattern often occurs when yang qi becomes deficient or when stagnant yang qi in the surface of the body affects Ying nutrients and yin fluids.	营卫不和证	yíng wèi bù hé zhèng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1421	Heat entering the Ying nutrients phase pattern	Heat in the nutrient phase pattern	Characterized by fever that aggravates at night, restlessness, insomnia, unconsciousness, delirium and maculae. The tongue is deep red. This pattern often occurs when toxic fire/heat enters the Ying nutrients phase and disturbs the heart mind.	热入营分证	rè rù yíng fèn zhèng	
1422	Heat entering the Ying nutrients and blood phases pattern	Heat entering the nutrient and blood phase pattern	Characterized by fever that aggravates at night, restlessness and insomnia. Alternatively, unconsciousness, thirst with little water intake, maculae, bleeding, constipation and yellow urine may be present. The tongue is deep red. The pulse is thready and rapid. This pattern often occurs when pathogenic warm/heat consumes yin blood and disturbs the heart mind.	热入营血证	rè rù yíng xuè zhèng	
1423	Heat toxin entering the Ying nutrients phase pattern	Exuberance of toxic fire/heat pattern	Characterized by fever that aggravates at night, maculae, unconsciousness, delirium, a dry mouth, thirst and constipation. The tongue is deep red. The pulse is thready and rapid. This pattern often occurs when toxic fire/heat enters the Ying nutrients and blood phases.	热毒入营证	rè dú rù yíng zhèng	邪毒炽盛证
1424	Blood phase pattern		Characterized by fever that aggravates at night, restlessness, insomnia, unconsciousness, delirium, a dark purple tongue and a wiry, rapid pulse. Alternatively, dark purple maculae, haematemesis, nosebleed, bloody stools, bloody urine, a dry tongue with a scanty coating and a thready, deficient pulse may be present. This pattern often occurs when heat in febrile conditions moves blood, stirs wind and consumes yin.	血分证	xuè fèn zhèng	
1425	Heat entering the blood phase pattern	Excess heat in the blood aspect pattern Blood and heat pattern	Characterized by haemorrhagic symptoms such as haemoptysis, nosebleed, bloody urine and bloody stools. Alternatively, a high-grade fever, unconsciousness and twitching of hands/feet may be present. The tongue is dark purple. This pattern often occurs when fire/heat consumes Ying nutrients and blood.	热入血分证	rè rù xuè fèn zhèng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1426	Pattern involving both Wei-defence and qi phases		Characterized by a high-grade fever, headache, and mild aversion to wind cold. Alternatively, body ache/heaviness, nasal obstruction, cough, thirst, restlessness, sweating, dark yellow urine, a sore throat and a bitter taste in the mouth may be present. The tongue is red with a yellow coating. The pulse is superficial and rapid. This pattern often occurs when pathogenic factors in febrile conditions enter the qi phase and transform into heat, while pathogenic factors in the Wei-defence phase remain unresolved.	卫气同病证	wèi qì tóng bìng zhèng	
1427	Heat blazing in both qi and Ying phases pattern		Characterized by a high-grade fever, thirst, restlessness, and headache. Alternatively, unconsciousness, maculae, constipation, and yellow urine may be present. The tongue is deep red with a yellow coating. The pulse is rapid. This pattern often occurs when qi phase pattern co-exists with Ying nutrients phase pattern in febrile conditions.	气营两燔证	qì yíng liǎng fán zhèng	
1428	Heat blazing in both qi and blood phases pattern		Characterized by a high-grade fever, thirst, headache, restlessness, maculae, hematemesis, nosebleed and bloody stools. The tongue is deep red with a yellow coating. The pulse is rapid. This pattern often occurs when heat in the qi phase remains unresolved, while toxic heat stays in the Ying nutrients or blood phases.	气血两燔证	qì xuè liǎng fán zhèng	
1429	Exuberant heat stirring wind pattern		Characterized by a high-grade fever, thirst, unconsciousness, convulsions of hands/feet, neck rigidity, opisthotonos and trismus. The tongue is deep red with a yellow coating. The pulse is wiry and rapid. This pattern often occurs when pathogenic heat stirs liver wind.	热盛动风证	rè shèng dòng fēng zhèng	
1430	Exuberant heat moving blood pattern		Characterized by a high-grade fever, thirst, and red face and eyes. Alternatively, bloody urine, bloody stools, nosebleed or maculae may be present. The tongue is deep red with a yellow coating. The pulse is surging and rapid. This pattern often occurs when pathogenic heat causes the blood to flow recklessly.	热盛动血证	rè shèng dòng xuè zhèng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1431	Other patterns			其他证类	qí tā zhèng lèi	
1432	Blockage pattern		Characterized by trismus, closed hands, unconsciousness, fever or cold limbs. This pattern often results from wind stroke or heat entering the Ying nutrients and blood phases.	闭证	bì zhèng	
1433	Collapse pattern		Characterized by sudden fainting or clouding of consciousness, limb flaccidity, open hands, cold limbs and profuse sweating. In severe cases, body sweats with a cold sensation, bowel and bladder incontinence and a limp tongue may be present. The tongue is dark purple with a white, greasy coating. The pulse is deep and delayed or deep and feeble. This pattern often results from exhaustion of Yuan-primordial qi and mental cloudiness.	脱证	tuō zhèng	
1434	2.5 Disorders	Traditional medicine disorders		2.5 疾病		
1435	Externally contracted disorders	External contraction disorders	A group of disorders caused by external pathogenic factors such as wind, cold, summer heat, dampness, warmth or pestilence. These are further classified into seasonal exogenous disorders, cold damage, warm disease and epidemics from pestilence.	外感病类	wài gǎn bìng lèi	
1436	Seasonal disorders		A group of externally contracted disorders caused by fatigue, deficiency of anti-pathogenic qi, or failure to adjust to exogenous wind, cold, summer heat or dampness. They are characterized by seasonal onset and rarely contagious. Examples of seasonal disorders include common cold, dampness obstructing the spleen and stomach, summer heat stroke, autumn dryness, etc.	外感时令类病	wài gǎn shí lìng lèi bìng	时令病

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1437	Common cold	Common cold disorder	Characterized by fever, chills, headache, body ache, nasal obstruction, sneezing, sore/scratchy throat and cough. In mild cases, common cold is known as wind injury (shang feng). An epidemic common cold, or influenza, often occurs when exogenous pathogenic factors affect the lung exterior.	感冒	gǎn mào	
1438	Seasonal common cold	Seasonal cold disorder	A condition characterized by sudden fever, chills or mild aversion to wind or cold, sore, swollen and congested throat, headache, and muscle/joint soreness and pain. Often occurs when pathogenic toxins attack the Wei-defence, and is more common in spring and winter.	时行感冒	shí xíng gǎn mào	
1439	Summer disorders	Summer-heat disorder	A group of disorders caused by external contraction of summer heat or summer dampness. They often occur when summer heat or dampness remain in the Wei-defence, affect the stomach and intestines, or in severe cases, block the flow of qi.	暑病	shǔ bìng	
1440	Summer non-acclimatization		A condition characterized by a decreased appetite and lassitude. Alternatively, a low-grade fever may be present. Often occurs when summer dampness affects the spleen and stomach or when summer heat consumes qi and affects the spleen function of transportation and transformation.	疰夏	zhù xià	
1441	Summer heat stroke		A condition characterized by high fever, excessive sweating or dry skin, restlessness, thirst, nausea, vomiting and abdominal pain. In severe cases, patients may lose consciousness or experience convulsions. Contributing factors may include working in high temperatures during summer, summer heat or summer dampness suddenly blocking the heart mind, exuberant heat consuming fluids and stirring up liver wind, or summer heat blocking the qi activity.	中暑	zhòng shǔ	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1442	Summer heat collapse		A condition characterized by heat stroke, with a sudden pale complexion, cold sweats, a drop in blood pressure, and a feeble, thready and extremely faint pulse. Often occurs when summer heat or summer heat dampness directly affect the zang-fu organs and cause a drastic deprivation of qi, blood, yin and yang.	暑脱	shǔ tuō	
1443	Summer heat syncope		A condition characterized by sunstroke, high fever, unconsciousness, and cold limbs. Alternatively, nausea, vomiting and abdominal pain may be present. Often occurs when summer heat disturbs the heart mind or blocks the qi activity.	暑厥	shǔ jué	暑闭
1444	Summer heat convulsion		A condition characterized by heat stroke, high fever, unconsciousness and convulsions. Often occurs when summer heat disturbs the heart mind or stirs liver wind.	暑风	shǔ fēng	暑痉
1445	Summer heat turbidity	Summer heat foulness	A condition characterized by distending headache, gastric stuffiness, chest tightness, restlessness, nausea, a hot sensation of the skin, and sweating. In severe cases, unconsciousness and deafness may be present. Often occurs when summer heat and foul turbidity impair the qi flow of the lung and stomach or disturb the heart mind.	暑秽病	shǔ huì bìng	暑秽
1446	Dampness obstruction		A condition characterized by body heaviness, limb soreness, a poor appetite, gastric discomfort, abdominal distension and lassitude. Often occurs when dampness affects the qi flow of the spleen and stomach.	湿阻病	shī zǔ bìng	湿阻; 冒湿; 伤湿
1447	Autumn dryness		A condition characterized by fever, headache, dry cough or difficulty in expectoration of sputum, dry nose and throat, and thirst. Often occurs when dryness affects the exterior and consumes yin fluids.	秋燥病	qiū zào bìng	秋燥
1448	Warm dryness		A condition characterized by fever, headache, cough with scanty sputum, dry nose and throat, thirst, and scanty, yellow urine. Often occurs in autumn when dryness and heat affect the lung and consumes yin fluids.	温燥病	wēn zào bìng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1449	Cool dryness		A condition characterized by fever, chills, headache, absence of sweating, unproductive cough or difficulty expectorating of sputum, and a dry throat and lips. Often occurs in autumn when cool dryness affects the lung and consumes bodily fluids.	凉燥病	liáng zào bìng	凉燥
1450	Cold damage	Cold injury Exogenous febrile disorders	A group of disorders caused by external wind cold. It is initially characterized by cold-induced symptoms and cold damaging yang qi. These include Taiyang disorders, Yangming disorders, Shaoyang disorders, Taiyin disorders, Shaoyin disorders and Jueyin disorders.	伤寒类病	shāng hán lèi bìng	伤寒
1451	Epidemic febrile disorders		A group of febrile disorders caused by external contraction of pathogenic warmth or pestilence. Endemic febrile disorders are prevalent and infectious within a geographic area, whereas pandemic febrile disorders are strongly contagious across the globe.	温疫类病	wēn yì lèi bìng	温疫
1452	Warm diseases		A group of disorders caused by external contraction of pathogenic warm/heat. It is initially characterized by typical heat-induced symptoms or heat transforming into dryness after entering the interior. In severe cases, heat may transmit to the pericardium, damage yin or stir up internal wind. They are known as endemic warm diseases when spreading through population within a geographic area.	温病	wēn bìng	温热病
1453	Acute warm diseases		A group of diseases characterized by a sudden fever, mild or no aversion to wind cold, headache, and sore throat, followed by a high-grade fever, persistent sweating and thirst with a desire to drink water. Associated symptoms may include constipation, dysentery, unconsciousness, delirium, maculae, bleeding and convulsions. Contributing factors may include external contraction of pathogenic warmth, warmth transmitting to the stomach/intestine, warmth affecting the heart, warmth damaging blood, or warmth stirring up wind.	新感温病	xīn gǎn wēn bìng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1454	Latent warm diseases		A group of diseases initially characterized by exuberant interior heat and associated symptoms due to dry heat damaging yin. They are often caused by latent pathogenic factors in the interior or pre-existing heat coupled with contraction of new pathogenic factors.	伏气温病	fú qì wēn bìng	伏邪温病
1455	Epidemic pestilence		A group of contagious epidemic disorders caused by direct contact with epidemic toxins and subsequent human-to-human or animal-to-human transmission. These include wind pestilence, spring pestilence, summer heat pestilence, winter pestilence, plague, seasonal epidemic cholera, measles, smallpox, etc.	疫病	yì bìng	瘟疫; 疫疔
1456	Wind pestilence	Wind febrile disorders Wind pestilence with lung heat	A type of pestilence characterized by a sudden fever, mild aversion to wind cold, cough with yellow phlegm or haemoptysis, sore throat, followed by a persistent high-grade fever, sweating, excessive thirst, chest tightness and panting. In severe cases, unconsciousness, delirium and convulsions may be present. It is often seen in spring and winter. Contributing factors include pathogenic wind warmth attacking the Wei-defence, heat accumulating in the lung or heat transmitting to the pericardium.	风温病	fēng wēn bìng	风温; 风温肺热病
1457	Spring pestilence	Spring febrile disorder Spring pestilence disease	A type of pestilence characterized by a sudden high-grade fever, headache, neck rigidity, vomiting, macular eruption, restlessness, followed by unconsciousness and convulsions. Often occurs when pathogenic warm heat or epidemic toxin enters the body through the mouth or nose to affect the Ying nutrients, blood and brain.	春温	chūn wēn	春温病; 春瘟病
1458	Summer heat pestilence	Summer heat febrile disorders Summer heat pestilence disorders	A type of pestilence characterized by a sudden high-grade fever, headache, vomiting, and neck rigidity. In severe cases, unconsciousness and convulsions may be present. Often occurs when pathogenic summer heat or epidemic toxin enters the body through mosquito bites to disturb the mind or affect the heart and liver.	暑温	shǔ wēn	暑温病; 暑瘟病



WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1459	Dampness pestilence	Dampness febrile disorders Dampness pestilence disorders	A type of pestilence characterized by a persistent high-grade fever, gastric discomfort, abdominal distension, indifferent expression, a greasy tongue coating, a delayed pulse, pink or white skin rashes, masses in the left subcostal region, and low white blood cell count. Often occurs when damp heat enters the body through the mouth and nose to accumulate in the spleen and stomach and obstruct the qi activity.	湿温	shī wēn	湿瘟; 湿温病; 湿瘟病
1460	Latent summer heat pestilence		A type of pestilence characterized by a sudden onset, alternating chills and fever or fever without chills that aggravates at night and alleviates during the day, especially after sweating. Associated symptoms may include a burning sensation in the chest and abdomen, skin rashes, and loose stools. In severe cases, restlessness or delirium may be present. Often occurs when seasonal pathogenic factors or epidemic toxin in autumn or winter triggers and causes the latent summer heat and dampness to retain in the qi/Ying nutrient phases, Shaoyang or stomach and intestines.	伏暑	fú shǔ	
1461	Winter pestilence	Winter febrile disorders Winter pestilence disorders	A type of pestilence characterized by headache, fever, cough, sore throat, sweating and excessive thirst. In severe cases, a persistent high-grade fever, unconsciousness, delirium, spasms and convulsions may be present. Often occurs when pathogenic winter warmth or epidemic toxin attacks the Wei-defence or disturbs the mind.	冬温	dōng wēn	冬瘟; 冬温病; 冬瘟病
1462	Wind rashes		Characterized by fever, cough and pink rashes (resembling fine sand). The rashes start on the face and spread down to the trunk, arms and legs. The rashes may combine into patches. They come and go and do not cause skin peeling or discolouration. Alternatively, swollen lymph node behind the ear may be present. This condition often occurs when epidemic wind heat or virus affects the lung and the surface of the body.	风疹	fēng zhěn	风痧; 小儿风痧

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1463	Chicken pox		Characterized by fever, cough and skin rashes that turn into fluid-filled blisters, which then crust over to form scabs. This condition often occurs when epidemic wind and internal damp heat affect the surface of the body.	水痘	shuǐ dòu	小儿水痘
1464	Pestilence toxin	Pestilence eruptions	Characterized by high fever, headache, and presence of maculae or sores/ulcers. In severe cases, clouding of consciousness may be present. This condition often occurs when pestilence toxin enters the bloodstream with lice/fleas to damage the Ying nutrients or disturb the heart mind.	瘟毒	wēn dú	温毒; 温毒发斑; 瘟毒发斑
1465	Swollen face		Characterized by fever, chills, and local (face, ear, neck and throat) redness, swelling, hotness and pain. It is more common in winter or spring. This condition often occurs when seasonal wind heat toxin attacks the three yang meridians in the face. It is known as erysipelas facialis in modern medicine.	大头瘟	dà tóu wēn	
1466	Flaccid foot pestilence		Characterized by double-peaked fever, headache, abdominal pain, diarrhoea, pain in the surface of the body, muscle flaccidity/weakness that develops into atrophy, unstable walking, and malformation of the affected limbs. It commonly affects children with pestilence. This condition often occurs when summer dampness affect the intestines and stomach, accumulates in the muscles and obstructs meridians. Alternatively, it may occur when heat damages yin fluids and results in malnourishment of the sinews.	软脚瘟	ruǎn jiǎo wēn	
1467	Liver heat disease		Characterized by subcostal and abdominal distension and fullness, nausea, aversion to oily food, a poor appetite, and yellow urine. Associated symptoms include fever, jaundice, distending pain in the right subcostal region and enlarged liver. This condition often occurs when damp-heat toxin affects the liver/gallbladder and spleen and causes the bile to overflow.	肝热病	gān rè bìng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1468	Liver pestilence	Jaundice disorder Pestilential jaundice Acute jaundice	Characterized by a persistent high-grade fever, severe jaundice, pain in the subcostal region, abdominal distension, followed by somnolence, unconsciousness, delirium and mania. Associated symptoms may include bleeding, scanty urine or urine retention. Often occurs when damp heat toxin attacks the spleen and liver to scorch Ying nutrients and blood, damage the liver and, in severe cases, blocks the heart mind.	肝瘟	gān wēn	瘟黄;疫黄; 急黄
1469	Bumpy sand-like exanthem		Characterized by a sudden fever, gastric discomfort, abdominal distension or abdominal colic, nausea without vomiting, diarrhoea urges without bowel movements, concurrent vomiting and diarrhoea, and millet-sized red rashes. In severe cases, subcutaneous bluish petechiae may be present. Associated symptoms may include body ache, sore throat, unconsciousness, a band-tightened sensation around the waist, dark, bluish fingernails, and hands/feet rigidity or numbness. Often occurs when seasonal pathogenic qi or turbid toxin accumulates in the stomach or intestines, affects the skin or disturbs the heart mind.	痧病	shā bìng	痧气;痧胀
1470	Damp heat dysentery	Sudden dysentery	Characterized by a sudden fever, abdominal pain, tenesmus and diarrhoea with stool containing mucus and blood. Often results from ingestion of contaminated food/water or contact with dysentery patients.	湿热痢	shī rè lì	暴痢
1471	Epidemic toxin dysentery		Characterized by frequent stools containing blood and mucus, tenesmus, a high-grade fever, and abdominal pain. In severe cases, loss of consciousness with convulsions, cold limbs and cyanosis may be present. Often occurs when epidemic damp heat toxin (dysentery bacillus) damages the intestine, enters the pericardium or stirs liver wind.	疫毒痢	yì dú lì	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1472	Food-denying dysentery		Characterized by nausea, vomiting, loss of appetite, frequent, severe dysentery and muscle wasting. Often occurs when epidemic damp heat toxin accumulates in the intestine to affect the stomach and damage qi and yin.	噤口痢	jìn kǒu lì	
1473	Cold dampness dysentery		Characterized by abdominal pain/spasm, paroxysmal abdominal pain that alleviates after bowel movements, tenesmus, body heaviness, and chronic diarrhoea with stools containing more mucus than blood or mucus alone. Often results from direct contraction of epidemic cold dampness toxin, contact with dysentery patients or pathogenic factors transforming into cold due to constitutional yang deficiency.	寒湿痢	hán shī lì	
1474	Intermittent dysentery		Characterized by intermittent diarrhoea containing mucus or blood and dull abdominal pain. Patients present with tenesmus during acute episodes. Abdominal distension, a low food intake and lassitude are present during intermittence. Often occurs when chronic dysentery damages the spleen and stomach, coupled with retention of pathogenic toxin.	休息痢	xiū xi lì	
1475	Critical dysentery	Erratic dysentery	Characterized by a slow onset, abdominal pain, and mild diarrhoea with dark-red, jelly-like stools. In severe cases, a sudden high-grade fever, chills, a dry, swollen throat, unconsciousness, stools containing blood, tenesmus and severe abdominal pain are present. Other critical symptoms may include vomiting, fainting or sepsis. Often occurs when contaminated food/water, damp heat or cold dampness damage the intestinal collaterals or affect the heart and lung.	奇恒痢	qí héng lì	
1476	Miasmatic disorder		Characterized by sudden onset of alternating chill and fever, headache, aversion to cold, upper and lower back stiffness, hoarse voice, abdominal distention, body heaviness, bones and joints pain. In severe case, high fever and unconsciousness may be present. They are commonly seen in tropical or subtropical forests. Often results from exposure to miasma in hot, humid mountainous regions.	瘴病	zhàng bìng	瘴气病; 瘴毒病

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1477	Malaria	Alternating fever and chills disorder	Characterized by paroxysms of sudden coldness followed by shivering and then fever and sweating. In severe cases, unconsciousness, delirium, and masses in the left subcostal region may be present. Often occurs when toxin of malarial parasites enters the bloodstream and struggles with the Wei-defensive qi between the exterior and interior. It may also occur when toxin of malaria parasites disturbs the heart mind.	疟疾	nüè jí	
1478	Regular malaria	Quartan malaria	Characterized by shivering and then fever and sweating, occurring every other day or three days. Patients with warm malaria present with more fever than shivering, whereas patients with cold malaria present with more shivering than fever. Often occurs when anti-pathogenic qi struggles with pathogenic factors in between the exterior and interior.	正疟	zhèng nüè	间日疟;三日疟
1479	Miasmatic malaria	Epidemic malaria	Characterized by sudden episodes occurring at irregular periods, unconsciousness, delirium, jaundice and severe anaemia. Often occurs when mosquito bites in damp heat environment enter the bloodstream to disturb the heart mind or causes the bile to overflow.	瘴疟	zhàng nüè	疫疟
1480	Chronic malaria		Characterized by intermittent and prolonged episodes. Often results from deficiency of zang-fu organs, damage to Ying nutrients and Wei-defence and retention of Plasmodium parasites.	久疟	jiǔ nüè	劳疟
1481	Mother-of-malaria		Characterized by distending and painful lumps in the subcostal region, a dark grey complexion and a tongue with stasis. Often occurs when combined phlegm and stasis remain in the subcostal region in chronic malaria.	疟母	nüè mǔ	
1482	Tuberculosis	Fatigue consumption disorder	An epidemic condition caused by over-exertion or contraction of the bacterium <i>Mycobacterium tuberculosis</i> . It includes lung tuberculosis, brain tuberculosis, breast tuberculosis, liver tuberculosis, kidney tuberculosis, intestine tuberculosis, flowing phlegm, etc.	癆病	láo bìng	劳瘵

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1483	Lung tuberculosis		Characterized by cough, haemoptysis, tidal fever in the afternoon, night sweats, weight loss and fatigue. Often results from deficiency of anti-pathogenic qi and <i>Mycobacterium tuberculosis</i> affecting the lobes of lung.	肺癆	fèi láo	
1484	Brain tuberculosis		A condition characterized by tidal fever, night sweats, headache, vomiting, neck stiffness, weight loss, and fatigue. In severe cases, drowsiness or convulsions may be present. This condition occurs upon exposure to patients infected with tuberculosis or when the bacterium <i>Mycobacterium tuberculosis</i> affects the brain.	腦癆	nǎo láo	
1485	Breast tuberculosis		Characterized by (plum-sized) painless breast lumps with unclear boundaries, discharge of thin, clear pus upon disruption of breast abscess, and the formation of breast sinuses or ulcers. Individuals may also experience enlargement of the axillary lymph nodes. This condition often results from infection of bacterium <i>Mycobacterium tuberculosis</i> upon skin lesion or secondary to pulmonary tuberculosis (or scrofula).	乳癆	rǔ láo	
1486	Liver tuberculosis		Characterized by pain and mass in the right subcostal region. Associated symptoms include tidal fever and night sweats. This condition often occurs when bacterium <i>Mycobacterium tuberculosis</i> affects the liver and consumes liver yin.	肝癆	gān láo	
1487	Kidney tuberculosis		Characterized by frequent, painful urination, low back soreness, and bloody urine. Associated symptoms include tidal fever, night sweats and flushed cheeks. This condition often occurs when bacterium <i>Mycobacterium tuberculosis</i> affects the kidney through bloodstream and consumes qi and yin.	腎癆	shèn láo	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1488	Urinary bladder tuberculosis		Characterized by lower abdominal pain, frequent, hesitant urination, and bloody urine. Associated symptoms are persistent low fever and night sweats. This condition often occurs when bacterium <i>Mycobacterium tuberculosis</i> consumes yin essence and impairs the qi transformation of the urinary bladder.	癆淋	láo lín	
1489	Intestinal tuberculosis		Characterized by abdominal pain, diarrhoea, or alternating constipation and diarrhoea. Associated symptoms are persistent low fever and night sweats. This condition often occurs when <i>Mycobacterium tuberculosis</i> consumes qi and yin and phlegm turbidity obstructs the intestines.	腸癆	cháng láo	
1490	Flowing phlegm	Flowing phlegm disorder Bone and joint tuberculosis disorder Bone tuberculosis	A condition initially characterized by dull soreness and pain upon physical exertion, followed by local swelling, pain and discharge of thin, clear pus or pus that resembles rotten cotton threads, delayed healing, and formation of a sinus tract. If the spine is affected, limb rigidity, impaired movement or paralysis may be present. This condition is known as osteoarticular tuberculosis in modern medicine. Often occurs when <i>Mycobacterium tuberculosis</i> and turbid phlegm flow into bones and joints due to congenital kidney deficiency coupled with contraction of <i>Mycobacterium tuberculosis</i> .	流痰	liú tán	骨癆;穿骨流注
1491	Bone phlegm		Characterized by hip joint swelling and pain, difficulty walking or limping, discharge of thin, clear pus or pus that resembles rotten cotton threads, formation of a sinus tract, and delayed healing. Often occurs when <i>Mycobacterium tuberculosis</i> affects the hip joint.	附骨痰	fù gǔ tán	
1492	Tortoise-back phlegm	Tuberculous spondylitis	Characterized by swelling and pain of the lower thoracic and upper lumbar vertebrae with an abnormally excessive convex kyphotic curvature of the spine that resembles the back of a tortoise. Often occurs when <i>Mycobacterium tuberculosis</i> affects the spine and damages the bones and sinews.	龟背痰	guī bèi tán	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1493	Deficiency phlegm at Shenshu (BL 23)		Characterized by an insidious onset, long-continued pus formation, discharge of thin, clear pus containing rotten cotton thread-like substance, delayed healing, and damage to the sinews or bones. It manifests as tuberculous abscess or sinus around the point Shenshu (BL 23).	肾俞虚痰	shèn shū xū tán	
1494	Fistula at Shenshu (BL 23)		Characterized by sinus around the point Shenshu (BL 23) upon rupture of cold abscess in spinal (lumbar vertebrae) tuberculosis.	肾俞漏	shèn shū lòu	
1495	Dung beetle-shaped joints		Characterized by swollen (without redness, pain or hot sensation) metacarpophalangeal joints that resemble a dung beetle, impaired flexion and extension, and a gradual sensation of numbness or pain. It is known as tuberculosis of the metacarpophalangeal joints in modern medicine. This condition often results from deficiency-related phlegm dampness and prolonged cold retention.	蝼蛄	qiāng láng zhù	
1496	Carbuncle of the wrist		Characterized by tuberculous arthritis of the wrist.	腕疽	wàn jū	
1497	Tuberculosis of the knee joint (crane's-knee wind)	Crane's-knee phlegm	Characterized by swelling of the knee joint and the wasting of quadriceps muscle, resembling a crane's knee.	鹤膝风	hè xī fēng	鹤膝痰
1498	Carbuncle of the ankle joint		Characterized by tuberculous arthritis of ankle joint. This condition often results from downward flow of damp heat along the pathways of the three foot yin meridians.	穿拐痰	chuān guǎi tán	
1499	Carbuncle of the heel		Characterized by tuberculosis of the heel. This condition often results from downward flow of damp heat to the zang-fu organs.	足跟疽	zú gēn jū	
1500	Bubonic plague		A fulminating infectious disease characterized by a sudden onset, high fever, bleeding, and swelling of lymph nodes. Alternatively, coughing with phlegm or haemoptysis may be present. In severe cases, patients may faint or die. This condition occurs when the bacterium <i>Yersinia pestis</i> enters the lung or bloodstream following flea bites or handling an infected animal.	鼠疫	shǔ yì	



WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1501	Epidemic cholera	Severe vomiting and diarrhoea disorder	A fulminating infectious disease characterized by sudden onset of large amounts of watery (like rice water) diarrhoea, sunken eyes and leg cramps. In severe cases, patient may faint or die. It is more commonly seen in summer or autumn. Contributing factors may include ingestion of contaminated food and infection with the bacterium <i>Vibrio cholerae</i> . These factors may damage the stomach and intestines and result in severe exhaustion of qi and bodily fluids.	疫霍乱	yì huò luàn	时疫霍乱
1502	Dry cholera	Abdominal colic	An infectious disease characterized by sudden onset of epigastric discomfort, abdominal colic, and an urge to but failure to vomit or defaecate. In severe cases, bluish complexion or generalized dark purple patches may be present. Contributing factors may include infection with the bacterium <i>Vibrio cholerae</i> or cold retention in the stomach or intestines. These factors may cause qi to stagnate in the chest and abdomen, and obstruct the qi flow of the stomach and intestines.	干霍乱	gàn huò luàn	搅肠痧;斑痧;乌痧胀
1503	Wet cholera		An infectious disease characterized by sudden onset of abdominal colic, severe vomiting and diarrhoea, and leg cramps. In severe cases, sunken eyes, dry, wrinkled skin, and cold hands/feet. Often occurs when people eat too much cold food, summer heat and dampness or the bacterium <i>Vibrio cholerae</i> directly affects the stomach and intestines.	湿霍乱	shī huò luàn	
1504	Measles		A condition characterized by fever, cough, runny nose, watery, inflamed eyes, presence of small white spots inside the mouth, and generalized maculopapular rash, followed by desquamation and pigmentation. In severe cases, complications involving the lung, throat, heart and liver may be present, which are often seen in infants. Often results from toxin (measles virus) affects the lung and spleen and spreads to the bloodstream and skin.	麻疹	má zhěn	小儿麻疹

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1505	Ulcerated throat with red exanthem	Scarlet fever	Characterized by fever, sore, ulcerative and swollen throat, characteristic diffuse red skin rashes, a “strawberry” tongue with a spreading pattern and desquamating process. In severe cases, a high-grade fever, unconsciousness and shock may be present. Often affects children and occurs when epidemic warm heat affects the throat and skin through the mouth, nose or skin lesion.	烂喉丹痧	làn hóu dān shā	小儿烂喉丹痧; 丹痧; 喉痧; 烂喉痧; 疫喉痧
1506	Diphtheria		Characterized by fever, sore throat, red, swollen tonsils, the formation of white false membrane attached firmly to the pharynx, larynx and nose, difficulty swallowing, difficulty breathing, rapid breathing, restlessness, palpitations and shock. Often affects children in autumn and winter and occurs when bacterium <i>Corynebacterium diphtheria</i> affects the throat and consumes yin fluids.	白喉	bái hóu	
1507	Whooping cough	Pertussis	A highly contagious disease affecting children. Initially, symptoms are typically similar to those of a common cold. This is then followed by a paroxysmal cough with a high-pitched whoop sound or gasp. Vomiting of saliva or phlegm may also occur. Often occurs when the bacterium <i>Bordetella pertussis</i> attacks the lung, obstructs the airway and causes lung qi to ascend.	顿咳	dùn ké	百日咳; 小儿顿嗽; 天哮; 鹭鸶咳
1508	Mumps	Parotitis	An epidemic disease characterized by fever and diffuse swelling and pain on one or both sides of the parotid glands. In severe cases, unconsciousness, convulsions and painful, swollen testis. Often affects children and results from retained phlegm fire in the cheek following wind heat toxin entering the body via the mouth and nose.	痄腮	zhà sāi	小儿痄腮; 蛤蟆瘟; 鸪鹑瘟; 含腮疮; 腮颌发

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1509	Epidemic haemorrhagic fever		An infectious disease characterized by sudden onset of high fever, macular eruption, headache, pain in the eye socket, lower back pain, abdominal pain, muscle/joint pain, and redness of the eyes, throat, cheeks and chest. Patients may experience hypotension, shock and oliguria followed by polyuria. Contributing factors may include contact with rodents or field work. The bacterium <i>Yersinia pestis</i> may enter the bloodstream and damage the heart and kidney.	疫斑热	yì bān rè	
1510	Leptospirosis		An infectious disease characterized by sudden onset of high fever, headache, muscle pain (especially the lower leg), eye redness and swollen groin lymph nodes. Associated symptoms include unconsciousness, convulsions, jaundice, haemorrhage, hepatosplenomegaly or hepatic/renal insufficiency. It is commonly seen in summer or autumn. This condition often results from contact with water contaminated with the corkscrew-shaped bacteria <i>Leptospira sp.</i> The bacterium enters the body via skin, mucous membrane or digestive tract to affect meridians or zang-fu organs and damage the Ying nutrients and blood.	稻瘟病	dào wēn bìng	钩端螺旋体病
1511	Scrub typhus		An infectious form of typhus caused by the intracellular parasitic bacterium <i>Orientia tsutsugamushi</i> . The bite of an infected mite may not cause pain but a prickly feeling. However, after two or three days, individuals may experience chills, fever, skin rashes, ulcerations and scabbing. Often results from the bite of trombiculid mite. The toxin of the mite then damages the blood in the localized area.	沙虱病	shā shī bìng	恙虫病

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1512	Anthrax		An infectious disease characterized by skin lesion that eventually forms an ulcer with an eschar and surrounding swelling. This condition may also affect the lungs, intestines, brain and other parts of the body. The bacterium <i>Bacillus anthracis</i> may enter the body via the skin, mouth or nose and cause qi and blood to stagnate. Often results from contact with infected animals, handling infectious animal products or ingestion of undercooked foods of (infectious) animal origin.	炭疽	tàn jū	
1513	Leprosy		A long-term infectious disease characterized by generalized numbness and skin lesions with purple-red patches that resemble snake skin. Alternatively, nodules or raised bumps may be present. Often results from close contact with patients infected with leprosy. The bacterium <i>Mycobacterium leprae</i> enters the bloodstream and damages the skin, meridians and the five zang organs.	麻风病	má fēng bìng	大麻风; 疔风
1514	Smallpox		An infectious disease caused by the variola virus and often affects children. It is characterized by chills, fever and skin rashes, papules, sores, pustules and scabs. The latter may fall off, leaving marks on the skin. This condition usually passes through six stages: fever, early rashes, raised bumps, pustular rashes, scabs and falling off of the scabs.	天花	tiān huā	痘疹; 痘疮; 天行时痘
1515	Sexually transmitted diseases	Venereal diseases	Sexually transmitted diseases (STDs) are infections that are spread through sexual contact.	性传播类病	xìng chuán bō lèi bìng	性病
1516	Syphilis		A sexually transmitted disease characterized by sores on the genitals, vagina or skin, bone pain and dull expression. Often occurs when the bacterium <i>Treponema pallidum</i> enters the skin, muscles, bones, zang-fu organs, meridians or even the brain.	梅毒	méi dú	
1517	Syphilitic skin lesion		Highly contagious red skin lesions, sores, papules or nodules seen in patients with syphilis. They often occur when syphilis affects the skin.	杨梅疮	yáng méi chuāng	杨梅疹

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1518	Advanced syphilis		Late-stage syphilis, characterized by nodules, open sores, ulcers on the gum or atrophic scars on the head, face and four extremities. They often occur when syphilis affects the bones, joints and zang-fu organs.	杨梅结毒	yáng méi jié dú	
1519	Syphilis affecting the heart		Late-stage syphilis characterized by palpitations, chest pain, heart murmurs and tremor. In severe cases, heart failure may occur. They often occur when syphilis affects the heart and blood vessels.	梅毒攻心	méi dú gōng xīn	
1520	Syphilis affecting the spinal cord		Late-stage syphilis characterized by shooting (electric shock-like) pain, an abnormal or disturbed sensation and unsteady gait. Often occurs when syphilis affects the spinal cord.	梅毒致痿	méi dú zhì wěi	
1521	Congenital syphilis		A congenital condition characterized by neonatal failure to gain weight, dark red skin with eruptions of macular rashes, and petechial lesions. It occurs when a mother with syphilis passes the infection on to her baby during pregnancy.	胎传梅毒	tāi chuán méi dú	
1522	Chancroid		A sexually transmitted disease characterized by round or oval-shaped painful, elevated sores on the shaft of penis, glans penis, prepuce, labia minora or vagina, coupled with palpable painless, cartilage-like nodules. Often occurs when <i>Haemophilus ducreyi</i> enters the skin and affects the genitalia and anus.	下疳	xià gān	
1523	Buboes		A sexually transmitted disease characterized by swelling of the lymph nodes in the groin. It appears as small as an almond at first and then becomes a pebble-sized, fish mouth-shaped blister, followed by pain, redness, a burning sensation and discharge of pus. They often occur when sexually transmitted infections affect the groin.	横痃	héng xuán	鱼口;便毒

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1524	Gonorrhea		A sexually transmitted disease characterized by difficult, frequent and painful urination, red, swollen urethral meatus and discharge of pus or blood. This condition results from sexual contact with an infected person. Then, the bacterium <i>Neisseria gonorrhoeae</i> affects the urethra, urinary bladder and essence chamber.	花柳毒淋	huā liǔ dú lìn	
1525	Parasitic diseases	Parasitic disorder	Parasitic diseases are infectious diseases caused or transmitted by a parasite.	寄生虫病类	jì shēng chóng bìng lèi	
1526	Ascariasis	Paediatric ascariasis	A parasitic condition mainly found in children and characterized by a poor appetite, periumbilical pain, underweight, swelling of the abdomen, and worms in stools. The roundworm may infest the bile ducts, pancreas or appendix and cause severe complications. The parasite is acquired through ingestion of embryonated eggs in contaminated food. After the eggs are swallowed, they live and remain in the intestines, where they hatch into larvae. Over time, they transform into damp heat to damage the spleen and stomach and absorb nutrients.	蛔虫病	huí chóng bìng	小儿蛔虫病
1527	Taeniasis	Paediatric taeniasis	A parasitic condition contracted after eating undercooked pork, beef or fish infected with tapeworms belonging to the genus <i>Taenia</i> . It is mainly found in children and characterized by abdominal pain, diarrhoea, weight loss, or presence of tapeworms or larvae in the faeces. The tapeworms remain in the small intestine, obstruct spleen qi and prevent the absorption of nutrients.	绦虫病	tāo chóng bìng	寸白虫病; 小儿绦虫病
1528	Cysticercosis	Paediatric cysticercosis	A parasitic condition caused by eating food or drinking water contaminated by tapeworm eggs from human faeces. It is mainly found in children and characterized by palpable subcutaneous solid lumps, seizures, visual impairment and presence of tapeworms. The tapeworm eggs enter the intestine and develop into larvae, which binds with phlegm turbidity and affect the skin, brain and eyes.	囊虫病	náng chóng bìng	小儿囊虫病

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1529	Ancylostomiasis	Paediatric ancylostomiasis	A parasitic condition caused by infection with <i>Ancylostoma sp.</i> hookworms. It is characterized by fast hunger after eating food, fatigue, sallow skin, oedema and presence of hookworm larvae in the stools. Alternatively, anaemia or abnormal food preference may be present. In children, this condition may cause poor growth and development. The hookworms enter the body through contact with contaminated faeces or soil, remain in the small intestine and bind with damp heat to consume qi and blood.	钩虫病	gōu chóng bìng	小儿钩虫病; 黄胖病; 黄肿病
1530	Enterobiasis	Paediatric pinworm infection	A parasitic condition caused by ingesting the eggs of pinworms. It is mainly found in children and characterized by severe itching in the anal or vaginal area. Secondary anal erosion, eczema or bleeding may develop in the areas that are constantly scratched. This condition is usually first identified when live, thin, white pinworms are noticed in the faeces.	蛲虫病	náo chóng bìng	小儿蛲虫病
1531	Fasciolopsiasis	paediatric fasciolopsiasis	A parasitic condition caused by infection with the intestinal fluke <i>Fasciolopsis buski</i> . It is characterized by presence of flukes or their eggs in the faeces, abdominal pain, diarrhoea, a sallow complexion and weight loss. In children, this condition may cause poor growth and development. It occurs when people eat aquatic plants that have <i>Fasciolopsis sp.</i> encysted on them, which remain in the small intestine to obstruct the flow of qi and affect the transportation and transformation of the spleen.	姜片虫病	jiāng piàn chóng bìng	小儿姜片虫病; 赤虫病; 扁虫病
1532	Filariasis	Paediatric filariasis	A parasitic condition mainly found in children caused by an infection with roundworms of the Filarioidea family. It is characterized by fever, skin redness, oedema and burning pain in the lower extremities, testicular pain and swelling, turbid urine, scrotal swelling and identification of microfilariae. This condition is often spread by blood-feeding black flies and mosquitoes. As a result, the microfilariae enter the body and causes damp heat to affect the spleen and kidney.	丝虫病	sī chóng bìng	小儿丝虫病

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1533	Paragonimiasis		A parasitic condition caused by an infection with the lung fluke. It is characterized by cough, chest pain, and expectoration of discoloured sputum containing clumps of eggs. Epilepsy, paralysis or subcutaneous nodules may also be present. This condition often results from ingestion of river crabs, crayfish or amphibious crabs contaminated with larvae of <i>Paragonimiasis sp.</i> As a result, the adult worms remain in the lung or affect the brain or subcutaneous tissues.	肺吸虫病	fèi xī chóng bìng	肺虫病
1534	Trichuriasis	Whipworm infection	A parasitic condition caused by an infection with the parasitic worm <i>Trichuris trichiura</i> (whipworm). It is characterized by lassitude, a poor appetite, abdominal pain, diarrhoea, anaemia and identification of whipworm eggs. In children, this condition may cause poor growth and development. It is often caused by ingestion of food, vegetable and water contaminated with whipworm eggs. As a result, the whipworm remains in the intestinal wall and consumes qi and blood.	鞭虫病	biān chóng bìng	
1535	Fasciolosis		A parasitic condition caused by <i>Fasciola hepatica</i> . It is characterized by pain in the subcostal region, abdominal pain, diarrhoea, a poor appetite, jaundice, masses in the subcostal region and the presence of the eggs of the liver fluke. This condition is often contracted by ingestion of undercooked fish or shrimps. The liver flukes lodge in the bile duct and bind with damp heat to affect the normal functioning of the liver and gallbladder.	肝吸虫病	gān xī chóng bìng	肝虫病
1536	Echinococcosis		A zoonotic parasitosis contracted by infection with the eggs of the parasites (hydatid cyst). It is characterized by painless, movable nodules or cysts with normal skin colour. Associated symptoms may include fever, cough, haemoptysis, abdominal pain and bloody stools. The nodules occur when hydatid cysts remain in the liver, lung and intestines and bind with phlegm, stasis and water dampness.	包虫病	bāo chóng bìng	



WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1537	Schistosomiasis	Snail fever Paediatric schistosomiasis	A parasitic condition caused by schistosomes. It is characterized by skin itching, cough, abdominal pain, diarrhoea, masses in the subcostal region, weight loss, ascites, and presence of schistosome eggs in stools. This condition is contracted by contact with fresh water organisms contaminated with the parasites. Once the parasites enter the body, they may affect the flow of qi, blood and body fluids in the lung, intestines or liver.	血吸虫病	xuè xī chóng bìng	小儿血吸虫病; 蛊虫病
1538	Advanced schistosomiasis	Advanced snail fever	Late-stage schistosomiasis characterized by extreme weight loss, positive finding of the rectal mucosa biopsy, ascites, varicose abdominal veins, liver cirrhosis and splenomegaly. Often occurs when prolonged schistosomiasis causes qi and blood to stagnate in the liver and intestines.	晚期血吸虫病	wǎn qī xuè xī chóng bìng	晚期蛊虫病
1539	Poisoning and accidents/ unintentional injuries		<b>Acute/chronic poisoning or injuries due to physical, chemical accidents.</b>	中毒及意外伤害类	zhòng dú jí yì wài shāng hài lèi	
1540	Drug poisoning		A group of disorders caused by overdose, incorrect use, administration of inappropriately prepared or contaminated drugs or incompatible drug combination. Examples include gelsemium poisoning, <i>Tripterygium wilfordii</i> poisoning, aconite poisoning, almond poisoning, croton poisoning and arsenic poisoning.	药毒类病	yào dú lèi bìng	药物中毒
1541	Food poisoning		<b>A group of disorders caused by ingestion of toxic/contaminated food or inappropriately processed food.</b>	食毒类病	shí dú lèi bìng	食物中毒
1542	Fish and crab poisoning		Food poisoning caused by ingestion of contaminated or inappropriately cooked fish or crab. It is characterized by sudden cardiac/abdominal tightness and fullness, restlessness, vomiting, abdominal pain, and diarrhoea. Associated symptoms include dizziness, facial puffiness, red skin rashes and itching. In severe cases, palpitations, shortness of breath, rapid breathing or death may occur.	鱼蟹类中毒	yú xiè lèi zhòng dú	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1543	Puffer fish poisoning		Food poisoning caused by ingestion of inappropriately cooked puffer fish. It is characterized by sudden vomiting, abdominal pain, diarrhoea and bloody stools, followed by a tingling sensation in the lips, tongue and extremities, eyelid ptosis, limb weakness/paralysis, and cardiac arrhythmias. In severe cases, respiratory or circulatory failure may be present.	河豚中毒	hé tún zhòng dú	
1544	Mushroom poisoning		Food poisoning caused by ingestion of toxic substances present in mushrooms. Symptoms of mushroom poisoning may vary from headache, vomiting, abdominal pain, diarrhoea, jaundice, drowsiness and visual hallucination to mental confusion or sudden death, depending on how severe the toxin affects the gastrointestinal tract, heart, brain, liver or kidney.	毒蕈中毒	dú xùn zhòng dú	
1545	Pickles cyanosis		Food poisoning caused by ingestion of newly pickled vegetables.	菜乌紫病	cài wū zǐ bìng	
1546	Insect stings	Insect stings/bites	A group of disorders caused by insect stings and characterized by local itching, pain, redness and rashes/papulae.	虫螫伤类病	chóng shì shāng lèi bìng	虫螫; 恶虫叮咬伤
1547	Centipede bite		An injury resulting from the action of a centipede's forcipules, pincer-like appendages that pierce the skin and inject venom into the wound. It is characterized by stasis spots, redness, swelling and pain and swelling in the area of the bite. Associated symptoms may include swollen, painful lymph nodes in the regions of the bitten limb, chills and fever.	蜈蚣螫伤	wú gōng shì shāng	
1548	Bee/wasp stings		Bee/wasp stings may cause the venom or toxin to enter the body or remain in the skin. Individuals may experience pricking pain, scratching pain, a burning sensation, skin redness and oedema, papules or blisters at the sting sites. In severe cases, fever, dizziness, nausea, vomiting and low blood pressure may be present.	蜂螫伤	fēng shì shāng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1549	Scorpion sting		Scorpion sting may cause the venom or toxin to enter the body. Individuals may experience severe pain, scratching pain, a burning sensation, skin redness/swelling or blisters as the bite sites. In severe cases, red streaks on the skin, enlarged lymph nodes, chills, fever, nausea, vomiting or respiratory paralysis may be present.	蝎螫伤	xiē shì shāng	
1550	Spider bites		Spider bites may cause the venom to enter the body. Individuals may experience pricking pain, itching or oedema at the bite sites, accompanied by abdominal spasm/pain, muscle rigidity, and eyelid ptosis. Chills, vomiting, salivation or difficulty breathing may also be present.	蜘蛛咬伤	zhī zhū yǎo shāng	
1551	Pine caterpillar injuries		Exposure to toxic hairs of pine caterpillars may cause intense itching, redness, swelling or blisters at the affected sites. Individuals may also experience joint redness, swelling, pain and restricted movement.	松毛虫伤	sōng máo chóng shāng	
1552	Rove beetle injuries		Exposure to pederin, a strong toxin in the blood of rove beetle, may cause a burning pain, itching, linear red spots or pustules.	蠼螋伤	qú sōu shāng	
1553	Caterpillar stings		Exposure to toxic hair of caterpillars may cause intense itching, redness, swelling, blisters or ulcers.	射工伤	shè gōng shāng	
1554	Leech bites		Leech bites may cause persistent bleeding at the site of bites with mild itching and pain.	蚂蝗咬伤	mǎ huáng yǎo shāng	
1555	Cutaneous schistosomiasis		Exposure to cercariae of schistosoma in water may cause itchy skin wheals or rashes that resolve spontaneously after a couple of days.	水毒	shuǐ dú	
1556	Ancylostoma dermatitis		A condition caused by exposure to the infestation of larvae of hookworms, especially <i>Ancylostoma braziliense</i> , when they penetrate the skin of their host. Individuals may experience extremely itchy skin wheals or rashes between the toes or fingers that resolve spontaneously after a couple of days.	野屎风	yě shǐ fēng	粪毒块

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1557	Traumatic injuries		Injuries caused by violent forces, metallic tools, firearms or animal bites. They vary from bone/tendon injuries to tissue or organ ruptures.	创伤类病	chuāng shāng lèi bìng	
1558	Fracture		A condition in which there is damage in the continuity of the bone due to external force impact or stress.	骨折病	gǔ zhé bìng	
1559	Dislocation/subluxation		A condition caused by sudden trauma on the joint. It may cause functional impairment and failure in spontaneous reduction.	脱位病	tuō wèi bìng	
1560	Tendon injuries		A group of conditions caused by damage to the structure and function of tendons by acute trauma or chronic strain. These include tendon dislocation/subluxation, bone dislocation/subluxation, neck stiffness, cervical spondylosis, frozen shoulder, lumbar strain and lumbar intervertebral disc herniation.	伤筋病	shāng jīn bìng	筋伤
1561	Tendon dislocation/subluxation		A condition characterized by local pain, impaired movement, hypertonia, nodules, ropiness, and tenderness. Often occurs when indirect or chronic external force impact damages the structure, function and position of the tendons.	筋出槽	jīn chū cáo	
1562	Bone/joint dislocation/subluxation		A condition characterized by local pain, impaired movement and palpable enhancement of motion end feel, decreased relaxation, and tenderness. Often occurs when indirect or chronic force causes the bones/joints to subluxate.	骨错缝	gǔ cuò fèng	
1563	Neck stiffness		A condition characterized by pain or soreness that limits neck movement. Often results from inappropriate pillow height, poor sleep posture or external contraction of wind cold.	落枕	lào zhěn	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1564	Cervical spondylosis	Neck pain	Characterized by neck rigidity, stiffness and impaired movement, and soreness and pain in the neck, shoulder and arm. Associated symptoms may include dizziness, headache, arm numbness, muscular atrophy, leg weakness, unstable walking, disturbed bladder/bowel functions and paralysis. Often occurs when tendon/bone injury or degenerative changes irritate or compress the spinal cord, nerves and vessels. Contributing factors include ageing, chronic strain/injury, and contraction of external pathogenic factors.	项痹	xiàng bì	颈椎病
1565	Frozen shoulder	Adhesive capsulitis of shoulder	A condition characterized by shoulder soreness, heaviness and pain that aggravate at night, and impaired movement of the affected side. Alternatively, atrophy of shoulder muscles may be present. Often results from chronic strain, contraction of external wind, cold or dampness, trauma or degenerative changes.	漏肩风	lòu jiān fēng	冻结肩; 冷凝肩; 肩周炎; 肩痹
1566	Internal injuries		A group of disorders caused by damage to bones, tendons, qi, blood, meridians and zang-fu organs by direct or indirect trauma on the body. These include trauma of the head, chest and abdomen, coupled with traumatic bleeding, pain, fever, fainting, urine retention, flaccidity, numbness, dizziness, panting and cough.	损伤内证病	sǔn shāng nèi zhèng bìng	
1567	Insect or animal bites		A group of injuries caused by snakes, dogs or other animals. The toxins from the bites enter the bloodstream and may cause localized redness, swelling, pain or numbness, accompanied by mild or severe systemic symptoms.	虫兽咬伤病	chóng shòu yǎo shāng bìng	
1568	Venomous snake bites		An injury caused by the bite of a venomous snake. The toxins may enter the Ying nutrients and blood and affect the zang-fu organs, resulting in chills, fever, nausea, vomiting, headache and dizziness. In severe cases, individuals may experience bleeding, loss of consciousness and convulsions.	毒蛇咬伤	dú shé yǎo shāng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1569	Rabies		Characterized by restlessness, aversion to wind, hydrophobia, photophobia and spasms/convulsions. In severe cases, agitation, loss of consciousness, paralysis or death may occur. This condition can affect humans and other mammals. It is caused by bites from infected dogs. The toxin then enters the bloodstream and triggers the liver wind.	狂犬病	kuáng quǎn bìng	
1570	Tetanus	Tetanus from incised wound	Characterized by muscle spasm, paroxysmal convulsions, trismus and difficulty breathing. Often occurs when pathogenic wind toxin enters the body through a puncture wound.	破伤风	pò shāng fēng	伤痉;金疮痉
1571	Burns and scalds		Damage to the skin by heat: a burn is caused by dry heat such as fire, whereas a scald is caused by something wet, such as hot water or steam. In addition to skin damage (redness, swelling, pain, blisters or scabs), fire/heat may affect the zang-fu organs, resulting in fever, restlessness, a dry mouth, and yellow urine. In severe cases, loss of consciousness and delirium may be present.	水火烫伤	shuǐ huǒ tàng shāng	
1572	Frostbite		Characterized by redness, swelling, a cold feeling, itching and pain upon sudden exposure to low temperatures. Areas that are usually affected include the back of the hand/foot, ears and cheeks. In severe cases, blood blisters, blue-grey discolouration of the skin, ulceration or autoamputation may be present.	冻疮	dòng chuāng	
1573	Systemic hypothermia		A condition caused by exposure to cold environment for prolonged periods. Individuals may experience pale skin, a cold feeling, chills, fever, excitation, elevated blood pressure and faster heart rate. When the core body temperature has decreased below 32°C, an indifferent expression, confusion, decreased breathing/heart rate, and muscle rigidity may occur. When the core body temperature has decreased below 29°C, slow reactions, loss of consciousness, and low blood pressure may be present. When the core body temperature has decreased below 26°C, ventricular fibrillation or respiratory/cardiac arrest may occur.	冻僵	dòng jiāng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1574	Sudden death		Characterized by unexpected critical signs that occur within six hours. These include loss of consciousness, absence of pulsations at the radial, carotid and anterior tibial arteries, respiratory/cardiac arrest, cyanosis, pupil dilation and cold limbs. These signs are caused by separation between yin and yang.	猝死	zú sǐ	
1575	Diseases of zang-fu organs and associated meridians	Organ system disorders	Dysfunctions of the zang-fu organs and associated meridians due to six exogenous pathogenic factors, emotional disturbance, over-exertion, water retention or stagnant blood.	脏腑病及相关病类	zàng fǔ bìng jí xiāng guān bìng lèi	脏腑病
1576	Heart system disorders		Dysfunctions of the heart system and meridians due to six exogenous pathogenic factors, emotional disturbance, over-exertion, water retention and stagnant blood.	心系病	xīn xì bìng	
1577	Chest bi-impediment / cardiac pain		Characterized by chest tightness, shortness of breath and paroxysmal cardiac pain. Often occurs when heart qi fails to pump blood and results in malnourishment of the heart.	胸痹心痛	xiōng bì xīn tòng	胸痹
1578	True cardiac pain		A critical heart condition characterized by sudden, severe or persistent cardiac pain. Associated symptoms include sweats, cold limbs, a pale face, bluish lips and an extremely feeble or regularly/irregularly intermittent pulse. Often results from heart yang deficiency, insufficiency of qi and yin, or phlegm-stasis obstructing the heart vessels.	真心痛	zhēn xīn tòng	
1579	Sudden cardiac pain		Characterized by sudden, stabbing cardiac pain, angina and shortness of breath. In severe cases, feeling of impending death may be present. Often results from deficiency of zang-fu organs, wind cold directly attacking the heart or phlegm stasis obstructing the heart vessels.	卒心痛	zú xīn tòng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1580	Cardiac pain with cold limbs		A paroxysmal heart condition characterized by cardiac pain radiating toward the back and aggravates upon physical exertion and alleviates after rest. Associated symptoms include upward rushing of qi to the throat, chest discomfort, repeated sighing, cold limbs and a dark-bluish facial complexion. Often results from deficiency of the five zang organs, emotional disturbance, and pathogenic factors affecting the pericardium or phlegm stasis obstructing the heart.	厥心痛	jué xīn tòng	
1581	Heart bi-impediment		Characterized by palpitations, chest tightness, shortness of breath, and flushed cheeks. In severe cases, cardiac murmurs may be present. Often occurs when wind, cold and damp heat affect the heart.	心痹	xīn bì	
1582	Heart heat		A condition characterized by fever, palpitations, chest tightness and a rapid, abrupt or regularly/irregularly intermittent pulse. Often occurs when exogenous warm heat or warm toxin due to surgical trauma affect the endocardium or cardiac muscle.	心瘵	xīn dān	
1583	Dizziness due to deficiency		Characterized by dizziness that aggravates upon postural changes, fatigue, low blood pressure and a weak pulse. It is often caused by failure of qi and blood to nourish the heart and mind due to congenital deficiency, postnatal malnutrition or over-exertion.	虚眩	xū xuàn	
1584	Cardiac syncope		A severe condition characterized by a feeble pulse, cold limbs, low blood pressure and fainting or loss of consciousness. It is often caused by heart yang deficiency and floating of yang qi.	心厥	xīn jué	
1585	Congestive heart failure		A severe heart condition characterized by palpitations, rapid breathing upon physical exertion, an inability to lie flat, coughing with foamy sputum, oedema, scanty urine or urine retention. It is often caused by heart qi deficiency, water retention due to heart yang deficiency or heart blood stasis.	心水病	xīn shuǐ bìng	心水;心衰



WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1586	Fright palpitations	Fright palpitation disorder	Characterized by fright-induced palpitations, panic, jumpiness or easily startled, insomnia or dream-disturbed sleep. Often results from heart qi deficiency, fright, or phlegm heat disturbing the heart mind.	惊悸病	jīng jì bìng	
1587	Fearful throbbing	Fearful throbbing disorder	Characterized by irregular, paroxysmal and involuntary palpitations. Associated symptoms include chest tightness, shortness of breath, visible pulsations on the chest at the apex, umbilical venous pulsations, and a regularly/irregularly intermittent or abrupt and rapid pulse. Often results from heart yin/blood failing to nourish the heart, pathogenic factors obstructing the heart vessels or water retention (due to yang deficiency) affecting the heart.	怔忡病	zhēng chōng bìng	
1588	Lily bulb disease	Lily disorder	Characterized by mental strain, listlessness, insomnia, and a poor appetite. Often results from disordered qi and blood, deficiency of yin fluids, malnourishment of meridians and disturbance of the heart mind after acute febrile diseases, poisoning or brain trauma.	百合病	bǎi hé bìng	
1589	Insomnia	Insomnia disorder Sleeplessness	Characterized by an inability to obtain normal sleep and drowsiness and low energy during the day. Associated symptoms may include dizziness, tinnitus and poor memory. Often results from emotional disturbances, mental exhaustion and, subsequently, the disharmony between the Ying-nutrients and Wei-defence.	不寐	bú mèi	不寐病
1590	Nightmare		An unpleasant dream that may contain screaming, a feeling of oppressed by heavy objects or a sense of suffocation. Individuals often wake up in a state of distress but able to return to sleep. Often occurs when fear or fright damages heart qi or when pathogenic factors disturb the heart mind.	梦魇	mèng yǎn	
1591	Hypersomnia	Somnolence disorder Hypersomnolence	Paroxysmal and uncontrollable excessive daytime sleepiness. Often occurs when turbid phlegm obstructs the ascending of clear yang.	多寐病	duō mèi bìng	嗜睡症

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1592	Manic depression/ bipolar disorder		A condition characterized by alternating depression and elevated mood. During manic phases, individuals are often excitable and may speak in a rapid, unintermittible manner. During depressive phases, individuals often present with a low mood or self-loathing. Forgetfulness, timidity, fear and jumpiness or easily startled may also be present. Often occurs when stagnant qi, phlegm and stasis disturbs the heart mind. Contributing factors may include emotional disturbance, feeling of guilty, improper diet or hereditary factors.	矢志	shī zhì	
1593	Dementia	Dementia disorder Aged dementia disorders	A progressive condition characterized by loss of memory, slow reactions and a decline or eventually loss of cognitive and intellectual functions. Contributing factors include ageing-related deficiency of essence blood, congenital deficiency, or phlegm stasis obstructing the mind.	痴呆病	chī dāi bìng	
1594	Epilepsy		A condition characterized by a long-term risk of recurrent seizures. Clinical signs and symptoms include sudden unconsciousness, drooling, convulsions of the limbs, upward staring of the eyes often preceded by vocalizations. Contributing factors may include heredity, fear/fright, emotional disturbance, or improper diet. It may occur secondary to brain diseases, high fever, poisoning or head trauma. These factors can cause wind phlegm or stagnant blood to cloud the heart mind.	痫病	xián bìng	
1595	Depressive psychosis		A major depressive episode characterized by mental confusion, low mood, dull or indifferent expression, incoherent speech and aversion to activity. Contributing factors may include heredity, personality defects or emotional disturbance. These factors may cause qi to stagnate and cloud the mind. It may also be secondary to brain diseases or poisoning.	癫病	diān bìng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1596	Manic psychosis	Manic disorder	A major manic episode characterized by elevated mood, mental/physical hyperactivity, disorganized behaviour, restlessness, and irritability. Contributing factors may include mental stress-induced imbalance between yin and yang, phlegm fire ascending to disturb the mind or stagnant blood obstructing the heart mind.	狂病	kuáng bìng	
1597	Sexual obsessions		A condition characterized by uncontrolled obsessions or abnormal behaviours about non-specific members of the opposite sex. It is often caused by liver qi stagnation transforming into fire or hyperactivity of ministerial fire.	花癡	huā diān	花癡
1598	Paranoia disorders		A group of paranoid or delusional symptoms that include seeing things or hearing voices that others do not, smelling something that does not exist, disorganized thinking and speech or hallucinations of sudden death. It is often caused by deficiency of anti-pathogenic qi coupled with pathogenic factors disturbing the mind or phlegm stasis misting the heart mind.	邪崇病	xié suì bìng	
1599	Liver system diseases	Liver system disorders	Dysfunctions of the liver system and meridians due to six exogenous pathogenic factors, emotional disturbance, overexertion, water retention and stagnant blood.	肝系病	gān xì bìng	
1600	Wind dizziness		Characterized by vertigo, headache, elevated blood pressure and a wiry pulse. Often results from yang hyperactivity due to liver/kidney yin deficiency, which further causes wind yang to ascend to disturb the heart mind.	风眩	fēng xuàn	
1601	Tetany	Tetanus	Characterized by neck rigidity, and involuntary convulsions of the limbs. In severe cases, lockjaw or opisthotonos may also be present. Contributing factors may include six exogenous pathogenic factors or epidemic heat stirring liver wind or deficiency wind due to excessive sweating, loss of blood or chronic diarrhoea. These factors may cause malnourishment of the tendons and muscles and result in involuntary contractions.	痉病	jìng bìng	痉证

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1602	Convulsive disorders upon exposure to exogenous pathogens	Convulsive disorder Convulsion disorder	Characterized by fever, aversion to heat (alternatively, aversion to cold may be present), neck rigidity, shaking of the head, lockjaw, and convulsions of the hands/feet. In severe cases, opisthotonos may be present. A hard convulsion has no sweating, whereas a soft convulsion has sweating. Often occurs when pathogenic wind cold, dampness, summer heat, damp heat or warmth affect the meridians or tendons. It may also occur when pathogenic heat enters the interior to stir liver wind, coupled with internal heat consuming yin fluids.	外感痉病	wài gǎn jìng bìng	
1603	Convulsions due to deficiency		Characterized by tremor of the hands/feet, and muscle spasm/pain. In severe cases, shaking of the head, convulsions, lassitude, fatigue, spontaneous sweating and dizziness may be present. Often occurs when chronic diseases consume yin fluids and result in internal stirring of deficiency wind or failure of qi and blood to nourish muscles or tendons.	虚痉	xū jìng	
1604	Jaundice	Jaundice disorder	Characterized by yellow discoloration of the skin, sclera and urine. Contributing factors may include external contraction of epidemic damp heat, alcohol-related internal build up of damp heat, cold dampness affecting the spleen, or stones/lumps/stasis forcing the bile to flow superficially.	黄疸病	huáng dǎn bìng	
1605	Yang jaundice	Jaundice disorder	An acute condition characterized by bright yellow discoloration of the skin and sclera, dark, tea-like urine, and a decreased appetite. Associated symptoms may include fever, thirst, nausea, vomiting, distending pain in the subcostal region and white/light-coloured stools. Contributing factors may include external contraction of epidemic damp heat from improper diet, alcohol drinking, or stones/lumps forcing the bile to flow superficially.	阳黄病	yáng huáng bìng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1606	Yin jaundice	Jaundice disorder	A chronic condition characterized by dim yellow discolouration of the skin and sclera, dull pain in the subcostal region, lassitude, a poor appetite, abdominal distension or loose stools. Contributing factors may include persistent yang jaundice damaging anti-pathogenic qi, dampness retention or cold dampness affecting the spleen.	阴黄病	yīn huáng bìng	
1607	Haemolytic jaundice		A type of jaundice caused by medications, snake venom or malaria. It is characterized by jaundice, pale face and dizziness.	血疸	xuè dǎn	
1608	Favism		A type of haemolytic jaundice caused by ingestion of fresh fava beans. It is characterized by jaundice, pale face, body ache, abdominal pain, and urine in a colour resembling thick black tea or soy sauce. Associated symptoms include fever, nausea, vomiting, hypersomnia, palpitations, and scanty urine or urine retention.	蚕豆黄	cán dòu huáng	
1609	Liver jaundice		A type of jaundice caused by retention of damp heat and stasis in liver meridians due to excessive alcohol drinking, over-exertion or prolonged liver diseases. It is characterized by bluish or dark yellow complexion, weight loss, spasm of the extremities, and a dry tongue. Associated symptoms include bluish fingernails, eye redness or ascites with varicose abdominal veins.	肝黄	gān huáng	
1610	Liver distension	Liver distension disorder Liver fixity	Characterized by pain and lumps in the right subcostal region that alleviate upon pressing or patting. Often occurs as a result of liver qi/blood stagnation.	肝胀	gān zhàng	肝着;肝著
1611	Liver stuffiness		Characterized by distension/pain in the subcostal region, abdominal bloating, palpable lumps in the right subcostal region, obesity and lassitude. Often results from disharmony between the liver and spleen and turbid phlegm accumulating in the liver due to over ingestion of sweet, fatty food and physical inactivity.	肝癖	gān pǐ	肝痞

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1612	Liver abscess	Liver abscess disorder	Characterized by a sudden fever, gradually increased distending pain in the right subcostal region, and gradual weight loss. In severe cases, patients may experience severe abdominal pain following abscess rupture, coughing with phlegm that contains pus and blood, diarrhoea with stools that contain pus and blood and fainting. Often occurs when damp heat or parasitic toxin retains in the liver and form pus or abscess.	肝痛	gān yōng	
1613	Liver failure		A severe liver condition caused by wind fire misting the mind due to viral infection, chronic diseases or excessive alcohol drinking. It is characterized by rapid-onset jaundice and changes in mental status such as mental confusion, hallucination, mania, fear, agitation or indifference with a reluctance to talk. In severe cases, coma, flapping tremor or paroxysmal convulsions may be present.	肝衰病	gān shuāi bìng	
1614	Gallbladder distention	Gallbladder distension disorder	Characterized by recurrent right upper abdominal pain with stuffiness and distension. Often results from retention of damp heat or phlegm stasis in the gallbladder or anger-related gallbladder qi stagnation.	胆胀	dǎn zhàng	
1615	Cholecystitis		Characterized by right upper abdominal pain, nausea, vomiting, and occasionally fever. Often occurs when damp heat retains in the gallbladder or stagnant bile, qi and blood transform into heat.	胆瘕	dǎn dān	
1616	Cholestasis		Characterized by right subcostal pain and jaundice. Often results from the inability of the bile to flow from the liver to the duodenum. Contributing factors may include gallstones, roundworms, tumour or surgeries.	胆疸	dǎn dǎn	
1617	Cholelithiasis		Characterized by right upper abdominal distension/oppression or intolerable pain. Often results from excessive intake of fatty, oily food, retention of damp heat or parasites in the gallbladder. Associated symptoms include fever and obstructive jaundice.	胆石病	dǎn shí bìng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1618	Biliary ascariasis		Characterized by a history of ascariasis, a sudden drilling upper abdominal colic pain, and vomiting. In severe cases, patients may present with vomiting of roundworms, cold sweats, cold limbs and fever. Contributing factors may include intestinal cold with stomach heat, reversed qi flow of the liver and gallbladder or roundworms entering the biliary tract due to incorrect roundworm-repelling methods.	蛔厥	huí jué	胆蛔病
1619	Tympanites	Tympanites disorder	Characterized by severe abdominal bulging (like a drum). Contributing factors may include excessive alcohol drinking, liver disease, tuberculosis, abdominal masses or schistosomiasis. This condition is subdivided into alcohol tympanites, water tympanites, qi tympanites, blood tympanites and parasitic tympanites.	臌胀病	gǔ zhàng bìng	臌胀;鼓胀;蛊胀;单腹胀
1620	Alcoholic tympanites		A type of tympanites characterized by increased abdominal size, general oedema, varicose abdominal veins, weight loss, fatigue, a poor appetite, and gum bleeding or nosebleed. Often results from retention of stagnant qi, blood and phlegm dampness in the subcostal region due to prolonged or excessive alcohol drinking.	酒臌	jiǔ gǔ	酒鼓
1621	Water tympanites		A type of tympanites characterized by increased abdominal size, abdominal distension, varicose abdominal veins, a sallow skin colour, oedema and enlarged spleen. Contributing factors may include water retention in the abdomen due to spleen deficiency, prolonged alcohol drinking or kidney deficiency.	水臌	shuǐ gǔ	水鼓
1622	Qi tympanites		A type of tympanites characterized by increased abdominal size, tight abdominal skin and a sallow skin colour. Often results from qi stagnation in the abdomen due to emotional disturbance.	气臌	qì gǔ	气鼓

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1623	Blood tympanites		A type of tympanites characterized by increased abdominal size, varicose abdominal veins, and scanty urine. Associated symptoms may include presence of vascular naevi on the face or chest, bleeding, vomiting of blood, and black stools. Often occurs when prolonged liver diseases, oedema, tuberculosis or abdominal masses cause qi, blood and water to stagnate in the abdomen.	血臌	xuè gǔ	血鼓
1624	Parasitic tympanites		A type of tympanites characterized by frequent abdominal distension and pain, increased abdominal size, varicose abdominal veins, weight loss, fatigue, palpable subcostal masses, a sallow or dark grey facial complexion. Often results from qi stagnation, blood stasis and water retention due to parasitic toxins affecting the liver and spleen.	虫臌	chóng gǔ	
1625	Spleen system diseases	Spleen system disorders	Dysfunctions of the spleen system and meridians due to six exogenous pathogenic factors, emotional disturbance, over-exertion, water retention and stagnant blood.	脾系病	pí xì bìng	
1626	Hiccups		Characterized by involuntary brief “hic” sounds and, sometimes, gastric discomfort. Often results from an upward flow of rebellious stomach qi due to ingestion of cold, spicy food or intense emotions affecting the diaphragm.	呃逆病	è nì bìng	
1627	Stomach reflux		Characterized by vomiting in the evening of food eaten in the morning and vomiting in the morning of food eaten in the evening. In severe cases, vomiting immediately after eating, gastric stuffiness, abdominal distension and indigestion may be present. Often results from an upward flow of rebellious stomach qi due to chronic gastrointestinal conditions, surgery, abdominal tumour or retention of food and phlegm in the stomach.	反胃病	fǎn wèi bìng	胃反



WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1628	Dysphagia	Dysphagia disorder	Characterized by difficulty in swallowing, vomiting immediately after eating food or inability to swallow solid food (a feeling of food stuck or held up before it either passes into the stomach or is regurgitated). Often occurs when phlegm qi stagnation (plum pit qi), stagnant fire, blood stasis or cancer toxin obstructs the oesophagus.	噎膈病	yē gé bìng	噎膈
1629	Sudden abdominal pain		Characterized by sudden intolerable and progressively aggravated abdominal pain or colic. Contributing factors may include stagnant qi and blood in the stomach and intestines due to six exogenous pathogenic factors, food poisoning, parasites, stagnant food, stones or dry faeces.	卒腹痛	cù fù tòng	
1630	Qi stagnation-induced abdominal pain		A paroxysmal abdominal pain with no physical changes. Often results from stomach/intestine qi stagnation due to improper diet, exposure to cold, emotional disturbance.	气腹痛	qì fù tòng	
1631	Abdominal distension		Characterized by abdominal fullness and pain, along with increased abdominal size. Contributing factors may include damp heat in the liver and gallbladder, spleen deficiency with qi stagnation, and cold dampness affecting the spleen.	腹胀病	fù zhàng bìng	
1632	Constipation	Constipation disorder	Characterized by hard stools and difficult, infrequent bowel movements, usually less than three stools per week. Patients may also experience straining with bowel movements. Contributing factors may include heat accumulating in the stomach and intestines, deficiency cold, consumption of qi, blood and yin fluids, abdominal masses or abdominal surgery.	便秘病	biàn mì bìng	便闭
1633	Splenic constipation		Characterized by dry stools, difficult, and infrequent bowel movements. Associated symptoms include abdominal distension, a dry mouth, and frequent urination. Contributing factors may include internal dry heat, age-related deficiency of yin fluids or yin cold retention due to spleen deficiency.	脾约	pí yuē	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1634	Diarrhoea	Diarrhoea disorder	Characterized by increased frequency of bowel movements, loose stools, stools containing undigested food or watery stools. Contributing factors may include external contraction of wind, cold, damp or heat, an improper diet, emotional disturbance or yang qi deficiency of the spleen and kidney.	泄泻病	xiè xiè bìng	
1635	Fulminant diarrhoea	Acute diarrhoea	An acute condition characterized by sudden abdominal pain and diarrhoea. Vomiting and fever may also be present. Often results from improper diet or exposure to wind, cold or damp heat.	暴泻	bào xiè	
1636	Chronic diarrhoea		Diarrhoea that recurs or lasts longer than two months. It is often caused by deficiency of the spleen and kidney or disharmony between the liver and spleen.	久泄	jiǔ xiè	
1637	Diarrhoea with undigested food		A type of diarrhoea characterized by repeated, food-related diarrhoea that contains undigested food. Contributing factors may include yang qi deficiency of the spleen and stomach, an improper diet or external wind, cold, damp or heat affecting the stomach and intestines.	飧泄	sūn xiè	
1638	Early morning (Cock's crow) diarrhoea		A type of diarrhoea characterized by diarrhoea upon abdominal pain before dawn and the pain alleviates after bowel movements. Associated symptoms include cold intolerance, cold limbs, low back/knee soreness with a cold sensation and fatigue. Often results from congenital deficiency, kidney deficiency, or internal yin cold due to decline of the vital fire.	五更泻	wǔ gēng xiè	
1639	Dysentery	Dysentery disorder	Characterized by diarrhoea, abdominal pain, tenesmus and stools that contain mucus or blood. Often occurs when internal build up of damp heat (due to emotions or improper diet) obstructs the flow of intestinal qi and impairs intestinal collaterals. Over time, individuals may develop deficiency of the spleen and kidney.	大瘕泄	dà jiǎ xiè	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1640	Cholera-like disorder		An acute condition characterized by sudden abdominal pain, vomiting and diarrhoea. Often results from stomach/intestine qi disorder due to ingestion of contaminated food or exposure to summer (damp) heat or cold dampness.	类霍乱	lèi huò luàn	
1641	Excessive hunger		Characterized by increased appetite, rapid hunger after eating food, weight loss, lassitude and dry stools. Contributing factors may include an improper diet, over ingestion of oily, sweet food, or excessive alcohol drinking. These factors may cause damp heat to accumulate in the stomach, intestines and gallbladder, which in turn affects the normal conduction of the gallbladder and stomach.	食亦	shí yì	
1642	Loss of appetite		Characterized by ingestion of small amount of food, aversion to food, a poor appetite, weight loss, fatigue, and a body weight that is 75–85% below the standard weight. In severe cases, malnutrition and anaemia may also be present. Often results from qi deficiency of the spleen and stomach and stomach yin deficiency due to poor eating habits, dieting or acute/chronic diseases.	厌食病	yàn shí bìng	厌食
1643	Food damage		Characterized by nausea, aversion to food, belching, a foul breath, gastric stuffiness and abdominal distension. Often occurs when binge eating damages the spleen and stomach or food retention coupled with external contraction of wind cold impairs the transportation and transformation of the stomach and intestines.	伤食	shāng shí	
1644	Hunger-related abdominal pain		Characterized by rapid hunger after eating food, followed by stomach ache that alleviates with eating food or warmth. Often results from cold qi retention in the stomach and heart meridians due to constitutional yang deficiency or ingestion of raw, cold food.	饥疝	jī shàn	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1645	Fatigue after eating food		Characterized by drowsiness after eating food and heaviness of the limbs. Abdominal fullness, rapid hunger and a poor appetite may also be present. Often results from deficiency of the spleen and stomach.	谷劳	gǔ láo	
1646	Gastric pain	Stomach ache disorder	Characterized by irregular stomach ache, stuffiness and distension. Often results from stomach qi disorder and disharmony of stomach collaterals.	胃络痛	wèi luò tòng	
1647	Gastric stuffiness	Gastric fullness	Characterized by stomach stuffiness and distension without tenderness. Associated symptoms include a low food intake, abdominal diarrhoea, weight loss and weakness. Often results from qi deficiency of the spleen and stomach and malnourishment/atrophy of stomach collaterals.	胃痞病	wèi pǐ bìng	胃痞;痞满
1648	Gastric distension		Characterized by persistent stomach stuffiness, distension, pain and discomfort. Associated symptoms include acid reflux and oedema. Often results from dysfunctional spleen and stomach or internal turbid phlegm obstructing the flow of qi.	胃胀病	wèi zhàng bìng	胃胀
1649	Stomach prolapse		Characterized by a painful, downbearing sensation of the abdomen that aggravates after eating food or in a standing position. Muscle wasting may also be present. Often results from spleen qi sinking due to improper diet or overexertion.	胃缓	wèi huǎn	
1650	Gastric ulcers		Characterized by frequent gastric pain/discomfort, acid reflux or black stools. Contributing factors may include liver qi stagnation, improper diet, exposure to external pathogenic factors or drug-related side-effects. These factors may affect the functions of the spleen and stomach and impair stomach collaterals.	胃溃疡	wèi yáng	
1651	Fluid retention in the stomach		Characterized by abdominal distension, splashing sound in the abdomen and vomiting of watery fluids. Often results from water/fluid retention in the stomach and intestines due to abdominal surgery or acid reflux.	胃饮	wèi yǐn	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1652	Gastroliths	Stomach stones	Characterized by palpable lumps in the upper abdomen, accompanied by stomach ache, nausea, vomiting, and a poor appetite. Often results from swallowing of hair, ingestion of minerals or excessive ingestion of food rich in tannic acid such as persimmon, hawthorn or date plum.	胃石病	wèi shí bìng	
1653	Acute gastritis		An acute condition characterized by sudden stomach ache, vomiting of blood, and black stools. Often results from irritation to the stomach and damage to stomach collaterals.	胃瘵	wèi dān	
1654	Spleen distension		Characterized by abdominal distension, discomfort of the four limbs, body heaviness, and splashing sound in the abdomen. A poor appetite, hiccups, restlessness and insomnia may also be present. Often occurs when cold damp affects the transportation and transformation of the spleen.	脾胀	pí zhàng	
1655	Alcohol-induced masses		Characterized by pain and masses in the subcostal region, thirst, restlessness, and gradual weight loss. Red spots on the face, red palms, spider angioma and jaundice may be present. Contributing factors may include retention of alcoholic toxin, phlegm and stasis in the subcostal region due to prolonged alcohol drinking, damp heat accumulating in the spleen and stomach and disharmony between qi and blood.	酒癖	jiǔ pǐ	酒癥
1656	Spleen heat		Characterized by overeating, overweight, belly fat and a sweet, greasy taste in the mouth. Often results from overeating of oily, sweet food and physical inactivity.	脾瘵	pí dān	
1657	Oedema due to spleen deficiency		Characterized by increased abdominal size, oedema, scanty urine, and heaviness of the limbs. A poor appetite and a sallow complexion may be present. Often results from spleen yang deficiency and water retention due to chronic stomach, intestine, liver or gallbladder problems.	脾水	pí shuǐ	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1658	Wasting of the spleen		A chronic condition characterized by wasting of the limbs, fatigue, diarrhoea, and strong-odoured oily or foamy stools. A poor appetite, abdominal distension, muscle pain, oedema, spoon nails and clubbed fingers/toes may be present. Often results from poor digestion and absorption (malnourishment of the body) due to chronic problems of the stomach, intestine or other organs.	脾消	pí xiāo	脾瘠
1659	Diaphragmatic hernia		Characterized by sudden distension and pain in the diaphragmatic area and severe vomiting. It results either from congenital defect or postnatal injuries.	膈疝	gé shàn	
1660	Reflux oesophagitis		Characterized by chest pain behind the sternum with a burning sensation, stomach discomfort and acid reflux. Contributing factors may include exposure to pathogenic factors/ irritating/ drugs, internal heat or a prolonged ascending of rebellious stomach qi.	食管瘴	shí guǎn dān	
1661	Oesophageal achalasia		Characterized by intermittent dysphagia and vomiting. Contributing factors may include improper diet, emotional disturbance or damage to the oesophagus. These factors cause qi stagnation and ascending of stomach qi.	食管痹	shí guǎn bì	
1662	Pancreatic distension		Characterized by weight loss and repeated abdominal pain, distension and diarrhoea. Often results from toxic pathogenic factors affecting the pancreas and spleen.	胰胀	yí zhàng	
1663	Pancreas heat		Characterized by sudden, severe upper abdominal pain, coupled with nausea, vomiting, fever and increased amylase in urine. Often results from excessive alcohol use, binge eating, or extreme emotions. It may also be secondary to gallstones or ascaris-induced colic, which results in retention of damp heat in the pancreas.	胰瘴	yí dān	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1664	Pancreatic abscess		Characterized by a history of severe pancreas heat for 2–3 weeks, coupled with high fever, persistent upper abdominal pain that radiates to the back and left lower back, and a palpable cystic lump in the upper abdomen with a fixed location, a sense of mobility and tenderness. Jaundice may also be present. Often secondary to pancreas heat, it develops when retained toxins in the pancreas cause decay of qi and blood.	胰痈	yí yōng	
1665	Irritable bowel pattern		Characterized by abdominal pain and alternating diarrhoea with constipation. The symptoms are closely associated with fluctuating emotions. Often results from qi stagnation due to emotional disturbance.	肠郁	cháng yù	
1666	Functional intestinal obstruction		Characterized by polydipsia, dysuria, diarrhoea and abdominal distension/pain. Often occurs when wind, cold and dampness obstructs the flow of intestinal qi and water.	肠痹	cháng bì	
1667	Intestinal obstruction		Characterized by paroxysmal abdominal colic, abdominal bloating, absence of bowel sounds, flatus, and constipation. Often occurs when abdominal surgery, tumour compression or carcinoma toxins obstruct the flow of intestinal qi.	肠结	cháng jié	
1668	Intestinal abscess	Intestinal abscess disorder	Characterized by fever, right lower abdominal pain and contracture, abdominal tenderness or palpable lumps. Often results from toxic heat accumulating in the intestines.	肠痈	cháng yōng	
1669	Acute haemorrhagic necrotizing enterocolitis		An acute condition characterized by sudden abdominal pain, diarrhoea, fever and blood in stools. Often results from internal damp heat, stagnation of qi and blood and ingestion of contaminated food.	小肠痈	xiǎo cháng dān	
1670	Iron deficiency anaemia		Characterized by dry, sallow complexion, pale eyelids and finger/toe nails, dizziness and fatigue. Chapped lips, poor memory and difficulty concentrating may be present. Contributing factors may include malnutrition, weakness of the spleen and stomach, food retention, parasites or heavy menstruation.	萎黄病	wěi huáng bìng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1671	Lung system diseases	Lung system disorders	Dysfunctions of the lung system and meridians due to six exogenous pathogenic factors, emotional disturbance, over-exertion, water retention and stagnant blood.	肺系病	fèi xì bìng	
1672	Cough due to external contraction	Cough upon exposure to exogenous factors	Characterized by a sudden onset, urgent coughing sound, difficult expectoration of sputum, or coughing with scanty, yellow or white sputum. Associated symptoms include fever, headache, stuffy/runny nose, a red, sore and scratchy throat, and a dry mouth. Often occurs when six exogenous pathogenic factors or pestilence attack the lung and causes lung qi to ascend.	外感咳嗽	wài gǎn ké sou	
1673	Cough due to internal dysfunctions	Cough due to endogenous factors	Characterized by intermittent coughs varying in intensity. Associated symptoms may include fatigue, frequent common colds, chest tightness, panting, pain in the subcostal region, haemoptysis and puffy face or eyes. Contributing factors may include chronic cough damaging lung qi, phlegm dampness due to spleen deficiency, liver fire affecting the lung, water retention due to kidney deficiency or deficiency of qi and yin.	内伤咳嗽	nèi shāng ké sou	
1674	Fulminant cough		Characterized by severe coughing with an acute attack and a short duration.	暴咳病	bào ké bìng	暴咳
1675	Chronic cough		Characterized by persistent, recurrent coughing with a prolonged period.	久咳病	jiǔ ké bìng	久咳
1676	Lung heat	Lung heat disorder	Characterized by cough with sticky, yellow phlegm or blood-stained sputum and thirst. Associated symptoms may include tidal fever, chills, pain in the subcostal region, constipation and yellow urine. Often occurs when pathogenic heat, heat of zang-fu organs or phlegm heat affect the dispersing and descending of lung qi.	肺瘵	fèi dān	肺热病
1677	Asthma		Characterized by recurrent episodes of difficulty breathing, wheezing and shortness of breath with an inability to lie flat. Contributing factors may include congenital deficiency or impaired functions of the lung, spleen and kidney. These factors may generate phlegm to obstruct the airway.	哮喘病	xiào chuǎn bìng	哮喘



WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1678	Wheezing	Wheezing disorder Wheezing pattern	Characterized by sudden, whistling sounds with an inability to lie flat. Precursory symptoms may include an itchy nose, sneezing, cough and chest tightness. Contributing factors may include heredity, exposure to dust or irritant gas, exogenous pathogenic factors, fatigue, improper diet or emotions. These factors, coupled with pre-existing phlegm may cause phlegm qi to stagnate and obstruct the respiratory airways.	哮病	xiào bìng	哮证
1679	Dyspnoea	Dyspnoea disorder Dyspnoea pattern	Characterized by shortness of breath, rapid breathing, and difficulty breathing that worsens upon exertion. In severe cases, breathing with an open mouth and elevated shoulder, nasal flaring and an inability to lie flat may be present. Associated symptoms may include cough with profuse phlegm, chest tightness, cyanosis, raised chest and distension in the subcostal region. Contributing factors may include heredity, exogenous pathogenic wind cold affecting the lung, turbid phlegm accumulating in the lung, chronic cough damaging lung qi or kidney failing to absorb qi.	喘病	chuǎn bìng	喘证
1680	Fulminant wheezing		An acute, severe condition characterized by sudden wheezing, shortness of breath, sweating, an inability to lie flat, bulging chest, subcostal distension, a dark complexion, and cyanosis of the lips. Contributing factors include a history of chronic asthma, exposure to exogenous pathogens or dysfunction of the internal organs. These factors may cause lung qi to ascend and impair the function of the kidney to absorb qi.	暴喘	bào chuǎn	
1681	Atrophy of the lung lobes		Characterized by shortness of breath and cough with expectoration of turbid sputum. Often occurs when chronic cough damages lung qi, consumes fluids and results in withering or disuse of the lung lobes.	肺痿	fèi wěi	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1682	Lung abscess		Characterized by a sudden fever, cough, chest pain and expectoration of strong-odoured pus/blood-stained sputum. Often occurs when toxic heat accumulates in the lung, causes sores or ulcers in the lung lobes and over time, forms abscesses.	肺痈	fèi yōng	
1683	Lung distension	Lung distension disorder	Characterized by chest stuffiness or distension, cough with expectoration of sputum, shortness of breath and panting upon exertion. In severe cases, a raised chest, distention in the subcostal region and cyanosis of the lips and tongue may be present. Often occurs when chronic cough or wheezing causes lung qi to stagnate.	肺胀	fèi zhàng	
1684	Pneumoconiosis		A chronic condition characterized by persistent coughing, chest tightness/pain, and over time, panting upon physical exertion. Often occurs when inhaled dust in working or living environment obstructs lung collaterals and impairs the lung's function in dispersing and descending.	尘肺	chén fèi	
1685	Pleural effusion		An acute, severe condition characterized by sudden rapid breathing, coughing with a large amount of bloody, foamy sputum, oedema, scanty urine, severe palpitations, a pale face, and cyanosis of the tongue and lips. Often occurs when heart yang deficiency or too fast infusion rates cause excess fluids to accumulate in the lung.	肺水病	fèi shuǐ bìng	
1686	Pulmonary syncope		Characterized by sudden rapid breathing, mental cloudiness and cold limbs. Often occurs when prolonged lung disorders cause lung qi exhaustion or turbid phlegm to ascend to mist the mind.	肺厥	fèi jué	
1687	Kidney system disorders	Kidney system disorders	Dysfunctions of the kidney system and meridians due to six exogenous pathogenic factors, emotional disturbance, over-exertion, water retention and stagnant blood.	肾系病	shèn xì bìng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1688	Strangury	Strangury disorders	Characterized by frequent, urgent, hesitant and painful urination. The pain during urination may radiate to the low back and abdomen. Contributing factors may include damp heat affecting the lower jiao, deficiency of the spleen and kidney, liver qi stagnation, tuberculosis, stones or tumours. These factors may impair the qi transformation of the urinary bladder.	淋证	lín zhèng	
1689	Qi strangury		Characterized by lower abdominal distension and fullness, frequent, hesitant, painful or dripping urination. Contributing factors may include liver qi stagnation or age-related qi deficiency of the spleen and kidney. These factors may impair the qi transformation or opening and closing of the urinary bladder.	气淋	qì lín	
1690	Heat strangury	Heat stranguria disorder Damp heat stranguria; acute stranguria	Characterized by frequent, urgent and painful urination with scanty, red urine and a burning sensation. Associated symptoms may include fever, chills, lower back pain, lower abdominal cramps, distension and pain, a yellow, greasy tongue coating and a slippery, rapid pulse. Often occurs when damp heat affects the kidney and urinary bladder.	热淋	rè lín	湿热淋; 急淋
1691	Blood strangury		Characterized by painful urination with blood in urine. Often occurs when damp heat or cold damp affects the bladder and enters the bloodstream to cause the blood to move recklessly. It may also occur when qi fails to control blood within the vessels or when qi deficiency results in blood stagnation.	血淋	xuè lín	
1692	Unctuous strangury	Chyluria	Characterized by recurrent painful discharge of turbid, milky urine like rice water, cream or sauce, and back pain/soreness. Associated symptoms may include hesitant urination, oedema, fatigue, or anaemia. Symptoms can be induced or exacerbated by high-fat diet, fatigue or exposure to cold. Contributing factors may include damp heat due to deficiency of the spleen and kidney, filariasis, tuberculosis or tumours. These factors may impair the qi transformation of the lower jiao.	膏淋	gāo lín	乳糜尿

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1693	Fatigue strangury		Characterized by recurrent, fatigue-induced frequent, urgent, painful and dripping urination, lower back pain, lower back pain, and lassitude. Associated symptoms may include tidal, low-grade fever and weight loss. Contributing factors may include retention of toxins due to chronic strangury, excessive worries or mental exertion damaging the heart and spleen, sexual indulgence damaging the kidney or tuberculosis affecting the opening and closing of the urinary bladder.	劳淋	láo lín	
1694	Stone strangury	Stony stranguria disorder	Characterized by lower back pain, lower back pain, haematuria or discharge of stones, coupled with positive imaging findings of urinary stones. Often occurs when damp heat scorches the urine into stones.	石淋	shí lín	
1695	Prostate enlargement		Characterized by frequent urination, trouble starting to urinate, weak stream, or inability to urinate. It often occurs when age-related kidney qi deficiency and qi weakness of the spleen and stomach cause phlegm and stasis to impair the qi transformation of Sanjiao.	精癃	jīng lóng	
1696	Enuresis	Enuresis disorder	Characterized by repeated inability to control urination during sleep. Contributing factors may include congenital weakness, kidney qi deficiency or internal retention of damp heat and stagnant blood. These factors may impair the qi transformation of the urinary bladder.	遗尿	yí niào	
1697	Urinary incontinence		A repeated inability to control urination during the day time. It is often caused by loss of bladder control due to age-related kidney deficiency, phlegm misting the mind or urethral injuries.	小便不禁	xiǎo biàn bù jīn	
1698	Profuse urination (diabetes insipidus)		Characterized by large amounts of dilute urine and excessive thirst. Often occurs when the kidney fails to perform the qi transformation of the urinary bladder.	尿崩	niào bēng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1699	Urinary retention		Characterized by scanty urine, dripping urination and lower abdominal distension/pain. In severe cases, individuals may experience an inability to empty the bladder. Contributing factors may include damp heat in the urinary bladder, stagnant blood, stones or tumours obstructing the urethra, kidney yang failing to perform qi transformation, kidney yin deficiency or surgery.	癃闭	lóng bì	
1700	Kidney water	Kidney wind	Characterized by persistent oedema, belly bulging, scanty urine, lower back pain/lower back pain, and a dark facial complexion, coupled with persistent proteinuria, haematuria, hypoproteinaemia and hyperlipidaemia. During an acute attack, kidney water is known as kidney wind. Often occurs when kidney yang fails to transform qi and circulate water due to recurrent oedema, coupled with wind heat or drug-related toxins damage the kidney.	肾水病	shèn shuǐ bìng	肾风
1701	Urinary block and vomiting		A critical condition characterized by urinary retention and persistent vomiting, coupled with skin itching, and a strong-odoured breath. In severe cases, convulsions of the hands and feet, drowsiness and mental cloudiness may be present. Often occurs in late-stage oedema, urinary retention or strangury. Contributing factors may include impaired qi transformation due to yin/yang failure of the spleen and kidney and toxic, turbid dampness attacking the stomach. Alternatively, it may also occur when dampness transforms into heat and stirs wind, or in severe cases, to disturb the heart mind.	关格	guān gé	
1702	Kidney heat	Kidney heat disorder	Characterized by fever, lower back pain/lower back pain and abnormal urination. Often occurs when damp heat or toxic warmth affects the kidney.	肾瘵	shèn dān	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1703	Renal abscess		A condition (secondary to abscess in Jingmen (GB 25) or other body parts) characterized by sudden chills, fever, and severe lower back pain. Weak, hesitant urine stream, painful urination and pain in the renal area and costovertebral angle to percussion may also be present. Often occurs when toxins from the abscess affects the kidney.	肾痛	shèn yōng	
1704	Kidney prolapse		Characterized by a bearing-down sensation and lower back pain. Alternatively, recurrent bloody urine may be present. Often occurs when constitutional weakness or overexertion causes qi to sink.	肾垂	shèn chuí	
1705	Kidney syncope		A severe condition characterized by mental cloudiness in patients with chronic kidney diseases. Often results from kidney qi exhaustion and turbid dampness misting the mind.	肾厥	shèn jué	
1706	Persistent erection	Persistent erection disorder	Characterized by abnormally prolonged erection of the penis. Contributing factors may include liver fire, stasis, damp heat, overuse of aphrodisiac drugs or sexual indulgence. These factors may cause internal toxic fire and trigger ministerial fire to consume kidney yang and result in hyperactivity of deficiency yang.	强中	qiáng zhōng	阳强
1707	Genital retraction		Characterized by intense lower abdominal pain, a subjective feeling of genital (penis, testis, scrotum, vulva or breasts) shrinking. Often occurs when cold obstructs the liver meridian or when yang fails to warm the external genitalia.	缩阴病	suō yīn bìng	缩阴
1708	Emotional disorders		Emotional disorders include plum pit qi, hysteria or depression. These disorders result from disorders of qi, blood, yin and yang as well as dysfunctions of the zang-fu organs and are often caused by intense mental stress or persistent emotional depression.	情志病类	qíng zhì bìng lèi	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1709	Depression	Depression disorder Depressive disorder Melancholy disorder	Characterized by a low mood, lack of interest, fullness and stuffiness in the chest and subcostal region, and a poor appetite. In severe cases, a sense of guilt, dejection, paranoia, self-harm and tendency to commit suicide. Often occurs when long-term emotional disturbance or character defects causes qi to stagnate. It is first associated with the liver and later with the heart and spleen.	郁病	yù bìng	郁证
1710	Hysteria		A paroxysmal mental disorder in women characterized by mood swings, mind wandering, sadness with no apparent reason, restlessness, crying or laughing with unexplained reason and frequent sighing. Often occurs when emotional disturbance causes qi disorder and consumes heart blood and spleen qi. It may also occur as a result of yin–yang disorder due to menopause.	脏躁	zàng zào	
1711	Low self-esteem		Characterized by depression, timidity, self-inferiority and panic. In severe cases, emotional detachment may be present. Often results from gallbladder deficiency, heart qi insufficiency or disquieted gallbladder qi.	卑慄	bēi dié	
1712	Disorders of qi, blood and bodily fluids	Qi, blood and fluid disorders	A collective term for disorders of qi, blood, bodily fluids, essence and spirit caused by exogenous pathogenic factors, emotions, an improper diet, over-exertion, water-fluid retention or stagnant blood.	气血津液病类	qì xuè jīn yè bìng lèi	
1713	Deficiency/consumption		A collective term for chronic deficiency or consumption of qi, blood, yin, yang and the five zang organs. Contributing factors may include over-exertion, an improper diet, emotions, alcohol consumption, sexual indulgence or major medical conditions.	虚劳类病	xū láo lèi bìng	虚劳;虚劳病

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1714	Chronic consumptive conditions	Consumptive disorder	A group of chronic consumptive conditions characterized by a lustreless complexion, lassitude, shortness of breath, a low voice, dizziness, blurred vision and poor appetite. Associated symptoms include abdominal distension, loose stools, palpitations, forgetfulness, nocturnal emissions, irregular menstruation, spontaneous sweating, night sweats, weight loss, feverish sensations in the palms, soles and chest, cold intolerance and cold limbs. Contributing factors may include major or chronic disease, heavy blood loss during childbirth or surgery, congenital weakness or ageing. These factors may consume qi, blood, yin, yang and the zang-fu organs.	虚损	xū sǔn	
1715	Darkening of the skin	Primary adrenal insufficiency	Characterized by fatigue, weight loss, dark sallow discolouration of the skin and face, darkening of the forehead, black stools, itchy skin, and abdominal distension (as if there is water inside). Contributing factors may include deficiency of the liver and kidney due to chronic jaundice, internal phlegm, sexual indulgence, tuberculosis or tumour that consumes essential qi and obstructs blood vessels.	黑疸	hēi dǎn	
1716	Aplastic anaemia	Exhaustion of marrow	Characterized by haemorrhage, anaemia and deficiency of whole blood cells. Contributing factors may include heredity, postnatal malnutrition or exposure to drugs or certain chemicals.	髓劳	suǐ láo	
1717	Fever due to internal dysfunctions		Characterized by a low-grade fever, tidal fever, bone-steaming sensation, hot flashes and feverish sensations of the palms and soles. Individuals may also present with symptoms indicative of deficiency of yin, yang, qi, blood and the zang-fu organs. Contributing factors may include over-exertion, emotional disturbance, improper diet or dysfunctions of the zang-fu organs. These factors may cause deficiency of qi and blood and disharmony between yin and yang.	内伤发热病	nèi shāng fā rè bìng	



WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1718	Motion sickness	Car sickness Seasickness	Characterized by a pale face, dizziness, nausea and vomiting. The symptoms slowly decrease and then disappear once the motion has stopped. Contributing factors may include emotions, hunger/binge eating or disagreement between visually perceived movement and the vestibular system's sense of movement. These factors may cause disordered qi and blood, allowing phlegm turbidity to ascend and disturb the mind.	晕动病	yūn dòng bìng	注车;注船
1719	Syncope/fainting		A group of critical conditions caused by disorder of qi and blood, exhaustion of yang qi or collapse of yin blood. Contributing factors may include mental stress, eating disorder, drug poisoning, food poisoning or external contraction of pathogenic factors.	厥脱类病	jué tuō lèi bìng	
1720	Syncope	Syncope disorder	A group of emergent conditions characterized by sudden fainting and cold limbs. Contributing factors may include mental stress, eating disorder, six exogenous pathogenic factors, pestilence, phlegm dampness, drug poisoning or food poisoning. These factors may block the flow of qi and cause the disorder of qi and blood.	厥病	jué bìng	厥证
1721	Qi syncope	Qi syncope disorder	Characterized by sudden fainting (patients recover after some time). Some may also experience sensory or motor disturbance but no organic pathological changes. Often occurs when emotional disturbance causes qi to stagnate or when clear yang fails to ascend due to spleen qi deficiency.	气厥	qì jué	郁厥
1722	Phlegm syncope	Phlegm syncope disorder	Characterized by sudden fainting or unconsciousness, phlegm sounds in the throat, cold limbs, and a deep, excessive, wiry and slippery pulse. Often occurs when emotional disturbance causes qi to stagnate in the throat or when wind phlegm obstructs the airways and blocks the heart mind.	痰厥	tán jué	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1723	Cold syncope	Cold syncope disorder Yin syncope	Characterized by hypothermia, cold limbs and mental cloudiness. Chilblains may also be present. Often results from exposure to cold environment for a prolonged period or severe cold consuming yang qi.	寒厥	hán jué	阴厥;冷厥
1724	Heat syncope	Yang syncope	Characterized by cold extremities up to the elbows and knees or beyond, body fever without sweating, a flushed face, a dry tongue and lips, scanty, dark yellow urine, and dry stools. In severe cases, unconsciousness may be present. Often results from exposure to hot environment for a prolonged period or severe fire heat/summer heat damaging yin or disturbing the heart mind.	热厥	rè jué	阳厥
1725	Over-eating-induced syncope	Crapulent syncope disorder	Characterized by fainting after over-eating, abdominal distension and fullness, belching and a slippery, forceful pulse. Often results from binge eating. Alternatively, it may occur when wind cold or anger triggers the stagnant food in the spleen and stomach and causes qi to ascend to disturb the heart mind.	食厥	shí jué	
1726	Alcoholic syncope		Characterized by restlessness, vomiting, sleepiness, and panting. In severe cases, fainting and cold limbs may be present. It occurs when excessive alcohol drinking affects the heart mind.	酒厥	jiǔ jué	
1727	Wind syncope		Characterized by chest tightness, palpitations, difficulty breathing, cold limbs, a feeble pulse, skin itching, low blood pressure and mental cloudiness. Often results from wind disturbing or blocking qi and blood or yang qi collapse.	风厥	fēng jué	
1728	Flopping syncope		Characterized by sudden fainting, intense headache, high blood pressure, restlessness, a red face, numbness on one side of the body, and tremor of the limbs. In severe cases, vomiting of blood, mental cloudiness, sweating and rapid breathing may be present. Often occurs when emotions like sudden rage cause hyperactivity of liver yang and disordered qi and blood.	薄厥	bó jué	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1729	Blood syncope	Blood syncope disorder	Characterized by sudden fainting, a pale face, cold limbs and transient mental cloudiness. Contributing factors may include nervousness, fear, intense traumatic pain, ageing or a sudden change in posture. These factors may disturb qi activity and result in the failure of blood to nourish the brain.	血厥	xuè jué	脉厥
1730	Hunger syncope	Hunger syncope disorder	Characterized by sudden palpitations, weakness, cold sweats, a pale face and, in severe cases, sudden fainting may be present. Often results from failure of Ying nutrients to nourish the brain due to inability to eat food or hunger.	饥厥	jī jué	
1731	Sudden syncope		A severe condition characterized by loss of consciousness, impaired ability to speak, faint breathing, body rigor, and bowel and bladder incontinence. Contributing factors may include medical conditions, poisoning or traumatic injuries. These factors may cause separation between yin and yang and damage to the Yuan-primordial qi.	尸厥	shī jué	
1732	Bleeding disorders		A group of conditions caused by the failure of qi to hold blood within the vessels or hyperactive fire (due to yin deficiency) forces blood to move recklessly. They include haemoptysis, nosebleed, bloody stools or purpura.	血溢类病	xuè yì lèi bìng	溢血病
1733	Intestinal wind (bloody stools)		Characterized by fresh blood in stools. Individuals may also have haemorrhoids. Contributing factors may include retained wind cold or toxic heat in the large intestine, damp heat accumulating in the stomach and intestines or qi failing to keep blood within the vessels.	肠风	cháng fēng	
1734	Purpura		A condition characterized by red or purple discoloured (grape-shaped) spots on the skin or mucosa that do not blanch on applying pressure, especially on the leg. In severe cases, it may affect the zang-fu organs. Contributing factors may include congenital weakness, heat accumulating in the zang-fu organs, allergic reactions to food or medicine, blood heat damaging blood collaterals, or the spleen failing to control blood within the small vessels.	紫癜病	zǐ diàn bìng	葡萄疫

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1735	Phlegm-fluid disorders		Water retention in certain body parts due to dysfunction of the lung, spleen and kidney.	痰饮类病	tán yǐn lèi bìng	
1736	Phlegm-fluid retention		Characterized by obesity with recent weight loss and a decreased appetite, bowel sounds, and loose stools. Associated symptoms may include palpitations, shortness of breath and vomiting of foamy saliva. Often results from fluid retention in the stomach and intestines.	痰饮	tán yǐn	
1737	Thoracic fluid retention		Characterized by coughing, panting, chest fullness with an inability to lie flat, shortness of breath and foamy sputum. Associated symptoms may include fever, chills, a cold sensation in the back, back pain, facial puffiness, and leg oedema. Often occurs when retained thoracic fluid affects the lung. In addition, it is commonly triggered by external wind cold or eating cold/cool food.	支饮	zhī yǐn	
1738	Subcutaneous fluid retention		Characterized by facial puffiness and leg or generalized pitting oedema, and body heaviness. Associated symptoms may include cold intolerance, panting, coughing and a dry mouth with no desire to drink water. Often occurs when water retention (due to spleen deficiency) flows over the surface of the body or when exogenous wind cold blocks the flow of lung qi.	溢饮	yì yǐn	
1739	Pleural fluid retention	Pleural fluid retention disorder	Characterized by fullness, distension and tightness in the chest or subcostal region and cough-induced pain. Often occurs when fluid retention in the chest cavity (due to lung tuberculosis/cancer or other systemic conditions) obstructs the flow of qi.	悬饮	xuán yǐn	
1740	Oedema	Oedema disorders	A group of conditions caused by impaired qi transformation and retained water flowing over the skin. Contributing factors may include external pathogenic factors, over-exertion or improper diet.	水肿类病	shuǐ zhǒng lèi bìng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1741	Yang oedema		Characterized by an acute onset of pitting swelling of the face and eyelid. Associated symptoms may include fever and aversion to wind, with no body weakness. Often occurs when exogenous pathogenic factors block the skin pores, obstruct the flow of qi and result in water dampness.	阳水	yáng shuǐ	
1742	Yin oedema		Characterized by a gradual onset of facial puffiness, and pitting foot or leg swelling. Often occurs when water dampness (due to deficiency of the five zang organs) flow over the surface of the body.	阴水	yīn shuǐ	
1743	Wind oedema	Wind oedema disorder	Characterized by a sudden fever, aversion to wind, sore, swollen throat, joint pain, and swelling of the face and eyelid. Over time, individuals may experience generalized oedema. Associated signs and symptoms may include shortness of breath, scanty urine, proteinuria and elevated blood pressure. It often occurs when pathogenic wind affects the lung's functions in dispersing and descending qi and regulating water passage.	风水	fēng shuǐ	
1744	Skin oedema		Characterized by generalized pitting oedema. In severe cases, bulging abdomen may be present. Associated signs and symptoms may include limb swelling or pain, chest tightness, a poor appetite, no aversion to wind, a white, greasy coating and a superficial pulse. Often occurs when turbid dampness obstructs the flow of spleen qi and causes water dampness to flow over the surface of the body.	皮水	pí shuǐ	
1745	Stony oedema		Characterized by recurrent oedema, hardness of the lower abdomen, distending pain in the subcostal region, abdominal fullness, absence of panting, a bright pale complexion and a deep pulse. Individuals may also have persistent proteinuria and hypertension. Often occurs when exogenous pathogenic factors trigger the retained water dampness in the lower jiao (due to chronic wind oedema and skin oedema).	石水	shí shuǐ	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1746	Generalized oedema		Characterized by progressive oedema of the whole body, scanty urine or urine retention, abdominal fullness and panting. Often occurs when retained water (due to yang deficiency of the spleen and kidney) affects the lung.	正水	zhèng shuǐ	
1747	Sweating disorders		A group of conditions caused by disharmony between the Ying nutrients and Wei-defence upon invasion by exogenous pathogenic wind, cold, and summer heat and dampness. Alternatively, they may also result from insecurity of the skin pores due to deficiency of the zang--fu organs. These include spontaneous sweating, night sweats, yellow sweating and bloody sweating.	汗类病	hàn lèi bìng	
1748	Spontaneous sweating		Characterized by persistent, spontaneous day sweating that is not attributed to physical exertion, hot weather, wearing too many clothes or taking diaphoretics. It is mostly commonly caused by disharmony between the Ying nutrients and Wei-defence or qi failing to secure the yin fluids.	自汗	zì hàn	
1749	Night sweats		Characterized by episodes of sweating during sleep that stop after waking up and are not related to external environmental factors. Most commonly caused by internal heat due to yin deficiency or damp heat opening the skin pores.	盗汗	dào hàn	
1750	Yellow sweating		Characterized by yellow-coloured sweating that contaminates cloth. It is often caused by disharmony between the Ying nutrients and Wei-defence or external contraction of damp heat.	黄汗	huáng hàn	
1751	Bloody sweating		Characterized by red coloured sweats, along with symptoms due to fire-heat or deficiency of qi and blood. Contributing factors may include exogenous fire heat affecting the surface of the body, fire hyperactivity of the heart, liver and stomach, or deficiency of qi and blood.	血汗	xuè hàn	汗血;血箭

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1752	Wasting and thirst disorders	Wasting thirst disorder	A group of disorders characterized by polydipsia, polyphagia and polyuria. Contributing factors include overeating of oily, sweet food, emotions, sexual indulgence, exposure to pathogenic warm heat or abuse of medicinal minerals. These factors may cause stomach heat, lung dryness, hyperactive heart fire to consume yin and disturb qi transformation.	消渴类病	xiāo kě lèi bìng	消渴
1753	Wasting of the upper jiao	Diaphragm wasting	Characterized by excessive thirst, excessive drinking, and clear urine with a sweet or fruit-like smell. Individuals often have normal bowel movements. Often occurs when lung heat consumes yin fluids.	上消	shàng xiāo	膈消
1754	Wasting of the middle jiao	Spleen/stomach wasting	Characterized by increased appetite but rapid hunger after eating food, weight loss, thirst, excessive drinking and constipation. Often occurs when dry heat in the middle jiao consumes stomach yin.	中消	zhōng xiāo	消中; 瘠中; 消脾; 胃消
1755	Wasting of the lower jiao	Kidney wasting	Characterized by thirst, excessive drinking, profuse urination with turbid, oily and sweet smelling urine, a dark complexion, and weight loss. Often occurs when hyperactive heart fire consumes kidney yin or disturbs the qi transformation.	下消	xià xiāo	肾消; 瘠肾; 消肾
1756	Disorders of different body parts	Other body system disorders	A group of disorders of the body tissues caused by six exogenous pathogens, strain, improper diet, phlegm-fluid retention or stagnant blood. These include brain diseases, thyroid disorders, breast diseases, genital diseases, hernia, bi-impediments, flaccidity, beriberi, xerosis and obesity.	头身形体病类	tóu shēn xíng tǐ bìng lèi	
1757	Brain diseases	Brain system disorders	Any disorders involving the head or brain due to invasion of exogenous pathogens, ascending of wind yang, ascending of qi and blood, wind phlegm disturbing the mind or stagnant blood obstructing the brain collaterals.	颅脑类病	lú nǎo lèi bìng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1758	Wind stroke	Wind stroke disorders Apoplexy	Characterized by sudden fainting, hemiplegia or deviation of the eyes and mouth corner. Often results from wind phlegm attacking the meridians, disorder of qi and blood, or bleeding in the brain. It includes trismus, haemorrhagic stroke, ischemic stroke, facial palsy and hemiplegia.	中风病	zhōng fēng bìng	中风;卒中
1759	Acute wind stroke		Characterized by sudden collapse, loss of unconsciousness, lockjaw, upward fixation of the eyes, neck rigidity, and phlegm sounds in the throat. In severe cases, opisthotonos, loss of consciousness and convulsions may be present. Often occurs when wind phlegm mists the mind or epidemic pathogenic qi directly attacks the zang-fu organs.	急风病	jí fēng bìng	卒中急风
1760	Deviation of the mouth corner	Facial palsy	Characterized by a sudden facial numbness, deviation of the eyes and mouth corner and slurred speech. Often occurs when wind cold or wind heat affects the face or wind phlegm obstructs the meridians.	口僻	kǒu pì	面瘫
1761	Hemiplegia	Post-stroke disability	Characterized by post-stroke tongue stiffness and disuse muscle atrophy. Contributing factors may include wind phlegm disturbing the heart mind, stagnant blood obstructing the meridians, or deficiency of essence and marrow.	风瘫	fēng fēi	喑痺
1762	Head wind	Head wind disorder Headache	Characterized by chronic, recurrent headache with no fixed positions. Contributing factors may include external contraction of wind heat, wind cold or summer heat and dampness, hyperactive liver yang transforming into wind, or wind phlegm disturbing the mind. This condition is subcategorized into migraine, parietal headache or thunderclap headache.	头风病	tóu fēng bìng	头痛病
1763	Hemilateral head wind	Migraine disorder Migraine pain disorder Migraine	A condition characterized by sudden, recurrent and intense headache occurring on one side of the head. Contributing factors may include wind cold, wind fire that carries phlegm, liver yang transforming into wind or stagnant blood obstructing the meridians. These factors may cause disordered qi and blood to affect the head.	偏头风	piān tóu fēng	偏头痛



WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1764	True headache		Characterized by intense headache, a red face and restlessness. Nausea, vomiting, cold hands/feet and significantly elevated blood pressure may be present. Often occurs when wind yang ascends and disordered qi and blood affect the head.	厥头痛	jué tóu tòng	真头痛
1765	Thunder head wind		Characterized by severe, sudden onset of headache like a clap of thunder and a storm raging in your head. Associated symptoms may include chills, fever and referred eye pain. Often occurs when wind fire carries phlegm or when phlegm heat generates wind to affect the head.	雷头风	léi tóu fēng	
1766	Facial pain	Trigeminal neuralgia	Characterized by episodes of severe, sudden pain or spasm in one side of the face, often accompanied by facial spasm. Often occurs when wind cold or wind heat attacks the meridians on the face or phlegm stasis affects the meridians.	面风痛	miàn fēng tòng	面痛
1767	Ringing in the brain	Tinnitus cerebri	Characterized by a subjective sensation of ringing in the brain instead of the ear. Associated symptoms may include depression, anxiety, insomnia, restlessness and poor memory. Often results from aged-related kidney deficiency. Alternatively, it may also occur when stagnant fire (due to stress or anxiety) ascends to affect the head.	脑鸣	nǎo míng	
1768	Brain wind	Parkinson's disease	Characterized by tremor of hands and feet, involuntary shaking of the head or twitching of the mouth and eyes. Contributing factors may include medical conditions, poisoning, electrical shock, or age-related deficiency of essence and blood. It may also occur when phlegm or stagnant blood obstructs the brain collaterals or meridian qi.	颤病	chàn bìng	脑风; 颤症
1769	Cerebral atrophy		Characterized by progressive forgetfulness, and decreased intelligence. Some individuals may present with personality disorder, dementia or tremor. Often results from deficiency of the five zang organs or age-related deficiency of qi and blood.	脑萎	nǎo wěi	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1770	Thyroid disorders		A group of disorders involving enlargement of the thyroid gland, causing a swelling in the front part of the neck. Contributing factors may include deficiency of anti-pathogenic qi, invasion of exogenous pathogens, emotional disturbance or non-acclimatization.	瘰类病	yǐng lèi bìng	
1771	Goiter		Characterized by an enlargement or solid lump below the Adam's apple in the front part of the neck. Contributing factors may include age-related qi deficiency, liver qi stagnation and blood stasis, or phlegm turbidity due to spleen deficiency. These factors may cause phlegm qi and stagnant blood in front of the neck.	瘰肿	yǐng zhǒng	
1772	Qi goiter	Qi goiter disorder	Characterized by diffuse swelling in the front of the neck with a normal skin colour. It may feel soft or nodular and its size changes with emotions. Contributing factors may include diet, iodine deficiency, emotions or heredity. These factors may cause phlegm qi stagnation in the front of the neck.	气瘰	qì yǐng	
1773	Hyperthyroidism		Characterized by enlargement of the thyroid gland, rapid hunger, weight loss, restlessness, palpitations, irritability, heat intolerance and sweating. Tremor of the hands and exophthalmos may also be present. Often occurs when qi stagnation transforms into fire to consume qi and yin and causes phlegm qi to stagnate in the front of the neck.	瘰气	yǐng qì	
1774	Fleshy goiter		Characterized by single or multiple soft, round lumps that move with swallowing. Often occurs when emotion-related phlegm dampness accumulates in the front of the neck or when qi stagnation transforms into fire to consume qi and yin.	肉瘰	ròu yǐng	
1775	Sinew goiter		Characterized by varicose jugular veins on the goiter that resemble an earthworm. Often occurs when hyperactive liver fire consumes yin blood and causes jugular vein distention.	筋瘰	jīn yǐng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1776	Hyperparathyroidism		Characterized by thyroid nodules, fatigue, slow reactions, decreased appetite, constipation, polyuria or bloody urine, bone pain, malformation or even fracture. Often occurs when disordered qi, blood, yin and yang cause phlegm qi and stagnant blood to remain beside the Adam's apple.	侠瘿瘤	xiá yǐng liú	侠瘿瘰
1777	Thyroiditis		Characterized by sudden presence of painful thyroid nodules with no discolouration of the skin or mild redness, fatigue, and muscle pain. Associated symptoms include fever, sweating, palpitations, tremor of the hands and a foreign body sensation in the throat. Contributing factors may include exogenous wind heat affecting the lung and stomach or stagnant heat in the liver and stomach. The combined external and internal heat may consume fluids and form into phlegm, resulting in phlegm fire stagnation in the neck.	瘿痈	yǐng yōng	
1778	Hypothyroidism		Characterized by fatigue, feeling cold, delayed relaxation of tendon reflexes, sleepiness and swelling of the limbs. Hair loss, low libido and a slow pulse may be present. Contributing factors may include delayed treatment of goitre, inappropriate use of medication, unsuccessful surgery or brain tumour. These factors may cause yang deficiency of the spleen and kidney and generate phlegm dampness.	瘿劳	yǐng láo	劳瘿
1779	Breast diseases		A group of breast problems due to congenital weakness, disharmony between the Chong and Ren meridians, invasion by exogenous pathogens, emotions, overeat of oily food or milk accumulation.	乳房类病	rǔ fáng lèi bìng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1780	Acute mastitis		Characterized by distending, painful nodules in varying sizes and problems suckling the milk out of the breast, followed by increased nodules with redness, tenderness and discharge of yellow, thick pus. In severe cases, chills and a high-grade fever may be present. The onset is typically rapid and commonly seen within the first few months of delivery. Contributing factors may include cracks on the nipples, contraction of external damp heat, blocked milk ducts or milk accumulation, stomach heat, and liver qi stagnation transforming into heat.	乳痈	rǔ yōng	乳吹
1781	Acute septic mastitis	Shell-bursting pyogenic abscess	Characterized by redness, pain and a burning sensation of the breast, coupled with dark skin pigmentation after abscess rupture. In severe cases, restlessness, unconsciousness and delirium may be present. Often occurs when exogenous damp heat and toxic fire affects the liver and stomach meridians and remains in the skin around the breasts.	乳发	rǔ fā	脱壳乳痈
1782	Breast abscess		Characterized by lumps located deep within the breast with mild pain and no skin discoloration at first, followed by a gradual increase in lump size, a slow formation of pus, discharge of yellow pus after rupture, coupled with a deep ulcerative opening and prolonged healing. Contributing factors may include liver blood stagnation, stomach heat accumulation, blocked milk ducts, or toxin entering the interior.	乳疽	rǔ jū	
1783	Mammary duct fistula		Characterized by an abnormal passage between a sub-areolar duct and skin that exudates pus or milk. Often occurs spontaneously following acute mastitis, acute septic mastitis, comedomastitis, tuberculosis of the breast, or breast surgery.	乳漏	rǔ lòu	乳痿

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1784	Breast lumps		Characterized by breast lumps with or without pain that change with emotions or menstrual cycles. Contributing factors may include emotional disturbance and disharmony between the Chong and Ren meridians. These factors may cause stagnant qi, blood and phlegm to remain in the mammary gland.	乳癖	rǔ pǐ	
1785	Breast nodules		Characterized by hard, mobile, and often pain-free breast nodule (often singular) with a smooth surface and a clear margin that changes with emotions or menstrual cycle. Contributing factors may include emotional disturbance and disharmony between the Chong and Ren meridians. These factors may cause phlegm stasis in the breast.	乳核	rǔ hé	
1786	Gynecomastia		Characterized by oval or round, tender lumps on one or both sides of the sub-areolar region in children or male adults. Contributing factors may include congenital kidney qi deficiency, postnatal deficiency of the liver and kidney, disharmony between the Chong and Ren meridian, malnourishment of the liver, and phlegm qi stagnation.	乳癆	rǔ lì	
1787	Nipple eczema		Characterized by sharp pain, followed by bleeding, oozing and crusting. Painful fissuring or abscess may be present. It is commonly seen in breast-feeding women. It often occurs when liver fire or damp heat accumulates in the nipples, areolae, or the surrounding skin.	乳头风	rǔ tóu fēng	乳头破碎
1788	Nipple discharge		Characterized by discharge of bloody fluids from the nipple of the breast or palpable, soft, mobile and painless lumps. Contributing factors may include anger or worries damaging the liver and spleen or stagnant fire in liver meridian affecting the spleen's function in controlling blood within the small vessels.	乳衄	rǔ nù	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1789	Galactorrhoea		Characterized by spontaneous flow of milk from the breast that is not associated with childbirth or nursing. Often occurs when qi fails to hold milk (fluids) or when liver qi stagnation transforms into fire to move the milk (fluids).	乳泣	rǔ qì	
1790	Sagging breasts		Characterized by the breast or nipple falling down, drooping, or downward to the front of the abdomen, coupled with intolerable pain. Contributing factors may include sudden rage damaging qi or blood dryness due to stomach deficiency.	乳悬	rǔ xuán	
1791	Hernia		Characterized by an abnormal protrusion of abdominal cavity contents into the scrotum or inguinal canal. Contributing factors include maldevelopment, ageing, spleen qi deficiency or stagnation of qi and blood. It may also result from increased negative abdominal pressure due to crying, coughing, emotions or straining due to constipation or problems with urination.	疝气	shàn qì	疝气
1792	Inguinal hernia		Characterized by a protrusion of abdominal cavity contents through the inguinal canal. It may cause pain and distension that is aggravated when standing and alleviated when lying down. Contributing factors may include failure of the liver to maintain free flow of qi, qi deficiency in infants or the elderly, or increased intra-abdominal pressure.	狐疝	hú shàn	
1793	Hydrocele testis		Characterized by a painless enlargement in the scrotum on one or both sides, accompanied by a bearing-down sensation, impalpable testis, absence of redness or pain and positive transillumination test. Often results from an accumulation of water dampness inside the scrotum.	水疝	shuǐ shàn	
1794	Haematocele		Characterized by enlargement of the scrotum with a dark purple skin discolouration. Often occurs when traumatic injuries or surgery cause stagnation of qi and blood in the scrotum.	血疝	xuè shàn	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1795	Varicocele		Characterized by an enlargement of the veins within the scrotum (that resemble earthworms), coupled with a bearing-down sensation. Often results from stagnation of qi and blood within the scrotum.	筋疝	jīn shàn	
1796	Bi-impediment disorders	Impediment disorders Joint impediment disorders Bi-impediment disease/pattern	A group of disorders characterized by joint pain, numbness and impaired movement due to wind, cold and dampness or heat attacking the meridians.	痹证类病	bì zhèng lèi bìng	痹病;痹证
1797	Wind-cold-dampness impediment		Characterized by migratory muscle or joint soreness, heaviness and pain. Often occurs when wind, cold and dampness affect the joints and muscles and causes qi and blood to stagnate.	风寒湿痹	fēng hán shī bì	
1798	Migratory impediment	Wind impediment disorder Moving impediment disorder Migrating painful movement disorder Migratory impediment Wind hindrance disorder Wind impediment	Characterized by migratory joint or muscle pain. Often occurs when wind affects the joints or muscles.	行痹	xíng bì	风痹

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1799	Painful impediment	Cold impediment disorder Painful impediment disorder Cold hindrance disorder Cold impediment	Characterized by joint pain with a fixed position that is exacerbated by cold and alleviated by warmth. Often occurs when cold affects the joints.	痛痹	tòng bì	寒痹
1800	Fixed impediment	Dampness impediment disorder Fixed impediment disorder Dampness hindrance disorder Dampness impediment	Characterized by joint or muscle soreness, pain in a fixed position. Alternatively, joint swelling may be present. Often occurs when dampness affects the joints.	着痹	zhuó bì	湿痹
1801	Heat impediment		Characterized by joint redness, swelling, pain, hotness and impaired movement that is alleviated with cold. Associated symptoms may include fever, thirst and scanty, dark yellow urine. Often occurs when toxic heat or damp heat flows into the joints or when combined internal heat and exogenous pathogenic heat affect the joints.	热痹	rè bì	
1802	Joint impediment	Rheumatoid arthritis	Characterized by morning (joint) stiffness, multiple symmetrical pain of smaller joints, restricted movement or joint deformity. Often occurs when wind, cold, dampness or heat remain in the sinews, bones or joints, and over time, damages the yin blood of the liver and kidney.	尪痹	wāng bì	
1803	Skin impediment		Characterized by progressive local or systemic skin swelling, hardness or atrophy. In severe cases, the zang-fu organs may be affected. Often occurs when wind, cold, dampness or heat remain in the skin or reside in the zang-fu organs.	皮痹	pí bì	



WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1804	Muscle impediment		Characterized by weakness, pain, numbness or atrophy in the proximal musculature, coupled with dark red maculae on the eyelids. Often occurs when toxic heat and phlegm dampness remain in the skin.	肉痹	ròu bì	肌痹
1805	Sinew impediment		Characterized by swelling and pain of the tendons, muscles and joints with a dark red skin discolouration and impaired joint movement. Often results from over-exertion, tendon injury or cold-induced stagnation of qi and blood.	筋痹	jīn bì	
1806	Vessel impediment		Characterized by a deep pulse in the radial or anterior tibial arteries, asymmetrical blood pressure, and weakness, numbness or pain of the affected limb, coupled with intermittent claudication and skin discolouration. Often occurs when wind, cold and dampness affect the blood vessels.	脉痹	mài bì	
1807	Bone impediment		Characterized by bone pain, joint stiffness, deformity or impaired movement, and limb numbness and weakness. In severe cases, kyphosis of the lumbar spine, impaired extension of the leg, leg weakness or lower back pain may be present. Often results from retention of wind, cold and dampness. It may also result from age-related malnourishment of the bones.	骨痹	gǔ bì	
1808	Blood impediment	Raynaud's syndrome	Characterized by paroxysmal paleness, dark purple or reddish extremities (fingers/toes). Red patches, sensation of finger cold and/or numbness may be present. Often occurs when wind cold affects the blood vessels. Emotional stress may also disturb the harmony between Ying nutrients and blood.	血痹	xuè bì	
1809	Sciatica		Characterized by pain radiating along the back or outside of one leg from the lower back, accompanied by numbness or pain that aggravates with increased intra-abdominal pressure, and restricted movement. Contributing factors may include acute lumbar sprain, chronic lumbar strain, or cold dampness obstructing the meridians.	偏痹	piān bì	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1810	Generalized impediment		Characterized by recurrent, migratory and asymmetrical joint pain. Associated symptoms may include limb heaviness, numbness, joint redness and swelling, and neck stiffness. Often occurs in patients with a weakened immune system when wind, cold, dampness or heat affect the blood flow.	周痹	zhōu bì	
1811	Intractable impediment		Characterized by recurrent joint pain, numbness, deformity and impaired movement that aggravate upon exposure to wind cold. Contributing factors may include a history of wind-cold-dampness bi-impediment, over-exertion, or age-related malnourishment of the joints.	顽痹	wán bì	
1812	Joint wind		Characterized by severe, migratory joint pain, swelling, redness and hotness, coupled with impaired movement. The symptoms are aggravated at night and alleviate during the day. Often occurs when wind, cold or dampness affect the meridians or, over time, transform into heat to affect the joints.	历节风	lì jié fēng	
1813	Low back impediment	Lower back pain disorder Lumbago disorder	Characterized by chronic or recurrent lower back pain that aggravates upon bending, exposure to cold or fatigue. In severe cases, impaired movement may be present. Often results from trauma, strain or exposure to cold dampness.	腰痹	yāo bì	
1814	Lower back pain due to cold dampness		Characterized by lower back pain and heaviness with a cold sensation and difficulty turning over. Often occurs when cold dampness obstructs the meridians in the low back.	肾着	shèn zhuó	寒湿腰痛
1815	Ankylosing spondylitis		Characterized by pain in the lower back or gluteal region, stiffness of the lower back, and impaired movement. Over time, individuals may present with loss of spinal mobility, and limitation of anterior flexion, lateral flexion, and extension of the lumbar spine. Leg weakness, migratory joint pain that aggravates upon cold and feverish sensations in the palms, soles and chest may also be present. Often results from kidney deficiency or exposure to wind, cold and damp heat.	大偻	dà lǚ	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1816	Knee impediment		Characterized by knee pain (in a fixed position), swelling, joint stiffness and impaired movement, coupled with bony crepitus. Contributing factors may include age-related malnourishment of the knee joints, impaired meridian qi, or long-term standing and/or weight bearing.	膝痹	xī bì	
1817	Restless legs pattern		Characterized by intolerable soreness, numbness and a burning pain felt deep in the calf muscle. Individuals may experience a crawling feeling, itching, pricking pain that may occasionally affect the arms. The symptoms are alleviated by moving the affected leg, change of body position, walking or tapping the affected area. However, the symptoms recur after relaxation and can severely disturb the sleep. Often occurs when pathogenic wind retains in the Ying nutrients and Wei-defence and causes meridian qi and blood to stagnate.	腿风	tǔi fēng	
1818	Heel pain		Characterized by heel pain or numbness that is aggravated on walking. It is often caused by wear and tear of bone, delayed healing of trauma, age-related deficiency of the liver and kidney, bone deformation or bone spurs.	足跟痹	zú gēn bì	
1819	Leg cramp	Muscle cramp disorder Muscle spasm disorder	Characterized by a sudden, uncontrolled muscle contraction in the lower leg, coupled with stiffness and impaired flexion and extension. The symptoms can be alleviated by pulling, twisting or hot compression on the affected limb. Often results from ageing or exposure to cold.	转筋	zhuàn jīn	(腓腓) 转筋
1820	Gout		Characterized by recurrent attacks of a red, tender, hot and swollen joint, coupled with joint deformity and trophi formation. It most commonly affects the metatarsal-phalangeal joint at the base of the big toe. Other joints, such as the heels, ankles, knees, wrists, and fingers, may also be affected. Often occurs with phlegm stasis and trophi deposits in joints due to an improper diet, exposure to pathogenic factors, or damp heat accumulation within the body.	痛风	tòng fēng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1821	Dryness-related impediment		Characterized by dry mouth, eyes, nose and throat, scanty or absent saliva/nasal discharge/tears, dryness or mild pain of the eyes, dry skin, scanty or absent sweating, bone/joint pain, joint rigidity/deformation, and impaired joint flexion and extension. In severe cases, withered, scaly skin and damage to multiple organs and systems. Often results from exposure to dry heat or internal cold dampness transforming into dryness to consume yin fluids. As a result, qi and blood fail to nourish the zang-fu organs, orifices, tissues, skins, bones and sinews.	燥痹	zào bì	
1822	Wei-flaccidity disorders	Flaccidity disorder Wilting disorder Wei-flaccidity pattern	A group of disorders characterized by limb weakness and muscle atrophy caused by malnourishment of the muscles or sinews, resulting from damp heat, emotions, congenital weakness, age-related deficiency of the liver and kidney, or qi deficiency of the lung and spleen.	痿证类病	wěi zhèng lèi bìng	痿证
1823	Lower limb weakness and flaccidity		Characterized by progressive lower leg paralysis, weakness, atrophy and absence of voluntary movement. Often results from malnourishment of the leg muscles due to congenital weakness, postnatal malnutrition, or retention of damp heat and turbid phlegm.	痿臂	wěi bì	
1824	Muscle flaccidity		Characterized by muscular atrophy, numbness, weakness and disuse. Often occurs when the spleen fails to nourish muscles or turbid dampness affects the meridians or muscles.	肌痿	jī wěi	肉痿;脾痿
1825	Wei-flaccidity	Limb flaccidity	Characterized by symmetric sensory and motor disorders, muscular atrophy, dry, thin and delicate skin and abnormal sweating. Often occurs upon exposure to cold, dampness, toxic heat or poisons. It may also result from an improper diet, phlegm stasis obstructing the meridians or malnourishment of muscles or sinews due to essence-blood deficiency.	痿痹	wěi bì	肢痿

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1826	Limb flaccidity	Peripheral neuropathy	Characterized by limb contracture, impaired extension and gradual disuse. Often results from essence-qi deficiency and malnourishment of muscles or sinews due to bed-ridden rheumatoid arthritis or prolonged bone impediment.	筋痿	jīn wěi	
1827	Bone flaccidity		Characterized by low back soreness, difficulty in maintaining a standing position, bowed legs, muscular atrophy in the lower legs, and inability to walk. A dark complexion and withered gum may also be present. It is often caused by pathogenic heat damaging yin, long-term over-exertion, and hyperactivity of fire due to kidney essence deficiency.	骨痿	gǔ wěi	
1828	Heart vessel flaccidity		Characterized by muscular atrophy in the lower legs, foot weakness, inability to stand and impaired lifting and flexion of the knee and ankle joints. It is often caused by ascending of heart blood/qi or blood failing to nourish the vessels upon heavy loss of blood.	脉痿	mài wěi	心痿
1829	Bone lesion		Characterized by bone pain, muscular atrophy, limping and shortening of the affected leg without suppuration. It is often caused by pathogenic factors penetrating the bone or traumatic injuries to sinews or bones.	骨蚀	gǔ shí	
1830	Beriberi		Characterized by leg weakness, painful calf muscles, poor coordination, tingling, a burning sensation and muscle tenderness, spasm and swelling. Muscle wasting and foot/toe drop may also be present. Often results from spleen deficiency or downward flowing of damp heat (due to improper diet with vitamin B1 deficiency).	脚气病	jiǎo qì bìng	
1831	Dry beriberi		Characterized by tingling or pain in legs and feet, and muscular atrophy and contracture. Associated symptoms may include mental confusion, delirium, foot/toe drop, abnormal gait and absence of knee reflex.	干脚气	gān jiǎo qì	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1832	Wet beriberi		Characterized by swelling, soreness and weakness of lower legs. Associated symptoms include palpitations, cyanosis, oedema and cardiac dilatation.	湿脚气	shī jiǎo qì	
1833	Cardiac beriberi		Characterized by leg weakness, palpitations, orthopnoea, face and lips cyanosis, mental confusion, nausea, vomiting and oedema due to long-term beriberi. It is often caused by weakened body after long-term illness, leading to damp toxins attacking the heart.	脚气冲心	jiǎo qì chōng xīn	
1834	Xerosis		Characterized by dryness in mouth, nose or eyes. It can be accompanied by no sweating, dry skin and bone joint pain. It is often caused by yin deficiency or toxin infection, leading to yin consumption and thus malnourishment of skin, orifices and joints.	干燥病	gān zào bìng	干燥症
1835	Short stature		Characterized by unusually short limbs/torso, lack of secondary sexual characteristics, and normal intelligence. It is often caused by intracranial tumour or growth hormone deficiency.	侏儒	zhū rú	
1836	Obesity		Characterized by evenly distributed excess body fat and body weight exceeding the standard weight of the same sex, age and height by more than 20%. Individuals may experience fatigue and slow movement. It is often caused by ingestion of oily, fatty food, physical inactivity, spleen deficiency and subsequently, accumulation of phlegm dampness.	肥胖病	féi pàng bìng	
1837	Rough skin condition	Pellagra	Characterized by inflamed skin that may progress into skin lesion(s) and desquamation. Associated symptoms may include mouth/tongue ulceration, abdominal pain, diarrhoea, and hypoesthesia of the extremities. In severe cases, restlessness, depression, dementia, delirium or unconsciousness may be present. It is often caused by dietary lack of niacin, weakness of the spleen and stomach and subsequently, malnourishment of the skin and zang-fu organs.	糙皮病	cāo pí bìng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1838	Elephant skin-like leg	Lymphatic filariasis	Characterized by tight, shiny and swollen skin in the lower leg, followed by thickening and darkening of the skin that resembles elephant skin. It is often caused by wind, dampness and heat obstructing the flow of qi and blood due to filariasis or recurrent erysipelas.	大脚风	dà jiǎo fēng	象皮腿
1839	Disorders of the skin and mucous membrane	Skin and mucosa system disorders	A group of disorders caused by six exogenous pathogens, strain, improper diet, phlegm fluid and stagnant blood.	皮肤粘膜病类	pí fū nián mó bìng lèi	
1840	Skin conditions		A group of acute or chronic skin conditions caused by exposure to sunlight, rain, wind cold, wind heat, summer heat and dampness and water dampness, insect bites/stings, allergic reactions to pollen, dust or drugs, or fetal toxin retention.	皮肤类病	pí fū lèi bìng	
1841	Snake-shaped sore	Shingles Herpes zoster	Characterized by severely painful, bean-sized skin rash with a single stripe (snake-shaped) of blisters that wraps around one side of the torso. Often results from liver qi stagnation transforming into fire, damp heat retention in the spleen meridian or stagnation of damp heat and toxic fire in the skin.	蛇串疮	shé chuàn chuāng	蛇丹; 缠腰火丹; 带状疱疹
1842	Yellow-water sore	Impetigo disorder	Characterized by itchy or painful small vesicles that may develop into scab-like, yellowish crust. Often occurs when exogenous summer heat and dampness obstructs the flow of qi and fumigates the skin.	黄水疮	huáng shuǐ chuāng	浸淫疮; 滴脓疮; 脓窝疮
1843	Warts		Characterized by small (soybean-sized), rough and hard growths that commonly affect the hands, feet and scalp. They are often caused by liver blood failing to nourish the skin coupled with exposure to toxins.	疣目	yóu mù	千日疣; 枯筋箭
1844	Flat warts		Characterized by small, smooth flattened and slightly raised warts on the face or dorsum of the hands. They are often caused by damp heat affecting the skin, coupled with exposure to toxins.	扁瘡	biǎn hóu	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1845	Infectious warts		Characterized by small (millet/mung bean-sized), raised warts that commonly affect the torso and limbs. These warts have a black centre with wax-like lustre and may discharge white, milky fluids. They are often caused by wind affecting the skin, coupled with exposure to toxins.	鼠乳	shǔ rǔ	水瘰
1846	Thread-like warts		Characterized by filiform or finger-like warts that commonly affect the eyelids, neck and chin. They do not cause pain or itching. They are often caused by wind affecting the skin, coupled with exposure to toxins.	线瘰	xiàn hóu	
1847	Condyloma		Characterized by infectious, cauliflower-like warts that commonly affect the external genitalia and perianal area. They have a moist surface and tend to bleed. These warts are often caused by internal retention of damp heat and exposure to toxins.	臊疣	sào yóu	瘙瘰
1848	Perianal condyloma		Characterized by infectious cauliflower-like warts that commonly affect the perianal area. They have a moist surface and tend to bleed. These warts are often caused by internal retention of damp heat and exposure to toxins.	肛门臊疣	gāng mén sào yóu	
1849	Genital condyloma		Characterized by infectious cauliflower-like warts that commonly affect the genitalia. They have a moist surface and tend to bleed. These warts are often caused by internal retention of damp heat and exposure to toxins.	外阴臊疣	wài yīn sào yóu	
1850	Tinea	Ringworm	Characterized by skin thickening coupled with scaling and exudation.	癣	xuǎn	癣病
1851	White ringworm		Characterized by the presence of dandruff on the scalp. Over time, lustreless, broken hair with itching may occur. It is often caused by wind heat retention after infection during hair cutting.	白秃疮	bái tū chuāng	



WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1852	Scalp ringworm		Characterized by itchy (painless) red papules with yellowish discharge and a hair projecting in the centre. A shining bare patch (scar) lacking any hair may occur after the scab and scutulum have dropped off. It is often caused by ascending damp heat in the spleen and stomach or getting an infection as a result of a hair cut.	肥疮	féi chuāng	癩头疮
1853	Tinea manuum		Characterized by blisters on the palm with scaling, roughness, thickening and cracking. Often results from external contraction of damp heat or get from others who have the infection.	鹅掌风	é zhǎng fēng	
1854	Tinea pedis	Athlete's foot	Characterized by intensely itchy blisters with ulceration, oozing and scaling on the feet. Often results from downward flow of damp heat or living in humid places.	脚湿气	jiǎo shī qì	臭田螺
1855	Tinea pedis		Characterized by excess sweating, blisters and oozing on the feet. In severe cases, local swelling and pain may be present. It is often caused by damp heat, sweating and exposure to cold.	田螺疱	tián luó pào	
1856	Keratotic tinea pedis		Characterized by plantar keratinization, dryness and patchy skin peeling, coupled with intense itching and susceptibility to painful rhagadia in winter. It is often caused by internal damp heat coupled with exposure to wind.	脚蚓	jiǎo yǐn	
1857	Ringworm of the leg		Characterized by symmetrical itchy skin lesions with thickened skin on the leg. It commonly affects the anterior or lateral aspects of the shin. Often results from retention of wind, damp and heat in the leg.	脚气疮	jiǎo qì chuāng	
1858	Tinea corporis	Tinea corporis disorder Coin-shaped tinea	Characterized by itchy, red rashes, blisters, crusting and scaling with a ring, especially on glabrous (hairless) skin. Often results from internal build up of damp heat and contraction of exogenous pathogens.	圆癣	yuán xuǎn	钱癣; 金钱癣

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1859	Tinea cruris		Characterized by itchy skin papules, blisters and crusting on the groin, buttocks and medial aspects of the thigh. Often results from damp heat affecting the groin area.	阴癣	yīn xuǎn	
1860	Tinea versicolour	Sweat stains	Characterized by scattered or merged hypopigmentation macules on the neck, shoulder, chest, back and upper arms, coupled with chaff-like scaling. Often results from excess sweating.	紫白癜风	zǐ bái diàn fēng	汗斑
1861	Collar sore	Oxhide lichen	Characterized by severe painful or itchy, symmetric scaly plaques. The itch-scratch cycle causes the skin to become thick and leathery, typically on the neck, elbow, arms, legs and lumbosacral region. Often results from wind dampness affecting the skin, liver hyperactivity due to blood deficiency or malnourishment of the skin due to fluids consumption.	摄领疮	shè lǐng chuāng	牛皮癣; 顽癣
1862	Eyebrow sore		Characterized by itchy, persistent skin lesion, oozing, scab and skin peeling. It is often seen in infants and caused by fetal infection.	眉疮	méi chuāng	恋眉疮; 眉lian疮
1863	Ear sore		Characterized by skin redness, oozing, ulceration and discharge of bloody pus. In severe cases, it may cause breaking of the ear crease with sharp pain. It is often caused by otitis media or ascending of damp heat along the pathways of the liver, gallbladder and spleen meridians.	旋耳疮	xuán ěr chuāng	月蚀疮
1864	Urticaria	Hives	Characterized by rashes with red, raised, itchy bumps that may also burn or sting. These rashes come and go, and do not leave any skin changes. Often results from contraction of exogenous wind, non-acclimatization, or an allergic reaction.	瘾疹	yǐn zhěn	风疹块
1865	Snake skin-like tinea	Ichthyosis disorder	Characterized by dry, thickened, scaly skin that resembles snake skin. Often results from genetic factors or malnourishment of the skin due to blood deficiency and invasion of wind dryness.	蛇皮癣	shé pí xuǎn	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1866	White scaling skin	Plaque psoriasis	Characterized by red, scaling plaques on the skin, often covered with loose, silver-coloured scales. These lesions have clear boundaries and commonly affect the scalp, back and the extensor surface of the arms and legs. They sometimes crack and bleed. Often results from congenital weakness or malnourishment of the skin due to blood deficiency, invasion of wind dryness, dampness retention or blood stasis.	白疔	bái bǐ	白壳疮
1867	Acne	comedo	A skin condition characterized by noticeable expansion of the pores on the face, chest and back, coupled with blackheads. Often results from wind heat affecting the lung meridian, damp heat in the stomach and intestines or spleen deficiency.	痤疮	cuó chuāng	黑头粉刺;粉刺
1868	Allergic purpura		Characterized by itchy, flat purple red rashes that can occur in any body parts, including the oral cavity. Often results from internal heat due to yin deficiency or retention of damp heat, coupled with contraction of exogenous wind.	紫癜风	zǐ diàn fēng	
1869	Pemphigus	Pustules	Commonly affects children in summer or autumn. Characterized by initial skin blisters that contain pus and have an inflamed base, which often begin on the scalp and torso. Some individuals may also experience skin lesions that do not cause itch or pain. Often results from summer heat and dampness that affects the lung meridian and scorches the skin.	天疱疮	tiān pào chuāng	脓疱疮
1870	Fire red sore	Dermatitis herpetiformis	Characterized by intolerably itchy blisters filled with a watery fluid. Often results from exuberant heart fire or internal dampness due to spleen deficiency.	火赤疮	huǒ chì chuāng	
1871	Loose skin tinea	Psoriasis	Characterized by itchy, thickened and solid papules or nodules with a dark, brown colour that resemble the bark of a pine tree. Often results from damp heat retained in the skin.	松皮癣	sōng pí xuǎn	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1872	Cat's eye-shaped sore	Erythema multiforme	Characterized by red, cat's eye-shaped skin rash with rings. It commonly affects the hands and feet. Some individuals may also get it on the lips and genital area. This skin condition often occurs when wind, cold, dampness or heat enters the Ying nutrients and blood phases.	猫眼疮	māo yǎn chuāng	雁疮
1873	Melon vine-like nodules	Erythema nodosum	Characterized by tender, red (broad bean-sized) nodules or lumps on both shins that resemble fruits growing on vines. Often results from downward flow of damp heat or chronic stasis transforming into heat.	瓜藤缠	guā téng chán	
1874	Red butterfly-like sore	Discoid lupus erythematosus	Characterized by red rashes on the face or hands with scaling and atrophy that resemble a butterfly. Individuals may also experience joint pain. Often results from qi stagnation and blood stasis due to yin-yang disorder or wind heat accumulating in the skin.	红蝴蝶疮	hóng hú dié chuāng	蝶斑疮
1875	White plaques	Vitiligo	Characterized by pale plaques of depigmented skin that do not cause itch or pain. Often results from disharmony between qi and blood, coupled with contraction of exogenous wind.	白驳风	bái bó fēng	
1876	Hu Huo	Behcet's disease	Characterized by mind wandering, drowsiness, a poor appetite, restlessness, red eyes and sores on the throat and sex organs. Often results from retained damp heat.	狐惑	hú huò	
1877	Chicken eye-shaped skin bump	Corn	Characterized by thick, hardened and elevated skin bump that develop in response to repetitive friction and pressure. Corns can be painful when pressed and often develop on the feet and toes (occasionally on the hands and fingers).	鸡眼	jī yǎn	肉刺
1878	Callus		Characterized by a relatively thick and hard skin area due to repeated friction or pressure. Calluses are most often found on feet or hands.	胼胝	pián zhī	脚垫; 牛程蹇

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1879	Armpit odour	Smelly armpit	Characterized by unpleasant smell due to stale perspiration under the arms (or other body parts such as areola, umbilicus or external genitalia). It can be hereditary or acquired due to disharmony between qi and blood and internal retention of damp heat.	狐臭	hú chòu	
1880	Lacquer sore	Lacquer dermatitis	Characterized by skin redness, swelling, itching, a burning sensation and blisters after contact to various lacquers. It is often caused by congenital weakness coupled with exposure to lacquers.	漆疮	qī chuāng	漆毒
1881	Drug-induced dermatitis	Drug eruption	Characterized by an adverse drug reaction of the skin and mucous membranes. With a latent period, drug eruption may cause extensive, symmetrical itchy maculae or blisters. Some may also have fever. It is often caused by oral administration, injection or topical application of medications.	药毒	yào dú	药疹
1882	Plaster contact dermatitis		Characterized by itchy red spots and blisters with a sharply demarcated edge under adhesive plaster.	膏药风	gāo yào fēng	
1883	Scabies		A condition caused by the mite <i>Sarcoptes scabiei</i> . It initially causes tiny, red papules, blisters, pustules or burrows on the wrist, armpit, umbilicus or medial side of the thigh. Scratching-related secondary infection may cause eczematous rash or lichenification. Individuals may experience mild itching during the day but severe itch at night. There are five types of scabies: dry, dampness, mites, sand and suppuration.	疥疮	jiè chuāng	疥疮病
1884	Erysipelas	Erysipelas disorder	Characterized by sudden onset of bright red, swollen and warm skin lesions that enlarge rapidly. Individuals may also experience chills and high fever. Often occurs when toxic fire and blood heat affects the skin.	丹毒	dān dú	火丹;丹熛

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1885	Erysipelas on the chest, back/low back and hip		Characterized by red, swollen, warm and painful skin lesions on the chest, back/low back and hip, with a sharply demarcated edge and discolouration upon pressure. Individuals may experience chills and high fever. Often results from liver fire and extreme heat in the liver and spleen meridians.	内发丹毒	nèi fā dān dú	
1886	Erysipelas on the head		Characterized by facial redness, warmth, swelling and pain. In severe cases, blisters and eyelid swelling may be present. Often results from wind heat transforming into fire.	抱头火丹	bào tóu huǒ dān	
1887	Erysipelas of the leg		Characterized by red, swelling, warmth and pain in the lower leg, with a demarcated edge and discolouration upon pressure. Individuals may experience chills and high fever. Often results from downward flow of damp heat.	流火	liú huǒ	腿游风
1888	Sores and ulcers		A collective term for acute or chronic suppurative skin conditions caused by pathogenic fire heat scorching the blood or wind, cold and dampness obstructing the flow of qi and blood. These include furuncles, deep-rooted boils, abscesses, effusion, gangrene, deep abscesses, chalazion, scrofula, shank sores, fistulas and ulcerations.	疮疡类病	chuāng yáng lèi bìng	
1889	Furuncles	Furuncle disorders Boil disorders Boils	Characterized by an acute onset of red, swollen area on the skin. Often results from wind fire and summer heat affecting the skin. Furuncles may resolve when pus is drained.	疔	jiē	疔肿
1890	Heat boils		Boils on the head and face due to toxic summer heat affecting the skin.	暑疔	shǔ jiē	热疔
1891	Headed boils		Hard boils caused by internal build up of toxic heat or contraction of summer heat.	石疔	shí jiē	有头疔
1892	Headless boils		Soft boils caused by prolonged retention of toxic heat.	软疔	ruǎn jiē	无头疔
1893	Multiple boils		Characterized by recurrent, multiple boils in specific or multiple sites. They often occur when wind fire and damp heat accumulate in the skin.	疔病	jiē bìng	多发性疔

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1894	Hairline sore		Small, raised, swollen sores that occur at the back of the neck close to the hairline. They may cause severe pain or itching. These sores are often caused by internal retention of damp heat coupled with external contraction of wind fire.	发际疮	fà jì chuāng	
1895	Seat sore		Sores on the buttock. They are often caused by retention of summer heat and dampness in the skin.	坐板疮	zuò bǎn chuāng	
1896	Facial boils		Characterized by rapid occurrence of solid, deep-rooted boils on the face that are shaped like nails and the same size as millets. They often result from exposure to toxic fire heat, insect bites, skin lesion or localized stagnation of qi and blood. Squeezing a boil may cause serious complications.	颜面部疔疮	yán miàn bù dīng chuāng	
1897	Boils on the hand/foot		Red, swollen boils on the hands/feet that may cause intense pain or damage the bones or sinews. They often result from localized injury coupled with contraction of toxic fire.	手足部疔疮	shǒu zú bù dīng chuāng	
1898	Snake head-like whitlow	Whitlow	Characterized by a swollen fingertip that resembles the head of a snake. It is known as digital pyogenic inflammation in Western medicine.	蛇头疔	shé tóu dīng	瘰疬
1899	Snake segment-like boils		Characterized by boils on the middle segment of the fingers that may cause swelling of the whole finger.	蛇节疔	shé jié dīng	
1900	Boils on the knuckle		Characterized by furuncles on the knuckles of the hand.	蛀节疔	zhù jié dīng	
1901	Hegu boil	Boil around Hegu (LI 4)	Characterized by boils on the arc formed by the thumb and index finger of the hand.	合谷疔	hé gǔ dīng	虎口疔
1902	Palmar boil		Characterized by bright, yellow blisters on the palmar aspect of the hand. They can be cured by piercing to allow the pus to drain.	水白疔	shuǐ bái dīng	
1903	Boils on the sole		Characterized by boils on the sole of the foot.	足底疔	zú dǐ dīng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1904	Red thread-like boil	Acute lymphangitis	Characterized by warm, painful red streaks below the skin surface on the arms or lower legs. Often results from skin lesion on the hands/feet or pathogenic fire heat affecting the meridians.	红丝疔	hóng sī dīng	
1905	Necrotic boil	Gas gangrene	Characterized by boils that can cause necrotic damage to muscle tissues, discharge of strong-odoured pus and blood. In severe cases, they may rapidly progress to toxæmia and shock. Often results from skin lesion coupled with exposure to toxins.	烂疔	làn dīng	
1906	Boil toxins entering the zang-fu organs		Characterized by swollen sores or ulcers that rapidly spread over the surrounding area. The sores/ulcers appear black on the top and contain no pus. Systemic symptoms include chills, high fever, restlessness, unconsciousness and delirium. Often results from delayed treatment of boils or toxins entering the blood and zang-fu organs upon squeezing.	疔疮走黄	dīng chuāng zǒu huāng	癩走
1907	Cutaneous anthrax		Characterized by skin blisters with eschar (a black centre), surrounding swelling and necrotic tissues. It may also cause systemic symptoms involving the lung, intestines and brain. Contributing factors may include handling contaminated hair products of infected animals and ingestion of undercooked meat of infected animals.	疫疔	yì dīng	
1908	Abscess	Abscess disorders	Characterized by localized red, swollen, warm and painful sores/ulcers that are soft and headless. They may form pus that is easy to rupture and easy to heal. Often occurs when toxic heat affects qi and blood. A large abscess is known as an effusion.	痈	yōng	痈病
1909	Umbilical abscess		Characterized by abscess formation in the umbilical region. Often occurs when damp heat and toxic fire remain in the umbilicus. It may also be secondary to infection upon scratch.	脐痛	qí yōng	



WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1910	Perineal abscess		Characterized by abscess formation in the perineum. Often results from deficiency of the liver, kidney and spleen, coupled with damp heat retention.	悬痈	xuán yōng	
1911	Thigh abscess		Characterized by abscess formation in the lateral sides of the thigh. Often results from stagnation of toxins and emotional disturbances.	股疽	gǔ jū	
1912	Abscess around Futu (ST 32)		Characterized by abscess formation the point Futu on the front side of the thigh. Often results from stomach fire.	伏兔疽	fú tù jū	
1913	Knee abscess		Characterized by abscess formation around the knees. Often occurs when toxins affect the liver, spleen and kidney meridians.	膝痈	xī yōng	
1914	Abscess around Weizhong (BL40)		Characterized by abscess formation around the point Weizhong (BL 40). Often results from downward flow of damp heat or infection on abrasion.	膝弯痈	xī wān yōng	委中毒; 胭窝毒
1915	Paravertebral abscess		Characterized by abscess formation on bilateral sides of the spine. Often results from spleen fire and toxin accumulation.	黄瓜痈	huáng guā yōng	
1916	Cervical abscess		Characterized by warm, swollen and painful abscesses on both sides of the neck with clear boundaries and no skin colour changes. Often results from contraction of wind warmth and retention of toxic phlegm in the skin.	颈痈	jǐng yōng	夹喉痈
1917	Axillary abscess		Characterized by red, swollen, warm and painful abscess in the axillary region. Individuals may also experience chills and high fever. Often results from retained heat in the liver and spleen or infection by traumatic injuries.	腋痈	yè yōng	
1918	Inguinal abscess		Characterized by abscess formation in the inguinal region. It is often caused by internal retention of damp heat, phlegm qi stagnation, or infection on abrasion.	胯腹痛	kuà fù yōng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1919	Acute suppurative lymphadenitis		Characterized by painful lumps on the neck, armpit and groin with no skin colour changes at first but later become reddish and cause yellow, thick pus. Often results from external contraction of wind, heat and dampness or in combination with phlegm dampness.	痰毒	tán dú	
1920	Effusion		Characterized by a sudden onset of large abscesses. Contributing factors may include exogenous fire heat, traumatic wound, internal retention of damp heat and toxic fire. It includes cervical abscess, gluteal abscess, abscess of the calf and effusions on the back of the hands/feet.	发	fā	
1921	Abscess in the tonsil		Characterized by sudden, fulminant abscess formation in the laryngeal prominence. In severe cases, acute laryngeal obstruction may occur. It is often caused by exposure to wind warmth or toxin retention of carbuncles/ulcers in the local area.	锁喉痛	suǒ hóu yōng	
1922	Gluteal abscess		Characterized by a sudden onset, deep location and large area of abscess formation in the gluteal region. It tends to form pus and takes a long period of time to heal. This condition often results from damp heat accumulating in the bladder meridian or infection by intramuscular injection.	臀痛	tún yōng	
1923	Deep-rooted ulcer		A collective term for ulcers in bones or joints due to exogenous pathogens or stagnation of qi and blood. They may develop into inward collapse of toxins or fistulas. Deep-rooted ulcers include headed or headless carbuncles and abscesses.	疽	jū	疽病
1924	Carbuncle		Characterized by a cluster of red, swollen, warm and painful boils filled with purulent exudate. They may spread to deeper and surrounding areas that resemble a honeycomb (>9cm or even >30cm in diameter). In severe cases, it may cause inward collapse of abscess toxins. Carbuncles often result from stagnation of qi and blood in the skin due to external contraction of wind heat, damp heat and toxic fire.	有头疽	yǒu tóu jū	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1925	Inward collapse of abscess toxins		Characterized by flat, dark purple ulcerations. Alternatively, individuals may have retracted ulcers with no pus or with grey, greenish pus. Systemic symptoms may include chills, high fever, restlessness, unconsciousness and delirium. Often occurs when retained toxins of chronic sores or ulcers affect the Ying nutrients, blood and zang-fu organs.	疽毒内陷	jū dú nèi xiàn	
1926	Headless abscess	Yin abscess	Characterized by severe, persistent pain and diffuse swelling, with no skin colour changes. They may rupture and take a long period time to heal. Often result from retained toxins or traumatic injuries.	无头疽	wú tóu jū	阴疽
1927	Suppurative osteomyelitis		Characterized by pain in the long bones of the arms and legs with diffuse swelling and pus discharge that may form fistulas or damage the tendons and bones. Often results from deeply located toxins damaging the tendons or bones or localized blood stagnation.	附骨疽	fù gǔ jū	多骨疽;咬骨疽;朽骨疽
1928	Deep multiple abscess		Characterized by multiple, deeply located and painful abscesses with diffuse swelling but no skin colour changes.	流注	liú zhù	
1929	Subcutaneous nodules		Characterized by soft, mobile and painless subcutaneous nodules on the neck, arms, legs and back. They vary in size and may not cause skin colour changes. These nodules often result from turbid phlegm retention in the skin due to spleen deficiency.	痰核	tán hé	
1930	Scrofula		Characterized by localized smooth, bead-like lumps that are neither reddish nor painful. These lumps may cause discharge of thin, clear pus and form sinuses or fistulas. Often results from yin deficiency of the lung and kidney, liver qi stagnation transforming into fire, or retention of turbid phlegm. Alternatively, it may also occur as a result of fire hyperactivity due to yin deficiency, tuberculosis and phlegm fire retention in the neck, armpit and hip.	瘰疬	luǒ lì	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1931	Shank sore		Characterized by chronic, recurrent sores or ulcers on the lower leg. They often result from infection via skin lesions, downward flow of damp heat, or stagnation of qi and blood transforming into heat.	臁疮	lián chuāng	
1932	Digital gangrene		Characterized by limb coldness, numbness and sudden pain during walking, followed by intermittent claudication, severe pain, a change in skin colour to red or black, and eventually toe/finger necrosis. Often results from deficiency of anti-pathogenic qi, cold retention and blood stasis due to yang deficiency, toxic heat retention due to yin deficiency, or stagnation of qi and blood.	脱疽	tuō jū	
1933	Varicose veins of the leg		Characterized by enlarged and twisted (like an earthworm) veins when standing. Often results from standing for an extended period of time, blood stasis due to qi deficiency, or stagnation of qi and blood due to external contraction of cold dampness.	青筋腿	qīng jīn tuǐ	
1934	Fistula disorders	Fistula disorder	A group of disorders characterized by delayed wound healing, dribbling of pus or recurrent ulcerations. They often result from deficiency of qi and blood.	瘰病	lòu bìng	
1935	Fistula		Characterized by an abnormal ulcerative opening that forms from a deep abscess to the surface of the body. Often results from a deficiency of qi and blood, coupled with retention of toxins.	瘰管	lòu guǎn	
1936	Sinus		Characterized by a deep, complicated ulcerative channel that connects with an abscess or suppurating area due to delayed healing of thoracic/abdominal surgical wounds. Often results from a deficiency of qi and blood, coupled with retention of toxins.	窦道	dòu dào	
1937	Bedsore	Bed sore disorder Pressure ulcer	Characterized by localized, superficial and persistent skin lesion or necrosis that usually occurs on the sacrum, elbows, ankles, or the hips. Often results from malnourishment of the skin due to obstructed flow of qi and blood, or an extended period of friction.	褥疮	rù chuāng	席疮

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1938	Anorectal diseases		A group of anorectal disorders caused by wind, dampness, heat, dryness, qi deficiency, blood deficiency, or blood stasis.	肛肠类病	gāng cháng lèi bing	肛肠病
1939	Haemorrhoid		A collective term for swollen veins in the anal canal caused by stagnation of qi and blood around the anus due to deficiency of the zang-fu organs, contraction of external wind dampness and internal build up of toxic heat.	痔疮	zhì chuāng	痔病
1940	Internal haemorrhoids	Interior haemorroid disorder	Characterized by varicose dilatation of a vein above the dentate line, bloody stools and prolapsed haemorrhoids. Internal haemorrhoids often result from deficiency of the zang-fu organs, an improper diet, sitting or standing for an extended period of time, weight-bearing or constipation.	内痔	nèi zhì	里痔
1941	External haemorrhoids		Characterized by varicose dilatation of a vein below the dentate line, a weight-bearing sensation, pain and a foreign body sensation within the anus. External haemorrhoids often results from downward flow of damp heat or skin friction or tear around the anus.	外痔	wài zhì	
1942	Mixed haemorrhoids		Characterized by varicose dilatation of a vein both above and below the dentate line. Often results from downward flow of damp heat to the anus, deficiency of the zang-fu organs, defaecation, weight-bearing, or straining during childbirth.	混合痔	hùn hé zhì	
1943	Anal fissure		Characterized by a break or tear in the skin of the anal canal. It may cause pain during or after defaecation and bleeding. Often results from heat in the intestine, insufficiency of yin fluids or downward flow of damp heat.	肛裂	gāng liè	裂肛
1944	Anorectal abscess		Characterized by fever, chills, redness, swelling, hotness and pain around the anus. In some cases, it can result in painful anal fistulas upon pus rupture. Often results from overeating of oily, sweet, hot and spicy food, excessive alcohol drinking, anal tears, deficiency of the lung and spleen, or downward flow of damp heat to affect the anus.	肛痛	gāng yōng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1945	Anal abscess	Anal abscess disorder	Characterized by pain, hot and a weight-bearing sensation within the anus that radiates toward the perineum or buttocks after bowel movements, red, swollen anal sinus, and purulent discharge. Often results from dry faeces, diarrhoea, retained faeces in the anal sinus, or downward flow of damp heat.	肛毒	zàng dú	
1946	Anal fistula		Characterized by discharge of pus, serous fluid or faeces around the anus, a subcutaneous cord-like structure and a palpable narrow tunnel with its internal opening in the anal canal and its external opening in the skin near the anus. Often forms when anal abscesses do not heal properly due to retention of toxins or deficiency of the lung and spleen.	肛漏	gāng lòu	肛瘻
1947	Reproductive system diseases		A collective term for male and female reproductive system diseases caused by congenital underdevelopment, contraction of exogenous pathogens, or consumption of qi, blood, yin and yang due to chronic conditions.	生殖病类	shēng zhí bìng lèi	
1948	Male genital disorders		A group of male reproductive dysfunctions due to congenital development, postnatal malnutrition, sexual indulgence or consumption of qi, blood, yin and yang due to chronic conditions. These include disorders of the male external genitalia, sterility, and sperm disorders.	男性生殖病	nán xìng shēng zhí bìng	
1949	Disorders of the male external genitalia		A group of disorders of the male external genitalia caused by congenital underdevelopment, trauma, damp heat affecting the testis or scrotum or the liver meridian, or toxic phlegm accumulating in the external genitalia.	男性前阴类病	nán xìng qián yīn lèi bìng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1950	Inflammatory infection of the testis and epididymis		Characterized by testicle swelling and tenderness. Alternatively, individuals may experience dull pain in the scrotum of the affected side that radiates to the groin, coupled with a weight-bearing sensation or fever. Often occurs when damp heat, phlegm and stagnant blood retain in the testis or epididymis. Contributing factors may include damp heat or cold dampness affecting the testicle, improper diet (e.g. overeating of hot, spicy or oily food), sexual indulgence, liver qi stagnation transforming into fire or trauma.	子痈	zǐ yōng	
1951	Tuberculosis of the testicle		Characterized by slowly progressive and painless lumps on the testicle. Over time, pus discharge upon rupture may be present. Often results from deficiency of healthy qi, insufficiency of the liver and kidney and retention of turbid phlegm in the testicle.	子痰	zǐ tán	
1952	Undescended testis		A condition that testis on one or both sides is/are not palpable. Often occurs as a result of congenital anomaly.	子隐	zǐ yǐn	
1953	Scrotal eczema		Characterized by severe itching (sometimes pain), erythema, scaling, skin lesions with sometimes oozing rash on the scrotum. Often results from downward flow of damp heat along the liver meridian or wind affecting the scrotal region.	肾囊风	shèn náng fēng	阴囊风; 绣球风
1954	Sterility disorders	Male Sterility disorder Male sterility	A group of disorders involving the inability to cause pregnancy in a fertile female after two years or more of regular unprotected sexual intercourse due to genetic defects, underdeveloped sex organ, other diseases or trauma.	不育类病	bú yù lèi bìng	男性不育
1955	Sperm disorders		A group of disorders involving abnormal changes in quality or quantity of sperm due to downward flow of damp heat, hyperactivity of fire due to yin deficiency, age-related kidney deficiency, or mental over-exertion.	精液类病	jīng yè lèi bìng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1956	Cold semen		Characterized by a subjective feeling of ejaculating clear, thin semen. This condition may affect the chance of conception. Often results from cold retention in the essence chamber due to kidney yang deficiency.	精冷	jīng lěng	
1957	Turbid semen		Characterized by white discharge after urination, hesitant urination, and weight-bearing sensation of the lower abdomen. Alternatively, individuals may experience itchy or painful penis but have no cloudy urine. Often results from downward flow of damp heat, fire hyperactivity due to yin deficiency or blood stasis in the essence chamber.	精浊	jīng zhuó	
1958	Nocturnal emissions		Characterized by more than four times of involuntary ejaculations experienced during sleep in one month. Often results from fire hyperactivity due to yin deficiency, mental over-exertion, downward flow of damp heat, kidney qi failing to secure the essence gate.	遗精	yí jīng	
1959	Spermatorrhoea	Involuntary ejaculation disorder (TM1)	Characterized by more than four times of involuntary discharge of semen in one month. Often results from kidney qi failing to secure the essence gate due to sexual indulgence.	滑精	huá jīng	
1960	Female genital disorders		A group of disorders that affect the female reproductive system.	女性生殖病	nǚ xìng shēng zhí bìng	
1961	Disorders of the female external genitalia		A group of disorders of the vulvae and female external genitalia not related to menstruation, leucorrhoea, pregnancy and childbirth.	女性前阴类病	nǚ xìng qián yīn lèi bìng	
1962	Sleep sex	Sexosomnia	Characterized by sexual intercourse during dreams. Individuals may have creamy, white vaginal discharges. Often results from emotional stagnation transforming into fire or hyperactivity of ministerial fire due to yin blood deficiency.	梦交	mèng jiāo	
1963	Prolapsed uterus	Uterine prolapse	Characterized by uterus slipping out of place, or sometimes protruding down through the vagina. Often results from qi deficiency of the spleen and kidney.	阴挺	yīn tǐng	子宫脱垂



WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1964	Vaginal flatulence		Characterized by an emission or expulsion of air from the vagina. The sound is somewhat comparable to flatulence from the anus. Often results from qi disorder of the fu organs or qi stagnation and phlegm affecting the uterus.	阴吹	yīn chuī	
1965	Uterine cold	Cold uterus	Characterized by a subjective feeling of cold in the external genitalia. Individuals may also have low sexual desire. Often results from retained cold qi in the uterus due to kidney deficiency.	阴冷	yīn lěng	阴寒
1966	Vulvar ulceration	Vulvar swelling Vulvar erosion	Characterized by painful, swollen ulcerations on the female external genital region. In severe cases, individuals may experience pus discharge or small, elevated lumps. Often occurs when toxic heat or cold dampness remains in the vulva.	阴疮	yīn chuāng	阴肿; 阴蚀; 阴茧
1967	Menstrual disorders	Menstruation associated disorders Menstrual diseases	A group of disorders characterized by abnormal changes in menstrual cycle, duration, volume, colour, and quality of menses, coupled with menstrual complaints. They often result from disharmony between the Chong and Ren meridians.	月经类病	yuè jīng lèi bìng	月经病; 月经不调; 月经周期病
1968	Early menstrual period	Advanced menstruation disorder	A menstrual cycle that begins at least one week early for three consecutive months, with a normal menstrual duration. Often results from insecurity of Chong and Ren meridians (due to qi deficiency) or heat disturbing the Chong and Ren meridians.	月经先期	yuè jīng xiān qī	
1969	Delayed menstrual period	Delayed menstruation disorder	A menstrual cycle that begins at least one week or up to three months late for three consecutive cycles, with a normal menstrual duration. Often results from insufficiency of the Chong and Ren meridians (due to kidney deficiency and blood deficiency) or phlegm dampness obstructing the Chong and Ren meridians (due to blood cold and qi stagnation).	月经后期	yuè jīng hòu qī	
1970	Irregular menstrual period	Irregular menstruation disorders	A menstrual cycle that begins more than one week early or late for three consecutive months. Often results from liver qi stagnation, kidney deficiency or disharmony between the Chong and Ren meridians.	月经先后无定期	yuè jīng xiān hòu wú dìng qī	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1971	Heavy menstruation		An abnormally heavy menstrual volume (>80 ml), with a normal menstrual cycle and duration. Often results from insecurity of Chong and Ren meridians (due to qi deficiency) or heat forcing the blood to move recklessly.	月经过多	yuè jīng guò duō	
1972	Scanty menstruation	Scanty menstruation disorder	An abnormally scanty menstrual volume (less than 1/2 of the normal menstrual volume, <20 ml, less than two days of menstrual duration, or just drops of menstrual blood). Often results from essence/blood deficiency or blood stagnation.	月经过少	yuè jīng guò shǎo	
1973	Prolonged menstruation	Prolonged menstruation disorder	A menstrual duration that lasts more than a week or up to two weeks long, with a normal menstrual cycle. Often results from internal heat due to yin deficiency, qi failing to keep blood within the vessels, or stagnant blood obstructing the Chong and Ren meridians.	经期延长	jīng qī yán cháng	
1974	Metrorrhagia and metrostaxis		Characterized by a sudden onset of excessive uterine bleeding or small but continuous uterine bleeding. It includes metrorrhagia and metrostaxis, often resulting from insecurity of the Chong and Ren meridians. Contributing factors may include kidney deficiency, blood heat, damp heat, qi deficiency, blood stasis, or trauma, etc.	崩漏	bēng lòu	
1975	Metrorrhagia	Metrorrhagia disorder	Characterized by irregular menstrual cycle and sudden, profuse uterine bleeding. Often occurs when heat forces the blood to move recklessly. Alternatively, it may occur as a result of stagnant blood or qi failing to secure the Chong and Ren meridians.	崩中	bēng zhōng	血崩
1976	Metrostaxis		Characterized by irregular menstrual cycle and small but continuous uterine bleeding. Often occurs as a result of kidney deficiency, blood stasis and insecurity of the Chong and Ren meridians.	漏下	lòu xià	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1977	Bleeding between periods		Characterized by bleeding between the two menstrual periods (ovulatory phase), with a normal menstrual cycle. Often results from blood heat due to yin deficiency, liver qi stagnation transforming into fire or damp heat disturbing the Chong and Ren meridians.	经间期出血	jīng jiān qī chū xiě	
1978	Amenorrhoea	Amenorrhoea disorder No periods disorder	An absence of menarche by the age of 16 with normal secondary sexual characteristics, absence of menarche or secondary sexual characteristics by the age of 14, an abnormal stoppage of the menses for more than six months after an established menstruation, or a stoppage of menses for three consecutive cycles. Contributing factors may include deficiency of the liver and kidney, deficiency of qi and blood, blood dryness due to yin deficiency, tuberculosis, qi stagnation and blood stasis, or phlegm dampness. These factors may affect the normal functioning of the Chong and Ren meridians.	闭经	bì jīng	经闭
1979	Perimenstrual disorders		<b>A group of menstrual disorders that occurs days before or during menstruation.</b>	月经前后诸症	yuè jīng qián hòu zhū zhèng	月经前后诸证; 经行前后诸证
1980	Dysmenorrhea	Dysmenorrhea disorder Painful periods disorder Menstrual cramp disorder	Characterized by lower abdominal cramps or weight-bearing sensation before or during menstruation. The pain may radiate to the lumbosacral region. In severe cases, individuals may faint from severe pain. Often occurs when emotional disturbance or six exogenous pathogens obstruct the Chong and Ren meridians. Alternatively, it may also result from the failure of essence and blood to nourish the uterus.	痛经	tòng jīng	
1981	Vomiting of blood or nosebleed during menstruation	Reversed menstruation	Characterized by vomiting of blood or nosebleed before or during menstruation. Individuals may experience decreased or little menstrual volume. Often occurs when heat forces the blood to ascend along the pathway of Chong meridian.	经行吐衄	jīng xíng tǔ nǚ	倒经
1982	Fever during menstruation		Characterized by fever before or during menstruation. Often results from disorder of qi and blood and disharmony between the Ying nutrients and Wei-defence.	经行发热	jīng xíng fā rè	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1983	Dizziness during menstruation		Characterized by dizziness and blurred vision before or during menstruation. Often results from hyperactivity of liver yang due to yin blood deficiency or phlegm dampness obstructing the clean yang.	经行眩晕	jīng xíng xuàn yūn	
1984	Headache during menstruation		Characterized by headache before or during menstruation. Often results from deficiency of qi and blood, stagnation of qi and blood, or hyperactivity of liver fire due to yin deficiency.	经行头痛	jīng xíng tóu tòng	
1985	Breast distension/pain during menstruation		Characterized by breast distension or nipple itch/pain before or during menstruation. Often occurs as a result of liver qi stagnation or phlegm dampness obstructing the meridians.	经行乳房胀痛	jīng xíng rǔ fáng zhāng tòng	经前乳胀
1986	Generalized pain during menstruation		Characterized by generalized pain before or during menstruation. Often occurs when blood fails to nourish the meridians or cold causes the qi and blood to stagnate.	经行身痛	jīng xíng shēn tòng	
1987	Insomnia during menstruation		Characterized by insomnia or sleepless throughout the night before or during menstruation but stops spontaneously after menstruation. Contributing factors may include excessive worries, over-exertion, blood deficiency, liver qi stagnation transforming into fire, or fire hyperactivity due to yin deficiency.	经行失眠	jīng xíng shī mián	
1988	Oral ulceration during menstruation		Characterized by congestion, oedema and ulceration on the oral mucosa before or during menstruation but heals spontaneously after menstruation. Often occurs as a result of stomach heat or fire hyperactivity due to yin deficiency.	经行口糜	jīng xíng kǒu mí	
1989	Wind wheals during menstruation		Characterized by sudden occurrence of intensely itchy red skin rashes or wind wheals before or during menstruation but stops spontaneously after menstruation. Often occurs as a result of yin deficiency or blood dryness generating wind.	经行风疹块	jīng xíng fēng zhěn kuài	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1990	Diarrhoea during menstruation		Characterized by diarrhoea before or during menstruation but stops spontaneously after menstruation. Often occurs as a result of yang qi deficiency of the spleen and kidney.	经行泄泻	jīng xíng xiè xiè	
1991	Puffiness and swelling during menstruation		Characterized by facial puffiness and generalized oedema before or during menstruation. Often occurs as a result of yang deficiency of the spleen and kidney or qi stagnation and dampness retention.	经行浮肿	jīng xíng fú zhǒng	
1992	Moodiness during menstruation		Characterized by restlessness, irritability, sadness or weeping before or during menstruation. Alternatively, depression and sleepless throughout the night may be present. Often occurs as a result of liver qi stagnation or ascending of phlegm fire.	经行情志异常	jīng xíng qíng zhì yì cháng	
1993	Perimenopausal disorders	Menopausal disorder Menopausal pattern	A group of disorders involving irregular menstruation and gradual menopause. Individuals may experience tidal fever, hot flashes, feverish sensations in the palms, soles and chest, flushed face, sweating, restlessness, palpitations, insomnia, poor memory, dizziness, tinnitus, and low back soreness. These conditions often result from kidney qi failure and imbalance between yin and yang.	绝经前后诸症	jué jīng qián hòu zhū zhèng	更年期综合征
1994	Disorders of pregnancy and childbirth		A group of disorders involving pregnancy, childbirth, and the postpartum period.	胎孕类病	tāi yùn lèi bìng	
1995	Infertility	Female infertility disorder Female sterility disorder Infertility disorder	Characterized by the inability of women of childbearing age to become pregnant after one year (or longer) of unprotected sex. Often results from dysfunctions of the uterus and Chong and Ren meridian. Contributing factors may include kidney deficiency, liver qi stagnation, phlegm dampness, and blood stasis.	不孕	bú yùn	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
1996	Morning sickness	Morning sickness disorder Vomiting during pregnancy disorder Pregnancy vomiting	Characterized by nausea, vomiting and aversion to food and smelling of oily food after one to two months of pregnancy. In severe cases, individuals may vomit immediately after eating. Often results from ascending of foetal qi and failure of stomach qi to descend.	恶阻	è zǔ	妊娠呕吐
1997	Abdominal pain in pregnancy		Characterized by lower abdominal pain during pregnancy. Often results from stagnation of qi and blood in the uterus.	胞阻	bāo zǔ	妊娠腹痛
1998	Habitual miscarriage		Characterized by spontaneous death of an embryo or fetus for three or more consecutive pregnancies. Often results from kidney deficiency and insecurity of the Chong and Ren meridians.	滑胎	huá tāi	
1999	Slow foetal growth		Characterized by a baby growing slowly than a normal baby in the uterus during pregnancy. Often results from deficiency of qi and blood, deficiency of the spleen and kidney or malnutrition after conception.	胎萎不长	tāi wěi bù cháng	
2000	Post-term pregnancy		Characterized by pregnancy extended more than two weeks beyond the expected date of delivery. Alternatively, it refers to pregnancy extended to 42 weeks calculated to the first day of the last menstrual period.	过期不产	guò qī bù chǎn	
2001	Hydramnios during pregnancy		Characterized by the build up of too much amniotic fluid during pregnancy that causes abnormally enlarged abdomen, sensation of fullness and dyspnoea. Often results from yang deficiency of the spleen and kidney, coupled with internal retention of water dampness.	子满	zǐ mǎn	
2002	Oedema during pregnancy	Pregnancy swelling	Characterized by facial puffiness and swollen feet and ankles during the middle or late stages of pregnancy. Often results from water damp retention due to qi stagnation or yang deficiency of the spleen and kidney.	子肿	zǐ zhǒng	妊娠肿胀

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2003	Dizziness during pregnancy		Characterized by dizziness, blurred vision, facial puffiness and limb oedema in middle or late stages of pregnancy. Often results from hyperactivity of liver yang, deficiency of qi and blood, or exuberance of phlegm turbidity.	子眩	zǐ xuàn	子晕;妊娠眩晕
2004	Eclampsia of pregnancy	Eclampsia disorder	Characterized by sudden vertigo, fainting, loss of consciousness, eyes fixed upward, trismus, vomiting white foam, convulsions of the limbs, and rigidity during the late pregnancy or before, during or after delivery. Individuals may return to normal after a while; however, some may develop into coma. Often results from internal stirring of liver wind or ascending of phlegm fire due to yin deficiency of the liver and kidney or consumption of yin blood.	子痫	zǐ xián	子冒
2005	Ascending of fetal qi		Characterized by a feeling of distension and fullness in the chest. Often results from disharmony between qi and blood due to liver qi stagnation or spleen deficiency.	子悬	zǐ xuán	胎气上逆
2006	Vexation during pregnancy		Characterized by vexation or feeling depressed during pregnancy. Alternatively, restlessness and irritability may be present. Often results from yin deficiency, phlegm fire or liver qi stagnation.	子烦	zǐ fán	妊娠心烦
2007	Loss of voice during pregnancy		Characterized by hoarseness or loss of voice during pregnancy. Often results from failure of kidney yin to ascend to nourish the throat.	子喑	zǐ yīn	子瘖;妊娠失音
2008	Cough during pregnancy		Characterized by persistent cough during pregnancy. Often occurs when lung qi fails to descend. Contributing factors may include lung dryness due to yin deficiency, exposure to wind cold, or phlegm-fluid retention due to spleen deficiency.	子嗽	zǐ sòu	妊娠咳嗽
2009	Stranguria during pregnancy		Characterized by frequent, urgent, hesitant and painful urination during pregnancy. Often results from damp heat or deficiency fire impairing the qi transformation of the urinary bladder.	子淋	zǐ lín	妊娠小便淋痛

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2010	Urine retention in pregnancy		Characterized by urine retention and, in severe cases, sudden onset of lower abdominal distension and pain. Often occurs when downbearing fetal qi compresses the urinary bladder due to kidney deficiency or qi deficiency.	妊娠转胞	rèn shēn zhuǎn bāo	转胞;妊娠小便不通
2011	Skin itching during pregnancy		Characterized by itchy skin or in severe cases, generalized itching all over the body during pregnancy. Often results from stagnant heat in the liver and gallbladder.	妊娠瘙痒症	rèn shēn sào yǎng zhèng	
2012	Acute appendicitis during pregnancy		Characterized by acute intestinal abscess (appendicitis) during pregnancy. Often results from accumulation of toxic heat.	孕痛	yùn yōng	
2013	Leg cramps during pregnancy		Characterized by painful spasms during pregnancy that radiate through the calves, especially at night. Often results from the failure of liver blood to nourish the muscles and sinews.	妊娠下肢抽筋	rèn shēn xià zhī chōu jīn	
2014	Rubella during pregnancy		Characterized by red skin rashes, maculae or papules during pregnancy, coupled with fever and headache. They often result from infection of rubella virus.	妊娠风疹	rèn shēn fēng zhěn	
2015	Herpes simplex during pregnancy		Characterized by red, raised, and swollen or painful herpes zoster on the external genitalia, around the anus or in the vagina during pregnancy. Associated symptoms include increased vaginal discharge, painful urination, fatigue, low fever and tender, enlarged inguinal lymph node. Often results from infection of herpes virus.	妊娠疱疹	rèn shēn pào zhěn	
2016	Migraine during pregnancy		Characterized by paroxysmal or persistent episodes of headache on one or both sides during pregnancy. Associated symptoms include nausea and vomiting. They often result from liver blood deficiency or yang hyperactivity due to yin deficiency.	妊娠偏头痛	rèn shēn piān tóu tòng	
2017	Diabetes during pregnancy		Characterized by pre-existing diabetes or progression of latent diabetes upon pregnancy.	妊娠消渴	rèn shēn xiāo kě	



WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2018	Obstetric disorders		A group of disorders before or during the childbirth.	产科类病	chǎn kē lèi bìng	产病
2019	Difficult delivery		A condition that a baby has difficulty passing through the birth canal in a vaginal delivery. Contributing factors may include pelvic abnormalities, large baby, abnormal position and presentation of the fetus, or uterine/vulvar diseases.	难产	nán chǎn	
2020	Retained placenta		Characterized by a failure of placental expulsion within 30 minutes of the baby's birth. Often results from severe deficiency of qi and blood or stagnation of qi and blood upon contraction of exogenous pathogens.	胞衣不下	bāo yī bú xià	
2021	Postpartum disorders	Postpartum diseases	A group of disorders occurring during or after childbirth.	产后类病	chǎn hòu lèi bìng	产后病
2022	Postpartum fever		Characterized by high-grade fever and chills in the postpartum period. In some cases, individuals may experience persistent high fever and other systemic symptoms. Often results from postpartum infection, blood deficiency, blood stasis or contraction of exogenous pathogens.	产后发热	chǎn hòu fā rè	
2023	Postpartum fainting		Characterized by sudden onset of dizziness, blurred vision, an inability to sit up, chest fullness and stuffiness, nausea, vomiting, and profuse phlegm. In severe cases, unconsciousness and lockjaw may be present. Often results from qi collapse due to heavy blood loss or stasis obstructing the flow of qi.	产后血晕	chǎn hòu xuè yūn	
2024	Postpartum bleeding		Characterized by excessive vaginal bleeding following the birth of a baby. Often results from damage to the Chong and Ren meridians, retained placental or sex following childbirth.	产后血崩	chǎn hòu xuè bēng	
2025	Retention of the lochia		Characterized by retained vaginal discharge during the postpartum period. Lower abdominal pain may also be present. Often results from build up of lochia in the uterus.	产后恶露不下	chǎn hòu è lù bú xià	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2026	Persistent lochia discharge		Characterized by abnormally prolonged discharge of lochia for more than 10 days after childbirth. Often results from blood heat, blood stasis, qi deficiency, or contraction of external pathogens.	产后恶露不绝	chǎn hòu è lù bù jué	
2027	Lochia disturbing the heart mind		Characterized by restlessness, insomnia, mental confusion and incoherent speech after childbirth. In severe cases, loss of consciousness may be present. Often results from deficiency of anti-pathogenic qi and retained lochia disturbing the heart mind.	产后恶血冲心	chǎn hòu è xuè chōng xīn	恶血冲心; 败血冲心; 产后败血冲心; 产后血气冲心; 产后恶血入心
2028	Lochia affecting the stomach		Characterized by colicky abdominal pain that radiates to the waist, coupled with nausea, vomiting, abdominal stuffiness and a poor appetite after childbirth. Often results from deficiency of anti-pathogenic qi and retained lochia affecting the stomach.	产后恶血冲胃	chǎn hòu è xuè chōng wèi	
2029	Lochia affecting the lung		Characterized by cough, rapid breathing, chest tightness, restlessness, a red or dark complexion and nosebleed after childbirth. In severe cases, panting or a feeling of impending death may be present. Often occurs when retained lochia affects the lung.	产后恶血冲肺	chǎn hòu è xuè chōng fèi	
2030	Postpartum tetanus		Characterized by muscle contractions, body rigidity, lockjaw or opisthotonos after childbirth. Often results from blood deficiency, yin deficiency or obstetric wound infection.	产后痉病	chǎn hòu jìng bìng	
2031	Postpartum abdominal pain	Postpartum abdominal pain disorder Puerperal abdominal pain disorder	Characterized by lower abdominal pain after childbirth. Often results from uterine contraction due to obstructed flow of qi and blood.	产后腹痛	chǎn hòu fù tòng	儿枕痛
2032	Postpartum sweating		Characterized by spontaneous sweating or night sweats after childbirth.	产后汗病	chǎn hòu hàn bìng	产后汗症
2033	Postpartum oligogalactia	Inadequate lactation	Characterized by insufficient or absent breastmilk during the lactation period. Often results from deficiency of qi and blood or liver qi stagnation.	产后缺乳	chǎn hòu quē rǔ	乳汁不行

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2034	Postpartum body ache		Characterized by joint pain, numbness and heaviness after childbirth. Often results from blood deficiency, kidney deficiency, malnourishment of the tendons and joints, or obstructed flow of qi and blood due to contraction of external pathogens.	产后身痛	chǎn hòu shēn tòng	
2035	Obstetric (rectovaginal) fistula		Characterized by the passing of urine through the anus or passing of faeces through the urethra. It is often caused by a trauma-induced fistula or abnormal connection between the rectum and the vagina during childbirth.	交肠病	jiāo cháng bìng	产后交肠病; 阴道直肠瘻
2036	Postpartum exhaustion		Characterized by weight loss, tidal fever, flushed cheeks, night sweats and unproductive coughing. Often results from yin deficiency due to puerperal malnutrition coupled with contraction of external pathogens.	血风劳	xuè fēng láo	产褥劳; 产后劳
2037	Leucorrhoea		Characterized by abnormal vaginal discharges in amount, colour, quality and odour. It may appear whitish, yellowish or reddish. In some cases, individuals may have mixed-colour vaginal discharge or persistent, profuse and whitish vaginal discharges. This condition often results from downward flow of damp heat or damp toxin, unsafe sex, or deficiency of the spleen and kidney.	带下病类	dài xià bìng lèi	
2038	Profuse, whitish vaginal discharge	Vaginal discharge disorder	Characterized by persistent, profuse and whitish vaginal discharges that resemble rice-washed water or transparent mucus. Often results from yang deficiency of the spleen and kidney, unsafe sex, or contraction of cold dampness or damp heat. This condition is commonly seen in the elderly women or women with a weakened immune system.	白崩	bái bēng	
2039	Sexual disorders		A collective term of sexual dysfunctions caused by decline of the vital gate. Contributing factors may include emotions, fire hyperactivity due to yin deficiency and sexual indulgence.	房事类病	fáng shì lèi bìng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2040	Premature ejaculation	Premature ejaculation disorder	A condition that ejaculation always or nearly always occurs prior to sexual intercourse or within about one minute. Often results from fire hyperactivity due to yin deficiency or deficiency of the heart and kidney.	早泄	zǎo xiè	早泄
2041	Impotence	Impotence disorder	Characterized by the inability to develop or maintain an erection of the penis during sexual activity. Often results from decline of the vital gate, deficiency of the liver and kidney, fear/fright or depression.	阳痿	yáng wěi	阳痿
2042	Paediatric disorders	Childhood and adolescence associated disorders Child related diseases	A collective term of paediatric conditions caused by congenital weakness, abnormal childbirth, external contraction of pathogenic factors, improper feeding, fear/fright or deficiencies of the zang-fu organs.	小儿相关病类	xiǎo ér xiāng guān bìng lèi	
2043	Neonatal jaundice		Characterized by yellowish colouration of the skin, mucosa, and sclera of a newborn baby which lasts more than two weeks after birth. Often results from contraction of damp heat during pregnancy, biliary track deformation, or gall bile blockage.	胎黄	tāi huáng	
2044	Umbilical wind (neonatal tetanus)		Characterized by cyanotic lips, lockjaw, and facial expression with an unnatural smile. In severe cases, tetanic convulsions and opisthotonus may be present. Often results from infection of the unhealed umbilical stump from wind-related pathogen.	脐风	qí fēng	
2045	Epidemic diseases in children		A collective term of epidemic or seasonal paediatric conditions, including common cold, summer non-acclimatization, summer fever or chicken pox.	小儿时令类病	xiǎo ér shí lìng lèi bìng	
2046	Contagious diseases in children		A collective term of contagious paediatric diseases due to contraction of warm epidemic or pestilence.	小儿温疫类病	xiǎo ér wēn yì lèi bìng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2047	Roseola infantum	Pseudorubella	Characterized by a sudden high fever and sometime with convulsion. Red skin rashes will appear all over the body after the fever disappeared in 3 to 5 days. Subsequently, rashes will resolve after 1 to 2 days. This condition often results from contraction of epidemic toxins.	奶麻	nǎi má	假麻
2048	Infantile paralysis	Polio	An infectious condition that starts with fever, sweating, headache, nausea, vomiting and diarrhoea. The fever may subside after a few days and reappear, accompanied by neck stiffness, bulging fontanelle, hyperesthesia, refusing to be touched or hugged, and restlessness or drowsiness. Over time, the muscles become weak, steps floppy and poorly controlled, and can even end with physical handicap. Often occurs when epidemic summer heat and dampness enters the gastrointestinal tract thereafter affecting muscles or obstructing meridians. Alternatively, it may occur due to lack of yin fluids after a long period of illness and malnourishment of sinews.	小儿软脚瘟	xiǎo ér ruǎn jiǎo wēn	疫痿
2049	Paediatric bacillary dysentery		An epidemic condition characterized by sudden high fever, restlessness, intense abdominal pain, and stools containing pus and blood. In severe cases, convulsions, shock and cold limbs may be present. Often occurs when epidemic damp heat damages the intestines or enters the pericardium and triggers liver wind.	小儿疫毒痢	xiǎo ér yì dú lì	
2050	Paediatric diphtheria		An epidemic condition characterized by fever, sore throat, white film (pseudo-membrane) build up in the throat or nose. The layer of pseudo-film coating is hard to crack, and can cause bleeding after peeling off. In severe cases, difficulty in swallowing, breathing or shock may be present. The condition often begins with lung and stomach bacterial infection spreading to the throat area.	小儿白喉	xiǎo ér bái hóu	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2051	Paediatric smallpox		An epidemic condition characterized by fever, cough, yawning, a red face, cold hands/feet/ears, followed by skin rashes. It usually lasts through six stages: fever, early rash, pustular rash, pustules, scabs, and resolving scabs. It is often caused by exposure to the smallpox virus.	小儿天花	xiǎo ér tiān huā	小儿痘疹;天行痘;百岁疮
2052	Neonatal cough		Characterized by cough with profuse sputum and rapid breathing. Often occurs in a newborn within one hundred days after birth. This condition often occurs when wind attacks the lung, causing heat and phlegm to obstruct the free flow of lung qi.	百啐嗽	bǎi zuì sòu	乳嗽;胎嗽;百啐咳;百啐内嗽
2053	Paediatric pneumonia		Characterized by fever, cough, panting, nasal flaring and profuse phlegm. In severe cases, consistent high fever, unconsciousness, convulsions and seizures might occur. Often occurs when wind cold or warmth affects the descending and dispersing of lung qi.	小儿肺风痰喘	xiǎo ér fèi fēng tán chuǎn	肺风痰喘;肺炎喘嗽
2054	Infantile convulsions		A collective term of infantile unconsciousness, convulsions or seizures due to external contraction or internal dysfunctions. It includes acute infantile convulsion, chronic infantile convulsion and chronic spleen wind.	小儿惊风	xiǎo ér jīng fēng	小儿惊厥
2055	Acute infantile convulsion	Acute convulsion disorder	Characterized by a sudden onset of fever, loss of consciousness, blank staring, trismus, neck stiffness and convulsions of the limbs. Often results from seasonal pathogens, heat or indigestion in the stomach, fear/fright and phlegm accumulation that affects the heart and liver.	急惊风	jí jīng fēng	
2056	Chronic infantile convulsion	Recurrent convulsion disorder	Characterized by repeated twitching of hands and feet, intermittent convulsions, fatigue, a pale face, sleepiness with eyes unclosed, vomiting and diarrhoea of bluish stools. Often results from healthy qi deficiency, damage to spleen yang or internal stirring of liver wind. It may also develop from acute infantile convulsion.	慢惊风	màn jīng fēng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2057	Chronic spleen wind		A critical condition characterized by head shaking with closed eyes, dark bluish face and lips, sweats on the forehead, drowsiness, cold limbs, twitching or convulsion of the limbs, and vomiting of clear water. Often results from excessive or chronic vomiting or diarrhoea damaging spleen yang or surge of internal liver wind.	慢脾风	màn pí fēng	
2058	Fright seizure	Fright seizure disorder Infantile fright seizure	Characterized by sudden screaming or crying, vomiting, facial colour change, diarrhoea and abdominal pain. Often results from fright upon exposure to strangers or unknown events.	客忤	kè wǔ	小儿客忤
2059	Night crying	Night crying disorder	A condition that often occurs in babies under the age of one year. Characterized by continuous crying during or even through the night but appearing normal at daytime. Often results from spleen cold, heart heat and fear or fright that disturb the heart mind.	夜啼	yè tí	
2060	Paediatric dementia		Characterized by delayed movement or language development, dull expression, and learning disability. Vacant look, head shaking or tongue wagging may be present. It is often caused by genetic deficiency, malnutrition, brain injury, high fever and/or drug poisoning affecting brain development.	小儿痴呆	xiǎo ér chī dāi	
2061	Drooling in babies	Dribbling disorder	Characterized by saliva flowing outside of the mouth unintentionally that may wet the cheeks and chest. Often results from deficiency cold of the spleen or heat accumulating in the spleen and stomach.	滞颐	zhì yí	
2062	Infantile malnutrition	Infantile malnutrition disorder Malnutrition pattern	Characterized by a sallow complexion, muscle wasting and bulging abdomen. Often results from improper feeding, congenital weakness or deficiency of the spleen and stomach. These factors may cause the failure of qi, blood and nutrients to nourish the zang-fu organs, hence delaying the growth and development of babies.	疳病	gān bìng	疳证

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2063	Mild infantile malnutrition		Characterized by a sallow complexion, emaciation, a poor appetite, alternating constipation and diarrhoea, poor spirit and irritability. It is often caused by inappropriate feeding or spleen deficiency.	疳气	gān qì	
2064	Mild malnutrition with food stagnation		An intermediate stage of infantile malnutrition characterized by emaciation, a sallow complexion, bulging abdomen, veins showing through the skin, poor spirit, and restlessness. Often results from improper feeding or food stagnation in the stomach and intestines.	疳积	gān jī	
2065	Severe infantile malnutrition		Characterized by withered skin, dry, thin and brittle hair, emaciation, oedema, purpura, nosebleed or gum bleeding. It is often caused by exhaustion of qi and blood due to extreme deficiency of the spleen and stomach.	干疳	gān gān	
2066	Paediatric indigestion		Characterized by abdominal distension, fullness and pain, accompanied by vomiting, acid reflux, diarrhoea or constipation. Some children may also present with disturbed sleep, teeth grinding and finger-sucking. Over time, indigestion may develop into malnutrition. It is often caused by milk stagnation due to inappropriate feeding or food stagnation in the spleen and stomach due to improper diet.	积滞	jī zhì	
2067	Milk accumulation		Characterized by frequent foul breath or vomiting of undigested milk. Associated symptoms may include abdominal distension, diarrhoea, crying for no reason, poor sleep, hot breath and dry stools. Often results from improper breast feeding that damages the spleen and stomach and causes milk to stagnate in the stomach and intestines.	乳积	rǔ jī	
2068	Food stagnation		Characterized by abdominal distension and fullness, belching, acid reflux, decreased appetite, and strong-odoured stools. Associated symptoms may include abdominal pain, crying and irregular bowel movements. Often occurs when improper diet damages the spleen and stomach and food is retained in the stomach and intestines.	食积	shí jī	



WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2069	Paediatric poor appetite		Characterized by persistent poor appetite, aversion to food, and significant weight loss, but with normal spirit and physical activities. Alternatively, abdominal distension, belching, and irregular bowel movements may be present. It is often caused by spleen deficiency or damage to stomach yin due to inappropriate feeding or fright.	小儿厌食	xiǎo ér yàn shí	
2070	Paediatric parorexia		An abnormal craving for objects not normally considered food, including fingernails, paintings on toys, mud, paper, hair, dirt, soil block, coal cinder or rocks. Ingestion of these objects may damage the body. It is often caused by spleen-related malnutrition or intestinal parasites.	小儿异食	xiǎo ér yì shí	异食癖
2071	Paediatric vomiting		Characterized by vomiting of breast milk or food after feeding. It is often caused by overfeeding or damage to stomach qi.	小儿呕吐	xiǎo ér ǒu tù	
2072	Paediatric flaccidity	Infant flaccid disorder Infant flaccidity disorder Infant limpness disorder	Characterized by muscle flaccidity and impaired voluntary movement control. In severe cases, muscular atrophy or paralysis may be present. This condition is often caused by damp heat, emotional disturbance, genetic deficiency or qi deficiency of the lung and spleen that result in malnourishment of the bones, tendons and muscles.	小儿痿病	xiǎo ér wěi bìng	
2073	Paediatric frequent urination		Characterized by increased urination frequency with small amount of urine volume. Urgent, painful urination may also occur. It is often caused by impaired qi transformation of the urinary bladder due to retention of damp heat in the lower jiao, pinworm, stones or emotional disturbance.	小儿尿频	xiǎo ér niào pín	
2074	Paediatric enuresis		Characterized by an inability to control urination during sleep after the age of five years. It is often caused by incomplete development of kidney qi resulting in bladder function failure.	小儿遗尿	xiǎo ér yí niào	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2075	Canker sores		Characterized by small, aphthous sores or erosions on the mouth corners in children. They often result from contraction of exogenous pathogens, heat accumulation in the heart and spleen, or ascending of internal fire due to yin deficiency.	燕口疮	yàn kǒu chuāng	口吻疮
2076	Paediatric tonsillitis		Characterized by red, swollen tonsil with yellow and white pus-filled spots. Over time, the tonsil may become enlarged and hard on palpation. High fever, sore throat, swollen lymph nodes (glands) in the neck, difficulty swallowing and body aches may be present. It is often caused by pathogenic factors affecting the tonsil, ascending of toxic heat in the lung and stomach, fire (due to yin deficiency of the lung and kidney) scorching the tonsil, malnourishment of the tonsil due to weakness of the spleen and stomach, or retention of phlegm stasis in the throat.	小儿乳蛾	xiǎo ér rǔ é	
2077	Nappy/diaper rash	Nappy/diaper dermatitis disorder Red skin around the nappy/diaper	Characterized by sore, red and irritated skin on the convex surfaces of the buttocks and the bulge of the groin. Often occurs when the baby's skin become exposed to urine and faeces in a nappy/diaper.	小儿湮尻疮	xiǎo ér yān kāo chuāng	臀红
2078	Paediatric erysipelas		Characterized by rapidly enlarged erythematous skin lesion, accompanied by fever and chills. In severe cases, high fever, unconsciousness and convulsions may be present. It is often caused by inappropriate care of skin injury or fetal toxin affecting the skin.	小儿赤游丹	xiǎo ér chì yóu dān	赤游丹
2079	Paediatric eczema		A condition that commonly affects infants or young children. It is characterized by dry or wet skin rashes on the face, torso, and hands and feet, coupled with exudation, skin tearing due to scratching, restlessness, and night crying. Often results from food or drug allergies or wind, damp or heat affecting the skin.	奶癣	nǎi xuǎn	胎癣;胎疮

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2080	Hydrocephalus		Characterized by an enlargement of the head and retarded closure of the cranial sutures. Often results from congenital defect or retention of excess fluid within the skull due to accumulated toxic heat.	解颅	jiě lú	囟解
2081	Five retardations		Characterized by retarded growth and development in standing, walking, hair growth, tooth eruption and speaking. Often results from congenital kidney deficiency or deficiency of qi and blood due to postnatal malnutrition.	五迟	wǔ chí	
2082	Five flaccidities		Characterized by flaccidity of the neck, mouth, hands, feet and muscles in infants. Often results from congenital qi deficiency or postnatal malnutrition.	五软	wǔ ruǎn	
2083	Eye diseases		<b>A group of disorders of the eye tissue or visual impairment caused by invasion of exogenous pathogens, ascending of wind, fire and phlegm dampness due to dysfunctions of the zang-fu organs or eye injuries.</b>	眼病类	yǎn bìng lèi	
2084	Eye disorders involving the eyelid, inner/outer canthus, sclera and iris.		Conditions of the eyelids, inner/outer canthus, sclera and iris caused by six exogenous pathogens, fire heat in the five zang organs, phlegm dampness due to spleen deficiency, ascending of deficiency fire due to yin deficiency of the liver and kidney, or eye injuries.	外障类病	wài zhàng lèi bìng	
2085	Stye		Characterized by red, tender bump at the edge of the eyelid that may contain pus formation and appear in the shape and size of a wheat grain. Often results from invasion of wind heat, heat accumulating in the spleen and stomach, or retained toxic heat coupled with contraction of wind.	针眼	zhēn yǎn	
2086	Blepharitis		Characterized by redness, swelling and tenderness of the eyelid. Individuals may also experience fever and headache. Often results from accumulated heat in the spleen and stomach, coupled with contraction of exogenous wind fire.	眼丹	yǎn dān	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2087	Phlegm node of the eyelid		Characterized by hard lumps in the eyelid that are neither reddish nor painful. Often results from phlegm dampness due to spleen deficiency or damp heat in the spleen and stomach, hence causing blockage in the associated meridians.	胞生痰核	bāo shēng tán hé	胞睑痰核
2088	Pricklyash-like sores on the eyelid	Trachoma	Characterized by red, solid granulations in the undersurface of the upper eyelid that resemble wild pepper. Individuals may experience a feeling of pain and itching, sensitivity to bright lights, and watery discharge. Often results from stagnation of qi and blood in the local area due to exogenous wind heat and heat accumulated in the spleen and stomach.	椒疮	jiāo chuāng	沙眼
2089	Millet-like sores on the eyelid	Follicular conjunctivitis	Characterized by yellow, soft granulations in the undersurface of the upper eyelid that resemble millet. Individuals may experience a feeling of itching and discomfort. Often results from damp heat in the spleen and stomach, coupled with attack from exogenous wind in the eyelid.	粟疮	sù chuāng	
2090	Red, wet and ulcerative eyelid	Marginal blepharitis	Characterized by red, wet and ulcers on the eyelid. Individuals may experience itching and a burning pain. Often results from water/dampness retention in the eyelid due to yang deficiency of the spleen and kidney, or due to qi deficiency of the heart and lung.	睑弦赤烂	jiǎn xián chì làn	风弦赤烂
2091	Inflammatory swelling of the eyelid	Inflammatory eyelid disorder	Characterized by severe pain, swelling and redness of the eyelid that resembles a ripe peach. Often results from exuberant heat obstructing the flow of qi and blood.	胞肿如桃	bāo zhǒng rú táo	
2092	Non-inflammatory oedema of the eyelid	Non-inflammatory eyelid disorder	Characterized by non-painful swelling of the eyelid that feels soft and hollow, with no change in the local skin colour. Often results from water/dampness retention in the eyelid due to yang deficiency of the spleen and kidney, or due to qi deficiency of the heart and lung.	胞虚如球	bāo xū rú qiú	脾虚如球

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2093	Cold tears		Characterized by excess clear, thin tears, especially when exposed to wind. Individuals do not have eye redness, swelling or pain. Often results from deficiency of the liver and kidney, deficiency of qi and blood, or invasion by wind.	冷泪	lěng lèi	
2094	Pterygium		Characterized by triangular tissue growth on the cornea of the eye that may slowly grow and affect the pupil. Often results from wind heat affecting the heart and lung meridians, qi stagnation and blood stasis, excess heat in the spleen and stomach, or fire hyperactivity due to yin deficiency.	胬肉攀睛	nǚ ròu pān jīng	
2095	Sudden attack of wind heat on the eye		A condition characterized by sudden onset of redness, swelling and pain of the white of the eye, sensitivity to bright lights, and watery discharge. Often results from exuberant fire of the lung and stomach or exogenous wind heat affecting the eye.	暴风客热	bào fēng kè rè	
2096	Epidemic conjunctivitis		A highly contagious condition characterized by sudden onset of redness of the white of the eye, watery discharge, and sensitivity to bright lights. It can rapidly spread among the community and often results from exogenous wind heat, pestilence or coupled with heat accumulated in the lung and stomach.	天行赤眼	tiān xíng chì yǎn	
2097	Superficial punctate keratitis		Characterized by presence of multiple fine drops of opacity on the cornea. Individuals may experience pain, red, watery and sensitivity to bright lights. Often results from contraction of exogenous wind fire/heat, internal retention of damp heat, or ascending of fire due to yin deficiency of the liver and kidney.	聚星障	jù xīng zhàng	
2098	Interstitial keratitis		Characterized by corneal opacity and vision blurring. Individuals may experience eye pain and sensitivity to light. Often results from local stagnation of qi and blood due to wind heat in the liver meridian or toxic heat in the liver and gallbladder.	混睛障	hún jīng zhàng	气翳

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2099	Eye disorders involving the pupil, eyeball, retina or other eye tissues		Conditions of the pupil, eyeball, retina, vitreous humour or other eye tissues caused by deficiency of the liver and kidney, deficiency of qi and blood, emotional stress, or ascending of wind fire that carries phlegm dampness.	内障类病	nèi zhàng lèi bìng	
2100	Glaucoma		Characterized by increased pressure in the eye, headache, eye distension/pain, blurred vision, red eyes and dilation of the pupil. Often results from emotional stress, qi stagnation and blood stasis, and exuberant fire in the liver and gallbladder.	五风内障	wǔ fēng nèi zhàng	
2101	Bluish glaucoma		Characterized by mild dilation of the pupil with a bluish colour, increased pressure in the eye, gradual visual field constriction and, eventually vision loss. Often results from liver qi stagnation, fire hyperactivity due to yin deficiency or ascending of phlegm fire.	青风内障	qīng fēng nèi zhàng	
2102	Yellowish glaucoma		Characterized by dilation of the pupil with a pale, yellowish colour, and vision loss. Often results from ascending of liver fire that carries phlegm. It may also occur as a result of untreated greenish glaucoma, bluish glaucoma or black glaucoma.	黄风内障	huáng fēng nèi zhàng	
2103	Greenish glaucoma		Characterized by hardening of the eyeball, dilation of the pupil with greenish colour, and drastic impairment of vision. Splitting headache, eye distension and pain, nausea and vomiting may also be present. Often results from liver qi stagnation transforming into fire, ascending of phlegm fire due to spleen deficiency, or disharmony between qi and blood due to yin deficiency and yang hyperactivity.	绿风内障	lǜ fēng nèi zhàng	
2104	Dark glaucoma		Characterized by distension and pain of the eyeball, blurred vision, appearance of opaque specks in the lens, occasional headache, and gradually progressive vision loss. Often results from ascending of hyperactive deficiency fire that carries phlegm.	乌风内障	wū fēng nèi zhàng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2105	Black glaucoma		Characterized by headache, eye distension and pain, blurred vision, dilated pupil with a black colour, and visual impairment. Often results from liver wind that carries phlegm or disharmony between qi and blood due to kidney deficiency.	黑风内障	hēi fēng nèi zhàng	
2106	Cataract		Characterized by clouding of the lens in the eye leading to a decrease in vision. Often results from ageing, deficiency of the liver and kidney due to diabetes, spleen deficiency or retained heat in the liver meridian.	圆翳内障	yuán yì nèi zhàng	如银内障
2107	Retinopathy pigmentosa		A progressive degenerative eye condition characterized by night blindness, gradual visual field constriction, and eventual blindness. Often results from congenital deficiency or insufficiency of liver blood and kidney essence.	高风内障	gāo fēng nèi zhàng	高风雀目
2108	Bluish blindness		A condition characterized by gradually progressive visual impairment to complete vision loss. Often results from deficiency of liver blood and kidney essence, yang deficiency of the spleen and kidney, liver qi stagnation, eye injuries or eye tumour.	青盲	qīng máng	
2109	Sudden blindness		Characterized by sudden visual impairment or vision loss of one or both eyes. Often results from blockage of eye tissues, blood heat (due to yang hyperactivity) damaging eye collaterals, or retinal detachment.	暴盲	bào máng	
2110	Unclassified eye disorders		Eye disorders that do not fall under the above categories. These include (nutritional) keratomalacia, paralytic strabismus, sudden protrusion of the eyeball, night blindness, myopia and hyperopia.	眼科杂病类	yǎn kē zá bìng lèi	
2111	Night blindness	Night blindness disorder Night blindness due to liver deficiency	Characterized by difficult or impossible vision/sight in relatively low light. Individuals may experience sensitivity to light. Often results from insufficient generation of qi and blood (due to spleen deficiency) or liver blood failing to nourish the eyes. It also occurs at the early stage of keratomalacia.	雀目	què mù	肝虚雀目

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2112	Ear disorders		A group of ear disorders caused by exogenous pathogenic heat, phlegm dampness, ascending of toxic fire, foreign bodies obstructing the ear canal, malnourishment of the ear due to deficiency of the zang-fu organs, or eardrum injuries.	耳病类	ěr bìng lèi	
2113	Ear block	Progressive hearing loss	Characterized by a feeling of ear distension, stuffiness and obstruction, tinnitus, hearing impairment (conductive hearing loss), and retracted eardrum with pus discharge. Often results from obstructed flow of qi and blood within the ear.	耳闭	ěr bì	
2114	Sudden deafness	Sudden deafness disorder	Characterized by sudden onset of hearing impairment in one or both ears. Individuals may also experience vertigo and tinnitus. Often results from stagnation of qi and blood due to dysfunctions of the zang-fu organs, or pathogenic factors affecting the ear.	暴聋	bào lóng	
2115	Nasal diseases		A group of nasal disorders caused by wind, cold, dampness or heat affecting the nose, accumulation of damp heat and turbid phlegm, ascending of toxic fire, heat accumulated in the zang-fu organs, malnourishment of the nose due to deficiency of qi and blood, nasal trauma, or foreign body trapped in the nasal cavity.	鼻病类	bí bìng lèi	
2116	Nasal sore		Characterized by recurrent red, swollen, itchy and painful sores on the nose. Often occurs when wind, heat or dampness steam the nasal cavity.	鼻疳	bí gān	鼻疮
2117	Acute rhinitis		Characterized by stuffy nose, runny nose (clear or thick nasal discharges), sneezing or other common cold symptoms. It is often caused by wind cold or wind heat affecting the lung and obstructing the nasal cavity.	伤风鼻塞	shāng fēng bí sāi	



WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2118	Rhinitis sicca		Characterized by dryness inside the nose, turbinate hypertrophy, atrophy of the mucous membrane, foul-smelling crusts, and decreased sensitivity to smell. Often results from malnourishment of the nose due to deficiency of the zang-fu organs.	鼻槁	bí gǎo	
2119	Allergic rhinitis	Allergic rhinitis disorder	Characterized by sudden or recurrent nasal itching, sneezing, and runny or stuffy nose. Often results from genetic factors, deficiency of the zang-fu organs coupled with contraction of exogenous pathogens, or exposure to pollen, dust or polluted air.	鼻鼽	bí qiú	
2120	Profuse nasal discharge	Nasal sinusitis disorder	Characterized by thick nasal mucus, nasal obstruction, decreased sensitivity to smell. Individuals may also experience pus discharge, dizziness and head distension. It often results from contraction of exogenous pathogens, retained heat in the zang-fu organs, or deficiency of the zang-fu organs.	鼻渊	bí yuān	
2121	Sinusitis		Characterized by stuffy nose, poor sense of smell, drowsiness, and thick nasal discharge that is usually green in colour (like egg white). Alternatively, local distension, pain or discomfort may be present. It is often caused by turbid phlegm and damp heat affecting the head, face and nose.	鼻窦痰包	bí dòu tán bāo	
2122	Throat diseases	Tonsillitis disorder	A group of throat disorders caused by wind, cold, dampness or heat affecting the throat; wind, heat or phlegm fire affecting the throat or tonsil; smoking or alcohol drinking consuming yin fluids; phlegm qi stagnation in the throat; foreign bodies trapped in the throat; heat accumulated in the zang-fu organs or malnourishment of the throat due to deficiency of the zang-fu organs.	咽喉病类	yān hóu bìng lèi	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2123	Tonsillitis		Characterized by fever, sore throat, and enlargement of the tonsils that resembles a nipple or silkworm moth. Individuals may also present with white pus-filled spots on the surface of the tonsil or swollen, hard and dark red tonsil. Often results from exogenous pathogens affecting the tonsil, ascending of deficiency fire, or stagnation of qi and blood.	乳蛾	rǔ é	
2124	Acute tonsillitis		Characterized by fever and red, swollen and painful tonsil that resembles silkworm moth. It is often caused by wind heat affecting the tonsil.	急乳蛾	jí rǔ é	
2125	Chronic tonsillitis		Characterized by frequent discharge of pus from the tonsil with mild redness, swelling and throat discomfort. It is often caused by dysfunctions of the zang-fu organs and ascending of deficiency fire due to persistent tonsillitis.	慢乳蛾	màn rǔ é	
2126	Stony tonsillitis		Characterized by a hard enlarged tonsil. It is often seen in children and caused by stagnant qi and blood due to weakness of the zang-fu organs.	石蛾	shí é	
2127	Throat impediment	Pharyngitis	Characterized by throat redness, swelling and pain. Alternatively, individuals may experience a dry throat, a foreign body sensation or an unpleasant, scratchy throat. Often results from exogenous pathogens affecting the throat, malnourishment of the throat due to deficiency of the zang-fu organs, or localized stagnation of qi and blood due to ascending of deficiency fire.	喉痹	hóu bì	
2128	Acute pharyngitis		Characterized by red, swollen and sore throat. It is often caused by pathogenic factors affecting the lung, stomach and throat.	急喉痹	jí hóu bì	
2129	Chronic pharyngitis		Characterized by dry, sore throat, a foreign body sensation and discomfort in the throat. It is often caused by malnourishment of the throat, ascending of deficiency fire to the throat or retention of pathogenic factors in the throat.	慢喉痹	màn hóu bì	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2130	Peritonsillar abscess		Characterized by high fever, red, swollen throat with intense pain and difficulty swallowing. It is often caused by retention of toxic heat coupled with contraction of exogenous pathogens, causing slough and sepsis in the throat area.	喉痛	hóu yōng	
2131	Epiglottic abscess		Characterized by intense sore throat, fever, difficulty swallowing and red, swollen epiglottis. It is often caused by retention of pathogenic toxin in the epiglottis.	喉关痛	hóu guān yōng	
2132	Posterior pharyngeal abscess		Characterized by intense sore throat, high fever, impaired neck movement and redness and swelling of the posterior pharyngeal wall. It is often caused by retention of pathogenic toxins in the base of the throat.	里喉痛	lǐ hóu yōng	
2133	Submandibular abscess		Characterized by intense sore throat, fever, difficulty swallowing, red, swollen jaw and the tonsil and pharyngeal wall being pulled to the opposite side. It is often caused by pathogenic toxin affecting the submandibular region.	颌下痛	hé xià yōng	
2134	Mandibular abscess		Characterized by intense sore throat, difficulty swallowing and red, swollen palate. It is often caused by exuberant toxin affecting the palate.	上腭痛	shàng è yōng	
2135	Sudden hoarseness		Characterized by acute hoarseness or loss of voice and sore throat. It is often caused by pathogenic factors affecting the throat.	暴瘖	bào yīn	急喉暗
2136	Chronic hoarseness		Characterized by hoarseness or loss of voice with persistent throat discomfort. It is often caused by malnourishment of the throat or lingering of the pathogenic factors in the throat area.	久瘖	jiǔ yīn	慢喉暗
2137	Acute laryngeal obstruction		Characterized by red, swollen and sore throat, followed by profuse sputum and difficulty swallowing and breathing. It is often caused by ascending of wind heat and phlegm fire to the throat.	急喉风	jí hóu fēng	喉风;锁喉风

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2138	Uvula haematoma		Characterized by sudden blood blisters in the palate that have a purple colour, thin wall and tend to rupture. It is often caused by internal heat or rupture to the oral cavity during eating.	飞扬喉	fēi yáng hóu	
2139	Laryngitis		Characterized by sudden or recurrent dry, scratchy throat, cough with scanty or no sputum, hoarse voice, and mild congestion and swelling of the throat. It is often caused by exposure to pathogenic factors, fume or odour stimuli, chronic cough, or malnourishment of the throat due to yin deficiency of the lung and kidney.	喉咳	hóu ké	喉源性咳嗽
2140	Plum pit qi	Globus hystericus	A sensation of a foreign body trapped in the throat that can neither be swallowed nor expectorated. Often occurs when phlegm and qi stagnate in the throat due to emotional disturbance.	梅核气	méi hé qì	
2141	Tuberculosis of the throat		Characterized by dry, sore throat with a burning sensation, localized ulceration with surrounding redness and lichen-like indentation. Hot flush, night sweats and hoarse voice may also be present. It is often caused by infection with the bacterium <i>Mycobacterium tuberculosis</i> or malnourishment of the throat due to yin deficiency.	喉癬	hóu xuǎn	喉癆
2142	Throat cancer		Characterized by sore throat, dysphagia, a foreign body sensation in the throat, presence of lumps in the throat with a rough surface. It is often caused by qi stagnation, blood stasis and retention of turbid phlegm in the throat for a long period of time.	咽喉菌	yān hóu jūn	咽菌; 喉菌; 喉岩
2143	Tooth and mouth diseases		A group of mouth and tongue disorders caused by damp heat in the spleen and stomach, ascending of deficiency fire, exuberance of stomach fire, ascending of wind heat and phlegm fire, dental caries, or phlegm dampness due to dysfunctions of the zang-fu organs.	口齿病类	kǒu chǐ bìng lèi	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2144	Dental caries		Characterized by erosions of the surface of the tooth or a breakdown of teeth. It is often caused by exposure to pathogenic factors, fire hyperactivity due to yin deficiency or poor dental hygiene.	龋齿	qǔ chǐ	
2145	Periodontal abscess		Characterized by persistent intense toothache, red swollen gum and alveolar mucosa, discharge of pus, loose teeth and aggravated pain on chewing. Often occurs when internal fire heat ascends to the gum.	牙痛	yá yōng	
2146	Pericoronitis of wisdom tooth		Characterized by fever, foul breath, swollen gum tissue, pain, and pus formation. In severe cases, swollen cheeks, difficulty opening mouth and discharge of pus after rupture. It is often caused by retention of toxic heat in the wisdom teeth.	牙咬痛	yá yǎo yōng	
2147	Gingival recession		Characterized by the exposure in the roots of the teeth caused by a loss of gum tissue and/or retraction of the gingival margin from the crown of the teeth. Individuals may also experience loose teeth and gum bleeding. Often occurs when stomach fire ascends to scorch the gum or malnourishment of the gum due to deficiency of the zang-fu organs.	牙宣	yá xuān	
2148	Dental fistula		Characterized by an abnormal passage in the oral cavity on the gingiva. Often results from retained toxins affecting the alveolar periosteum, gum or adjacent skin due to untreated or inappropriately treated tooth problems.	牙漏	yá lòu	齿漏;漏瘡
2149	Dental abscess	Osteomyelitis of the maxilla	Characterized by pain of the alveolar bone, coupled with pus formation and discharge of dead bones. Often results from exuberant phlegm fire.	齿槽风	chǐ cáo fēng	骨槽风;穿腮毒
2150	Ulcerative gingivitis		Characterized by gingival redness, ulceration and bleeding with a foetid odour. Often results from wind heat or cold dampness affecting the gum.	牙疳	yá gān	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2151	Acute ulcerative gingivitis		Characterized by sudden onset of gum or buccal mucosa necrosis, bleeding (dark, purple blood), and a foul breath. In severe cases, individuals may experience paresthesia of the lips, infection of the mandible, or loose teeth. Often results from contraction of seasonal pathogens or retained toxins of smallpox.	走马牙疳	zǒu mǎ yá gān	
2152	Mouth ulcer		Characterized by single/multiple red, painful ulcers that occur on the mucous membrane of the oral cavity. Often results from emotional stagnation transforming into fire, heat accumulated in the heart and spleen, or hyperactive fire (due to yin deficiency) scorching the oral mucosa.	口疳	kǒu gān	口疮
2153	Oral erosion		Characterized by multiple spots of erosion, congestion, oedema and pseudomembrane on the buccal mucosa, and foul breath. Often results from internal build up of damp heat or deficiency fire scorching the oral cavity.	口糜	kǒu mí	
2154	Wet lips	Cheilitis	Characterized by lip skin peeling, dryness and rhagadia. It is often caused by damp heat in the spleen and stomach, coupled with exposure to wind.	唇湿	chún shī	
2155	Lip wind	Exfoliative cheilitis	Characterized by red, swollen, itchy and painful lips with cracks and exudation. Individuals may also experience peeling lips and twitching of lips. Often results from contraction of exogenous wind heat and dampness or ascending of accumulated damp heat in the spleen and stomach.	唇风	chún fēng	驴嘴风
2156	Lip ulcer		Characterized by presence of outgrowths, oozing, scabbing and thickening in the lips. Over time, everted lower lip, skin peeling and distending pain may occur. Often occurs when damp heat of the spleen and stomach ascends to the lips.	茧唇	jiǎn chún	唇癌

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2157	Tongue ulceration		Characterized by localized redness, swelling and pain with a burning sensation. Alternatively, discharge of pus, fever, thirst and constipation may be present. It is often caused by ascending of heart fire or stomach fire, or deficiency fire scorching the tongue.	舌痛	shé yōng	
2158	Lotus tongue	Sublinguitis	Characterized by sublingual swelling in red or purple colour (resemble the shape of a lotus). It is often caused by heat accumulating in the heart and spleen, deficiency fire scorching the tongue or retention of damp heat and blood stasis in the tongue.	重舌	chóng shé	莲花舌
2159	Tongue-tie	Ankyloglossia	Characterized by tongue stiffness that affects eating or speaking. Often occurs when an unusually short, thick lingual frenulum decreases the mobility of the tongue tip.	结舌	jié shé	连舌; 绊舌
2160	Sublingual cysts		Characterized by presence of round, smooth and flexible cysts inside the oral cavity or under the tongue. They are often caused by retained phlegm dampness.	口舌痰包	kǒu shé tán bāo	舌下痰包
2161	Neoplasms and carcinomas		A group of disorders involving abnormal retention of qi, blood and toxic phlegm within the zang-fu organs or other parts of the body that cause gradual debility. They include benign and malignant tumours.	瘤癌病类	liú ái bìng lèi	
2162	Abdominal masses		Tangible or intangible abdominal masses that can cause abdominal distension and pain. Contributing factors include emotional disturbance, stagnation of qi and blood, food retention, or qi deficiency coupled with external contraction of pathogenic factors.	积聚类病	jī jù lèi bìng	癥瘕; 积聚; 痞癖
2163	Tangible masses	Zheng masses	Masses that are immobile and can cause abdominal distension and pain in fixed positions. They often result from blood stasis. Contributing factors may include parasitic worms, food retention, dry faeces or phlegm retention.	积病	jī bìng	癥积

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2164	Intangible masses	Jia masses	Masses that are mobile and can cause migratory pain. They often result from qi stagnation. Contributing factors may include emotional disturbance, an improper diet or irregular lifestyle.	聚病	jù bìng	瘕病
2165	Masses in the upper abdomen	Masses accumulating below the cardiac region (Crohn's disease or regional enteritis)	Masses in the upper abdomen can cause abdominal pain and diarrhoea with stools containing pus and blood. They often result from accumulation of foul turbidity and stagnant qi and blood.	伏梁	fú liáng	伏梁气;伏梁积气;心积伏梁
2166	Masses in the liver		Masses in the liver (right subcostal region) can cause abdominal distension, bulging and bleeding. They often result from accumulation of stagnant blood due to malaria, schistosomiasis, etc.	肥气	féi qì	肝积
2167	Masses in the spleen		Masses in the spleen manifest as raised lumps in the gastric region. They often result from spleen deficiency coupled with qi stagnation.	痞气	pǐ qì	脾积气;脾积痞气
2168	Stomach masses due to food retention		Characterized by palpable lumps in the gastric region, abdominal pain and vomiting. Often results from food retention and failure of stomach qi to descend. Contributing factors may include general weakness, over-exertion, abdominal surgery, binge eating or abdominal masses.	食瘕	shí jiǎ	
2169	Masses in the lung	Rushing respiration	Characterized by rapid, rushing breathing and masses in the right subcostal region. Associated symptoms may include fever, chills, chest tightness, hiccups and coughing with expectoration of pus and blood. They often result from dysfunctions of the zang-fu organs or stagnation of qi and blood. They can also be triggered by exogenous pathogenic factors.	肺积	fèi jī	息贲
2170	Running piglet	Running piglet qi; ascending of yin cold qi from the kidney	Characterized by qi rushing up from the lower abdomen to the chest and throat. Panic, abdominal pain or alternating chills and fever may also be present. Often results from ascending of yin cold qi from the kidney, fear/fright or ascending of liver qi along the meridian pathway.	奔豚	bēn tún	贲豚;贲豚气;肾积气



WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2171	Neoplasms		Any abnormal growths of tissue on the surface of the body or within internal organs. These include polyps, cysts or tumours and often result from stagnant blood, phlegm and turbid qi.	瘤类病	liú lèi bìng	
2172	Qi tumour		Characterized by single or multiple raised soft tumours that are indented upon pressure but bulging again when the pressure is released. The skin is either normal or with brown spots. They are often caused by over-exertion consuming lung qi or phlegm qi stagnation due to exposure to pathogenic factors.	气瘤	qì liú	
2173	Blood tumour	Paediatric haemangioma	Characterized by a rubbery, bright red or dark purple soft nodule of extra blood vessels in the skin in neonates. It is often caused by hyperactivity of fetal fire and disordered blood flow.	血瘤	xuè liú	
2174	Vascular naevi	Blood moles	Characterized by enlarged superficial blood vessels in bright red or dark red colour that do not blanch on applying pressure. They are of variable size and have a smooth surface. Naevi are often caused by prolonged liver qi stagnation or blood heat.	血痣	xuè zhì	
2175	Fleshy tumour		Characterized by soft subcutaneous lumps with no skin discolouration or tenderness. Often caused by phlegm and qi retention due to improper diet damaging the spleen.	肉瘤	ròu liú	
2176	Sinew tumour		Characterized by varicose veins that resemble earthworms, usually in the lower leg. The dilated veins often occur when standing for a long period of time causes qi and blood to stagnate or when anger damages the liver and liver fire consumes blood.	筋瘤	jīn liú	
2177	Joint tumour		A condition characterized by round, smooth, hard cysts around the finger/wrist joints or tendons. They are often caused by phlegm and fluid retention.	胶瘤	jiāo liú	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2178	Skin tumour		A condition characterized by round, soft tumours on the skin that may discharge powder-like stuff upon rupture. They are often caused by retention of phlegm and qi in the skin.	脂瘤	zhī liú	粉瘤
2179	Cystic tumour		Characterized by cystic tumours in the skin that may contain powder-like stuff or hair growth. They are often caused by fetal heat and retention of stagnant blood or turbid phlegm in the skin.	发瘤	fā liú	
2180	Nasal cavity haemangioma		Characterized by red, flat haemangioma inside the nasal cavity that may cause recurrent bleeding from the nose. It can be congenital or acquired through damage to the nasal cavity.	鼻血瘤	bí xuè liú	
2181	Stony masses	Uterine fibroids	A condition that may cause earlier period, prolonged period, and heavy menstrual volume. In severe cases, individual may have solid, bulky masses that can enlarge the uterus. They often occur as a result of stagnation of qi and blood.	石瘕	shí jiǎ	
2182	Ovarian cysts		Soft, round and smooth lumps that generally do not affect menstruation. They often result from retention of stagnant blood and turbid phlegm.	肠覃	cháng tán	
2183	Rocky mass	Carcinoma Cancer	Any solid lumps on the body surface, internal organs and tissues that look and feel like rocks, coupled with obstruction, pain, bleeding, rapid weight loss as well as positive findings of tumour markers, gene detection or biopsy. Contributing factors may include irregular lifestyle, emotional stagnation, family history, contaminated food or environment or chronic inflammation. These factors may cause qi and blood to stagnate and intertwine with toxic phlegm.	岩类病	yán lèi bìng	癌症;岩病
2184	Squamous cell carcinoma		Characterized by rapid growth of pterygium and persistent bleeding upon rupture. It is often caused by liver deficiency and blood dryness, and over time, build up of toxins under the skin.	翻花疮	fān huā chuāng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2185	Stony gangrene		Characterized by solid, persistent lumps on the skin with presence or absence of dull pain. Often results from chronic accumulation of phlegm and damp heat as well as stagnation of qi and blood.	石疽	shí jū	
2186	Upper hard nodules		Characterized by solid, painless, and smooth-surfaced nodules behind the ear or in the neck.	上石疽	shàng shí jū	
2187	Middle hard nodules		Characterized by solid nodules on one side of the groin. Pain occurs on hip flexion.	中石疽	zhōng shí jū	
2188	Lower hard nodules		Characterized by nodules in the knee that causes dull pain and delayed pus formation.	下石疽	xià shí jū	
2189	Malignant nodule		Characterized by painless scrofula lumps, coupled with fever and weight loss. Often results from qi stagnation, essential qi deficiency or retention of cancer toxin and phlegm stasis in the surface of the body.	恶核	è hé	
2190	Cervical malignancy with cachexia		This refers to advanced malignant tumour of the cervical lymph node, either primary or metastatic. During the early stage, individuals may present with deep-rooted, solid, immobile nodules in the cervical area or behind the ear, without skin discolouration. Over time, the nodules increased with mild pain and dark purple skin discolouration, flat or sunken lesion with a rough surface resembling a cauliflower, coupled with pain and discharge of strong-odoured pus and blood. Associated symptoms may include restlessness, weight loss and haggardness. Often occurs when phlegm fire stagnates in the cervical area. The phlegm results from worry or anxiety damaging the spleen. The fire is transformed from liver qi stagnation.	失荣	shī róng	
2191	Stony goitre (thyroid cancer)		Characterized by solid, rock-like, immobile and irregular lumps in front of the neck. Often results from qi stagnation of the liver and spleen and intertwined stasis and phlegm over a long period of time.	石瘿	shí yǐng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2192	Eczematous carcinoma of nipple		Characterized by nipple ulceration or oozing. Alternatively, necrosis of the nipple with intolerable pain may occur. It is often caused by liver qi stagnation transforming into fire and accumulation of damp heat. The symptoms usually affect the nipple and then spread to the areola and then the breast. It is common for the symptoms to wax and wane.	乳疔	rǔ gān	
2193	Rocky mass in the breast	Breast cancer	Characterized by solid, immobile breast lumps, coupled with skin changes on the breast with quality resembling the peel of an orange, followed by discharge of pus and blood, increased pain and weight loss. Often results from emotional disturbance, disharmony between the Chong and Ren meridians and qi stagnation intertwined with phlegm stasis.	乳岩	rǔ yán	乳癌
2194	Testicular cancer		Characterized by solid, rough-surfaced lumps in the testicle, which may or may not cause pain. The lump may grow rapidly and become attached to the scrotum. It is often caused by undescended testis, inflammation or retention of stagnant blood or turbid phlegm in the testicle.	子岩	zǐ yán	子癌
2195	Penile cancer		Characterized by papulae or solid nodules on the skin or in the tissues of the penis, accompanied by foul smelling discharge from the penis. It is often caused by constitutional deficiency of the liver and kidney, exuberant ministerial fire due to worry or anger, blood dryness in liver meridian and stagnant pathogenic fire.	肾岩翻花	shèn yán fān huā	肾癌翻花; 阴茎癌
2196	Symptoms for provisional diagnosis		Common signs and symptoms that can be used for provisional diagnosis.	临时诊断用症候术语	lín shí zhěn duàn yòng zhèng hòu shù yǔ	
2197	Fever		Having a temperature above the normal range or a subjective feverish sensation. Contributing factors may include exogenous pathogenic factors, pestilence, emotions or over-exertion. It is often seen in externally contracted conditions, sores/ulcers, consumptive conditions, or heat in the zang-fu organs.	发热	fā rè	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2198	Convulsion		Uncontrolled shaking of the limbs, mouth corner or head. Contributing factors may include internal exuberance of toxic heat, stirring of wind yang, toxic wind affecting the meridians, or consumption of yin blood. It is often seen in late-stage exogenous diseases, exhaustion of Yuan-primordial qi, epileptic seizures, infantile convulsions, poisoning or accidental injuries.	抽搐	chōu chù	
2199	Headache		A subjective feeling of pain in the region of the head. Contributing factors may include contraction of wind, cold, damp or heat, emotions, ascending of wind yang and toxic heat, turbid phlegm or stagnant blood impairing the flow of meridian qi and blood, or malnourishment of the brain due to deficiency of qi, blood, Ying nutrients and essence. It is often seen in head wind, migraine, hemilateral head wind, facial wind and pain, cerebral arteriosclerosis, brain tumour, ear, nose and throat problems, exogenous diseases or other systemic conditions.	头痛	tóu tòng	
2200	Vertigo		Subjective dizziness, blurred vision and feeling like a spinning or swaying movement. Contributing factors may include failure of qi, blood and essence to nourish the head, wind phlegm or fire heat disturbing the head or stagnant blood obstructing clear yang. It is commonly seen in wind dizziness, cerebral arteriosclerosis, deficiency dizziness, aural vertigo, pregnancy dizziness, eclampsia, postpartum blood dizziness, motion sickness, cerebral atrophy or mental over-exertion. It may also be secondary to head trauma, neck pain, drug poisoning, brain tumour or ear, nose and throat conditions.	眩晕	xuàn yūn	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2201	Unconsciousness	Loss of consciousness	An inability to maintain an awareness of self and environment coupled with a complete (or near-complete) lack of responsiveness to people and other environmental stimuli. Contributing factors may include phlegm turbidity, toxic heat, traumatic injuries, disorder of qi and blood, exhaustion of yin and yang, or other intense stimuli. It is often seen in terminal stage of exogenous diseases or late-stage endogenous diseases.	昏迷	hūn mí	神昏
2202	Insomnia		Prolonged inability to get sufficient sleep. Contributing factors may include over-thinking, deficiency of qi and blood, liver qi stagnation, internal fire heat, or retention of turbid phlegm. These factors may cause disharmony between yin and yang and subsequently, mental restlessness. It is often seen in sleeplessness, neurasthenia, depression, mania, hysteria and/or some systemic conditions.	失眠	shī mián	
2203	Forgetfulness		A noticeable memory decrease that does not conform to age-related effects. Often results from deficiency of the heart and spleen, disharmony between the heart and kidney, ageing, or phlegm stasis affecting the heart mind. It is commonly seen in mental over-exertion, cerebral atrophy, insomnia, emotional disorder, dementia, head trauma or poisoning.	健忘	jiàn wàng	
2204	Somnolence		Prolonged night time sleep and excessive daytime sleepiness. Contributing factors may include yang qi deficiency or internal retention of phlegm dampness/stagnant blood. It is often a warning sign of unconsciousness in exogenous diseases and commonly seen in hypersomnia, dementia, obesity, head injuries, poisoning, or consumptive conditions.	嗜睡	shì shuì	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2205	Eye blindness		Severe impairment or loss of eyesight. Contributing factors may include stagnation of qi and blood, ascending of phlegm heat, hyperactivity of liver fire, or malnourishment of the eyes due to yin blood deficiency of the liver and kidney. It is often seen in cataract or emotional disturbance.	目盲	mù máng	
2206	Tinnitus		The perception of sound/noise when no external sound is present. Often results from yin blood deficiency, kidney essence insufficiency, spleen qi sinking or wind phlegm/phlegm fire disturbing the ear. It is commonly seen in ear problems or other systemic conditions that may affect the hearing.	耳鸣	ěr míng	
2207	Deafness		Hearing loss in one or both ears (also known as severe hearing impairment). Often results from internal phlegm fire, deficiency of qi and blood, trauma or drug side-effects/poisoning. It is commonly seen in ear problems or other systemic conditions that may affect the hearing.	耳聋	ěr lóng	
2208	Nosebleed		The occurrence of bleeding from the nose. Contributing factors may include nasal problems, trauma, ascending of fire heat along the lung, stomach and liver meridians, or spleen deficiency. It is often seen in nasal trauma, bleeding disorders, measles, erysipelas, scarlet fever, flu, dizziness, aplastic anaemia, tympanites or severe headache due to ascending of kidney qi.	鼻衄	bí nù	
2209	Toothache		Pain in the teeth and/or gum. Contributing factors may include exogenous wind, ascending of stomach fire, deficiency fire due to kidney deficiency, spleen qi deficiency, or tooth erosion. It is often seen in dental caries, gingival abscess, pericoronitis of wisdom tooth, or maxillary osteomyelitis.	牙痛	yá tòng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2210	Gum bleeding		The occurrence of bleeding from the gum. Contributing factors may include heat accumulating in the stomach meridian, fire hyperactivity due to yin deficiency, or deficiency of the heart and spleen. It is often seen in periodontal atrophy, purpura, aplastic anaemia, liver masses, bleeding disorders, or epidemic haemorrhagic fever.	齿衄	chǐ nù	牙衄
2211	Loss of voice		The occurrence of hoarseness or an inability to make sounds. Contributing factors may include wind cold or wind heat (toxic fire) affecting the throat, dry heat consuming the lung fluids, internal phlegm heat due to over-eating of oily, sweet food, essential qi deficiency due to chronic diseases, or liver qi stagnation. It is often seen in hoarseness, tuberculosis of the throat, qi exhaustion, throat polyps, diphtheria, or loss of voice in pregnancy.	失音	shī yīn	
2212	Expectoration of blood		The expectoration of blood from the throat or along the respiratory tract below the throat. Contributing factors may include fire hyperactivity due to yin deficiency, ascending of heart fire, or pathogenic heat accumulating in the lung. It is often seen in pharyngitis or lung diseases.	咯血	kǎ xiě	
2213	Cough		The noisy expulsion of “cough” sound from the lungs. Contributing factors may include six exogenous pathogenic factors six exogenous pathogenic factors affecting the lung, exposure to irritant gas, phlegm fluid retention in the lung, or deficiency of qi and yin. These factors may cause lung qi to ascend. It is often seen in early-stage exogenous diseases, lung diseases, or conditions of other zang-fu organs that affect the lung.	咳嗽	ké sou	



WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2214	Panting	Rapid breathing	The occurrence of difficulty or rapid breathing. Contributing factors may include exogenous wind cold or wind heat affecting the lung, exuberant pathogenic heat affecting the lung, phlegm-fluid retention in the lung, or qi deficiency of the lung and kidney. It is often seen in exogenous diseases, lung diseases, heart diseases, disorders of the throat or thoracic cage, debilitation, qi collapse, or abdominal tumour/fluid.	气喘	qì chuǎn	喘促
2215	Haemoptysis		The coughing up of blood from the bronchi or lungs. Contributing factors may include traumatic injuries, exogenous pathogenic factors affecting the lung, liver fire affecting the lung, fire hyperactivity due to yin deficiency, or qi failing to keep blood with the vessels. It is often seen in pulmonary tuberculosis, lung cancer or emphysema. It may also occur as a result of bleeding disorders, epidemic haemorrhagic fever or heart failure.	咳血	ké xiě	
2216	Chest pain		A subjective feeling of pain in the chest area, including cardiac/chest pain or pain in the subcostal region. Contributing factors may include chest injury, internal fire heat, phlegm-fluid retention, or stagnation of qi and blood. It is often seen in chest injury, pneumothorax, lung abscess, lung heat, pleural effusion, whooping cough, lung cancer or cardiac pain in chest bi-impediment.	胸痛	xiōng tòng	
2217	Palpitations		Unpleasant, involuntary sensations of rapid, irregular and/or forceful beating of the heart. Often results from failure of qi and blood to nourish the heart, emotions, exogenous pathogens affecting the heart or phlegm stasis obstructing the heart vessels. It is commonly seen in heart impediment, heart heat, lung conditions, emotional disorders, chronic debility, or thyroid problems.	心悸	xīn jì	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2218	Cardiac pain		A subjective feeling of pain around the Danzhong point (Ren 17) and on the left side of the chest. Contributing factors may include internal phlegm turbidity and stagnant blood, cold retention due to yang deficiency, or yin blood deficiency. It is often seen in cardiac pain in chest bi-impediment, angina pectoris, heart bi-impediment, or heart heat.	心痛	xīn tòng	
2219	Vomiting		The involuntary, forceful expulsion of the contents of the stomach through the mouth. Contributing factors may include exogenous/endogenous diseases, head injury, pregnancy and drug poisoning. These factors may affect the descending of stomach qi. It is often seen in gastrointestinal diseases, disorders of the liver, gallbladder and pancreas, motion sickness, morning sickness, intracranial lesion, qi exhaustion, or drug poisoning.	呕吐	ǒu tù	
2220	Retching		The reverse movement of the stomach and oesophagus without vomiting of food. Often results from failure of stomach qi to descend due to stomach deficiency or liver qi stagnation.	干呕	gān ǒu	
2221	Projectile vomiting		The occurrence of sudden, severe involuntary expulsion of food, phlegm or bile through the mouth. Contributing factors may include binge eating, pestilence or food/drug poisoning. These factors may cause fulminant ascending of stomach qi.	暴吐	bào tù	
2222	Vomiting of blood	haematemesis	The bleeding from the upper gastrointestinal tract (stomach or oesophagus) out of the mouth. Contributing factors may include heat accumulating in the liver and stomach, spleen qi deficiency or stagnant blood. These factors may affect the descending of stomach qi. It is often seen in stomach heat, stomach ulcer, typanites, bleeding disorders, epidemic haemorrhagic fever, kidney failure, stomach or liver cancer.	呕血	ǒu xuè	吐血

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2223	Stomach ache	Gastric pain	A subjective pain in the upper abdominal below the xiphoid process. Often results from failure to stomach qi to descend due to cold/heat, improper diet, deficiency of qi, blood, yin and yang, and stagnation of qi and blood. It is commonly seen in stomach problems or problems of the intestines, pancreas, gallbladder, liver and spleen. It may also be seen in severe cardiac pain.	胃痛	wèi tòng	胃脘痛; 脘痛
2224	Gastric upset		A subjective feeling of stomach emptiness, the sensation of fullness after a very small amount of food, abdominal distension or unexplained discomfort. Often results from an improper diet, stomach cold, stomach heat, yin blood deficiency or disharmony between the liver and stomach. It is commonly seen in problems of stomach, oesophagus, gallbladder or pancreas.	嘈杂	cáo zá	
2225	Pain in the subcostal region		Pain on one or both sides of the subcostal region often results from qi stagnation or bile accumulation. It is commonly seen in liver cancer, liver abscess, liver heat, liver distension, ascites, gallbladder heat, gallbladder distension, pleural effusion, masses below the left subcostal region or fibrinous pleurisy.	胁痛	xié tòng	胁肋痛
2226	Acid regurgitation	Acid reflux	The swallowing of acid contents regurgitated from the stomach to the throat or vomiting out of the mouth. It is often accompanied by stomach discomfort and belching. Contributing factors may include liver qi stagnation, stomach qi disharmony, liver fire affecting the stomach, food stagnation in the spleen and stomach, or ascending of fluid due to deficiency cold of the spleen and stomach. It is often seen in improper diet, oesophageal heat, stomach ulcer or stomach distension.	吐酸	tǔ suān	吞酸; 泛酸; 噯酸
2227	Abdominal pain		Pain that occurs between the chest and pelvic regions. It can be acute or chronic, often resulting from external contraction of six pathogenic factors, parasitic worms, improper diet, stones obstructing the flow of qi and blood or deficiency of qi and blood.	腹痛	fù tòng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2228	Ascites		Abnormal build up of fluid in the abdomen. Contributing factors may include qi stagnation, blood stasis, spleen deficiency, or internal accumulation of damp heat. It is often seen in tympanites, masses or tuberculosis.	腹水	fù shuǐ	
2229	Constipation		Less than two bowel movements per week or difficulty passing hard stools. Often results from heat accumulating in the stomach and intestines, cold retention due to yang deficiency, deficiency of qi, blood and yin fluids or abdominal masses. It is commonly seen in intestinal disorders, anal lesions, muscle flaccidity, post-stroke hemiplegia, Parkinson's disease, parenteral lump compression, overuse of dry, warm or astringent medicines, abdominal surgery, the aged or general debilitation.	便秘	biàn mì	
2230	Bloody stools	Haematochezia	The passage of fresh blood through the anus, usually in or with stools. Alternatively, individuals may have black "tarry" faeces or expulsion of fresh bright red blood without stools. Contributing factors may include qi deficiency of the spleen and stomach, damp heat accumulating in the stomach and intestines, or stagnation of qi and blood in the stomach and intestines. It is often seen in anal disorders, gastrointestinal diseases, epidemic haemorrhagic fever, bleeding disorders, ancylostomiasis, schistosomiasis or food/drug poisoning.	便血	biàn xiě	
2231	Lower back pain		Pain on one or both sides of the lumbar vertebrae. Often results from kidney problems, low back trauma/strain or cold damp/damp heat affecting the lumbar region. It is commonly seen in kidney diseases, impediment, strangury, gynaecological conditions, acute lumbar sprain or sciatica.	腰痛	yāo tòng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2232	Bloody urine	Haematuria	The brown or red discolouration of the urine. Contributing factors may include damp heat in the urinary bladder, fire hyperactivity due to yin deficiency, exuberance of heart fire, pestilence or toxic drug damaging the kidney and urinary bladder. It is often seen in stony stranguria, heat stranguria, pregnancy strangury, kidney heat, renal tuberculosis, kidney/bladder cancer, blood disorders, or contagious diseases.	尿血	niào xiě	
2233	Cloudy urine		Turbid, white urine (like rice-washed water). Often results from downward flow of damp heat or deficiency of the spleen and kidney. It is commonly seen in filariasis, renal tuberculosis, chronic prostatitis, kidney cancer, and chest or abdominal trauma or surgeries. It may also be seen in children with external contraction of pathogenic factors or internal dysfunctions.	尿浊	niào zhuó	
2234	Joint pain		A subjective feeling of pain in the joints. Contributing factors may include traumatic injuries or wind, cold, damp or heat impairing the flow of meridian qi. It is often seen in joint subluxation, bone injury, bi-impediment, or osteoarticular tuberculosis.	关节痛	guān jié tòng	
2235	Paralysis		Muscle flaccidity or disuse of the limbs. Contributing factors may include cold, dampness, toxic heat or stasis obstructing the meridians, malnourishment of the muscles or sinews due to essence-blood deficiency, intracranial lesion or impaired flow of meridian qi. It is often seen in stroke, hemiplegia, qi collapse, brain tumour, polio, muscular atrophy, athlete's foot, foot weakness, limb weakness, cranial or spinal injury, or surgical wound.	瘫痪	tān huàn	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2236	Tremor		Involuntary shaking of the hand, feet or head. Contributing factors may include malnourishment of the muscles or sinews due to insufficiency of liver blood and kidney essence and deficiency of qi and yin, internal stirring of deficiency wind, or wind phlegm obstructing the meridians. It is often seen in Parkinson's disease, brain atrophy, or qi collapse.	震颤	zhèn chàn	
2237	Skin eruptions		Raised red or white spots on the skin. It is often caused by wind heat, wind dampness or pestilence. It can be seen in urticaria, measles, roseola infantum, eczema, dermatitis medicamentosa, sweat rash, scabies, pigmented purpuric lichenoid dermatitis, pityriasis rosea, skin rashes during menstruation/pregnancy, or scarlet fever.	出疹	chū zhěn	
2238	Pruritus	Skin itch	A sensation that causes the desire or reflex to scratch. It is often caused by exposure to pathogenic wind, blood heat or blood deficiency. It can be seen in disorders of the skin and mucous membrane or food/drug allergy	瘙痒	sào yǎng	皮肤瘙痒
2239	2.6 Body constitution		Relatively stable structural, physiological and psychological characteristics of a human individual.	2.6 体质		
2240	Taiyang personality		According to the classification of yin and yang personality in Huangdi Neijing, an individual with a Taiyang personality shows more yang characteristics.	太阳人	tài yáng rén	
2241	Shaoyang personality		According to the classification of yin and yang personality in Huangdi Neijing, an individual with a Shaoyang personality shows less yang characteristics.	少阳人	shào yáng rén	
2242	Taiyin personality		According to the classification of yin and yang personality in Huangdi Neijing, an individual with a Taiyin personality shows more yin characteristics.	太阴人	tài yīn rén	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2243	Shaoyin personality		According to the classification of yin and yang personality in Huangdi Neijing, an individual with a Shaoyin personality shows less yin characteristics.	少阴人	shào yīn rén	
2244	Yin-yang harmony personality		According to the classification of yin and yang personality in Huangdi Neijing, an individual with a yin-yang harmony personality shows balanced yin and yang.	阴阳平和人	yīn yáng píng hé rén	
2245	Wood personality		According to the classification of five-element personality in Huangdi Neijing, an individual with a wood personality shows more characteristics of wood.	木形人	mù xíng rén	
2246	Fire personality		According to the classification of five-element personality in Huangdi Neijing, an individual with a fire personality shows more characteristics of fire.	火形人	huǒ xíng rén	
2247	Metal personality		According to the classification of five-element personality in Huangdi Neijing, an individual with a metal personality shows more characteristics of metal.	金形人	jīn xíng rén	
2248	Earth personality		According to the classification of five-element personality in Huangdi Neijing, an individual with an earth personality shows more characteristics of earth.	土形人	tǔ xíng rén	
2249	Water personality		According to the classification of five-element personality in Huangdi Neijing, an individual with a water personality shows more characteristics of water.	水形人	shuǐ xíng rén	





# 3 Treatment principles/methods and therapies

## 三、治则、治法与疗法

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2250	3 Treatment principles/methods and therapies			三、治则、治法与疗法		
2251	3.1 Treatment principles			3.1 治则		
2252	Treat the tip first in acute conditions		A principle to address symptoms in acute conditions, for example, it is important to stop bleeding for heavy blood loss, to arrest diarrhoea for fulminant diarrhoea, alleviate pain for severe, intense pain and promote urination for urine retention.	急则治标	jí zé zhì biāo	
2253	Treat the root in remissive stages		A principle to regulate and reinforce the body to address the root cause when medical conditions become stable.	缓则治本	huǎn zé zhì běn	
2254	Treat both the tip and root		A principle to address both symptoms and root cause simultaneously when needed.	标本兼治	biāo běn jiān zhì	标本同治
2255	Treat according to time		A principle to use an appropriate method and medicine according to seasonal climate changes.	因时制宜	yīn shí zhì yí	
2256	Treat according to place		A principle to use an appropriate method and medicine according to geographic features.	因地制宜	yīn dì zhì yí	
2257	Treat according to person		A principle to use an appropriate method and medicine according to individual gender, age and constitution.	因人制宜	yīn rén zhì yí	
2258	Reinforce healthy qi to eliminate pathogenic factors		A principle to reinforce anti-pathogenic qi to drive out the invading pathogenic factors. It is indicated for deficiency of anti-pathogenic qi coupled with exposure to pathogenic factors.	扶正祛邪	fú zhèng qū xié	扶正达邪

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2259	Reinforce healthy qi to strengthen the body		A principle to reinforce anti-pathogenic qi to speed up recovery. It is indicated for deficiency of anti-pathogenic qi.	扶正固本	fú zhèng gù běn	扶正培本
2260	Eliminate pathogenic factors and reinforce healthy qi		A principle to drive out the invading pathogenic factors, supplemented by reinforcing anti-pathogenic qi. It is indicated for excessive pathogenic factors with insufficiency of anti-pathogenic qi.	祛邪扶正	qū xié fú zhèng	祛邪安正
2261	Reinforce healthy qi and remove pathogenic factors simultaneously		A principle to reinforce anti-pathogenic qi and, at the same time, remove pathogenic factors. It is indicated for excessive pathogenic factors coupled with deficiency of healthy qi.	攻补兼施	gōng bǔ jiān shī	
2262	Remove pathogenic factors before reinforcing healthy qi		A principle to remove the invading pathogenic factors, followed by reinforcing anti-pathogenic qi. It is indicated for deficiency of healthy qi coupled with acute conditions that require immediate removal of pathogenic factors.	先攻后补	xiān gōng hòu bǔ	
2263	Reinforce healthy qi before removing pathogenic factors		A principle to reinforce healthy qi, followed by removing the invading pathogenic factors. It is indicated for acute conditions that require immediate removal of pathogenic factors coupled with deficiency of healthy qi.	先补后攻	xiān bǔ hòu gōng	
2264	Routine treatment	Standard treatment	A principle to use medicines opposite in nature to the disease, for example, to treat heat pattern with medicines cold in nature, treat cold pattern with medicine hot in nature, treat excess pattern with purgative/reducing medicines and treat deficiency pattern with tonic medicines.	正治法	zhèng zhì fǎ	逆治法
2265	Treat cold with heat	Cold treated with warm	A principle to treat cold conditions with medicines or formulas that are warm or hot in nature.	寒者热之	hán zhě rè zhī	
2266	Treat heat with cold	Heat treated with cold	A principle to treat heat conditions with medicines or formulas that are cool or cold in nature.	热者寒之	rè zhě hán zhī	
2267	Treat deficiency with reinforcement		A principle to treat deficiency conditions with tonic medicines or formulas.	虚则补之	xū zé bǔ zhī	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2268	Treat excess with purgation/reduction		A principle to treat excess conditions with medicines or formulas that are purgative or reducing in nature.	实则泻之	shí zé xiè zhī	
2269	Paradoxical treatment	Contrary treatment	A principle to address false signs or symptoms in extreme conditions such as extreme cold or heat. Under such conditions, it is necessary to use medicines similar in nature to the disease (i.e. follow the false symptoms), for example, to treat false heat with heat or treat false cold with cold.	反治法	fǎn zhì fǎ	从治法
2270	Treat false cold with cold	Cold treated with cold	A principle to treat false cold (true heat) symptoms with medicines cool or cold in nature.	寒因寒用	hán yīn hán yòng	
2271	Treat false heat with heat	Heat treated with warm	A principle to treat false heat (true cold) symptoms with medicines warm or hot in nature.	热因热用	rè yīn rè yòng	
2272	Treat uncontrolled discharge by unblocking	Uncontrolled discharge treated with purgation	A principle to treat food stagnation-related vomiting and diarrhoea or uterine bleeding due to blood stasis with purgative or stasis-unblocking medicines or formulas.	通因通用	tōng yīn tōng yòng	
2273	Regulate and balance yin and yang		A principle to restore yin-yang equilibrium through medicines, food, emotions or reinforcing/reducing needling techniques.	调理阴阳	tiáo lǐ yīn yáng	调平阴阳;调整阴阳
2274	Seeking yang from yin		This is originally a needling method to puncture yin meridians for problems of yang meridians. Later, this method has been developed into a treatment principle based on interdependence between yin and yang: to add some yin-nourishing medicines to yang-reinforcing formulas to assist the transformation of yang qi.	从阴引阳	cóng yīn yǐn yáng	阴中求阳
2275	Seeking yin from yang		This is originally a needling method to puncture yang meridians for problems of yin meridians. Later, this method has been developed into a principle based on interdependence between yin and yang: to add some yang-reinforcing medicines to yin-nourishing formulas to assist the generation of yin qi.	从阳引阴	cóng yáng yǐn yīn	阳中求阴

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2276	Reinforce the mother (element) for deficiency pattern		A principle to treat deficiency of zang–fu organs based on the five-element theory. For example, since (spleen) earth promotes (lung) metal, lung deficiency can be treated by reinforcing the spleen and stomach.	虚者补其母	xū zhě bǔ qí mǔ	虚则补其母
2277	Reduce the son (element) for excess pattern		A principle to treat excess of zang–fu organs based on the five-element theory. For example, since (heart) fire promotes (spleen earth), hyperactivity of heart fire can be treated by reducing the spleen and stomach.	实者泻其子	shí zhě xiè qí zǐ	实则泻其子
2278	Same treatment for different diseases		A principle to use same treatment for different diseases that share the same pathogenesis.	异病同治	yì bìng tóng zhì	
2279	Different treatments for same disease		A principle to use different treatments for the same disease caused by different etiological factors; or a principle to treat the same disease according to differences in individuality, time, geographic features, disease severity, differentiated patterns, and ongoing struggle between anti-pathogenic qi and pathogenic factors.	同病异治	tóng bìng yì zhì	
2280	Treat the exterior before the interior		A principle to treat an exterior pattern before an interior pattern. It applies to a severe exterior pattern but mild interior pattern in concurrent exterior and interior pattern. This principle aims to prevent pathogenic factors in the exterior from entering the interior.	先表后里	xiān biǎo hòu lǐ	
2281	3.2 Treatment methods			3.2 治法		
2282	Exterior-releasing methods		Methods to release the exterior	解表法	jiě biǎo fǎ	发表法
2283	Release the exterior with pungent-warm	Promote sweating with pungent-warm  Release the exterior and dissipate cold	A treatment method to remove wind and dissipate cold with pungent, warm medicines or formulas. It is indicated for wind cold exterior pattern.	辛温解表	xīn wēn jiě biǎo	辛温发汗;发表散寒

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2284	Release the exterior with pungent-cool	Remove wind and clear heat	A treatment method to remove wind and clear heat with pungent, cool medicines or formulas. It is indicated for wind heat exterior pattern.	辛凉解表	xīn liáng jiě biǎo	辛凉透表; 疏散风热
2285	Clear heat with pungent-cool	Release the exterior and clear heat	A treatment method to clear heat in the exterior. It is indicated for patterns involving both the Wei-defence and qi phases.	辛凉清热	xīn liáng qīng rè	解表清热
2286	Remove pathogenic factors and release the exterior	Remove pathogenic factors in the exterior	A method to remove pathogenic factors in the exterior. It is indicated for excess exterior pattern.	疏邪解表	shū xié jiě biǎo	疏邪透表
2287	Remove wind and promote skin eruption	Release the exterior and promote skin eruption	A treatment method to remove wind and promote skin eruption through formulas or external therapies. It is often indicated for measles or rubella.	疏风透疹	shū fēng tòu zhěn	解表透疹
2288	Release the exterior and unblock meridians		A treatment method to remove pathogenic factors in the exterior and unblock meridian qi through formulas, tuina or external therapies. It is indicated for external pathogenic factors impairing the meridian qi.	解表通经	jiě biǎo tōng jīng	
2289	Release the exterior and disperse the lung		A treatment method to remove pathogenic factors in the exterior and disperse lung qi. It is indicated for wind warmth or wind cold attacking the lung.	解表宣肺	jiě biǎo xuān fèi	
2290	Regulate and harmonize the Ying nutrients and Wei-defence		A treatment method to coordinate between Ying nutrients and Wei-defence through removing wind and nourishing yin. It is indicated for disorders due to disharmony between the Ying nutrients and Wei-defence.	调和营卫	tiáo hé yíng wèi	
2291	Eliminate dampness and release the exterior		A treatment method to remove pathogenic factors in the exterior and resolve dampness with aroma. It is indicated for wind dampness affecting the exterior.	祛湿解表	qū shī jiě biǎo	
2292	Regulate qi and release the exterior		A treatment method to release the exterior and regulate qi. It is indicated for pathogenic factors affecting the exterior coupled with qi stagnation.	理气解表	lǐ qì jiě biǎo	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2293	Reinforce healthy qi and release the exterior		A treatment method to release the exterior and reinforce the healthy qi. It is indicated for deficiency of qi, blood, yin and yang coupled with external pathogenic factors affecting the exterior.	扶正解表	fú zhèng jiě biǎo	
2294	Supplement qi and release the exterior		A treatment method to release the exterior and tonifyqi. It is indicated for exterior pattern coupled with qi deficiency.	益气解表	yì qì jiě biǎo	补气解表
2295	<b>Emetic methods</b>		<b>Treatment methods to irritate the throat with medicine or tools to induce vomiting. The purpose is to expel harmful substances out of the body.</b>	涌吐法	yǒng tǔ fǎ	
2296	Induce vomiting to eliminate phlegm and salivation		A treatment method to induce vomiting to eliminate phlegm. It is indicated for exuberant, turbid phlegm affecting the upper or middle jiao.	涌吐痰涎	yǒng tǔ tán xián	
2297	Induce vomiting to eliminate wind phlegm		A treatment method to induce vomiting to eliminate wind phlegm. It is indicated for wind phlegm affecting the upper part of the body.	涌吐风痰	yǒng tǔ fēng tán	
2298	Induce sweating to eliminate retained phlegm and food		A treatment method to induce vomiting to eliminate stagnant phlegm and food. It is indicated for phlegm intertwined with undigested food.	涌吐痰食	yǒng tǔ tán shí	
2299	Induce vomiting to eliminate food retention		A treatment method to induce vomiting to eliminate undigested food. It is indicated for food retention in the stomach.	涌吐宿食	yǒng tǔ sù shí	
2300	Induce vomiting to refresh the mind		A treatment method to induce vomiting to unblock and resuscitate. It is indicated for exuberant, turbid phlegm disturbing the heart mind.	开关涌吐	kāi guān yǒng tǔ	涌吐开关
2301	<b>Purgative methods</b>	<b>Interior purgation methods</b>	<b>Treatment methods to clear interior heat, retained water or stagnant blood.</b>	攻下法	gōng xià fǎ	攻里法

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2302	Clear heat and promote bowel movements	Fire-clearing purgation Purgation with bitter-cold Drastic purgation	A treatment method to clear heat, reduce fire and unblock the bowel. It is indicated for heat accumulating in the large intestine.	清热攻下	qīng rè gōng xià	泻火攻下;泻火通腑;泻火通便;清热通腑;清热通便;苦寒攻下;峻下热结
2303	Promote bowel movements and circulate qi	Congestion-clearing and qi-circulating purgation	A treatment method to combine purgative and qi-circulating medicines. It is indicated for conditions due to constipation due to heat and qi stagnation.	泻结行滞	xiè jié xíng zhì	
2304	Warm yang and dissipate cold		A treatment method to combine purgative, yang-warming and cold-dissipating medicines. It is indicated for conditions due to excessive cold retention.	温下实寒	wēn xià shí hán	
2305	Moisten dryness and promote bowel movements	Yin-nourishing purgation	A treatment method to combine purgative, fluid-generating and dryness-moistening medicines. It is indicated for constipation due to intestinal dryness or yin deficiency.	润燥通便	rùn zào tōng biàn	润肠通便;增液通下;滋阴通下
2306	Benefit qi and promote bowel movements	Supplement qi and promote bowel movements	A treatment method to supplement qi to promote bowel movements. It is indicated for constipation due to qi deficiency.	益气通下	yì qì tōng xià	益气通便
2307	Warm yang and promote bowel movements	Yang-warming purgation	A treatment method to combine purgative, yang-warming and cold-dissipating medicines. It is indicated for constipation due to (yang) deficiency cold.	温阳通便	wēn yáng tōng biàn	温阳通下
2308	Moisten the intestine and clear heat		A treatment method to combine purgative, ying-nourishing, dryness-moistening and heat-clearing medicines. It is indicated for conditions due to heat retention and intestinal dryness.	润肠泄热	rùn cháng xiè rè	
2309	Soften hardness and moisten dryness		A treatment method to use medicines to soften hardness and moisten dryness. It is indicated for conditions due to dryness resulting from fluid insufficiency.	软坚润燥	ruǎn jiān rùn zào	
2310	Promote bowel movements and expel water		A treatment method to use purgative medicines to resolve water retention. It is indicated for conditions due to internal retention of water fluid.	泻下逐水	xiè xià zhú shuǐ	攻下逐水;

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2311	Urgent purgation to preserve yin		A treatment method to conduct urgent purgation to preserve yin fluids. It is indicated for febrile disease with dry heat consuming yin fluids.	急下存阴	jí xià cún yīn	
2312	Methods to release both the exterior and interior	Methods to concurrently release both exterior and interior	Treatment methods to remove pathogenic factors in both the exterior and interior.	表里双解法	biǎo lǐ shuāng jiě fǎ	
2313	Release the exterior and purge the interior		A treatment method to combine purgative and exterior-releasing medicines. It is indicated for excess pattern involving both the exterior and interior.	解表攻里	jiě biǎo gōng lǐ	发表攻里;发表攻下;解表攻下
2314	Release the exterior and clear the interior		A treatment method to combine exterior-releasing and interior-clearing medicines. It is indicated for exterior-interior heat pattern or exterior cold with interior heat pattern.	解表清里	jiě biǎo qīng lǐ	
2315	Release the exterior and warm the interior	Induce sweating and warm the interior	A treatment method to use medicines to induce sweating, release the exterior, warm the interior and dissipate cold. It is indicated for exterior-interior cold pattern or exterior heat with interior cold pattern.	解表温里	jiě biǎo wēn lǐ	发汗温里
2316	Methods to harmonize and release		Treatment methods to harmonize and release pathogenic factors affecting Shaoyang or coordinate functions of the zang-fu organs.	和解法	hé jiě fǎ	
2317	Harmonize and release the exterior and interior		A treatment method to use medicines that are neutral in property to harmonize between the exterior and interior. It is indicated for mild conditions involving both the exterior and interior.	和解表里	hé jiě biǎo lǐ	
2318	Regulate and harmonize the liver and spleen	Harmonize between the liver and spleen	A treatment method to soothe the liver, fortify the spleen and regulate qi activity to harmonize between the liver and spleen. It is indicated for liver qi stagnation with spleen deficiency or liver hyperactivity with spleen deficiency.	调和肝脾	tiáo hé gān pí	调理肝脾



WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2319	Soothe the liver and harmonize the stomach		A treatment method to regulate qi activity of the liver and stomach to harmonize between the liver and stomach. It is indicated for conditions due to qi stagnation of the liver and stomach or disharmony between the liver and stomach.	疏肝和胃	shū gān hé wèi	
2320	Regulate and harmonize the stomach and intestines	Harmonize between the stomach and intestines	A treatment method to regulate qi activity of the stomach and intestines to harmonize between the stomach and intestines. It is indicated for conditions due to qi stagnation of the stomach and intestines.	调理肠胃	tiáo lǐ cháng wèi	调和肠胃
2321	Regulate and harmonize the spleen and stomach	Harmonize between the spleen and stomach	A treatment method to regulate qi activity of the spleen and stomach to harmonize between the spleen and stomach. It is indicated for conditions due to disharmony between the spleen and stomach.	调理脾胃	tiáo lǐ pí wèi	调和脾胃
2322	Regulate and harmonize qi and blood	Regulate qi and harmonize blood	A treatment method to use qi-regulating and blood-circulating formulas. It is indicated for conditions due to disharmony between qi and blood.	调和气血	tiáo hé qì xuè	调理气血;理气和血
2323	Regulate qi and harmonize the Ying nutrients		A treatment method to use medicines to regulate qi and harmonize the Ying nutrients. It is indicated for conditions due to disharmony between qi and Ying nutrients.	调气和营	tiáo qì hé yíng	
2324	Balance and regulate cold and heat	Mediate cold and heat	A treatment method to use neutral-property medicines to clear heat and remove cold. It is indicated for conditions due to disharmony between (yin) cold and (yang) heat.	平调寒热	píng tiáo hán rè	调和寒热
2325	Induce urination and promote bowel movements		A treatment method to induce urination and promote bowel movements to eliminate pathogenic factors.	分消走泄	fēn xiāo zǒu xiè	
2326	Induce vomiting and promoting bladder/bowel movements		A treatment method to use medicines to induce vomiting, eliminate phlegm and promote bladder or bowel movements to separately eliminate pathogenic factors.	分消上下	fēn xiāo shàng xià	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2327	Release the exterior and clear interior excess		A treatment method to use medicines to release the exterior and clear interior excess to separately eliminate pathogenic factors from the exterior and interior.	表里分消	biǎo lǐ fēn xiāo	
2328	Regulate the Chong and Ren	Regulate and nourish the Chong and Ren	A treatment method to use formulas to regulate qi and blood of the Chong and Ren. It is indicated for conditions due to disharmony between the Chong and Ren.	调理冲任	tiáo lǐ chōng rèn	调摄冲任
2329	Heat-clearing methods		<b>Treatment methods to clear excess or deficiency heat</b>	清热法	qīng rè fǎ	
2330	Clear heat and reduce fire	Clear heat with bitter cold	A treatment method to use formulas that are cold in property and bitter in taste to clear heat and reduce fire. It is indicated for conditions due to exuberant fire-heat.	清热泻火	qīng rè xiè huǒ	清热降火; 苦寒清热
2331	Clear heat with pungent cold	Clear qi with pungent cold	A treatment method to use formulas that are pungent cold in taste and cold in property to clear and disperse heat. It is indicated for qi phase pattern, pattern of both Wei-defence and qi phases or interior heat moving out to the exterior.	辛寒清热	xīn hán qīng rè	辛寒清气
2332	Clear heat and remove toxins	Clear heat to detoxify	A treatment method to clear heat and reduce fire to remove toxins. It is indicated for toxic fire, migratory toxic fire or toxic fire entering the collaterals.	清热解毒	qīng rè jiě dú	泄热解毒; 泄热败毒; 清热败毒; 清火解毒; 清泻火毒
2333	Clear heat and cool blood	Clear qi and cool blood	A treatment method to use formulas to clear heat and cool blood. It is indicated for blazing of both qi and blood and blood phase pattern.	清热凉血	qīng rè liáng xuè	清气凉血
2334	Clear heat in the Ying nutrients and cool blood		A treatment method to clear heat in the Ying nutrients and cool blood. It is indicated for conditions due to heat entering the Ying nutrients and blood.	清营凉血	qīng yíng liáng xiě	
2335	Clear and reduce stagnant heat	Clear stagnant fire Clear and disperse fire Clear heat and alleviate vexation	A treatment method to clear heat, reduce fire and alleviate vexation. It is indicated for qi stagnation transforming into fire or heat disturbing the heart mind.	清宣郁热	qīng xuān yù rè	清泄郁热; 清泄郁火; 清宣郁火; 解郁泄热; 清热除烦; 清心除烦

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2336	Clear and reduce deficiency heat		A treatment method to clear heat and nourish yin. It is indicated for internal heat due to yin deficiency.	清泻虚热	qīng xiè xū rè	清泻虚火
2337	Clear and reduce interior heat	Clear the zang-fu organs	A treatment method to clear heat of the zang-fu organs. It is indicated for excess heat in the zang-fu organs.	清泄里热	qīng xiè lǐ rè	清泄脏腑
2338	Clear and reduce heart fire	Clear the heart and reduce fire	A treatment method to clear the heart and reduce fire. It is indicated for conditions due to exuberance of heart fire.	清心泻火	qīng xīn xiè huǒ	清心泄热
2339	Clear and reduce lung heat		A treatment method to clear lung heat. It is indicated for conditions due to exuberance of lung heat.	清热泻肺	qīng rè xiè fèi	
2340	Clear and reduce stomach heat	Clear the stomach and reduce fire	A treatment method to clear stomach fire. It is indicated for conditions due to exuberance of stomach fire.	清胃泄热	qīng wèi xiè rè	清胃降火;清胃降热;清胃泄火
2341	Clear and reduce spleen heat	Clear the spleen and reduce fire	A treatment method to clear fire heat of the spleen and stomach. It is indicated for excess heat in the spleen and stomach.	清脾泄热	qīng pí xiè rè	清脾泻火;清泄脾胃伏火
2342	Clear and reduce liver fire	Clear the liver and reduce fire	A treatment method to clear fire heat in the liver meridian. It is indicated for fire hyperactivity along the liver meridian, exuberance of liver fire and upward flaming of liver fire.	清肝泄火	qīng gān xiè huǒ	清肝泻火;清肝泻热;清肝泄热
2343	Clear and reduce gallbladder heat	Clear gallbladder fire	A treatment method to clear fire heat in the gallbladder meridian. It is indicated for stagnant heat in the gallbladder meridian.	清泄胆热	qīng xiè dǎn rè	清泄胆火
2344	Clear heat in the liver and gallbladder		A treatment method to clear fire heat in the liver and gallbladder. It is indicated for fire hyperactivity of the liver and gallbladder.	清泻肝胆	qīng xiè gān dǎn	清泄肝胆
2345	Clear heat in the heart and spleen		A treatment method to clear fire heat in the heart and spleen. It is indicated for heat accumulating in the heart and spleen.	清心泻脾	qīng xīn xiè pí	
2346	Clear heat in the heart and liver		A treatment method to clear fire heat in the heart and liver. It is indicated for fire hyperactivity of the heart and liver.	清心泻肝	qīng xīn xiè gān	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2347	Clear heat in the heart and lung		A treatment method to clear fire heat in the heart and lung. It is indicated for exuberant heat in the heart and lung.	清心泻肺	qīng xīn xiè fèi	
2348	Clear heat in the heart and kidney		A treatment method to clear fire heat in the heart and kidney. It is indicated for fire heat in the heart and kidney.	清心泻肾	qīng xīn xiè shèn	
2349	Clear heat in the liver and lung		A treatment method to clear fire heat in the liver and lung. It is indicated for liver fire attacking the lung or exuberant heat in the liver and lung.	泻肝清肺	xiè gān qīng fèi	
2350	Clear heat in the liver and stomach		A treatment method to clear fire heat in the liver and stomach. It is indicated for liver fire attacking the stomach or exuberant heat in the liver and stomach.	泻肝清胃	xiè gān qīng wèi	
2351	Clear heat in the lung and stomach		A treatment method to clear fire heat in the lung and stomach. It is indicated for exuberant heat in the lung and stomach.	清泻肺胃	qīng xiè fèi wèi	
2352	Clear and reduce diaphragm heat		A treatment method to clear heat and cool the diaphragm. It is indicated for heat disturbing the diaphragm.	清泄膈热	qīng xiè gé rè	
2353	Clear and reduce intestine heat		A treatment method to clear intestinal fire heat. It is indicated for conditions due to excess heat in the intestines.	清泻肠热	qīng xiè cháng rè	
2354	Clear and reduce ministerial fire		A treatment method to clear heat and reduce ministerial fire. It is indicated for hyperactivity and stirring of ministerial fire.	清泄相火	qīng xiè xiàng huǒ	
2355	Clear heat and relieve strangury	Reduce fire and relieve strangury	A treatment method to clear fire heat in the urinary bladder. It is indicated for heat strangury or retained heat in the urinary bladder.	清热通淋	qīng rè tōng lín	泻火通淋
2356	Clear heat and quiet the fetus		A treatment method to clear fire heat to quiet the fetus. It is indicated for threatened abortion due to heat disturbing the uterus.	清热安胎	qīng rè ān tāi	
2357	Clear heat and generate fluids	Clear heat with sweet-cold	A treatment method to use heat-clearing and fluid-generating medicines. It is indicated for fire heat consuming fluids or internal heat due to yin deficiency.	清热生津	qīng rè shēng jīn	泄热生津;泄热存津;清热存津;甘凉清热

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2358	Clear heat and relieve bone-steaming sensation		A treatment method to clear heat, reduce fire and eliminate bone-steaming sensation. It is indicated for conditions due to deficiency fire or bone-steaming sensation.	清热除蒸	qīng rè chú zhēng	
2359	<b>Qi-regulating methods</b>		<b>Treatment methods to regulate qi activity</b>	<b>理气法</b>	<b>lǐ qì fǎ</b>	
2360	Regulate qi and resolve stagnation	Regulate qi and unblock stagnation	A treatment method to regulate qi and unblock stagnation. It is indicated for conditions due to qi stagnation.	理气行滞	lǐ qì xíng zhì	理气导滞
2361	Soothe the liver and regulate qi	Soothe the liver and relieve depression	A treatment method to soothe the liver, regulate qi, unblock stagnation and resolve depression. It is indicated for conditions due to liver qi stagnation.	疏肝理气	shū gān lǐ qì	疏肝解郁
2362	Soothe the liver and promote bile flow		A treatment method to soothe liver qi and promote the flow of bile. It is indicated for conditions due to qi stagnation of the liver and gallbladder.	疏肝利胆	shū gān lì dǎn	
2363	Disperse lung qi		A treatment method to disperse lung qi. It is indicated for conditions due to pathogenic factors affecting the dispersing of lung qi.	宣肺通气	xuān fèi tōng qì	
2364	Circulate qi and harmonize the stomach	Regulate qi and strengthen the stomach	A treatment method to regulate qi, unblock stagnation, harmonize the stomach and soothe the middle jiao. It is indicated for conditions due to stomach qi failing to descend or stomach qi stagnation.	行气和胃	xíng qì hé wèi	理气和胃;理气健胃;行气健胃;行气宽中
2365	Regulate qi and strengthen the spleen		A treatment method to regulate and supplement qi, unblock stagnation, and strengthen the spleen. It is indicated for conditions due to spleen failing to transport and transform, spleen deficiency with qi stagnation or worries damaging the spleen.	理气健脾	lǐ qì jiàn pí	
2366	Circulate and down-regulate qi		A treatment method to circulate and down-regulate qi. It is indicated for conditions due to adverse ascending of qi.	行气降逆	xíng qì jiàng nì	顺气降逆
2367	Regulate qi and resolve masses	Circulate qi and resolve nodules	A treatment method to regulate qi, unblock stagnation and thus resolve masses/nodules. It is indicated for conditions due to chronic qi stagnation.	理气消痞	lǐ qì xiāo pǐ	行气消痞;行气散结;理气散结

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2368	Methods to regulate blood		Treatment methods to regulate blood and restore normal blood circulation	理血法	lǐ xuè fǎ	
2369	Circulate blood and transform stasis	Circulate blood and eliminate stasis  Circulate blood and dissipate stasis	A treatment method to circulate blood and transform stasis. It is indicated for conditions due to blood stasis.	活血化癥	huó xuè huà yū	活血祛癥;活血散癥;
2370	Transform stasis and clear heat		A treatment method to transform stasis and clear heat. It is indicated for blood stasis transforming into heat or heat-induced blood stagnation.	化癥清热	huà yū qīng rè	
2371	Circulate blood and resolve stagnation	Move blood and circulate qi	A treatment method to circulate blood, resolve stasis, regulate qi and eliminate stagnation. It is indicated for blood stasis due to qi stagnation or qi stagnation due to blood stasis.	活血行滯	huó xuè xíng zhì	活血行气
2372	Circulate blood and resolve masses		A treatment method to circulate blood, transform stasis and resolve masses. It is indicated for masses due to blood stagnation.	活血消積	huó xuè xiāo jī	活血消癥
2373	Eliminate stasis and regenerate blood		A treatment method to circulate blood, transform stasis and regenerate new blood. It is indicated for blood stasis coupled with blood deficiency.	祛癥生新	qū yū shēng xīn	化癥生新
2374	Circulate and nourish blood	Harmonize and nourish blood  Resolve stasis and nourish blood	A treatment method to circulate and nourish blood. It is indicated for conditions due to blood deficiency coupled with stasis.	活血养血	huó xuè yǎng xiě	和血养血;祛癥养血
2375	Transform stasis and unblock collaterals		A treatment method to circulate blood, transform stasis and unblock meridians. It is indicated for conditions due to blood stasis obstructing the meridians.	祛癥通絡	qū yū tōng luò	化癥通絡;行癥通絡
2376	Transform stasis and drain water retention		A treatment method to circulate blood, transform stasis, resolve water retention and drain dampness. It is indicated for conditions due to blood stasis and water retention.	化癥利水	huà yū lì shuǐ	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2377	Transform stasis and resolve swelling	Dissipate stasis and eliminate swelling Break stasis and resolve swelling	A treatment method to circulate blood, transform stasis and resolve swelling. It is indicated for haematoma.	化瘀消肿	huà yū xiāo zhǒng	祛瘀消肿; 散瘀消肿; 破瘀消肿
2378	Circulate blood and relax tendons		A treatment method to circulate blood, transform stasis, relax tendons and unblock meridians. It is indicated for conditions due to blood stasis affecting the tendons and meridians.	活血舒筋	huó xuè shū jīn	祛瘀舒筋
2379	Circulate blood and eliminate wind		A treatment method to circulate blood, transform stasis, eliminate wind and unblock meridians. It is indicated for conditions due to blood stasis with wind dryness or blood stasis with wind bi-impediment.	活血祛风	huó xuè qū fēng	活血搜风
2380	Circulate blood and alleviate pain	Circulate blood, unblock meridians and alleviate pain	A treatment method to circulate blood, unblock meridians and alleviate pain. It is indicated for pain due to blood stasis obstructing the meridians.	活血止痛	huó xuè zhǐ tòng	活血通络止痛
2381	Transform stasis and stop bleeding		A treatment method to circulate blood, transform stasis and stop bleeding. It is indicated for bleeding due to blood stasis.	化瘀止血	huà yū zhǐ xiě	祛瘀止血
2382	Unblock meridians and increase lactation		A treatment method to unblock meridians to increase lactation. It is indicated for insufficient lactation due to meridian obstruction.	通络下乳	tōng luò xià rǔ	
2383	Harmonize meridians	Unblock meridians	A treatment method to harmonize meridians using acupuncture, tuina, external therapies or herbal formulas. It is indicated for conditions caused by meridian obstruction.	和络	hé luò	通络; 活络
2384	Unblock meridians and relieve itch		A treatment method to unblock meridians, harmonize blood and stop itching using herbal formulas or other therapies. It is indicated for itching due to obstruction of meridian qi.	通经止痒	tōng jīng zhǐ yǎng	
2385	Circulate blood and regulate menstruation	Harmonize blood and regulate menstruation	A treatment method to circulate blood, regulate qi and benefit menstruation. It is indicated for irregular menstruation due to disharmony between qi and blood.	活血调经	huó xuè tiáo jīng	和血调经

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2386	Harmonize blood and quiet fetus		A treatment method to circulate blood, regulate qi and quiet the fetus. It is indicated for threatened abortion due to disharmony between qi and blood.	和血安胎	hé xuè ān tāi	
2387	Transform stasis and induce labour		A treatment method to circulate blood, transform stasis and induce labour. It is indicated for difficult labour due to blood stasis and qi stagnation.	祛瘀下胎	qū yū xià tāi	化瘀下胎; 化瘀催产; 祛瘀催产
2388	Transform stasis and unblock brain collaterals.		A treatment method to circulate blood, transform stasis and unblock brain collaterals. It is indicated for conditions due to stasis obstructing the brain collaterals.	化瘀通脑	huà yū tōng nǎo	
2389	Transform stasis and disperse the lung		A treatment method to circulate blood, transform stasis and disperse lung qi. It is indicated for conditions due to stasis obstructing the lung collaterals.	化瘀宣肺	huà yū xuān fèi	
2390	Transform stasis and soothe the chest		A treatment method to circulate blood, transform stasis, and soothe the chest and diaphragm. It is indicated for stasis obstructing the chest, diaphragm or subcostal region.	化瘀宽胸	huà yū kuān xiōng	
2391	Transform blood stasis and soothe the heart		A treatment method to circulate blood, transform stasis and unblock heart vessels. It is indicated for conditions due to heart blood stasis.	化瘀宽心	huà yū kuān xīn	
2392	Transform stasis and harmonize the stomach		A treatment method to circulate blood, transform stasis, harmonize the stomach, and soothe the spleen and stomach. It is indicated for stasis obstructing the stomach collaterals.	化瘀和胃	huà yū hé wèi	
2393	Transform stasis and nourish the stomach		A treatment method to circulate blood, transform stasis, nourish the stomach and harmonize the spleen and stomach. It is indicated for conditions due to stomach deficiency with blood stasis.	化瘀养胃	huà yū yǎng wèi	
2394	Transform stasis and soothe the liver		A treatment method to circulate blood, transform stasis, soothe the liver and harmonize collaterals. It is indicated for conditions due to liver blood stasis.	化瘀疏肝	huà yū shū gān	



WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2395	Transform stasis and nourish the liver		A treatment method to circulate blood, transform stasis, tonify blood and nourish the liver. It is indicated for conditions due to liver deficiency with blood stasis.	化瘀养肝	huà yū yǎng gān	
2396	Transform stasis and regulate the spleen		A treatment method to circulate blood, transform stasis, strengthen the spleen and harmonize the spleen and stomach. It is indicated for conditions due to blood stasis affecting the spleen meridian.	化瘀理脾	huà yū lǐ pí	
2397	Dampness-eliminating methods		<b>Methods to disperse and transform dampness with aromatic medicines</b>	祛湿法	qū shī fǎ	
2398	Repel filth and transform turbidity	Transform turbidity with aroma	A treatment method to transform turbidity and repel filth with aromatic medicines. It is indicated for conditions due to filth, turbidity and dampness.	辟秽化浊	pì huì huà zhuó	芳香化浊;辟秽泄浊;芳香泄浊
2399	Drain dampness and transform turbidity		A treatment method to induce urination to transform turbid dampness. It is indicated for conditions due to dampness.	利湿化浊	lì shī huà zhuó	祛湿化浊
2400	Disperse dampness		A treatment method to disperse turbid dampness with aromatic, pungent medicines. It is indicated for conditions due to dampness binding the exterior.	宣散湿邪	xuān sàn shī xié	宣散湿浊
2401	Circulate qi and transform dampness	Regulate qi and transform dampness	A treatment method to regulate qi, unblock stagnation and transform dampness with aromatic medicines. It is indicated for conditions due to dampness obstructing the flow of qi.	行气化湿	xíng qì huà shī	理气化湿
2402	Transform dampness and harmonize the Ying nutrients	Dry dampness and harmonize the Ying nutrients	A treatment method to transform dampness with aromatic medicines and harmonize between the Ying nutrients and Wei-defence. It is indicated for conditions due to dampness affecting the surface of the body.	化湿和营	huà shī hé yíng	燥湿和营

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2403	Transform dampness and harmonize the middle jiao	Transform dampness and awaken the spleen Transform dampness and strengthen the spleen	A treatment method to transform turbid dampness to strengthen the spleen and harmonize the stomach. It is indicated for conditions due to dampness affecting the spleen and stomach or spleen deficiency coupled with dampness.	化湿和中	huà shī hé zhōng	化湿醒脾;化湿健脾;化湿运脾
2404	Strengthen the spleen and transform dampness	Supplement the spleen and resolve dampness	A treatment method to tonify spleen qi to transform turbid phlegm. It is indicated for conditions due to spleen deficiency coupled with dampness.	健脾化湿	jiàn pí huà shī	扶脾化湿;扶脾祛湿;健脾祛湿
2405	Induce urination and drain dampness		A treatment method to resolve dampness by inducing urination with medicines that are bland in taste. It is indicated for conditions due to internal retention of water dampness.	淡渗分利	dàn shèn fēn lì	淡渗祛湿
2406	Soothe the middle jiao and drain dampness		A treatment method to transform turbid dampness to strengthen the spleen and harmonize the stomach. It is indicated for conditions due to spleen deficiency coupled with dampness.	宽中利湿	kuān zhōng lì shī	宽中化湿
2407	Clear heart fire and drain dampness	Clear the heart and induce urination	A treatment method to induce urination and clear heart fire. It is indicated for exuberance of heart fire coupled with water dampness.	清心利湿	qīng xīn lì shī	清心利水
2408	Clear gallbladder heat and drain dampness		A treatment method to clear gallbladder heat and transform dampness. It is indicated for damp heat in the gallbladder.	清胆利湿	qīng dǎn lì shī	
2409	Dry dampness and circulate qi	Dry dampness and unblock stagnation	A treatment method to regulate qi, unblock stagnation and dry dampness. It is indicated for conditions due to qi stagnation coupled with dampness retention.	燥湿行气	zào shī xíng qì	燥湿行滞
2410	Dry dampness and harmonize the stomach	Dry dampness and harmonize the middle jiao	A treatment method to dry dampness with pungent, dry medicines and harmonize the stomach. It is indicated for conditions due to dampness obstructing the spleen and stomach.	燥湿和胃	zào shī hé wèi	燥湿和中

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2411	Remove wind and dry dampness	Remove wind and transform dampness	A treatment method to remove wind and dry dampness. It is indicated for conditions due to wind dampness affecting the body.	祛风燥湿	qū fēng zào shī	疏风燥湿;疏风化湿;祛风化湿
2412	Dissipate cold and eliminate dampness	Dissipate cold and dry dampness	A treatment method to remove cold and eliminate dampness with pungent, warm medicines. It is indicated for conditions due to cold dampness affecting the body.	散寒除湿	sàn hán chú shī	散寒祛湿;散寒燥湿;
2413	Clear heat and eliminate dampness		A treatment method to clear heat and eliminate dampness. It is indicated for conditions due to damp heat accumulation.	清热祛湿	qīng rè qū shī	清热除湿
2414	Clear heat and transform dampness in three jiao	Clear heat and transform dampness in triple energizer	A treatment method to combine heat-clearing and dampness-resolving medicines. It is indicated for conditions due to damp heat diffusing over the three jiao.	清利三焦	qīng lì sān jiāo	清化三焦;清化三焦湿热;清理三焦湿热
2415	Clear heat, dry dampness and remove toxins		A treatment method to clear heat, transform dampness and remove toxins. It is indicated for conditions due to toxic damp heat accumulation.	清热燥湿解毒	qīng rè zào shī jiě dú	泄热燥湿解毒;泄热化湿解毒;清热化湿解毒
2416	Induce urination and resolve oedema		A treatment method or formula to induce urination to resolve oedema. It is indicated for oedema.	利水消肿	lì shuǐ xiāo zhǒng	
2417	Remove dampness and unblock collaterals		A treatment method to transform dampness and unblock collaterals. It is indicated for dampness obstructing the collaterals.	除湿通络	chú shī tōng luò	化湿通络
2418	<b>Moistening methods</b>		<b>Treatment methods to increase fluids to moisten dryness</b>	<b>润燥法</b>	<b>rùn zào fǎ</b>	
2419	Moisten by mild dispersing	Disperse qi and moisten external dryness	A treatment method to disperse lung qi, increase fluids and moisten dryness. It is indicated for external dryness affecting the exterior.	轻宣润燥	qīng xuān rùn zào	轻宣外燥
2420	Clear heat and moisten dryness		A treatment method to clear heat, increase fluids and moisten dryness. It is indicated for conditions due to warm dryness damaging yin.	清热润燥	qīng rè rùn zào	
2421	Clear lung heat and moisten dryness	Clear dryness and moisten the lung	A treatment method to clear heat, disperse lung qi and moisten dryness. It is indicated for dryness affecting the lung, lung heat due to yin deficiency or lung dryness with stagnant heat.	清肺润燥	qīng fèi rùn zào	清燥润肺

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2422	Nourish yin and moisten dryness		A treatment method to nourish yin, clear heat, increase fluids and moisten dryness. It is indicated for internal dryness due to yin deficiency.	滋阴润燥	zī yīn rùn zào	养阴润燥
2423	Nourish blood and moisten dryness	Tonify blood and moisten dryness	A treatment method to tonify blood, increase fluids and moisten dryness. It is indicated for blood dryness due to yin deficiency or blood deficiency with wind dryness.	养血润燥	yǎng xuè rùn zào	补血润燥
2424	Moisten dryness and alleviate thirst		A treatment method to nourish yin, increase fluids and alleviate thirst. It is indicated for conditions due to deficiency of yin fluids.	润燥止渴	rùn zào zhǐ kě	
2425	Moisten dryness and stop coughing	Moisten the lung and relieve cough	A treatment method to nourish yin, moisten dryness and stop coughing. It is indicated for cough due to yin deficiency and lung dryness.	润燥止咳	rùn zào zhǐ ké	润肺止咳
2426	Moisten dryness and remove toxins		A treatment method to nourish yin, moisten dryness and remove toxins. It is indicated for conditions due to toxic dryness.	润燥解毒	rùn zào jiě dú	
2427	Increase fluids and promote bowel movements	Increase water to float the boat	A treatment method to nourish fluids, moisten the intestines and promote bowel movements. It is indicated for constipation due to large intestine dryness.	增液通便	zēng yè tōng biàn	增水行舟
2428	Reinforcing methods		Treatment methods to tonify yin, yang, qi, blood and bodily fluids and reinforce the functions of the zang–fu organs.	补益法	bǔ yì fǎ	
2429	Tonify qi	Supplement qi Supplement anti-pathogenic qi	A treatment method to tonify healthy qi. It is indicated for conditions due to qi deficiency.	补气	bǔ qì	益气;扶正益气;扶正补气
2430	Tonify heart qi	Reinforce heart qi	A treatment method to tonify qi and nourish the heart. It is indicated for conditions due to heart qi deficiency.	补益心气	bǔ yì xīn qì	补心益气
2431	Tonify lung qi	Reinforce lung qi	A treatment method to tonify qi and benefit the lung. It is indicated for conditions due to lung qi deficiency.	补益肺气	bǔ yì fèi qì	补肺益气

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2432	Tonify qi of the spleen and stomach	Reinforce the spleen and tonify the stomach	A treatment method to tonify qi, strengthen the spleen and benefit the stomach. It is indicated for conditions due to qi deficiency of the spleen and stomach.	补益中气	bǔ yì zhōng qì	补脾健胃; 补中益气
2433	Tonify liver qi	Reinforce liver qi	A treatment method to tonify qi and nourish the liver. It is indicated for conditions due to liver qi deficiency.	补益肝气	bǔ yì gān qì	补肝益气
2434	Tonify kidney qi	Reinforce kidney qi	A treatment method to tonify the kidney and supplement qi. It is indicated for conditions due to kidney qi deficiency.	补益肾气	bǔ yì shèn qì	补肾益气
2435	Tonify the heart and lung	Reinforce the heart and benefit the lung	A treatment method to tonify qi of the heart and lung. It is indicated for conditions due to qi deficiency of the heart and lung.	补益心肺	bǔ yì xīn fèi	补心益肺
2436	Tonify the spleen and benefit the lung	Cultivate the earth to generate metal	A treatment method to tonify qi of the spleen and lung. It is indicated for conditions due to qi deficiency of the spleen and lung.	补脾益肺	bǔ pí yì fèi	培土生金
2437	Tonify the spleen and kidney	Reinforce the spleen and benefit the kidney	A treatment method to tonify qi of the spleen and kidney. It is indicated for conditions due to qi deficiency of the spleen and kidney.	补益脾肾	bǔ yì pí shèn	补脾益肾
2438	Tonify qi to prevent collapse	Supplement qi to prevent collapse	A treatment method to greatly supplement vital qi. It is indicated for conditions due to collapse of vital qi.	补气固脱	bǔ qì gù tuō	益气固脱
2439	Tonify blood		A treatment method to supplement blood. It is indicated for conditions due to blood deficiency.	补血	bǔ xuè	
2440	Tonify blood and nourish the heart		A treatment method to tonify blood and nourish the heart. It is indicated for conditions due to heart blood deficiency.	补血养心	bǔ xuè yǎng xīn	
2441	Tonify blood and nourish the liver		A treatment method to tonify blood and nourish the liver. It is indicated for conditions due to liver blood deficiency.	补血养肝	bǔ xuè yǎng gān	
2442	Tonify blood and prevent collapse		A treatment method to tonify blood and prevent collapse. It is indicated for conditions due to blood loss.	补血固脱	bǔ xuè gù tuō	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2443	Nourish yin	Nourish and supplement yin fluids	A treatment method to nourish yin and supplement yin fluids with sweet, tonic food or medicines. It is indicated for conditions due to yin deficiency.	滋阴	zī yīn	滋补阴液
2444	Nourish and supplement heart yin	Nourish heart yin	A treatment method to nourish heart yin. It is indicated for conditions due to heart yin deficiency.	滋补心阴	zī bǔ xīn yīn	滋养心阴
2445	Nourish and supplement lung yin	Nourish lung yin	A treatment method to nourish yin and tonify the lung. It is indicated for conditions due to lung yin deficiency.	滋补肺阴	zī bǔ fèi yīn	滋养肺阴
2446	Nourish yin and benefit the stomach	Nourish yin and harmonize the stomach Benefit the stomach and generate fluids	A treatment method to nourish yin, generate fluids, supplement qi and benefit the stomach. It is indicated for stomach yin deficiency, qi and yin deficiency of the stomach or stomach dryness.	滋阴益胃	zī yīn yì wèi	养阴益胃;养阴和胃;滋阴和胃;益胃生津
2447	Nourish and supplement spleen yin	Nourish spleen yin	A treatment method to nourish yin and fortify the spleen. It is indicated for conditions due to spleen yin deficiency.	滋补脾阴	zī bǔ pí yīn	滋养脾阴
2448	Nourish and supplement liver yin	Nourish liver yin	A treatment method to nourish liver yin. It is indicated for conditions due to liver yin deficiency.	滋补肝阴	zī bǔ gān yīn	滋养肝阴
2449	Nourish and supplement kidney yin	Nourish kidney yin	A treatment method to nourish kidney yin. It is indicated for conditions due to kidney yin deficiency.	滋补肾阴	zī bǔ shèn yīn	滋养肾阴
2450	Nourish and supplement the heart and lung	Nourish the heart and lung	A treatment method to nourish and supplement the heart and lung. It is indicated for qi and yin deficiency of the heart and lung.	滋补心肺	zī bǔ xīn fèi	滋养心肺
2451	Nourish yin and clear heat		A treatment method to nourish yin and clear heat. It is indicated for conditions due to (yin) deficiency heat.	滋阴清热	zī yīn qīng rè	养阴清热
2452	Tonify yang and supplement qi	Warm yang and supplement qi	A treatment method to combine yang-warming and qi-tonifying medicines. It is indicated for conditions due to yang qi deficiency.	补阳益气	bǔ yáng yì qì	温阳益气

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2453	Tonify yang	Strengthen yang Warm yang	A treatment method to warm and tonify yang qi. It is indicated for conditions due to yang deficiency.	补阳	bǔ yáng	壮阳;温阳
2454	Warm and tonify heart yang		A treatment method to use warm-property medicines to tonify the heart and activate yang qi. It is indicated for conditions due to heart yang deficiency.	温补心阳	wēn bǔ xīn yáng	
2455	Warm and tonify lung yang		A treatment method to warm yang and tonify the lung. It is indicated for conditions due to lung yang deficiency.	温补肺阳	wēn bǔ fèi yáng	
2456	Warm and tonify spleen yang	Warm spleen yang	A treatment method to warm yang and fortify the spleen. It is indicated for conditions due to spleen yang deficiency.	温补脾阳	wēn bǔ pí yáng	温运脾阳
2457	Warm and tonify stomach yang	Warm yang and benefit the stomach	A treatment method to warm yang and strengthen the stomach. It is indicated for conditions due to stomach yang deficiency.	温补胃阳	wēn bǔ wèi yáng	温阳益胃
2458	Warm and tonify liver yang		A treatment method to warm yang and tonify the liver. It is indicated for conditions due to liver yang deficiency.	温补肝阳	wēn bǔ gān yáng	
2459	Warm and tonify kidney yang	Warm and tonify kidney qi Warm the kidney and strengthen yang	A treatment method to warm yang and tonify the kidney. It is indicated for conditions due to kidney yang deficiency and kidney qi deficiency.	温补肾阳	wēn bǔ shèn yáng	温补肾气;温肾壮阳
2460	Warm and tonify the heart and lung		A treatment method to warm and tonify the heart and lung. It is indicated for yang deficiency of the heart and lung.	温补心肺	wēn bǔ xīn fèi	
2461	Warm yang and circulate qi	Warm yang and regulate qi	A treatment method to warm yang, regulate qi and unblock stagnation. It is indicated for conditions due to yang deficiency and qi stagnation.	温阳行气	wēn yáng xíng qì	温阳理气
2462	Tonify qi and blood	Tonify qi and nourish blood	A treatment method to tonify qi and blood. It is indicated for conditions due to deficiency of qi and blood.	补益气血	bǔ yì qì xuè	补气养血

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2463	Nourish yin and tonify yang	Nourish yin and warm yang	A treatment method to nourish yin and tonify yang. It is indicated for conditions due to deficiency of yin and yang.	滋阴补阳	zī yīn bǔ yáng	滋阴温阳
2464	Supplement qi and nourish yin	Nourish yin and supplement qi Tonify essence and benefit marrow Tonify the kidney and benefit marrow	A treatment method to supplement qi and nourish yin. It is indicated for deficiency of qi and yin.	益气滋阴	yì qì zī yīn	益气养阴; 滋阴益气; 补精益髓; 补肾益髓
2465	Tonify essence and marrow		A treatment method to supplement essence and marrow with medicines that contain animal flesh and blood. It is indicated for kidney deficiency or essential qi deficiency.	补益精髓	bǔ yì jīng suǐ	
2466	Tonify the heart and kidney		A treatment method to tonify the heart and benefit the kidney. It is indicated for yin/yang deficiency of the heart and kidney, qi/yin deficiency of the heart and kidney, and qi deficiency of the heart and kidney.	补益心肾	bǔ yì xīn shèn	
2467	Nourish yin and tonify blood		A treatment method to combine yin-nourishing and blood-tonifying medicines. It is indicated for conditions due to yin blood deficiency.	滋阴补血	zī yīn bǔ xuè	
2468	Tonify essence to generate qi		A treatment method to tonify yin essence to transform into yang qi. It is indicated for conditions resulting from yang qi deficiency due to yin essence deficiency.	生气于精	shēng qì yú jīng	
2469	Supplement qi and prevent collapse		A treatment method to prevent life-threatening qi collapse following loss of blood/fluids with qi-supplementing and astringent medicines.	益气固脱	yì qì gù tuō	
2470	Warming interior methods		Treatment methods to warm and unblock the zang-fu organs and meridians, supplement yang and dissipate cold	温里法	wēn lǐ fǎ	
2471	Resuscitate yang	Resuscitate yang for emergency	A treatment method to greatly tonify yang qi. It is indicated for conditions due to yang depletion.	回阳	huí yáng	回阳急救



WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2472	Warm yang and dissipate cold	Warm the interior and dissipate cold	A treatment method to warm and tonify yang qi and dissipate cold. It is indicated for cold retention due to yang deficiency.	温阳散寒	wēn yáng sàn hán	温里散寒
2473	Warm meridians and dissipate cold		A treatment method to warm yang, dissipate cold and unblock meridians. It is indicated for conditions due to cold retention in the meridians.	温经散寒	wēn jīng sàn hán	温经祛寒
2474	Dissipate cold and alleviate pain		A treatment method to stop pain by dissipating cold. It is indicated for pain due to cold retention.	散寒止痛	sàn hán zhǐ tòng	
2475	<b>Clearing summer heat methods</b>		<b>Treatment methods to remove summer heat</b>	<b>祛暑法</b>	<b>qū shǔ fǎ</b>	
2476	Eliminate summer heat		A treatment method to remove summer heat. It is indicated for conditions due to summer heat.	祛暑清热	qū shǔ qīng rè	涤暑清热
2477	Eliminate summer heat and release the exterior	Release the exterior and clear summer heat	A treatment method to clear summer heat and release the exterior. It is indicated for summer heat attacking the exterior.	祛暑解表	qū shǔ jiě biǎo	解表清暑
2478	Clear summer heat and remove toxins		A treatment method to clear summer heat and transform dampness. It is indicated for conditions due to accumulation of summer heat and dampness.	清暑解毒	qīng shǔ jiě dú	
2479	Clear summer heat and drain dampness		A treatment method to clear summer heat and transform dampness. It is indicated for conditions due to internal retention of summer heat and dampness.	祛暑利湿	qū shǔ lì shī	清暑利湿; 清暑化湿; 祛暑化湿
2480	Clear summer heat and supplement qi		A treatment method to clear summer heat, tonify qi and generate fluids. It is indicated for conditions due to summer heat damaging bodily fluids.	清暑益气	qīng shǔ yì qì	
2481	Clear heart fire and remove summer heat		A treatment method to clear the heart and remove summer heat. It is indicated for summer heat blocking the heart mind.	清心涤暑	qīng xīn dí shǔ	
2482	Clear summer heat and disperse the lung		A treatment method to clear summer heat and disperse lung qi. It is indicated for cough or haemoptysis due to summer heat damaging the lung collaterals.	清暑宣肺	qīng shǔ xuān fèi	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2483	Removing wind methods		Treatment methods to dispel external wind or calm down the internal wind	治风法	zhì fēng fǎ	
2484	Dispel external wind		A treatment method to remove wind and release the exterior. It is indicated for conditions due to wind attacking the exterior.	疏散风邪	shū sǎn fēng xié	疏散外风
2485	Soothe the liver and extinguish wind	Calm the liver and stop wind	A treatment method to use formulas that contain heavy medicinal minerals to submerge liver yang and stop wind. It is indicated for conditions due to liver yang transforming into wind or sudden hyperactivity of liver yang.	平肝熄风	píng gān xī fēng	镇肝熄风
2486	Soothe the liver and submerge yang		A treatment method to use heavy medicinal minerals to soothe the liver and subdue yang. It is indicated for conditions due to hyperactivity of liver yang.	平肝潜阳	píng gān qián yáng	
2487	Stop wind and relieve convulsions		A treatment method to stop wind and relieve convulsions. It is indicated for convulsions due to internal stirring of liver wind.	熄风解痉	xī fēng jiě jìng	熄风定痉;镇痉熄风
2488	Resolving phlegm methods		Treatment methods to resolve phlegm fluids or nodules in the zang-fu organs, meridians, cutaneous membrane and limbs/joints	祛痰法	qū tán fǎ	
2489	Disperse the lung and transform phlegm	Transform phlegm and disperse the lung	A treatment method to combine medicines to disperse lung qi and transform phlegm. It is indicated for conditions due to turbid phlegm obstructing the lung.	宣肺化痰	xuān fèi huà tán	宣肺祛痰;豁痰宣肺
2490	Dry dampness and transform phlegm	Eliminate dampness and transform phlegm Transform phlegm and eliminate dampness Transform phlegm and dry dampness	A treatment method to dry dampness and transform phlegm. It is indicated for conditions due to phlegm dampness.	燥湿化痰	zào shī huà tán	祛湿化痰;化痰除湿;豁痰燥湿
2491	Clear heat and transform phlegm		A treatment method to combine medicines that clear heat and transform phlegm. It is indicated for conditions due to heat phlegm.	清热化痰	qīng rè huà tán	清热祛痰;清化痰

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2492	Moisten dryness and transform phlegm	Moisten the lung and transform phlegm Moisten and transform dry phlegm	A treatment method to generate fluids, moisten dryness and transform phlegm. It is indicated for conditions due to dry phlegm.	润燥化痰	rùn zào huà tán	润肺化痰; 润化燥痰
2493	Warm and transform cold phlegm	Warm yang and transform phlegm	A treatment method to warm yang, remove cold and transform phlegm. It is indicated for conditions due to cold phlegm.	温化寒痰	wēn huà hán tán	温阳化痰
2494	Remove wind and transform phlegm		A treatment method to combine medicines to remove wind and transform phlegm. It is indicated for conditions due to wind phlegm.	祛风化痰	qū fēng huà tán	治风化痰
2495	Regulate qi and transform phlegm	Circulate qi and transform phlegm	A treatment method to combine medicines to regulate qi, unblock stagnation and transform phlegm. It is indicated for conditions due to qi stagnation with phlegm retention or phlegm qi stagnation.	理气化痰	lǐ qì huà tán	行气化痰; 行气祛痰; 理气祛痰
2496	Dissipate cold and transform fluid retention		A treatment method to dissipate cold and transform water retention using pungent warm medicines. It is indicated for conditions due to internal retention of cold fluid.	散寒化饮	sàn hán huà yǐn	
2497	Drain the lung and expel water retention		A treatment method to combine medicines to transform fluid retention and drain the lung. It is indicated for conditions due to fluid retention affecting the lung.	泻肺逐痰	xiè fèi zhú yǐn	
2498	Warm yang and transform water retention	Warm and transform cold fluid retention Warm and transform phlegm fluid retention	A treatment method to warm yang, transform phlegm and eliminate fluid retention using pungent warm medicines. It is indicated for conditions resulting from fluid retention due to yang deficiency.	温阳化饮	wēn yáng huà yǐn	温化寒饮; 温化痰饮
2499	Transform phlegm and promote digestion		A treatment method to combine medicines to transform phlegm and promote digestion. It is indicated for conditions due to phlegm-food stagnation.	化痰消食	huà tán xiāo shí	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2500	Eliminate phlegm and transform stasis		A treatment method to combine medicines to eliminate phlegm and transform stasis. It is indicated for conditions due to phlegm combined with stasis.	祛痰化痰	qū tán huà yū	
2501	Transform phlegm and dissipate nodules	Transform phlegm and break nodules Transform phlegm and soften hardness	A treatment method to combine medicines to transform phlegm, eliminate masses and soften hardness. It is indicated for phlegm nodules.	化痰散结	huà tán sàn jiē	化痰破结; 涤痰破结; 涤痰散结; 祛痰软坚; 豁痰软坚
2502	Transform phlegm and resolve goitre		A treatment method to transform phlegm, resolve goitre and disperse nodules. It is indicated for goitre due to phlegm nodules.	化痰消瘿	huà tán xiāo yǐng	化痰消瘤
2503	Eliminate phlegm and unblock bi-impediment		A treatment method to unblock bi-impediment by eliminating turbid phlegm. It is indicated for conditions due to turbid phlegm retention.	祛痰宣痹	qū tán xuān bì	
2504	Clear heat, eliminate phlegm and transform stasis		A treatment method to clear heat, eliminate phlegm and transform stasis. It is indicated for phlegm heat intertwined with stasis or phlegm stasis transforming into heat.	清热祛痰化痰	qīng rè qū tán huà yū	
2505	Eliminate phlegm and kill parasites		A treatment method to combine medicines to eliminate phlegm and kill parasites. It is indicated for conditions due to phlegm mixed with parasites.	祛痰杀虫	qū tán shā chóng	
2506	Eliminate phlegm, regulate qi and remove toxins		A treatment method to eliminate stasis, regulate qi and remove toxins. It is indicated for toxic phlegm retention.	祛痰理气解毒	qū tán lǐ qì jiě dú	
2507	Orifice-opening methods		Treatment methods to open the orifice and refresh the mind	开窍法	kāi qiào fǎ	
2508	Open the orifices and unblock impediments		A treatment method to open the orifices, refresh the mind and unblock impediments. It is indicated for conditions due to pathogenic factors misting the heart mind.	开窍通闭	kāi qiào tōng bì	通窍开闭

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2509	Clear heat and open the orifices		A treatment method to clear heat, reduce fire, open the orifices and refresh the mind. It is indicated for conditions due to heat blocking the heart mind.	清热开窍	qīng rè kāi qiào	泄热开窍
2510	Calm the heart and open the orifices	Calm the mind and open the orifices	A treatment method to nourish the heart and settle the mind. It is indicated for cardiac shock, shock from heavy blood loss or unconsciousness due to fear/fright damaging the heart mind.	宁心开窍	níng xīn kāi qiào	宁神开窍
2511	Open the orifices with aroma	Repel foulness and open the orifices	A treatment method to unblock impediment and open the orifices with aromatic medicines. It is indicated for unconsciousness due to turbidity blocking the pericardium.	芳香开窍	fāng xiāng kāi qiào	芳香通窍;辟秽开窍;辟秽通窍
2512	Dissipate cold and open the orifices	Open the orifices with pungent warm	A treatment method to warm yang, dissipate cold and open the orifices with pungent, warm medicines. It is indicated for cold-induced shock or unconsciousness due to cold retention and qi stagnation.	散寒开窍	sàn hán kāi qiào	散寒通窍;散寒通闭;散寒开闭;辛温开窍;辛温通窍
2513	Drain dampness and open the orifices		A treatment method to transform dampness and open the orifices. It is indicated for turbid phlegm misting the heart mind.	利湿开窍	lì shī kāi qiào	利湿通窍;化湿开窍;化湿通窍
2514	Transform phlegm and open the orifices		A treatment method to transform turbid phlegm and open the orifices. It is indicated for phlegm-induced shock or phlegm misting the heart mind.	化痰开窍	huà tán kāi qiào	祛痰开窍;涤痰开窍;豁痰开窍
2515	Eliminate phlegm, transform dampness and open the orifices		A treatment method to eliminate phlegm, transform dampness and open the orifices. It is indicated for phlegm dampness disturbing the heart mind.	祛痰化湿开窍	qū tán huà shī kāi qiào	
2516	Remove wind, eliminate phlegm and open the orifices		A treatment method to remove wind, eliminate phlegm and open the orifices. It is indicated for wind phlegm disturbing the heart mind.	搜风祛痰开窍	sōu fēng qū tán kāi qiào	
2517	Eliminate heat and open the orifices		A treatment method to clear summer heat, circulate qi and open the orifices. It is indicated for summer heat blocking the flow of qi.	祛热开窍	qū rè kāi qiào	
2518	Resolve stones and circulate qi	Dissolve stones and open blockages	A treatment method to resolve stones and circulate qi. It is indicated for stones blocking the flow of qi.	消石开闭	xiāo shí kāi bì	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2519	Remove toxins and circulate qi		A treatment method to use medicines or formulas that remove toxins. It is indicated for epidemic toxins blocking the heart mind.	解毒开闭	jiě dú kāi bì	
2520	Remove toxins and disperse the lung		A treatment method to remove toxins and disperse lung qi. It is indicated for toxic heat blocking the lung or measles virus blocking the lung.	解毒开肺	jiě dú kāi fèi	
2521	<b>Repelling parasites methods</b>		<b>Treatment methods to kill or repel intestinal parasites</b>	驱虫法	qū chóng fǎ	
2522	Repel roundworms and kill parasites		A treatment method to repel and kill roundworms. It is indicated for conditions due to intestinal worms.	驱蛔杀虫	qū huí shā chóng	
2523	Strengthen the spleen and repel parasitic worms	Fortify the spleen and repel parasitic worms	A treatment method to combine medicines to reinforce the spleen and repel parasitic worms. It is indicated for spleen deficiency coupled with retention of parasitic worms.	健脾驱虫	jiàn pí qū chóng	补脾驱虫
2524	Kill parasitic worms and alleviate malnutrition		A treatment method to kill parasitic worms and improve malnutrition. It is indicated for malnutrition due to retention of parasitic worms.	杀虫消痞	shā chóng xiāo gān	杀虫消积
2525	Eliminate wind and kill parasitic worms		A treatment method to remove wind and kill parasitic worms. It is indicated for conditions due to toxic worms or wind affecting the skin.	祛风杀虫	qū fēng shā chóng	
2526	Kill parasitic worms and calm the mind		A treatment method to kill worms, calm the mind, alleviate pain and stop seizures. It is indicated for pork tapeworm affecting the brain.	杀虫宁神	shā chóng níng shén	
2527	<b>Mind-calming methods</b>		<b>Treatment methods to calm/settle the mind and alleviate palpitations</b>	安神法	ān shén fǎ	
2528	Calm the mind with heavy medicinal minerals		A treatment method to use heavy medicinal minerals to submerge yang and settle the mind. It is indicated for insomnia due to yang hyperactivity.	重镇安神	zhòng zhèn ān shén	潜镇安神
2529	Calm and settle the mind	Calm the mind and alleviate palpitations	A treatment method to remove pathogenic factors and nourish the heart. It is indicated for severe palpitations, insomnia, poor memory and panic.	安神定志	ān shén dìng zhì	安神定悸; 宁心定志; 宁心定悸

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2530	Nourish the heart and calm the mind	Reinforce the heart and calm the mind	A treatment method to reinforce the heart and nourish blood. It is indicated for palpitations, insomnia, dream-disturbed sleep, poor memory and panic due to heart deficiency.	养心安神	yǎng xīn ān shén	补心安神
2531	Nourish blood and calm the mind		A treatment method to tonify blood and nourish the heart. It is indicated for palpitations, insomnia, dream-disturbed sleep, poor memory and panic due to heart blood deficiency.	养血安神	yǎng xuè ān shén	
2532	Benefit the kidney and calm the mind		A treatment method to tonify kidney essence. It is indicated for palpitations or insomnia due to fear disturbing the mind qi or disharmony between the heart and kidney.	益肾宁神	yì shèn níng shén	
2533	Supplement qi and calm the mind		A treatment method to tonify qi, nourish the heart and calm the mind. It is indicated for restlessness due to heart qi deficiency.	益气安神	yì qì ān shén	益气定神
2534	Nourish yin and calm the mind		A treatment method to nourish heart yin and calm the mind. It is indicated for restlessness due to heart yin deficiency.	滋阴安神	zī yīn ān shén	养阴安神
2535	Harmonize the middle jiao and calm the mind	Harmonize the stomach and calm the mind	A treatment method to promote digestion, harmonize the stomach and calm the mind. It is indicated for insomnia due to stomach discomfort.	和中安神	hé zhōng ān shén	和胃安神
2536	Remove toxins and calm the mind		A treatment method to remove toxins, transform turbidity and calm the mind. It is indicated for toxic turbidity disturbing the mind.	解毒安神	jiě dú ān shén	
2537	Relieve stagnation and calm the mind		A treatment method to relieve stagnation, regulate qi and calm the mind. It is indicated for grief affecting the mind due to depression.	解郁安神	jiě yù ān shén	
2538	Calm the mind and relieve itch		A treatment method to nourish blood and calm the mind. It is indicated for itching or restlessness due to yin blood failing to nourish the skin.	安神止痒	ān shén zhǐ yǎng	
2539	Tranquillize and calm the mind		A treatment method to calm the mind with heavy medicinal minerals. It is indicated for fear/fright disturbing the mind.	镇惊安神	zhèn jīng ān shén	镇心安神

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2540	Digestion-promoting methods		Treatment methods to promote digestion to eliminate stagnation, disperse masses and soften hardness	消导法	xiao dǎo fǎ	
2541	Promote digestion and eliminate stagnation		A treatment method to promote digestion and resolve stagnation. It is indicated for food retention in the stomach and intestines.	消食导滞	xiāo shí dǎo zhì	消食化滞
2542	Clear heat and eliminate stagnation		A treatment method to combine medicines to promote digestion, resolve stagnation and clear heat. It is indicated for stomach heat due to food retention or food retention in the stomach and intestines.	清热导滞	qīng rè dǎo zhì	泄热导滞
2543	Resolve stagnation and transform indigestion		A treatment method to promote digestion and transform stagnation. It is indicated for masses or distension due to food retention and qi stagnation.	消痞化积	xiāo pǐ huà jī	
2544	Soften hardness and dissipate masses		A treatment method to circulate qi, move blood, soften hardness and dissipate masses. It is indicated for goitre or masses due to qi stagnation and blood stasis.	软坚散结	ruǎn jiān sàn jiē	软坚消结; 软坚消癭; 软坚消癥; 软坚消肿
2545	Resolve stones and promote bowel movements		A treatment method to resolve stones, circulate qi and promote bowel movements. It is indicated for stones obstructing the flow of qi.	消石导滞	xiāo shí dǎo zhì	
2546	Securing and astringent methods		Treatment methods to secure qi, blood, fluids and essence from consumption	固涩法	gù sè fǎ	
2547	Secure the exterior and stop sweating	Astringe sweating and secure the exterior	A treatment method to secure the exterior to stop sweating. It is indicated for spontaneous sweating due to insecure Wei-defensive qi.	固表止汗	gù biǎo zhǐ hàn	固表敛汗; 敛汗固表
2548	Astringe the lung and relieve cough		A treatment method to tonify and astringe lung qi to stop coughing. It is indicated for cough due to lung qi deficiency.	敛肺止咳	liǎn fèi zhǐ ké	
2549	Astringe the lung and alleviate panting/ tachypnoea		A treatment method to tonify and astringe lung qi to alleviate panting. It is indicated for fast breathing due to lung qi deficiency.	敛肺平喘	liǎn fèi píng chuǎn	



WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2550	Astringe the intestine and stop diarrhoea	Secure the intestine and stop diarrhoea	A treatment method to astringe the intestine to stop diarrhoea. It is indicated for chronic diarrhoea.	涩肠止泻	sè cháng zhǐ xiè	固肠止泻
2551	Astringe essence and stop seminal emissions		A treatment method to astringe and secure the kidney essence to stop seminal emissions. It is indicated for nocturnal emissions or spermatorrhoea.	涩精止遗	sè jīng zhǐ yí	
2552	Secure menses and stop bleeding		A treatment method to astringe menses to stop bleeding. It is indicated for heavy menstruation.	固经止血	gù jīng zhǐ xiě	
2553	Secure blood and stop bleeding		A treatment method to astringe and secure blood to stop bleeding. It is indicated for bleeding due to qi failing to keep blood within the vessels.	固摄止血	gù shè zhǐ xiě	摄血止血
2554	Secure the Chong meridian and stop leucorrhoea	Secure the kidney and stop leucorrhoea	A treatment method to tonify the kidney and secure Chong and Ren meridians to stop vaginal discharges. It is indicated for vaginal discharges due to kidney deficiency and insecurity of the Chong and Ren meridians.	固冲止带	gù chōng zhǐ dài	固肾止带; 固涩止带
2555	Reinforce the kidney and secure the fetus		A treatment method to tonify kidney qi to secure the fetus. It is indicated for threatened abortion due to kidney deficiency.	固肾安胎	gù shèn ān tāi	
2556	Stop bleeding and secure the fetus		A treatment method to stop bleeding and secure the fetus.	止血安胎	zhǐ xiě ān tāi	
2557	Tonify qi and astringe the breast milk		A treatment method to tonify qi and astringe breast milk. It is indicated for spontaneous flow of breast milk due to qi deficiency.	固涩敛乳	gù sè liǎn rǔ	固涩摄乳; 补气敛乳; 固涩摄乳; 补气摄乳
2558	Tonify qi and astringe tears		A treatment method to tonify qi and stop lacrimation. It is indicated for spontaneous flow of tears due to qi deficiency.	固摄敛泪	gù shè liǎn lèi	收敛止泪
2559	Secure the bladder and stop enuresis	Tonify qi and secure the bladder	A treatment method to tonify kidney qi to secure the urinary bladder. It is indicated for enuresis or urinary incontinence due to kidney qi insecurity.	固脬止遗	gù pāo zhǐ yí	固脬止尿; 固脬止淋; 补气固脬
2560	Tonify qi and facilitate its securing function		A treatment method to tonify qi to facilitate its securing function. It is indicated for conditions due to qi failing to secure blood, fluids or essence, etc.	补气固摄	bǔ qì gù shè	益气固摄

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2561	Secure and astringe yin fluids	Astringe yin and prevent collapse	A treatment method to astringe and nourish yin fluids. It is indicated for exhaustion of yin fluids.	固护阴液	gù hù yīn yè	敛阴固脱
2562	Warm yang and prevent qi exhaustion		A treatment method to warm yang, tonify qi and prevent collapse. It is indicated for yang qi failure.	温阳固脱	wēn yáng gù tuō	温涩固脱
2563	Lift and secure qi		A treatment method to combine medicines to supplement, lift and astringe qi. It is indicated for qi failing to secure blood, fluid or essence, etc.	升提固涩	shēng tí gù sè	升清固涩
2564	Tonify the kidney to facilitate its astringent function		A treatment method to tonify kidney qi and facilitate its securing function. It is indicated for kidney qi insecurity.	补肾固涩	bǔ shèn gù sè	固摄下元
2565	<b>Sore-/ulcer-resolving methods</b>		<b>Treatment methods to resolve superficial or suppurative skin conditions</b>	<b>治痈疡法</b>	<b>zhì yōng yáng fǎ</b>	
2566	Remove toxins and resolve sores/ulcers		A treatment method to remove toxins and resolve sores or ulcers.	解毒散痈	jiě dú sàn yōng	
2567	Remove toxins and resolve swelling	Remove toxins and resolve masses	A treatment method to remove toxins, resolve sores/ulcers and eliminate swelling.	解毒消肿	jiě dú xiāo zhǒng	化毒消肿;化毒散结;解毒散结
2568	Clear heat and drain the pus		A treatment method to clear heat, remove toxins and drain the pus of sores or ulcers.	清热排脓	qīng rè pái nóng	
2569	Eliminate dead tissues and regenerate new tissues		A treatment method to eliminate dead tissues, regenerate flesh and speed up wound healing.	祛腐生肌	qū fǔ shēng jī	去腐生肌
2570	Resolve abscesses and dissipate boils		A treatment method to resolve swelling, remove toxins and eliminate boils.	消痈散疔	xiāo yōng sàn jiē	
2571	Dry dampness and astringe wound		A treatment method to dry dampness, regenerate flesh and speed up ulcerative wound healing.	燥湿敛疮	zào shī liǎn chuāng	
2572	Clear and remove residual toxins	Clear hidden toxins	A treatment method to clear heat and remove hidden toxins.	清解余毒	qīng jiě yú dú	清透伏邪
2573	Astringe sores/ulcers and stop pain		A treatment method to alleviate pain and speed up ulcerative wound healing.	敛疮止痛	liǎn chuāng zhǐ tòng	
2574	Remove toxins with toxins	Fight poison with poison	A treatment method to remove toxins with poisonous medicines.	以毒攻毒	yǐ dú gōng dú	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2575	Draw out pus and toxin		A treatment method to drain pus through therapies or formulas to draw out pus and toxin.	提脓拔毒	tí nóng bá dú	
2576	Draw pus and eliminate putridity		A treatment method to drain pus and eliminate dead tissues through therapies or formulas to draw pus and remove putridity.	提脓祛腐	tí nóng qū fǔ	
2577	Methods for eyes and ear, nose and throat problems		Treatment methods for problems of the eyes, noses lips, tongue and ears	治五官法	zhì wǔ guān fǎ	
2578	Brighten the eyes		A treatment method to remove wind, clear heat, cool blood, transform stasis, nourish blood, supplement qi, nourish yin, strengthen the spleen and tonify the liver and kidney to remove pathogenic factors, reinforce anti-pathogenic qi and benefit the eyes. It is indicated for blurred vision.	明目	míng mù	
2579	Unblock the ears	Benefit the ears	A treatment method to remove pathogenic factors, reinforce anti-pathogenic qi and benefit the ears.	通耳	tōng ěr	利耳
2580	Unblock the nose		A treatment method to remove pathogenic factors, reinforce anti-pathogenic qi and benefit the nose.	通鼻	tōng bí	
2581	Clear the throat		A treatment method to remove pathogenic factors, reinforce anti-pathogenic qi and benefit the throat.	利咽	lì yān	
2582	Restore the voice		A treatment method to remove pathogenic factors, reinforce anti-pathogenic qi and restore the voice. It is indicated for hoarseness.	开音	kāi yīn	
2583	Secure the teeth		A treatment method to remove pathogenic factors, reinforce anti-pathogenic qi, secure the teeth and moisten the gums.	固齿	gù chǐ	
2584	Other treatment methods			其他治法	qí tā zhì fǎ	
2585	Nourish yin fluids to submerge yang		A treatment method to nourish yin fluids to contain hyperactivity of yang qi. It is indicated for hyperactivity of yang due to yin deficiency.	壮水制阳	zhuàng shuǐ zhì yáng	滋阴抑阳

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2586	Warm yang to dissipate yin cold		A treatment method to warm and reinforce yang qi to dissipate yin cold. It is indicated for yin cold due to yang deficiency.	益火消阴	yì huǒ xiāo yīn	壮阳消阴
2587	Guide fire to its origin	Guide dragon to the sea	A treatment method to reinforce kidney yang and combine medicines that enter meridians to astringe floating yang qi, i.e. to guide kidney yang into kidney yin. It is indicated for decline of vital fire or floating of deficiency yang.	引火归原	yǐn huǒ guī yuán	导龙入海
2588	Harmonize the Ying nutrients and regenerate new tissues		A treatment method to harmonize between the Ying nutrients and blood, circulate blood, regenerate new blood and flesh, and speed up wound healing. It is indicated for delayed wound healing due to blood stagnation.	和营生新	hé yíng shēng xīn	
2589	Disperse and unblock the three jiao	Disperse and unblock triple energizer	A treatment method to regulate qi, eliminate pathogenic factors and unblock the three jiao. It is indicated for pathogenic factors impairing the qi flow of the three jiao.	宣通三焦	xuān tōng sān jiāo	
2590	Coordinate the heart and kidney		A treatment method to nourish kidney yin, astringe kidney yang, reduce heart fire and calm the heart mind to submerge yang and coordinate between the heart and kidney. It is indicated for conditions due to disharmony between the heart fire and kidney water.	交通心肾	jiāo tōng xīn shèn	
2591	Clear the head and eyes		A treatment method to clear heat, reduce fire, submerge yang and clear the head and eyes. It is indicated for headache, eye pain and dizziness due to upward flaming of fire heat or hyperactivity of yang qi.	清利头目	qīng lì tóu mù	
2592	Lubricate the orifices		A treatment method to lubricate and unblock orifices. It is indicated for dry orifices due to insufficiency of yin fluids.	滑利窍道	huá lì qiào dào	
2593	Open the chest and sooth the diaphragm		A treatment method to eliminate pathogenic factors, regulate qi, lift yang, and down-regulate turbidity to soothe the chest and diaphragm. It is indicated for chest stuffiness, distension, fullness and tightness.	宽胸利膈	kuān xiōng lì gé	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2594	Repair broken sinews and bones		A treatment method to use tuina or other therapies to repair the broken sinews or bones. It is indicated for sinew or bone injuries.	续筋接骨	xù jīn jiē gǔ	
2595	Strengthen the sinews and bones		A treatment method to strengthen the sinews or bones through exercise or taking medicine. It is indicated for weak sinews/bones due to heredity, trauma or chronic diseases.	强筋壮骨	qiáng jīn zhuàng gǔ	
2596	Disperse nodules/masses	Soften hardness	A treatment method to eliminate phlegm, regulate qi, break stasis and unblock collaterals to soften hardness, disperses nodules and resolve masses. It is indicated for masses, lumps or swelling.	散结	sàn jié	软坚
2597	Reinforce metal and inhibit wood		A treatment method to disperse the lung (metal) and inhibit the liver (wood). It is indicated for migratory pain in the subcostal region, cough or panting due to hyperactivity of liver yang and failure of lung qi to disperse and descend.	佐金平木	zuǒ jīn píng mù	
2598	Supplement fire to cultivate earth		A treatment method to warm and reinforce the vital fire to supplement the transportation and transformation of the spleen (earth). It is indicated for early morning diarrhoea due to decline of the vital fire and spleen yang deficiency.	益火生土	yì huǒ shēng tǔ	
2599	Mutual generation between metal and water		A treatment method to tonify the kidney and nourish the lung for lung deficiency and kidney deficiency, since the lung (metal) and kidney (water) mutually support physiologically and mutually affect pathologically.	金水相生	jīn shuǐ xiāng shēng	
2600	Cultivate earth to restrain water		A treatment method to tonify the spleen (earth) to restrain overflow of water dampness. It is indicated for oedema or diarrhoea due to spleen deficiency.	培土制水	péi tǔ zhì shuǐ	
2601	Reduce the south to reinforce the north		A treatment method to reduce heart fire and reinforce kidney water. The south here refers to heart fire, whereas the north refers to kidney water.	泻南补北	xiè nán bǔ běi	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2602	3.3 Chinese medicine treatment			3.3 药物治疗类		
2603	The categories of Chinese medicines		Knowledge about the concept of Chinese medicines, the basic theories as well as the origin, production, processing, property, actions and indications of medicines	中药类	zhōng yào lèi	
2604	Chinese medicines	Chinese herbal medicines	Medicines to prevent, treat and diagnose diseases under the guidance of Chinese medical theories.	中药	zhōng yào	
2605	Theory and practice of Chinese medicines		The study of basic theories, origin, production, processing, property, actions, indications and application of Chinese medicines.	中药学	zhōng yào xué	
2606	Materia medica		An ancient term for Chinese medicine, mainly referring to medicinal plants.	本草	běn cǎo	
2607	Folk medicines		Regional herbal medicines that may not be recorded in major books on materia medica; however, they are an integral part of Chinese medicine.	草药	cǎo yào	
2608	Raw Chinese medicines		Raw materials include medicinal plants, animals and minerals that can be prepared into pieces, extracts or Chinese patent medicine.	中药材	zhōng yào cái	
2609	Geo-authentic materia medica		High-quality Chinese medicines produced in specific geographical areas.	道地药材	dào dì yào cái	
2610	Decoction-ready medicines		Prepared herbal pieces that can be used directly in clinical use or preparation production.	饮片	yǐn piàn	
2611	Medicinal granules		A new dosage form with standardized specification, dosage and quality manufactured through extracting, separating, condensing, drying, granulating or packaging.	配方颗粒	pèi fāng kē lì	
2612	Processing of medicines		A sequence of medicinal processing techniques to make materia medica into prepared pieces or different dosage forms. These techniques are adopted according to theories of Chinese medicine and medicinal properties.	炮制	páo zhì	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2613	Medicinal processing		The preliminary processing method of Chinese medicines, including purification, crushing and cutting.	修治	xiū zhì	修制
2614	Cleaning		A method to remove dust, impurities and clean medicines by picking, selecting, sieving, scraping and brushing.	纯净处理	chún jìng chǔ lǐ	
2615	Crushing		A method to grind medicines by pounding, grinding, filing and crushing.	粉碎处理	fěn suì chǔ lǐ	
2616	Cutting		A method to cut medicines into pieces, blocks, threads or segments for preparation, drying, storage and weighing.	切制处理	qiē zhì chǔ lǐ	
2617	Water processing		A processing method to use water or other liquid auxiliary materials, including washing, bleaching, soaking, refining with water, etc.	水制	shuǐ zhì	
2618	Moistening		A method to moisten and soften medicines with water or other liquids before cutting, including water spraying, washing, soaking, infiltrating, drying, etc.	润	rùn	闷; 伏
2619	Water-grinding		A method to obtain extremely fine medicinal powder in water.	水飞	shuǐ fēi	
2620	Flushing		A method to soak medicines in static or running water for a period of time and exchange water regularly to remove the fishy smell, salt or toxic ingredients.	漂	piāo	
2621	Fire processing		A processing method to use heat or fire, including frying, roasting, calcining, etc.	火制	huǒ zhì	
2622	Stir-frying		A method to stir fry medicines in a pot to a certain temperature degree, including plain frying or frying with adjuvants.	炒	chǎo	
2623	Plain stir-frying		A method to fry without adjuvants. According to the temperature, plain stir-frying is divided into fried yellow, scorch fry and charcoaled fry.	清炒	qīng chǎo	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2624	Adjuvants		These include liquid materials such as alcohol, vinegar or honey and non-liquid materials such as starch, sugar or salt. The stir-fry method involves medicines and solid materials. These include stir-frying with bran, rice, soil, sand, talcum powder or clamshell powder.	辅料	fǔ liào	
2625	Stir-fry with liquid adjuvants		A method to use liquid adjuvants to stir-fry medicines to change the medicinal property, reinforce the efficacy and reduce side-effects. The excipients include wine, vinegar, salt, ginger, honey or oil.	炙	zhì	
2626	Calcine		A method to calcine medicines directly or indirectly with a strong fire to fully extract the active ingredients and achieve maximal efficacy.	煨	duàn	
2627	Roast		A method to wrap medicines with water-mixed flour or wet paper, placed in the heat of the ash, or heated with oil-absorbent paper separated from the drug barrier so that the medicine is turned from raw to cooked.	煨	wēi	
2628	Processing with both water and fire		A processing method to wrap medicines with wet tissue and place into fire or isolate with oil-absorbing sheets.	水火共制	shuǐ huǒ gòng zhì	
2629	Boiling		A method to heat medicines with water or liquid excipients.	煮	zhǔ	
2630	Steaming		A method to steam or heat with water.	蒸	zhēng	
2631	Blanching		A method to blanch in boiling water and take out immediately for drying process.	焯	chāo	
2632	Quenching		A method to calcine medicines and place into cold water or liquid excipient quickly for easy crushing and absorption.	淬	cuì	
2633	Spoilage of Chinese medicines		Physical or chemical changes in Chinese medicines due to inappropriate care in transportation or storage. These changes include mildew, worm-eaten, discolouration, flavour reversion, oiliness or air-slake and can directly affect the medicinal quality, efficacy and safety.	中药变质	zhōng yào biàn zhì	



WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2634	Adverse reactions to Chinese medicines		These include side-effects or toxic reactions. Following the standard dosage, side-effects of Chinese medicines are often mild and can resolve spontaneously without treatment. Toxic reactions are often caused by overdose or prolonged use of poisonous materia medica, and can do substantial damage to the organs and functions.	中药不良反应	zhōng yào bù liáng fǎn yīng	
2635	Medicinal peculiarity		Peculiar features and actions of medicines.	药物偏性	yào wù piān xìng	
2636	Properties of Chinese medicines		The core part of essential theories on Chinese medicines. These include four properties, five flavours, ascending/floating, descending/sinking, meridian tropism and toxicity.	中药性能	zhōng yào xìng néng	
2637	Characteristics of Chinese medicines		Physical or chemical characteristics of Chinese medicines, including their shape, colour, odour, taste and properties.	中药性状	zhōng yào xìng zhuàng	
2638	Four qi and and five flavours		The basic properties and flavours of Chinese medicines.	四气五味	sì qì wǔ wèi	
2639	Four qi		The four basic properties of medicines—cold, hot, warmth, and coolness.	四气	sì qì	四性
2640	Warm/heat-property medicines		Medicines to remove or alleviate cold-induced disorders.	温热药	wēn rè yào	
2641	Cold/cool-property medicines		Medicines to remove or alleviate heat-induced disorders.	寒凉药	hán liáng yào	
2642	Neutral-property medicines		Medicines with no obvious property of cold or heat.	平性药	píng xìng yào	
2643	Pungent flavour		Medicines with a pungent flavour act to disperse/circulate qi and move blood. They are indicated for exterior pattern, qi stagnation and blood stasis.	辛味	xīn wèi	
2644	Bitter flavour		Medicines with a bitter flavour act to unblock, purge the intestine, dry dampness, clear fire and benefit yin. They are indicated for fire heat, dampness, adverse flow of qi and fire hyperactivity due to yin deficiency.	苦味	kǔ wèi	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2645	Sweet flavour		Medicines with a sweet flavour act to tonify, harmonize the middle jiao and relieve spasm. They are indicated for deficiency pattern, disharmony between the spleen and stomach, spasm, pain, etc.	甘味	gān wèi	
2646	Sour flavour		Medicines with a sour flavour act to astringe and secure. They are indicated for sweating (due to deficiency), diarrhoea, frequent urination, enuresis, bleeding, etc. Some sour-flavoured medicines can generate fluids, calm worms and stop pain.	酸味	suān wèi	
2647	Astringent flavour		Medicines with an astringent flavour act to astringe and secure. They are indicated for sweating (due to deficiency), diarrhoea, frequent urination, enuresis, bleeding, etc.	涩味	sè wèi	
2648	Salty flavour		Medicines with a salty flavour act to purge the intestine, promote bowel movements and soften masses. They are indicated for constipation, goitre, scrofula, phlegm nodules and masses.	咸味	xián wèi	
2649	Bland flavour		Medicines with a bland flavour act to drain dampness and promote urination. They are indicated for oedema, dysuria and leg swelling.	淡味	dàn wèi	
2650	Pungent and sweet transform into yang		The combination of a pungent and sweet flavour engenders a dispersing, outward and yang-assisting function. This includes a single medicine with both flavours or combined pungent and sweet medicines.	辛甘化阳	xīn gān huà yáng	
2651	Sour and sweet transform into yin		The combination of a sour and sweet flavour engenders a fluid-generating, inward and astringing function. This includes a single medicinal with both flavours or combined sour and sweet medicines.	酸甘化阴	suān gān huà yīn	
2652	Pungent opening and bitter descending		The combination of a pungent and bitter flavour allows for dispersal of obstruction and the descent of qi. This includes a single medicine with both flavours or combined pungent and bitter medicines.	辛开苦降	xīn kāi kǔ jiàng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2653	Ascending, descending, floating and sinking		The four cardinal directionalities of medicines: ascending, descending, sinking and floating. These four directions are associated with the weight, property, preparation and combination of medicines.	升降浮沉	shēng jiàng fú chén	
2654	Ascending and floating medicines		Medicines to lift yang, release the exterior, induce vomiting, open the orifices, etc. They tend to go upward and outward.	升浮药	shēng fú yào	
2655	Sinking and descending medicines		Medicines to purge the intestine, resolve water retention, submerge yang and astringe. They tend to go inward and downward.	沉降药	chén jiàng yào	
2656	Meridian affinity	Channel affinity	The ability of medicines to access a channel/meridian. Meridian affinity is based on the theories on zang-fu organs and meridians.	归经	guī jīng	
2657	Meridian-guiding property		A property that medicines have special role for certain zang-fu organs or meridians and can guide other medicines to reach the affected meridians and body parts.	引经报使	yǐn jīng bào shǐ	
2658	Meridian guide	Channel guide	Medicines with the ability to guide other ingredients of a formula to access a particular channel/meridian.	引经药	yǐn jīng yào	
2659	Compatibility	Combination	The combination, according to Chinese medicine theory, of two or more medicines to achieve a pre-determined clinical outcome.	配伍	pèi wǔ	
2660	Seven compatibility methods		Compatibility methods of Chinese medicines, including the using of a single medicine, mutual reinforcement, mutual assistance, mutual restraint, mutual suppression, mutual inhibition and mutual opposition.	七情和合	qī qíng hé hé	
2661	Single medicine		Use a single medicine alone to treat a disorder.	单行	dān xíng	
2662	Mutual reinforcement		Use two medicines sharing similar properties in combination to reinforce each other's action.	相须	xiāng xū	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2663	Mutual assistance		Use two or more medicines sharing common efficacies in combination, one being the principal medicine while the others play a subsidiary role to reinforce the action of the principal one.	相使	xiāng shǐ	
2664	Mutual restraint		When two medicines are used in combination, the toxic or side-effects of one medicine can be reduced or eliminated by the other.	相畏	xiāng wèi	
2665	Mutual suppression		When two medicines are used in combination, one medicine can reduce or eliminate the toxic or side-effects of the other.	相杀	xiāng shā	
2666	Mutual aversion		When two medicines are used in combination, the positive effects of one medicine can be reduced or eliminated by the other.	相恶	xiāng wù	
2667	Mutual opposition	Mutual incompatibility	When two medicines are used in combination, their toxic or side-effects can be produced or enhanced.	相反	xiāng fǎn	
2668	Contraindicated combination		Combination of some medicines can reduce the curative effect, produce or enhance toxic or side-effects and/or affect the safety of medicines. These combinations should be avoided. Specifically, there are eighteen antagonisms and nineteen incompatibilities.	配伍禁忌	pèi wǔ jìn jì	
2669	Eighteen incompatibilities		One of the contraindicated combinations of Chinese medicines. These include: Gan Cao (Radix Glycyrrhizae) is antagonistic to Da Ji (Radix Euphorbiae Pekinensis), Yuan Hua (Flos Genkwa), Gan Sui (Radix Euphorbiae Kansui) and Hai Zao (Sargassum); Wu Tou (Radix Aconiti) is antagonistic to Bei Mu (Bulbus Fritillariae), Gua Lou (Fructus Trichosanthis), Ban Xia (Rhizoma Pinelliae), Bai Lian (Radix Ampelopsis) and Bai Ji (Rhizoma Bletillae); and Li Lu (Radix Veratri Nigri) is antagonistic to Ren Shen (Radix Ginseng), Sha Shen (Radix Salviae Miltiorrhizae), Dan Shen (Radix Adenophorae), Ku Shen (Radix Sophorae Flavescentis), Xuan Shen (Radix Scrophulariae), Xi Xin (Herba Asari) and Shao Yao (Radix Paeoniae).	十八反	shí bā fǎn	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2670	Nineteen incompatibilities		One of the contraindicated combinations of Chinese medicines. These include: Liu Huang (sulfur) is incompatible with Pu Xiao (crude sodium sulfate), Shui Yin (mercury) with Pi Shuang (arsenic trioxide), Lang Du (Radix Euphorbiae Ebracteolatae) Mi Tuo Seng (litharge), Ba Dou (Semen Crotonis) with Qian Niu (Semen Pharbitidis), Ding Xiang (Flos Caryophylli) with Yu Jin (Radix Curcumae), Ya Xiao (crystalline sodium sulfate) with San Leng (Rhizoma Sparganii), Chuan Wu (Radix Aconiti) and Cao Wu (Radix Aconiti Kuznezoffi) with Xi Jiao (Cornu Rhinoceri), Ren Shen (Radix Ginseng) with Wu Ling Zhi (with Faeces Troglodytorum), and Guan Gui (Cortex Cinnamomi) with Shi Zhi (Halleysium Rubrum).	十九畏	shí jiǔ wèi	
2671	Medicine contraindications		Medicines that may aggravate medical conditions should be avoided.	证候用药禁忌	zhèng hòu yòng yào jìn jì	病证用药禁忌
2672	Contraindicated medicines during pregnancy		Medicines that are absolutely contraindicated to use or used with caution during pregnancy. Absolutely contraindicated medicines are toxic, harsh or abortive. Medicines to circulate blood, move qi, and drain downward, and warm, pungent medicines to warm the interior should be used with caution.	妊娠用药禁忌	rèn shēn yòng yào jìn jì	
2673	Dietary contraindication during medication		Food that should be avoided while taking medication.	服药食忌	fú yào shí jì	
2674	Decoction		A liquid made by decocting prepared pieces of Chinese medicines in water.	汤液	tāng yè	
2675	Decoction method		The decoction of Chinese medicine involves the pot, water, heat control, and decocting method.	煎药法	jiān yào fǎ	
2676	Heat control in decoction		This includes the heat intensity and decocting duration. It includes quick (strong) fire and slow (mild) fire. Generally, a quick fire is used to boil and then reduced to mild fire (a simmering heat) to maintain the temperature.	煎药火候	jiān yào huǒ hòu	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2677	Mild fire	Slow fire	A mild and slow fire to maintain the temperature in decocting Chinese medicine after boiling.	文火	wén huǒ	慢火;微火
2678	Strong fire	Intense fire, quick fire	A strong and quick fire in decocting Chinese medicine.	武火	wǔ huǒ	急火;紧火
2679	Decoct first		A method for insoluble minerals, rocks or shells that require a long time to decoct. These ingredients need to be ground and decocted 30–60 minutes first before placing into the rest of the decoction. Toxic medicines need to decoct first for 60–120 minutes before placing into the rest of the decoction to reduce their toxicity.	先煎	xiān jiān	
2680	Decoct separately		A method to decoct some medicines separately (2–3 hours), usually precious medicines, to ensure that the ingredients remain active.	另煎	lìng jiān	另炖
2681	Dissolve in water		A method to pour the medicine directly into water or other boiling liquid. Valuable medicines need to be ground into fine powder first.	冲服	chōng fú	
2682	Taken after being infused in hot water		A method to soak medicines in hot water or decoctions for half an hour and then take the medication after removing the dregs.	泡服	pào fú	焯服
2683	Use decoction as water	Use decoction instead of water	A method to decoct some ingredients separately and then use the decoction instead of water to decoct the rest of the ingredients. This method has two purposes: 1) to prevent the separately decocted ingredients causing the decoction to appear cloudy or muddy; 2) applies to ingredients that are light in weight, big in dosage and volume, and strong in water absorption.	煎汤代水	jiān tāng dài shuǐ	
2684	Exterior-releasing medicines		Medicines to release the exterior. They are indicated for exterior pattern. Based on the property and actions, these medicines are further categorized into two types: medicines to remove wind and dissipate cold and medicines to remove wind and clear heat.	解表药	jiě biǎo yào	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2685	Pungent warm exterior-releasing medicines	Wind-cold dissipating medicines	Medicines that are pungent in flavour and warm in property. They mainly act to remove wind and dissipate cold and are indicated for wind cold exterior pattern. Some medicines can also remove wind, alleviate itching, relieve pain, stop coughing, promote urination to resolve oedema, and heal sores/ulcers. These medicines can be used for wind cold-induced itchy rashes, cough, oedema, sores/ulcers, and bi-impediment due to wind and dampness.	辛温解表药	xīn wēn jiě biǎo yào	发散风寒药
2686	Pungent cool exterior-releasing medicines	Wind-heat dissipating medicines	Medicines that are pungent in flavour and cool in property. They mainly act to remove wind and clear heat and are indicated for wind heat exterior pattern. Some medicines can also clear the head/eyes, benefit the throat, promote skin eruption and stop coughing. These medicines can be used for wind heat-induced red, swollen and painful eyes, red, swollen throat, inhibited skin eruption, and cough due to wind heat.	辛凉解表药	xīn liáng jiě biǎo yào	发散风热药
2687	Interior heat-clearing medicines		Medicines to clear interior heat. They are indicated for interior heat pattern. Based on the property and actions, these medicines are further categorized into five types: medicines to clear heat/fire, medicines to clear heat and dry dampness, medicines to clear heat and cool blood, and medicines to clear deficiency heat.	清热药	qīng rè yào	
2688	Heat-clearing and fire-draining medicines		Medicines that are bitter or sweet in flavour and cold in nature. They are mainly indicated for excess heat in the qi phase and fire heat in the zang-fu organs, including lung heat, stomach fire, heart fire or liver fire.	清热泻火药	qīng rè xiè huǒ yào	
2689	Heat-clearing and dampness-drying medicines		Medicines that are bitter in flavour and cold in property. They mainly act to clear heat and dry dampness and are indicated for damp heat pattern.	清热燥湿药	qīng rè zào shī yào	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2690	Heat-clearing and blood-cooling medicines		Medicines that are sweet, bitter or salty in flavour and cold in property. They are mainly indicated for excess heat in the Ying nutrients and blood phases. Some medicines can also nourish yin and engender fluids. These medicines can be used for yin deficiency causing damage to fluids.	清热凉血药	qīng rè liáng xuè yào	
2691	Heat-clearing and toxin-removing medicines		Medicines that are bitter in flavour and cold in property. They mainly act to clear heat and remove toxins and are therefore indicated for conditions due to toxic heat. Some medicines can also be used for snake bite or cancer.	清热解毒药	qīng rè jiě dú yào	
2692	Deficiency heat-clearing medicines		Medicine that are cold/cool in property. They mainly act to clear deficiency heat and alleviate bone-steaming sensation. They are indicated for internal heat due to yin deficiency.	清虚热药	qīng xū rè yào	
2693	Purgative medicines		Medicines to produce bowel movements. They are indicated for constipation or difficulty passing of stools. Based on the property and actions, these medicines are further categorized into three types: draining purgative medicines, moistening purgative medicines and drastic purgative medicines.	泻下药	xiè xià yào	
2694	Draining purgative medicines	Attacking purgative medicines	Medicines that are bitter in flavour and cold in property. They have strong effect in promoting bowel movements and clearing fire/heat. These medicines are indicated for constipation due to excess heat and retention of dry faeces.	攻下药	gōng xià yào	
2695	Moistening purgative medicines		Medicines that are sweet in flavour and oily in quality. They mainly act to moisten the intestine, soften faeces and promote bowel movements. They are indicated for constipation due to exhaustion of fluids, yin deficiency or blood deficiency resulting from ageing, a weak constitution, chronic disease and childbirth.	润下药	rùn xià yào	



WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2696	Drastic water-expelling medicines		Medicines that are bitter in flavour and cold in property. These medicines often have a drastic effect and can cause severe diarrhoea and relieve retained water. They are indicated for oedema, pleural effusion, ascites, or panting due to phlegm-fluid retention.	峻下逐水药	jùn xià zhú shuǐ yào	
2697	Wind-eliminating and dampness-resolving medicines		Medicines to eliminate wind, resolve dampness and alleviate pain. They are indicated for bi-impediment patterns. Based on the bi-impediment category and medicinal property, these medicines are further categorized into three types: medicines to remove wind and resolve dampness; medicines to remove wind, clear heat and resolve dampness; and medicines to remove wind, resolve dampness and strengthen tendons and bones.	祛风湿药	qū fēng shī yào	
2698	Dampness-transforming medicines		Medicines that are aromatic in smell and dry in property. They mainly act to transform dampness and benefit the spleen. These medicines are indicated for dampness affecting the spleen and stomach.	化湿药	huà shī yào	芳香化湿药
2699	Urination-promoting and dampness-draining medicines		Medicines to unblock the water passage and drain water dampness. They are indicated for internal retention of water dampness.	利水渗湿药	lì shuǐ shèn shī yào	
2700	Interior-warming medicines		Medicines to warm the interior and dissipate cold. They are indicated for interior cold pattern.	温里药	wēn lǐ yào	祛寒药
2701	Qi-regulating medicines		Medicines to regulate qi activity. They are indicated for qi stagnation and adverse flow of qi.	理气药	lǐ qì yào	
2702	Digestion-promoting medicines		Medicines to promote digestion and transform food stagnation. They are indicated for disorders due to food stagnation.	消食药	xiāo shí yào	
2703	Parasite-expelling medicines		Medicines to expel or kill parasites. They are indicated for intestinal parasites.	驱虫药	qū chóng yào	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2704	Haemostatic medicines		Medicines to stop bleeding. They are indicated for internal or external bleeding. Based on the property and functions, these medicines are further categorized into four types: medicines to cool blood and stop bleeding, medicines to transform stasis and stop bleeding, medicines to astringe and stop bleeding and medicines to warm meridians and stop bleeding.	止血药	zhǐ xuè yào	
2705	Blood-cooling haemostatic medicines		Medicines that are sweet and bitter in flavour and cold and cool in property. They mainly act to clear pathogenic heat in the blood phase. These medicines are indicated for bleeding due to heat-induced reckless blood flow.	凉血止血药	liáng xuè zhǐ xuè yào	
2706	Blood-circulating haemostatic medicines	Stasis-transforming haemostatic medicines	Medicines to stop bleeding and circulate blood to transform stasis. They act to stop bleeding but do not cause stasis; and circulate blood but do not cause bleeding. These medicines are indicated for haemorrhagic conditions due to stagnant blood or blood failing to circulate within the vessels.	化瘀止血药	huà yū zhǐ xuè yào	活血止血药
2707	Astringent haemostatic medicines		Medicines that are astringent and neutral in property. They mainly act to astringe and stop bleeding. These medicines are widely used for all kinds of bleeding.	收敛止血药	shōu liǎn zhǐ xuè yào	
2708	Meridian-warming haemostatic medicines		Medicines that are warm/heat in property. They mainly act to warm the interior, dissipate cold, warm meridians and stop bleeding. These medicines are indicated for bleeding due to deficiency cold.	温经止血药	wēn jīng zhǐ xuè yào	
2709	Blood-circulating and blood stasis-resolving medicines		Medicines to circulate blood and resolve stasis. They are indicated for blood stasis. Based on the functions and clinical application, these medicines are further categorized into four types: medicines to circulate blood and stop pain; medicines to circulate blood and resolve stasis; medicines to circulate blood and heal the wound; and medicines to break blood and resolve masses.	活血祛瘀药	huó xuè qū yū yào	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2710	Phlegm-transforming medicines		Medicines to transform or eliminate phlegm. Based on the property and functions, they are further categorized into two types: medicines to warm and transform cold phlegm; and medicines to clear heat and transform heat phlegm.	化痰药	huà tán yào	
2711	Cold-removing and phlegm-transforming medicines	Medicines that warm and transform cold phlegm	Medicines that are pungent and bitter in flavour and warm and dry in property. They mainly act to warm the lung, eliminate cold, dry dampness and transform phlegm. These medicines are indicated for disorders due to cold phlegm or damp phlegm.	温化寒痰药	wēn huà hán tán yào	
2712	Heat-clearing and phlegm-transforming medicines	Medicines that clear heat and transform heaty phlegm	Medicines that are cold or cool in property. They mainly act to clear heat and transform phlegm. These medicines are indicated for disorders due to heat phlegm or dry phlegm.	清化热痰药	qīng huà rè tán yào	
2713	Cough-stopping and panting-alleviating medicines		Medicines to stop coughing and alleviate panting. These medicines enter the lung meridian and are indicated for coughing and panting.	止咳平喘药	zhǐ ké píng chuǎn yào	
2714	Tranquillizing medicines	Mind-calming medicines	Medicines to calm the mind. Based on the property and efficacy, these medicines are further categorized into two types: heavyweight medicines to tranquilize the mind; and medicines to nourish the heart mind.	安神药	ān shén yào	
2715	Heavy mind-tranquillizing medicines		Medicines (mostly minerals, fossil bones or shells) heavy in weight and downbearing in property. These medicines are indicated for excess mental uneasiness including palpitations, insomnia, convulsions, epilepsy or mania.	重镇安神药	zhòng zhèn ān shén yào	
2716	Heart-nourishing and mind-calming medicines		Medicines that are sweet in flavour, moist in quality and tonic or neutral in property. They mainly act to nourish the heart and tranquilize the mind. These medicines are indicated for mild or severe palpitations due to malnourishment of heart mind, and insomnia, poor memory and dream-disturbed sleep due to heart yin or heart blood deficiency.	养心安神药	yǎng xīn ān shén yào	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2717	Liver-soothing and wind-extinguishing medicines		Medicines to soothe the liver and remove wind. They are indicated for hyperactivity of liver yang and internal stirring of liver wind. Based on their functions and indications, these medicines can be further categorized into two subtypes: medicines to soothe liver yang; and medicines to stop liver wind.	平肝息风药	píng gān xī fēng yào	
2718	Liver yang-submerging medicines		Medicines that are heavy in weight and cold in property. They mainly act to suppress or submerge yang. They are indicated for dizziness, headache or tinnitus due to hyperactivity of liver yang, and a red face and eyes, restlessness, and bitter mouth due to ascending of liver fire.	平降肝阳药	píng jiàng gān yáng yào	
2719	Wind-extinguishing and convulsion-resolving medicines		Medicines that are cold, cool or neutral in property. They mainly act to soothe the liver, stop wind and resolve spasm/convulsions. They are indicated for dizziness, blurred vision, neck rigidity, tremor of limbs, spasms, epilepsy, convulsions, tetanus or opisthotonus due to internal stirring of liver wind.	息风止痉药	xī fēng zhǐ jīng yào	
2720	Orifice-opening medicines		Medicines that are aromatic and pungent to open the orifices and refresh the mind. They are indicated for mental unconsciousness in block pattern.	开窍药	kāi qiào yào	
2721	Tonic medicines		Medicines to reinforce the body and prevent against diseases. They are indicated for deficiency pattern. Based on the property, functions and indications, these medicines are categorized into medicines to tonify qi, medicines to tonify yang, medicines to tonify blood and medicines to nourish yin.	补虚药	bǔ xū yào	
2722	Qi-tonifying medicines		Medicines that are sweet in flavour and warm or neutral in property. They mainly act to tonify qi and are indicated for qi deficiency.	补气药	bǔ qì yào	
2723	Blood-tonifying medicines		Medicines that are sweet in flavour and warm in property. They mainly act to tonify blood and are indicated for blood deficiency.	补血药	bǔ xuè yào	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2724	Yang-tonifying medicines		Medicines that are sweet and pungent in flavour and warm in property. They mainly act to tonify yang qi and are indicated for yang deficiency.	补阳药	bǔ yáng yào	
2725	Yin-nourishing medicines		Medicines that are sweet in flavour and cold in property. They mainly act to nourish yin fluids and are indicated for yin deficiency (insufficiency of fluids).	补阴药	bǔ yīn yào	
2726	Astringing medicines		Medicines to astringe and secure qi, blood, essence and body fluids. They are indicated for spontaneous sweating, night sweats, nocturnal emissions, enuresis, persistent leucorrhoea, uterine bleeding, chronic diarrhoea and chronic dysentery. Based on the property, efficacy and indications, astringent medicines are further divided into medicines to secure the exterior and stop sweating, medicines to astringe the lung and intestine and medicines to secure semen, astringe the urine and stop leucorrhoea.	收涩药	shōu sè yào	固涩药
2727	Exterior-securing and sweat-stopping medicines		Medicines that are sweet in flavour and neutral in property. They mainly act to secure the exterior and stop sweating and are indicated for spontaneous sweating or night sweats.	固表止汗药	gù biǎo zhǐ hàn yào	
2728	Lung and intestine-astringing medicines		Medicines that are sour and puckering in flavour and have astringent properties. They mainly act to astringe the lung and intestine, alleviate coughing/panting, and stop diarrhoea. These medicines are indicated for chronic coughing/panting and persistent diarrhoea/dysentery.	敛肺涩肠药	liǎn fèi sè cháng yào	
2729	Semen-securing, urine-astringing and leucorrhoea-stopping medicines		Medicines that are sour and puckering in flavour and astringent in property. They mainly act to secure semen, astringe urination and stop vaginal discharge. These medicines are mainly indicated for nocturnal emissions/spermatorrhoea, enuresis/profuse urine, or persistent vaginal discharge.	固精缩尿止带药	gù jīng suō niào zhǐ dài yào	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2730	Emetic medicines		Medicines to produce nausea and vomiting. They are indicated for food poisoning, indigestion and phlegm stagnation in the stomach or above the chest.	涌吐药	yǒng tǔ yào	催吐法
2731	Externally used medicines		Medicines used for topical areas to remove toxins, resolve swelling, drain pus, regenerate tissue, heal wounds, kill insects and stop itching. They are indicated for sores, ulcers, carbuncles, scabies, traumatic injuries, snake bites or problems of the five sense organs. The method includes topical plaster, embrocating, fumigation, blow throat, nose and eye drops.	外用药	wài yòng yào	
2732	<b>Formulas of Chinese Medicine</b>			方剂类	fāng jì lèi	
2733	Non-classical formulas		Formulas by physicians after Zhang Zhongjing in the Han Dynasty (220 to 202 BC).	时方	shí fāng	
2734	Classical formulas		Formulas recorded in medical books before the Han dynasty, represented by Zhang Zhongjing.	经方	jīng fāng	
2735	Empirical formulas		Effective formulas that have been demonstrated or confirmed by long clinical practice.	验方	yàn fāng	
2736	Ancient formulas		The formulas before the Qing Dynasty (1644–1911).	古方	gǔ fāng	
2737	Secret formulas		Effective and secret formulas.	秘方	mì fāng	
2738	Decoction formulas/ mnemonics	Decoction formulas/ mnemonics	Oral herbal formulas to be decocted with water. Wang Ang, a Qing dynasty physician compiled a book named Tang Tou Ge Jue (Decoction in Rhymes) to make it easier for learners to memorize.	汤头	tāng tóu	汤方;汤头歌诀
2739	Seven formula types		Seven formula types include major formulas, minor formulas, slow-acting formulas, fast-acting formulas, odd-numbered formulas, even-numbered formulas and compound formulas.	七方	qī fāng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2740	Major formulas		Formulas used for combined patterns upon contraction of excessive pathogenic factors. These include the following five aspects: ① drastic potency; ② many ingredients; ③ large doses; ④ take the large amount in one single dose; ⑤ indicated for major, severe disorders of the lower jiao.	大方	dà fāng	
2741	Minor formulas		Formulas used for one pattern alone upon contraction of mild pathogenic factors. These include the following three aspects: ① mild medical conditions; ② indicated for disorders of the upper jiao and take in small amount in frequent intervals; ③ fewer ingredients	小方	xiǎo fāng	
2742	Slow-acting formulas	Demulcent formulas	Formulas indicated for chronic conditions with a weak constitution. These include the following six aspects: ① many mutually-counterbalanced ingredients; ② use non-toxic ingredients to alleviate symptoms but do not cause damage to the anti-pathogenic qi; ③ use slow-acting ingredients; ④ use pills to remove pathogenic factors gradually; ⑤ use demulcent medicines to boost the immune system to help recovery.	缓方	huǎn fāng	缓剂
2743	Fast-acting formulas		Formulas indicated for emergency or critical conditions. These include the following four aspects: ① critical conditions that require immediate care; ② fast purging efficacy; ③ drastic potency; ④ directed at symptoms in acute conditions, such as Kai Guan San (Lockjaw-Relieving Powder) or Si Ni Tang (Frigid Extremities Decoction).	急方	jí fāng	
2744	Odd-numbered formulas		Formulas with one single ingredient or odd-numbered ingredients.	奇方	jī fāng	
2745	Even-numbered formulas		Formulas with two or even-numbered ingredients.	偶方	ǒu fāng	
2746	Compound formulas		Formulas consisting of two or more set formulas. They are often used for complex conditions.	复方	fù fāng	重方

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2747	Chinese medicinal formulas	Chinese herbal formulas	The study of the origin and evolution of formulas, treatment methods, composition principles, compatibility and clinical applications of Chinese herbal formulas.	方剂学	fāng jì xué	
2748	Eight methods		The eight methods are categorized according to functions of the formulas. They are sweating , vomiting, draining downward , harmonizing , warming , clearing, reducing and tonifying.	八法	bā fǎ	
2749	Sweating method		A method to induce perspiration, facilitate interaction between the Ying nutrients and Wei-defence, and disperse lung qi. It helps to expel six exogenous pathogenic factors through sweating and thus releases the exterior.	汗法	hàn fǎ	
2750	Vomiting method		A method to induce vomiting to fast remove phlegm, indigested food and poisons from the throat, thoracic diaphragm or stomach.	吐法	tǔ fǎ	
2751	Draining downward method		A method to induce bowel movements to cleanse or eliminate indigested food, dry faeces, cold accumulation, stagnant blood, phlegm, and water retention. It allows for the removal of pathogenic factors out of the body.	下法	xià fǎ	
2752	Harmonizing method		A method to moderate different parts of the body to expel pathogenic factors and regulate functions of the zang–fu organs. It helps to achieve yin–yang or interior–exterior balance by releasing the Shaoyang pattern when the pathogen lies in between the interior and exterior of the body and by harmonizing zang–fu organs.	和法	hé fǎ	
2753	Warming method		A method to warm the interior to eliminate pathogenic cold.	温法	wēn fǎ	
2754	Reducing method		A method to promote digestion, circulate qi, move blood, transform phlegm, drain water retention and kill parasites.	消法	xiāo fǎ	
2755	Clearing method		A method to clear heat, reduce fire, remove toxins and cool blood to eliminate pathogenic heat in the interior.	清法	qīng fǎ	



WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2756	Tonifying method		A method to reinforce qi, blood, yin and yang of the body. Indicated for deficiency of zang-fu organs, qi, blood, yin and yang.	补法	bǔ fǎ	
2757	Ten formula types		A categorization method according to functions of the formula. The 10 types are dispersing formula, unblocking/unclogging formula, tonifying formula, purgative formula, formula consisting of light-weighted medicines, formula consisting of heavy-weighted medicines, lubricative formula, astringent formula, dry formula and moistening formula.	十剂	shí jì	
2758	Dispersing formula		Formulas that disperse congestion and relieve stagnation.	宣剂	xuān jì	
2759	Unclogging/unblocking formula		Formulas that move qi and circulate blood.	通剂	tōng jì	
2760	Tonifying formula		Formulas that nourish and tonify qi, blood, yin and yang of the five zang organs.	补剂	bǔ jì	
2761	Purging formula		Formulas that promote bowel movements and unclog the fu organs.	泄剂	xiè jì	泻剂
2762	Light formula		Formulas that remove pathogenic factors out of the exterior.	轻剂	qīng jì	
2763	Heavy formula		Formulas that tranquilize and calm the mind.	重剂	zhòng jì	
2764	Astringent formula		Formulas that prevent qi, blood, essence and body fluids from exhaustion and collapse.	涩剂	sè jì	固涩剂
2765	Lubricative formula		Formulas that diminish obstruction.	滑剂	huá jì	
2766	Drying formula		Formulas that dry dampness.	燥剂	zào jì	
2767	Moistening formula		Formulas that moisten or nourish the body.	湿剂	shī jì	
2768	Monarch medicines	Principal medicines	Ingredient(s) that provide a dominant curative action on the main pattern/disorder or primary symptoms.	君药	jūn yào	主药

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2769	Minister medicines		① Ingredient(s) to help strengthen the action of the monarch medicines on main pattern or primary symptoms; ② ingredient(s) in a formula that provide a principal curative action for associated conditions or patterns.	臣药	chén yào	辅药
2770	Assistant medicines		Ingredient(s) to help the monarch and minister medicines treat principal or associated patterns; to counterbalance the toxicity or drastic actions of the monarch or minister medicines; or has/ have the opposite flavour and property with the monarch medicines. They are further categorized into facilitating assistant medicines, counterbalancing assistant medicines and counteracting assistant medicines.	佐药	zuǒ yào	
2771	Facilitating assistant medicines		Ingredient(s) to help facilitate the action of the monarch and minister medicines on main or associated patterns.	佐助药	zuǒ zhù yào	
2772	Counterbalancing assistant medicines		Ingredient(s) to eliminate or moderate the toxicity and drastic actions of the monarch and minister medicines.	佐制药	zuǒ zhì yào	
2773	Counteracting assistant medicines		Ingredient(s) with a property opposite to and a therapeutic effect complementary to the monarch medicine(s).	反佐药	fǎn zuǒ yào	
2774	Guide medicines		Ingredient(s) to coordinate the rest of the ingredients or direct action to the affected meridians or sites. They are further categorized into coordinating medicines and meridian-directing medicines.	使药	shǐ yào	
2775	Coordinating medicines		The guide ingredient(s) to coordinate the rest of the ingredients in a formula.	调和药	tiáo hé yào	
2776	Dosage form		The form of a prepared medicine designed for medical treatment or prevention.	剂型	jì xíng	
2777	Decoction		A liquid preparation form by boiling or soaking the ingredients in water, and taken after the sediment is removed.	汤剂	tāng jì	煎剂; 汤液

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2778	Pill		A solid globular mass made of finely powdered medicines with a suitable excipient or binder. It can be further categorized into honeyed pills, water pills, water-honeyed pills, paste pills, concentration pills, wax-wrapped pills, and mini pills.	丸剂	wán jì	
2779	Honeyed pill		Pills made from fine medicinal powder and uses honey as the excipient.	蜜丸	mì wán	
2780	Water pill		Pills made from fine medicinal powder and uses water (alternatively, alcohol, vinegar, honeyed water or medicinal juice) as excipient.	水丸	shuǐ wán	
2781	Paste pill		Pills made from fine medicinal powder and uses rice paste, flour paste or medicated leaven paste as the excipient.	糊丸	hú wán	
2782	Condensed pill		Pills made from concentrated paste of medicinal decoction coupled with other medicinal powder through drying, grinding and mixing with water, honey or medicinal juice.	浓缩丸	nóng suō wán	
2783	Waxed pill		Pills made from fine medicinal powder and uses beeswax as the excipient.	蜡丸	là wán	
2784	Mini pill		Pills with a diameter of less than 2.5 mm.	微丸	wēi wán	
2785	Powder		A powder-like preparation made from a mixture of one or more herbs.	散剂	sǎn jì	
2786	Medicated paste		A medicated paste is made from decocted medicines with water or vegetable oil. It can be further categorized into fluid extract, extractum, ointment and plaster.	膏剂	gāo jì	
2787	Condensed decoction	Oral thick paste	A semi-liquid form made from condensed medicinal decoction and processed honey/sugar.	煎膏	jiān gāo	膏滋;膏方
2788	Fluid extract		A semi-liquid medicated preparation containing the active constituents with appropriate solvents.	流浸膏	liú jìn gāo	
2789	Solid extract paste		A concentrated medicated preparation obtained by extracting the active constituents with appropriate solvents.	浸膏	jìn gāo	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2790	Ointment	Medicated ointment	A viscous, semi-solid preparation for external application. It is made from fine medicinal powder and ointment bases.	软膏	ruǎn gāo	药膏
2791	Plaster	Medicated plaster Thin plaster	A solid medicated dressing for external application. Often consists of medicines, edible vegetable oil and red lead.	硬膏	yìng gāo	膏药;薄贴
2792	Granules		Granulated preparations made by herbal extracts and an excipient or fine medicinal powder.	颗粒剂	kē lì jì	冲剂
2793	Medicated wine/liquor		A liquid form of herbal extracts prepared with distilled liquor.	酒剂	jiǔ jì	
2794	Medicated tea		Preparations made from the infusion or decoction of herbs or herbal extracts.	茶剂	chá jì	
2795	Pastille/troche		A solid form (shaped like a spindle, cylinder or bar) of fine medicinal powder or coupled with adhesive agents.	锭剂	dìng jì	
2796	Medicated roll		An external dosage form of fine medicinal powder mixed with mulberry paper.	条剂	tiáo jì	
2797	Medicated thread		A dried external dosage form of soaked and decocted silk or cotton thread.	线剂	xiàn jì	
2798	Moxa products		External dosage form of moxa wool or moxa sticks to apply to certain body parts or acupuncture points.	灸剂	jiǔ jì	
2799	Suppository/pessary		A solid dosage form made from fine medicinal powder and bases. It is inserted into the rectum/vagina, where it dissolves or melts and exerts local or systemic effects.	栓剂	shuān jì	
2800	Take before breakfast		To take the medicine in the morning on an empty stomach.	平旦服	píng dàn fú	
2801	Take hot		A method to take the decoction when it is hot.	热服	rè fú	
2802	Take warm		A method to take the decoction when it is neither cold nor hot.	温服	wēn fú	
2803	Take cold		A method to take the decoction when it becomes cold.	冷服	lěng fú	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2804	Sublingual/buccal administration		A method to melt the medicine in the mouth.	嚙化	qín huà	含化
2805	Take in one single dose		A method to take the decoction all in one single dose.	顿服	dùn fú	
2806	Take in multiple times		A method to take the medicine in divided times.	分服	fēn fú	
2807	Take frequently in small doses		A method to take the decoction in small portions at frequent intervals.	频服	pín fú	
2808	Formulas that release the exterior		Formulas to induce sweating, relieve muscle soreness, and/or promote the eruption of measles. They are indicated for exterior pattern. These formulas are categorized into three types—formulas to release the exterior with pungent, warm medicines, formulas to release the exterior with pungent, cool medicines and formulas to reinforce healthy qi and release the exterior.	解表剂	jiě biǎo jì	
2809	Formulas that release the exterior with pungent warm medicines		Formulas mainly consisting of pungent, warm and dispersing medicines. They are indicated for wind cold exterior pattern.	辛温解表剂	xīn wēn jiě biǎo jì	
2810	Formulas based on meridian differentiation		These formulas are often used for common cold, headache, and perspiration. A representative formula is Jiu Wei Qiang Huo Tang (Nine Ingredients Notopterygium Decoction).	分经论治	fēn jīng lùn zhì	
2811	Formulas that release the exterior with pungent cool medicines		Formulas mainly consisting of pungent, cool and dispersing medicines. They are indicated for exterior wind heat pattern.	辛凉解表剂	xīn liáng jiě biǎo jì	
2812	Formulas that reinforce healthy qi and release the exterior		Formulas mainly consisting of medicines to release the exterior and reinforce the body. They are indicated for exterior pattern in individuals with a weak constitution.	扶正解表剂	fú zhèng jiě biǎo jì	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2813	Formulas that drain downward	Purgative formulas	Formulas to promote bowel movements, remove food stagnation in the stomach and intestines, or resolve water retention. They are indicated for excessive interior pattern. These formulas are categorized into four types: formulas to drain downward with cold-property medicines; formulas to drain downward with warm-property medicines; formulas to drain downward with moistening medicines; and formulas to drain downward with water-expelling medicines.	泻下剂	xiè xià jì	
2814	Cold purgative formulas		Formulas mainly consisting of cold-property ingredients. They are indicated for interior excessive heat accumulation pattern.	寒下剂	hán xià jì	
2815	Formulas that remove firewood from under the cauldron		“Take away firewood from under the cauldron” is a metaphorical expression for the method of discharging heat with purgation. These formulas act to purge excess heat. A representative formula is Da Cheng Qi Tang (Major Purgative Decoction).	釜底抽薪	fǔ dǐ chōu xīn	
2816	Warm purgative formulas		Formulas mainly consisting of warm, pungent medicines to warm yang and dissipate cold, coupled with bitter, cold medicines to purge pathogenic factors. They are indicated for excessive interior cold pattern.	温下剂	wēn xià jì	
2817	Moistening purgative formulas		Formulas mainly consisting of medicines to nourish yin and purge the intestine. They are indicated for constipation due to intestinal dryness.	润下剂	rùn xià jì	
2818	Formulas that expel water		Formulas mainly consisting of purgative medicines to resolve water retention. They are indicated for interior water retention.	逐水剂	zhú shuǐ jì	
2819	Formulas that purge and tonify		Formulas mainly consisting of medicines to purge the intestine and tonify the body. They are indicated for interior excess and deficiency of healthy qi.	攻补兼施剂	gōng bǔ jiān shī jì	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2820	Formulas that generate fluids to promote bowel movements		Formulas mainly consisting of medicines to nourish yin and generate fluids. They are indicated for constipation due to heat in Yangming organ. A representative formula is Zeng Ye Tang (Fluid-Increasing Decoction).	增水行舟	zēng shuǐ xíng zhōu	
2821	Formulas that harmonize and release		Formulas to harmonize and release Shaoyang, coordinate the liver and spleen, and regulate the stomach and intestines. They are used to treat pathogenic factor affecting the Shaoyang, disharmony between the liver and spleen and lack of coordination between the stomach and intestines. These formulas are categorized into three types: formulas to harmonize Shaoyang; formulas to harmonize the liver and spleen; and formulas to harmonize the stomach and intestines.	和解剂	hé jiě jì	
2822	Formulas that harmonize and release Shaoyang		Formulas that are indicated for cold damage affecting the Shaoyang (combined exterior and interior pattern).	和解少阳剂	hé jiě shào yáng jì	
2823	Formulas that regulate and harmonize the liver and spleen		Formulas mainly consisting of medicines to soothe and soften the liver, regulate qi, nourish blood and strengthen the spleen. They are indicated for disharmony between the liver and spleen.	调和肝脾剂	tiáo hé gān pí jì	
2824	Formulas that regulate and harmonize the stomach and intestines		Formulas mainly consisting of pungent warm and bitter, cold medicines to disperse and down-regulate qi. They are indicated for disharmony between the stomach and intestines.	调和肠胃剂	tiáo hé cháng wèi jì	
2825	Formulas that clear heat		Formulas mainly consisting of heat-clearing medicines. They act to clear fire/heat, cool blood and remove toxins. These formulas are categorized into six types: formulas to clear heat in the qi phase; formulas that clear heat in the Ying nutrients phase and cool blood; formulas to clear heat in both qi and blood; formulas to clear heat and remove toxins; formulas to clear heat in Zang-fu organs; and formulas to clear deficiency heat.	清热剂	qīng rè jì	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2826	Formulas that clear heat in the qi phase		Formulas mainly consisting of medicines to clear heat. They are indicated for heat in the qi phase.	清气分热剂	qīng qì fèn rè jì	
2827	Formulas that clear heat with sweet, cold medicines		Formulas that are indicated for exuberant heat damaging bodily fluids. They mainly consist of sweet and cold medicines: the sweet ones to nourish yin and regenerate fluids, and the cold/cool ones to clear heat. A representative formula is Wu Zhi Yin (Five-Juice Beverage).	甘寒清热	gān hán qīng rè	
2828	Formulas that clear heat in the Ying nutrients and blood		Formulas mainly consisting of medicines to clear heat and cool blood. They are indicated for heat entering the Ying nutrients and blood phases.	清营凉血剂	qīng yíng liáng xuè jì	
2829	Formulas that clear heat in the Ying nutrients phase		Formulas mainly consisting of medicines to clear heat and remove toxins, coupled with medicines to clear heat in the qi phase. They are indicated for the early stage of heat entering the Ying nutrients phase in febrile diseases. A representative formula is Qing Ying Tang (Ying Phase Clearing Decoction).	透热转气	tòu rè zhuǎn qì	
2830	Formulas that effuse stagnant fire/heat		Formulas to expel stagnant heat/fire through dispersing, ascending and unblocking using light medicines. Representative formulas are <i>Pu Ji Xiao Du Yin</i> (Universal Relief Toxin-Removing Beverage) and <i>Qing Wei San</i> (Stomach-Clearing Powder).	火郁发之	huǒ yù fā zhī	
2831	Formulas that purge the interior heat		Formulas mainly consisting of medicines to clear heat and purge the intestine. They are indicated for interior heat. A representative formula is Liang Ge San (Diaphragm-Cooling Powder).	以泻代清	yǐ xiè dài qīng	
2832	Formulas that clear heat and remove toxins		Formulas mainly consisting of medicines to clear heat and remove toxins. They are indicated for pestilence, pathogenic warmth and toxic heat pattern.	清热解毒剂	qīng rè jiě dú jì	
2833	Formulas that clear exuberant heat with bitter and cold medicines		Formulas that are indicated for exuberant interior heat. These formulas mainly consist of bitter, cold medicines: the bitter ones to clear fire and the cold ones to clear heat. A representative formula is Huang Lian Jie Du Tang (Coptis Toxin-Resolving Decoction).	苦寒直折	kǔ hán zhí zhé	



WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2834	Formulas that clear heat in the qi and blood		Formulas mainly consisting of medicines to clear heat, cool blood and remove toxins. They are indicated for pestilence heat in both qi and blood.	气血两清剂	qì xuè liǎng qīng jì	
2835	Formulas that clear heat in the zang-fu organs		Formulas mainly consisting of medicines to clear internal heat. They are indicated for interior heat pattern.	清脏腑热剂	qīng zàng fǔ rè jì	
2836	Formulas that clear deficiency heat		Formulas mainly consisting of medicines to clear deficiency heat. They are indicated for deficiency heat.	清虚热剂	qīng xū rè jì	
2837	Formulas that enter first and exit next		Formulas that are used for later stage of febrile diseases with retention of pathogenic factors in the Yin phase. A representative formula is <i>Qing Hao Bei Jie Tang</i> (Sweet Wormwood and Turtle Shell Decoction). <i>Bie Jia</i> (Carapax Trionycis) guides <i>Qing Hao</i> (Herba Artemisiae Annuae) to the interior and <i>Qing Hao</i> guides <i>Bie Jia</i> out to the exterior. The combination of the two ingredients nourishes yin and clears internal heat.	先入后出	xiān rù hòu chū	
2838	Formulas that eliminate summer heat		Formulas mainly consisting of medicines to clear summer heat. They are indicated for summer heat-related problems. These formulas are categorized into four types: formulas to clear summer heat; formulas to clear summer heat and release the exterior; formulas to clear summer heat and resolve dampness; and formulas to clear summer heat and benefit qi.	祛暑剂	qū shǔ jì	
2839	Formulas that clear summer heat		Formulas mainly consisting of medicines to clear summer heat. They are indicated for summer heat pattern.	祛暑清热剂	qū shǔ qīng rè jì	
2840	Formulas that clear summer heat and release the exterior		Formulas mainly consisting of medicines to clear summer heat, transform dampness or release the exterior. They are indicated for exposure to wind heat and summer heat damaging the spleen and stomach.	祛暑解表剂	qū shǔ jiě biǎo jì	
2841	Formulas that clear summer heat and resolve dampness		Formulas mainly consisting of medicines to clear summer heat and resolve dampness. They are indicated for summer heat and dampness or downward flow of summer heat and dampness.	祛暑利湿剂	qū shǔ lì shī jì	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2842	Formulas that clear summer heat and supplement qi		Formulas mainly consisting of medicines to clear summer heat, supplement qi, and nourish yin. They are indicated for summer heat damaging qi and bodily fluids.	清暑益气剂	qīng shǔ yì qì jì	
2843	Formulas that warm the interior		Formulas to warm the interior, supplement yang, dispel cold, and unblock blood vessels. They are indicated for interior cold pattern. These formulas are categorized into three types: formulas to warm the middle jiao and remove cold; formulas to resuscitate yang to prevent collapse; and formulas to warm meridians and dispel cold.	温里剂	wēn lǐ jì	
2844	Formulas that warm the middle jiao and remove cold		Formulas mainly consisting of medicines to warm the interior and remove cold. They are indicated for deficiency cold of the spleen and stomach.	温中祛寒剂	wēn zhōng qū hán jì	
2845	Formulas that resuscitate yang and prevent collapse		Formulas mainly consisting of medicines to warm yang and prevent fainting. They are indicated for approaching collapse of yang qi.	回阳救逆剂	huí yáng jiù nì jì	
2846	Formulas that warm meridians and dispel cold		Formulas mainly consisting of medicines to warm and unblock meridians and remove cold. They are indicated for joint pain due to cold retaining in meridians.	温经散寒剂	wēn jīng sàn hán jì	
2847	Formulas that release the exterior and interior		Formulas mainly consisting of medicines to release the exterior, warm the interior, and reinforce the body. They are indicated for pattern involving both the exterior and interior. These formulas are further categorized into three subtypes: exterior-releasing and interior-clearing formulas; exterior-releasing and interior-warming formulas; and exterior-releasing and interior-attacking formulas.	表里双解剂	biǎo lǐ shuāng jiě jì	
2848	Formulas that release the exterior and purge the interior		Formulas mainly consisting of exterior-releasing medicines and purgative medicines. They are indicated for retention of exogenous pathogens coupled with interior excess pattern.	解表攻里剂	jiě biǎo gōng lǐ jì	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2849	Formulas that release the exterior and clear the interior		Formulas mainly consisting of medicines to release the exterior and clear heat. They are indicated for retention of exogenous pathogens coupled with interior heat.	解表清里剂	jiě biǎo qīng lǐ jì	
2850	Formulas that release the exterior and warm the interior		Formulas mainly consisting of medicines to release the exterior and warm the interior. They are indicated for retention of exogenous pathogens coupled with interior cold.	解表温里剂	jiě biǎo wēn lǐ jì	
2851	Formulas that tonify or reinforce		Formulas mainly consisting of tonic medicines. They are indicated for deficiency of qi, blood and yin and yang. These formulas are further categorized into six types: formulas to tonify qi; formulas to tonify blood; formulas to tonify qi and blood; formulas to nourish yin; formulas to tonify yang; and formulas to tonify yin and yang.	补益剂	bǔ yì jì	
2852	Formulas that tonify qi		Formulas mainly consisting of qi-tonifying medicines. They are indicated for qi deficiency pattern.	补气剂	bǔ qì jì	
2853	Formulas that reduce fever with sweet, warm medicines		Formulas consisting of sweet, warm medicines. They are indicated for fever due to qi deficiency or yang deficiency. Representative formulas are Xiao Jian Zhong Tang (Minor Middle Jiao-Fortifying Decoction) and Bu Zhong Yi Qi Tang (Middle Jiao-Supplementing and Qi-Boosting Decoction).	甘温除热	gān wēn chú rè	
2854	Formulas that tonify blood		Formulas mainly consisting of blood-tonifying medicines. They are indicated for blood deficiency pattern.	补血剂	bǔ xuè jì	
2855	Formulas that tonify qi and blood		Formulas mainly consisting of medicines to tonify qi and blood. They are indicated for deficiency of both qi and blood.	气血双补剂	qì xuè shuāng bǔ jì	
2856	Formulas that tonify yin		Formulas mainly consisting of yin-nourishing medicines. They are indicated for yin deficiency pattern.	补阴剂	bǔ yīn jì	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2857	Formulas that seek yin within yang		A method to combine a small amount of yang-tonifying medicines for kidney yin deficiency. This method enhances the effect of nourishing yin. The representative formula is Zuo Gui Wan (Left-Restoring Pill).	阳中求阴	yáng zhōng qiú yīn	
2858	Formulas that tonify yang		Formulas mainly consisting of yang-tonifying medicines. They are indicated for yang deficiency pattern.	补阳剂	bǔ yáng jì	
2859	Formulas that seek yang within yin		Formulas to combine a small amount of yin-nourishing medicines for kidney yang deficiency. This method enhances the effect of warming yang. The representative formula is You Gui Wan (Right-Restoring Pill).	阴中求阳	yīn zhōng qiú yáng	
2860	Formulas that tonify both yin and yang		Formulas consisting of yin-nourishing and yang-tonifying medicines. They are indicated for deficiency of yin and yang.	阴阳并补	yīn yáng bìng bǔ	
2861	Formulas that calm the mind		Formulas mainly consisting of medicines to calm the mind. Indicated for mental restlessness. These formulas are categorized into two types: formulas to calm the mind with heavy medicines; and formulas to tranquilize the mind by nourishing yin and blood.	安神剂	ān shén jì	
2862	Formulas that calm and settle the mind with heavy medicines		Formulas mainly consisting of medicines (heavy in weight) to calm the mind. They are indicated for hyperactivity of heart yang and heat disturbing the heart mind.	重镇安神剂	zhòng zhèn ān shén jì	
2863	Formulas that calm and nourish the mind		Formulas mainly consisting of medicines to nourish and calm the mind. They are indicated for yin blood failing to nourish the heart mind.	滋养安神剂	zī yǎng ān shén jì	
2864	Formulas that open the orifices		Formulas containing aromatic medicines. They are indicated for loss of consciousness and blockage of orifices. These formulas are categorized into two types: formulas to clear heat; and formulas to warm the interior and open the orifices.	开窍剂	kāi qiào jì	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2865	Formulas that open the orifices with cold-property ingredients		Formulas mainly consisting of medicines to clear heat and open the orifices. They are indicated for heat blockage pattern due to toxic heat entering the pericardium in febrile disease.	凉开剂	liáng kāi jì	
2866	Formulas that open the orifices with warm-property ingredients		Formulas mainly consisting of medicines to dispel cold and open the orifices. They are indicated for cold blockage pattern: cold, dampness and turbid phlegm blocking the mind or filthy turbidity obstructing the flow of qi.	温开剂	wēn kāi jì	
2867	Formulas that secure and astringe		Formulas mainly consisting of medicines to astringe or secure qi, blood, essence and body fluids. They are indicated for loss of or abnormal leakage/discharge of qi, blood, essence and body fluids. These formulas are categorized into five types: formulas to secure the exterior and stop sweating; formulas to astringe the lung and stop coughing; formulas to astringe the large intestine and stop diarrhoea; secure the essence gate and stop nocturnal emissions/urinary emissions; and secure Chong and Ren meridians and stop uterine bleeding/leucorrhoea.	固涩剂	gù sè jì	
2868	Formulas that secure the exterior and stop sweating		Formulas mainly consisting of medicines to astringe and stop sweating. They are indicated for sweating disorders.	固表止汗剂	gù biǎo zhǐ hàn jì	
2869	Formulas that astringe the lung and stop coughing		Formulas mainly consisting of medicines to astringe the lung. They are indicated for lung deficiency pattern due to chronic coughing.	敛肺止咳剂	liǎn fèi zhǐ ké jì	
2870	Formulas that astringe the intestine and secure collapse		Formulas mainly consisting of medicines to astringe the intestines and secure collapse. They are indicated for faecal incontinence or rectal prolapse.	涩肠固脱剂	sè cháng gù tuō jì	
2871	Formulas that astringe the semen and stop enuresis		Formulas mainly consisting of medicines to secure the semen and astringe urination. They are indicated for nocturnal emissions or enuresis.	涩精止遗剂	sè jīng zhǐ yí jì	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2872	Formulas that stop bleeding/leucorrhoea		Formulas mainly consisting of medicines to stop bleeding and vaginal discharge. They are indicated for metrorrhagia, metrostaxis or profuse vaginal discharge.	固崩止带剂	gù bēng zhǐ dài jì	
2873	Formulas that regulate qi		Formulas mainly consisting of medicines to move or down-regulate qi. They are indicated for qi stagnation or adverse ascending of qi. These formulas are categorized into two types: formulas to circulate qi; and formulas to down-regulate qi.	理气剂	lǐ qì jì	
2874	Formulas that circulate qi		Formulas that act to unblock qi activities and are often indicated for liver or spleen/stomach qi stagnation.	行气剂	xíng qì jì	
2875	Formulas that make qi descend		Formulas mainly consisting of medicines to make the qi descend. These formulas are indicated for adverse ascending of qi.	降气剂	jiàng qì jì	
2876	Formulas that regulate blood		Formulas mainly consisting of blood-regulating medicines. They are indicated for blood stasis or haemorrhage. These formulas are subdivided into two types: formulas to circulate blood and resolve stasis; and formulas to stop bleeding.	理血剂	lǐ xuè jì	
2877	Formulas that circulate blood and eliminate stasis		Formulas mainly consisting of blood-circulating medicines. They are indicated for blood stasis pattern.	活血祛瘀剂	huó xuè qū yū jì	
2878	Formulas that combine dry/pungent and sweet/moist medicines		Formulas that combined dry, pungent and aromatic medicines with soft, sweet and moistening medicines. A representative formula is Huang Tu Tang (Yellow Earth Decoction).	刚柔相济	gāng róu xiāng jì	
2879	Formulas that stop bleeding		Formulas mainly consisting of haemostatic drugs. They are indicated for bleeding pattern.	止血剂	zhǐ xuè jì	
2880	Formulas that treat wind		Formulas mainly consisting of wind-removing or wind-extinguishing medicines. They are indicated for external or internal wind.	治风剂	zhì fēng jì	
2881	Formulas that remove external wind		Formulas mainly consisting of pungent medicines to remove external wind. They are indicated for external wind pattern.	疏散外风剂	shū sǎn wài fēng jì	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2882	Formulas that extinguish internal wind		Formulas mainly consisting of medicines to soothe the liver and extinguish wind. They are indicated for internal stirring of liver wind.	平熄内风剂	píng xī nèi fēng jì	
2883	Formulas that treat dryness		Formulas that act to dispel external dryness with pungent, light-weight ingredients or eliminate internal dryness with sweet, cold and yin-nourishing ingredients. These formulas are subdivided into two types: formulas to dispel external dryness; and formulas to nourish yin and moisten internal dryness.	治燥剂	zhì zào jì	
2884	Formulas that moisten dryness with light diffusing medicines		Formulas mainly consisting of pungent medicines light in weight and dispersing in function. They are indicated for external dryness pattern.	轻宣润燥剂	qīng xuān rùn zào jì	
2885	Formulas that nourish yin and moisten dryness		Formulas mainly consisting of medicines (sweet in flavour and cool in property) to moisten dryness. They are indicated for internal dryness pattern.	滋阴润燥剂	zī yīn rùn zào jì	
2886	Formulas that eliminate dampness		Formulas that act to resolve water retention and relieve stranguria are indicated for water dampness pattern. These formulas are categorized into five types: formulas to dry dampness and harmonize the stomach; formulas to clear heat and eliminate dampness; formulas to promote urination and drain dampness; formulas to warm and transform cold dampness; and formulas to remove wind and transform dampness.	祛湿剂	qū shī jì	
2887	Formulas that dry dampness and harmonize the stomach		Formulas mainly consisting of medicines to dry dampness and harmonize the stomach. They are indicated for dampness affecting the spleen and stomach or disharmony of stomach qi.	燥湿和胃剂	zào shī hé wèi jì	
2888	Formulas that clear heat and eliminate dampness		Formulas mainly consisting of medicines to clear heat and resolve dampness. They are indicated for damp heat pattern.	清热祛湿剂	qīng rè qū shī jì	
2889	Formulas that promote urination and drain dampness		Formulas mainly consisting of medicines (sweet or bland in flavour) to drain dampness through urination. They are indicated for water dampness pattern.	利水渗湿剂	lì shuǐ shèn shī jì	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2890	Formulas that warm and transform water-dampness		Formulas mainly consisting of medicines to warm yang and transform water and dampness. They are indicated for cold dampness pattern.	温化水湿剂	wēn huà shuǐ shī jì	
2891	Formulas that remove wind and transform dampness		Formulas mainly consisting of medicines to remove wind and transform dampness. They are mainly indicated for wind dampness pattern.	祛风胜湿剂	qū fēng shèng shī jì	
2892	Formulas that eliminate phlegm		Formulas that are indicated for phlegm from all causes. These formulas are subdivided into five types: formulas to dry dampness and transform phlegm; formulas to clear heat and transform phlegm; formulas to moisten dryness and transform phlegm; formulas to warm and transform phlegm; and formulas to stop wind and transform phlegm.	祛痰剂	qū tán jì	
2893	Formulas that dry dampness and transform phlegm		Formulas mainly consisting of medicines to dry dampness and transform phlegm. They are indicated for damp phlegm pattern.	燥湿化痰剂	zào shī huà tán jì	
2894	Formulas that clear heat and transform phlegm		Formulas mainly consisting of medicines to clear heat and transform phlegm. They are indicated for heat phlegm pattern.	清热化痰剂	qīng rè huà tán jì	
2895	Formulas that moisten dryness and transform phlegm		Formulas mainly consisting of medicines to moisten the lung and transform phlegm. They are indicated for dry phlegm pattern.	润燥化痰剂	rùn zào huà tán jì	
2896	Formulas that warm and transform cold phlegm		Formulas mainly consisting of medicines to warm and transform cold phlegm. They are indicated for cold phlegm pattern.	温化寒痰剂	wēn huà hán tán jì	
2897	Formulas that treat wind and transform phlegm		Formulas mainly consisting of medicines to remove/extinguish wind and transform phlegm. They are indicated for wind phlegm pattern.	治风化痰剂	zhì fēng huà tán jì	
2898	Formulas that promote digestion and transform masses		Formulas to promote digestion. They are indicated for food stagnation from different causes. These formulas are subdivided into two types: formulas to promote digestion to resolve stagnation; and formulas to strengthen the spleen to promote digestion.	消导化积剂	xiāo dǎo huà jī jì	



WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2899	Formulas that promote digestion and unblock stagnation		Formulas mainly consisting of medicines to promote digestion. They are indicated for poor digestion due to food stagnation.	消食导滞剂	xiāo shí dǎo zhì jì	
2900	Formulas that disperse and transform masses		Formulas mainly consisting of medicines to circulate qi, transform stasis, soften hardness and eliminate masses. They are indicated for stuffiness, fullness, stagnation or paediatric malnutrition due to food stagnation damaging the spleen and stomach.	消痞化积剂	xiāo pǐ huà jī jì	
2901	Formulas that kill parasites/worms		Formulas to kill intestinal parasites/worms. They are indicated for intestinal parasites.	驱虫剂	qū chóng jì	
2902	Formulas that induce emesis	Emetic formulas	Formulas to induce vomiting, expectorate phlegm, undigested food and poison in the stomach. They are indicated for phlegm syncope, food stagnation and food poisoning.	涌吐剂	yǒng tǔ jì	
2903	Formulas that treat sores/ulcers and abscesses		Formulas to remove toxins, resolve swelling, expel toxins, regenerate tissues, and heal the wound.	治疡剂	zhì yáng jì	
2904	Chinese patent medicine		Safe, effective and reliable Chinese medical preparations that have been tested by clinical use and manufactured according to standard technical procedures.	中成药	zhōng chéng yào	
2905	3.4 Health cultivation methods	Health preservation methods		3.4 养生保健方法		
2906	3.5 Acupuncture and moxibustion (including cupping and guasha)			3.5 针灸类(含拔罐、刮痧)		
2907	Meridians and acupuncture points			经络腧穴类	jīng luò shù xué lèi	
2908	Meridians and collaterals		Meridians and collaterals are pathways for qi and blood to flow throughout the body. They form a comprehensive network linking the tissues and internal organs into an organic whole.	经络	jīng luò	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2909	Twelve meridians	Twelve regular meridians	The twelve meridians (i.e. the twelve regular meridians) are: the lung meridian; the large intestine meridian; the stomach meridian; the spleen meridian; the heart meridian; the small intestine meridian; the bladder meridian; the kidney meridian; the pericardium meridian; the Sanjiao meridian; the gallbladder meridian; and the liver meridian.	十二经脉	shí èr jīng mài	十二正经
2910	The lung meridian of hand-Taiyin		The lung meridian pertains to the lung and connects with the large intestine. It mainly travels along the anterior border of the medial aspect of the arm.	手太阴肺经	shǒu tài yīn fèi jīng	
2911	The large intestine meridian of hand-Yangming		The large intestine meridian pertains to the large intestine and connects with the lung. It mainly travels along the anterior border of the radial aspect of the arm, passes through the cheeks, enters the lower teeth, and then over the upper lip and terminates beside the opposite nostril.	手阳明大肠经	shǒu yáng míng dà cháng jīng	
2912	The stomach meridian of foot-Yangming		The stomach meridian pertains to the stomach and connects with the spleen. It starts directly below the pupil between the eyeball and the infraorbital ridge. Running downward along the lateral side of the nose, to the lateral corner of the mouth. Curving posterior to the anterior angle of the mandible. Then it travels to the posterior aspect of the mandible ascending in front of the ear and following the anterior hairline, it reaches the forehead. It then runs along the throat and enters the supraclavicular fossa. The straight line of the meridian separates the supraclavicular fossa and runs downward along the middle mammillary line. It travels to the side of the umbilicus and descends to the inguinal groove. Running downward it travels along the anterior aspect of the thigh and reaches the knee. From there it continues further down along the anterior border of the lateral aspect of the tibia to the dorsum of the foot and reaches the lateral side of the tip of the second toe.	足阳明胃经	zú yáng míng wèi jīng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2913	The spleen meridian of foot-Taiyin		The spleen meridian pertains to the spleen and connects with the stomach. It mainly travels along the anterior border of the medial aspect of the leg and passes through the chest and abdomen.	足太阴脾经	zú tài yīn pí jīng	
2914	The heart meridian of hand-Shaoyin		The heart meridian pertains to the heart and connects with the small intestine. It mainly travels along the posterior border of the ulnar palmar aspect of the arm.	手少阴心经	shǒu shào yīn xīn jīng	
2915	The small intestine meridian of hand-Taiyang		The small intestine meridian pertains to the small intestine and connects with the heart. It mainly travels along the posterior border of the dorsal ulnar aspect of the arm, passes through the shoulder and reaches the face.	手太阳小肠经	shǒu tài yáng xiǎo cháng jīng	
2916	The bladder meridian of foot-Taiyang		The bladder meridian pertains to the urinary bladder and connects with the kidney. It is mainly distributed over the head, back and along the back of the leg.	足太阳膀胱经	zú tài yáng páng guāng jīng	
2917	The kidney meridian of foot-Shaoyin		The kidney meridian pertains to the kidney and connects with the urinary bladder. It mainly travels along the posterior border of the medial aspect of the leg and passes through the chest and abdomen, finally terminating at the root of the tongue.	足少阴肾经	zú shào yīn shèn jīng	
2918	The pericardium meridian of hand-Jueyin		The pericardium meridian pertains to the pericardium and connects with the Sanjiao. It mainly travels along the palmar aspect of the upper arm and moves towards the forearm running between the tendons of the m. palmaris longus and m. flexor carpi radialis.	手厥阴心包经	shǒu jué yīn xīn bāo jīng	
2919	The Sanjiao meridian of hand-Shaoyang	Triple-burner meridian Triple warmer meridian Triple energizer meridian of hand-Shaoyang	The Sanjiao meridian pertains to Sanjiao and connects with the pericardium. It is mainly distributed along the dorsal aspect of the forearm between the radius and ulna and reaches the ears and face.	手少阳三焦经	shǒu shào yáng sān jiāo jīng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2920	The gallbladder meridian of foot-Shaoyang		The gallbladder meridian pertains to the gallbladder and connects with the liver. It is mainly distributed over the head, sides of the head, chest, and abdomen and descends down to the lateral aspect of the leg.	足少阳胆经	zú shào yáng dǎn jīng	
2921	The liver meridian of foot-Jueyin		The liver meridian pertains to the liver and connects with the gallbladder. It mainly travels along the medial aspect of the leg, passes over the chest and abdomen, and its divergent meridian reaches the vertex.	足厥阴肝经	zú jué yīn gān jīng	
2922	Three hand-yin meridians		The three hand-yin meridians are lung meridian, heart meridian and pericardium meridian.	手三阴经	shǒu sān yīn jīng	
2923	Three hand-yang meridians		The three hand-yang meridians are large intestine meridian, small intestine meridian and Sanjiao meridian.	手三阳经	shǒu sān yáng jīng	
2924	Three foot-yin meridians		The three foot-yin meridians are spleen meridian, kidney meridian and liver meridian.	足三阴经	zú sān yīn jīng	
2925	Three foot-yang meridians		The three foot-yang meridians are stomach meridian, bladder meridian and gallbladder meridian.	足三阳经	zú sān yáng jīng	
2926	Eight extraordinary meridians		The eight extraordinary meridians are different from the twelve regular meridians with special distributions and functions. They are Du meridian, Ren meridian, Chong meridian, Dai meridian, Yinwei meridian, Yangwei meridian, Yinqiao meridian and Yangqiao meridian.	奇经八脉	qí jīng bā mài	
2927	The Du meridian	Governor Vessel	The Du meridian is mainly distributed over the head, face and along the midline of the back.	督脉	dū mài	
2928	The Ren meridian	Conception Vessel	The Ren meridian is mainly distributed over the neck, face and along the midline of the chest and abdomen.	任脉	rèn mài	
2929	The Chong meridian	Thoroughfare Vessel	The Chong meridian is mainly distributed over the chest and face, inside the spine and along the first lateral line of the abdomen.	冲脉	chōng mài	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2930	The Dai meridian	Belt Vessel	The Dai meridian is mainly distributed over the waist, subcostal area and abdomen. It encircles the waist like a girdle.	带脉	dài mài	
2931	The Yinqiao meridian		The Yinqiao meridian is mainly distributed over the heel, the medial aspect of the leg, perineum, abdomen, chest, head, and eyes.	阴跷脉	yīn qiāo mài	
2932	The Yangqiao meridian		The Yangqiao meridian is mainly distributed over the heel, lateral aspect of the leg, thigh, subcostal area, shoulder, head and eyes.	阳跷脉	yáng qiāo mài	
2933	The Yinwei meridian		The Yinwei meridian is mainly distributed over the medial aspect of the leg and thigh and ascends along the third lateral line of the abdomen. It reaches the throat and meets with the Ren meridian at Tiantu (Ren 22) and Lianquan (Ren 23).	阴维脉	yīn wéi mài	
2934	The Yangwei meridian		The Yangwei meridian is mainly distributed below the external malleolus, the lateral aspect of the leg, and over the subcostal area, shoulder and sides of the head. It meets with the Du meridian at Fengfu (Du 16) and Yamen (Du 15).	阳维脉	yáng wéi mài	
2935	Collaterals		Collaterals are branches of meridians, including minute collaterals, blood collaterals and superficial collaterals.	络脉	luò mài	
2936	The fifteen collaterals		The fifteen collaterals include the collaterals of the twelve meridians, the collaterals of the Du and Ren meridian as well as the major collateral of the spleen.	十五络脉	shí wǔ luò mài	
2937	The sixteen collaterals		The sixteen collaterals include the above-mentioned fifteen collaterals plus the major collateral of the stomach.	十六络脉	shí liù luò mài	
2938	The great collateral of the spleen		The major collateral of the spleen begins from Dabao (SP 21), emerges at 3 cun below Yuanye (GB 22) and spreads over the chest and subcostal area.	脾之大络	pí zhī dà luò	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2939	The great collateral of the stomach		The major collateral of the stomach begins from Xuli (the pulsation at the apex of the heart), passes through the diaphragm, connects with the lung and emerges from the left breast.	胃之大络	wèi zhī dà luò	
2940	Blood collaterals		Superficial vessels visible to the naked eye.	血络	xuè luò	
2941	Floating collaterals		Collaterals on the surface of the body.	浮络	fú luò	
2942	Minute collaterals		Extremely small collaterals.	孙络	sūn luò	
2943	The twelve divergent meridians		The twelve divergent meridians branch out from the twelve regular meridians and are deeper in the body. They function to strengthen the connection between internally-externally coupled meridians.	十二经别	shí èr jīng bié	经别
2944	The twelve muscle regions	Twelve sinews/fasica	The twelve muscle regions are corresponding sites where the qi and blood of the twelve meridians to nourish the muscles and tendons. Their distributions are almost the same as that of the twelve meridians.	十二经筋	shí èr jīng jīn	经筋
2945	The twelve cutaneous regions		The twelve cutaneous regions are corresponding sites where the qi and blood of the twelve meridians to nourish the skin. They are generally known as the outward manifestations of the twelve meridians and collaterals.	十二皮部	shí èr pí bù	皮部
2946	Gen-root and jie-knot		The word “Gen” literally means root. It shares the similar meaning with “Ben”. The word “Jie” literally means knot. It shares the similar meaning with “Biao” (see Biao and Ben).	根结	gēn jié	
2947	Biao-tip and ben-trunk		The word “biao” literally means the tip of tree branches. Here it refers to the head, face and body trunk where meridian qi diffuses. The word “ben” literally means the trunk of a tree. Here it refers to the four limbs where meridian qi gathers.	标本	biāo běn	
2948	Qi streets		Qi streets are the pathways for meridian qi to flow over the head and body trunk. There is a total of four qi streets, respectively on the head, chest, abdomen and lower leg.	气街	qì jiē	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2949	Four seas		The four seas include the sea of marrow, sea of qi, sea of water and food, and sea of blood (sea of the twelve meridians).	四海	sì hǎi	
2950	The sea of marrow		The brain is known as “the sea of marrow”.	髓海	suǐ hǎi	
2951	The sea of qi		The chest is known as “the sea of qi”.	气海	qì hǎi	
2952	The sea of water and food		The stomach is known as “the sea of water and food”.	水谷之海	shuǐ gǔ zhī hǎi	
2953	The sea of blood		The Chong meridian is known as “the sea of blood (sea of the twelve meridians)”.	血海	xuè hǎi	
2954	The sea of yang meridians		The Du meridian governs meridian qi of all yang meridians and is therefore known as “the sea of yang meridians”.	阳脉之海	yáng mài zhī hǎi	
2955	The sea of yin meridians		The Ren meridian governs meridian qi of all yin meridians and is therefore known as “the sea of yin meridians”.	阴脉之海	yīn mài zhī hǎi	
2956	The three branches from one source	The three divergences from a single source	The Du, Ren and Chong meridians all arise from a common origin: “baozhong” (the lower abdomen where primordial kidney qi gathers), emerge out of the perineum, and then travels along their own pathways.	一源三歧	yì yuán sān qí	
2957	Transmission of sensation along meridians		Sensations radiating along the pathways of meridians.	循经感传	xún jīng gǎn chuán	
2958	The meridian phenomena		Specific disturbance of sensation, transmission of sensation and visible changes in skin colour and quality along the pathways of meridians.	经络现象	jīng luò xiàn xiàng	
2959	The lung connections		The trachea and throat. The word “xi” means connecting tissues or structures.	肺系	fèi xì	
2960	The eye connections		The posterior intraocular structures connecting with the brain.	目系	mù xì	
2961	The heart connections		The structures connecting with the heart, such as blood vessels.	心系	xīn xì	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2962	The junction between the red and white skin	Junction of the change in skin colour	The boundary between the palmar aspect and dorsal aspect of the hands and feet. The skin on the palm aspect appears white, whereas the skin on the dorsal aspect appears red or brown. It is often used as an anatomical landmark to locate certain points.	赤白肉际	chì bái ròu jì	
2963	Bolt, plank and hinge		Three objects of a door are used figuratively to express the functions of the three yang and three yin meridians. Of the three yang meridians, Taiyang is compared to the bolt, Yangming to the plank and Shaoyang to the hinge. Of the three yin meridians, Taiyin is compared to the bolt, Jueyin to the plank and Shaoyin to the hinge.	关阖枢	guān hé shū	
2964	Acupuncture points		The specific sites where the qi and blood of the zang-fu organs and meridians are transported to the surface of the body. They are pathological reaction points and, at the same time, acupuncture stimulation points.	腧穴	shù xué	
2965	Meridian points		Acupuncture points of the fourteen meridians (i.e. twelve regular meridians + Du meridian + Ren meridian).	经穴	jīng xué	
2966	Extra points		The points that are not contained in the above-mentioned fourteen meridians; however, these points have specific names and locations.	经外奇穴	jīng wài qí xué	奇穴
2967	Ashi Points		The points of sensitivity or tenderness. They are neither meridians points nor extra points, and they do not have specific names or locations.	阿是穴	ā shì xué	天应穴
2968	The specific points		The meridians points that have special names and functions.	特定穴	tè dìng xué	
2969	Five-Shu points		A collective term of the Jing-well, Ying-spring, Shu-stream, Jing-river and He-sea points. They are all located distal to, or at the elbow and knee joints.	五输穴	wǔ shū xué	
2970	Jing-well points		The point at which the qi rises is known as the Jing-well. Most Jing-well points are located on the fingers or toes.	井穴	jǐng xué	



WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2971	Ying-spring points		The point at which the qi glides is known as the Ying-spring. The Ying-spring points are generally located distal to the metacarpophalangeal or metatarsophalangeal joints.	荥穴	xíng xué	
2972	Shu-stream points		The point at which the qi pours through is known as the Shu-stream. The Shu-stream points are generally located proximal to the metacarpophalangeal joints or metatarsophalangeal joints.	输穴	shū xué	
2973	Jing-river points		The point at which the qi flows is known as the Jing-river. The Jing-river points are located around the joints of the wrists or ankles.	经穴	jīng xué	
2974	He-sea points		The point at which the qi enters inwards is known as the He-sea. The He-sea points are located around the joints of the elbows or knees.	合穴	hé xué	
2975	Yuan-primordial points	Yuan-source points	The points where the Yuan-primordial qi pools.	原穴	yuán xué	
2976	Luo-connecting points		The points where a meridian exits off from the main flow and connects with the Yin/Yang paired meridian.	络穴	luò xué	
2977	Xi-cleft points		The points where meridian qi is deeply converged.	郄穴	xì xué	
2978	Back-Shu points		The points on the back where qi of the respective zang-fu organs is infused.	背俞穴	bèi shù xué	
2979	Front-Mu points		The points on the chest and abdomen where qi of the respective zang-fu organs is infused.	募穴	mù xué	
2980	Eight influential points		The points that have particular effects in the treatment of disorders relating to the zang, fu, qi, blood, tendon, vessels, bones and marrow.	八会穴	bā huì xué	
2981	Eight confluent points		The points where qi of the twelve regular meridians meets the eight extraordinary meridians.	八脉交会穴	bā mài jiāo huì xué	
2982	Lower He-sea points		The points where qi of the six fu organs is infused into the three foot-yang meridians.	下合穴	xià hé xué	
2983	Crossing points		The points intersected by two or more meridians.	交会穴	jiāo huì xué	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2984	Point combination		The selection of different points in acupuncture treatment.	针灸配穴	zhēn jiǔ pèi xué	
2985	Selection of local points		A method to choose points at or close to the affected body area.	近部取穴	jìn bù qǔ xué	
2986	Selection of distal points		A method to choose points away from the affected body area.	远部取穴	yuǎn bù qǔ xué	
2987	Pattern-oriented point selection		A method to choose points according to differentiated pattern.	随证取穴	suí zhèng qǔ xué	
2988	Point combination of the affected meridian		A method to combine points along the affected meridian.	本经配穴法	běn jīng pèi xué fǎ	
2989	Point combination of the coupled meridians		A method to combine points from the internally-externally connected meridians.	表里(经)配穴法	biǎo lǐ (jīng) pèi xué fǎ	
2990	Point combination of the same-name meridians		A method to combine points from one hand meridian and one foot meridian that share the same name.	同名经配穴法	tóng míng jīng pèi xué fǎ	
2991	Upper and lower point combination		A method to combine points on the upper and lower body.	上下配穴法	shàng xià pèi xué fǎ	
2992	Back and front point combination		A method to combine points on the back and front of the body.	前后配穴法	qián hòu pèi xué fǎ	
2993	Left and right point combination		A method to combine points on the left and right side of the body.	左右配穴法	zuǒ yòu pèi xué fǎ	
2994	Yuan and Luo point combination		A method to combine the Yuan-source and Luo-connecting points.	原络配穴法	yuán luò pèi xué fǎ	
2995	Host-guest combination using Yuan-source and Luo-connecting points		A point combination method to use the Yuan-primary point of the affected meridian coupled with the Luo-connecting point of its interiorly-exteriorly connected meridian. This method is often employed to treat problems of the zang-fu organs and meridians.	主客原络配穴法	zhǔ kè yuán luò pèi xué fǎ	
2996	Shu and Mu point combination		A method to combine the back-Shu and front-Mu points.	俞募配穴法	shù mù pèi xué fǎ	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
2997	Methods of locating acupuncture points		The acupuncture points can be located according to the anatomical landmarks, proportional bone measurement, and finger measurement, etc.	腧穴定位法	shù xué dìng wèi fǎ	
2998	Proportional bone measurement		A method to use landmarks on the body surface, primarily joints, to measure the length and width of various parts of the body. Then the width or length is divided respectively into definite numbers of equal units as the standards for the proportional measurement.	骨度分寸法	gǔ dù fēn cùn fǎ	
2999	Finger-cun measurement		A method to locate acupuncture points based on the finger sizes of the patient.	手指同身寸	shǒu zhǐ tóng shēn cùn	
3000	Thumb measurement		A method to take the width of the interphalangeal joint of the thumb as 1 cun.	拇指同身寸	mǔ zhǐ tóng shēn cùn	
3001	Middle finger measurement		A method to take the distance between the ends of the two radial creases of the interphalangeal joints of the middle finger as 1 cun when the middle finger is flexed.	中指同身寸	zhōng zhǐ tóng shēn cùn	
3002	Four-finger measurement	Four-finger breadth measurement	A method to take the width of the patients' four fingers (index, middle, ring and little) close together at the level of the dorsal skin crease of the proximal interphalangeal joint of the middle finger as three cun. It is also known as "Yi Fu Fa" in Chinese.	横指同身寸	héng zhǐ tóng shēn cùn	一夫法
3003	Acupuncture			针刺类	zhēn cì lèi	
3004	The tip of a needle	The needle tip	The sharpest part of a needle.	针尖	zhēn jiān	
3005	The handle of a needle		The part of the needle held by an acupuncturist.	针柄	zhēn bǐng	
3006	The body of a needle	The shaft of a needle	The part between the tip and the handle.	针体 (针身)	zhēn tǐ (shēn)	
3007	The root of a needle		The demarcation line between the handle and the body.	针根	zhēn gēn	
3008	Stainless steel needles		Acupuncture needles made of stainless steel. It is now commonly used in clinical practice.	不锈钢针	bú xiù gāng zhēn	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
3009	Silver needles		Acupuncture needles made of silver. They are often used in warming needle because of their good thermal and electrical conduction.	银质针	yín zhì zhēn	
3010	Gold needles		Acupuncture needles made of gold.	金质针	jīn zhì zhēn	
3011	Needling methods	Acupuncture techniques	Basic acupuncture techniques.	针刺方法	zhēn cì fāng fǎ	
3012	Filiform needling methods		Basic techniques in using filiform needles.	毫针刺法	háo zhēn cì fǎ	
3013	The needling hand		The hand to hold and insert a needle.	刺手	cì shǒu	
3014	The pressing hand	The non-dominant hand	The hand that presses the puncturing area with one or more fingers, to facilitate needle insertion.	押手	yā shǒu	
3015	Needle insertion with both hands	Two-hand insertion	A method to insert a needle into a point by using both the puncturing hand and pressing hand.	双手进针法	shuāng shǒu jìn zhēn fǎ	
3016	Nail-pressing insertion		A method to press the skin of puncturing area with the nail of thumb or index finger of the pressing hand and insert the needle against the fingernail with the needling hand.	指切进针法	zhǐ qiē jìn zhēn fǎ	
3017	Needle-holding insertion with both hands		A method to hold the lower part of the needle body with a piece of sterile cotton or gauze between the thumb and index finger of the pressing hand while inserting a needle. (Press the skin adjacent to the the needling site with the nail of thumb or index finger of the pressing hand, while inserting a needle against the fingernail with the needling hand).	夹持进针法	jiā chí jìn zhēn fǎ	
3018	Skin-stretching insertion		A method to stretch the skin around the puncturing area with the thumb and index finger (or the index and middle fingers) of the pressing hand while inserting a needle.	舒张进针法	shū zhāng jìn zhēn fǎ	
3019	Skin-pinching insertion		A method to pinch and lift the skin of the puncturing area with the thumb and index finger of the pressing hand while inserting a needle.	提捏进针法	tí niē jìn zhēn fǎ	
3020	Needle insertion with one hand		A method to insert a needle into a point by using the puncturing hand alone.	单手进针法	dān shǒu jìn zhēn fǎ	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
3021	Guide tube-needle insertion		A method to insert a needle using a fine tube as a guide.	管针进针法	guǎn zhēn jìn zhēn fǎ	
3022	Scatter-pricking method		A needling technique to prick a point and its surrounding area.	散刺法	sàn cì fǎ	
3023	Pricking with a three-edged needle		A needling technique to gently prick using a three-edged needle and let out a small amount of blood or tissue fluid.	挑刺法 (挑治法)	tiǎo cì fǎ (tiǎo zhì fǎ)	
3024	Point-pricking method		A needling technique to prick superficially and then remove immediately. It is often used for Jing-well points or blood-letting.	点刺法	diǎn cì fǎ	
3025	Collateral-pricking method		A needling technique to prick superficial collaterals using a three-edged or a (single-use, disposable) seven-star needle to let out appropriate amount of blood.	刺络法	cì luò fǎ	
3026	Angle of insertion		The angle formed between the needle body and the skin while the needle is being inserted.	针刺角度	zhēn cì jiǎo dù	
3027	Perpendicular needle insertion		The needle insertion at a 90° angle to the skin.	直刺	zhí cì	
3028	Oblique needle insertion		The needle insertion at a 45° angle to the skin.	斜刺	xié cì	
3029	Subcutaneous needle insertion		Needle insertion at a 15° angle to the skin.	平刺	píng cì	横刺, 沿皮刺
3030	Point-toward-point needle insertion		A method to insert a needle from one point towards another point (or more points).	透刺	tòu cì	
3031	Needling manipulation		Manipulating the needle after insertion to produce the desired effect.	行针	xíng zhēn	运针
3032	Lifting-thrusting method		A needling manipulation to lift and thrust a needle.	提插法	tí chā fǎ	
3033	Twirling or rotating method	Turning or rotating method	A needling manipulation to twirl (turn) or rotate a needle.	捻转法	niǎn zhuǎn fǎ	
3034	Probing for qi	Meridian-following method	A method to gently tap or massage the skin along the pathways of meridians to promote the flow of qi.	循法	xún fǎ	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
3035	Handle-plucking method	Handle-flicking method	A needling manipulation to flick the handle of the needle to promote the flow of qi.	弹(柄)法	tán (bǐng) fǎ	
3036	Handle-scraping method		A needling manipulation to scrape the handle of the needle with fingernails to promote the flow of qi.	刮(柄)法	guā (bǐng) fǎ	
3037	Handle-shaking method		A needling manipulation to shake the needle handle to promote the flow of qi.	摇(柄)法	yáo (bǐng) fǎ	
3038	Flying method		A needling manipulation to twist the needle handle with the thumb and index finger for a couple of times and release the fingers. The repeated twisting and releasing resembles a bird spreading its wings.	飞法	fēi fǎ	
3039	Vibrating method		A needling manipulation to hold the handle of the needle and make a small-amplitude and rapid lifting and thrusting to cause the needle to vibrate up and down to promote the flow of qi.	震颤法	zhèn chàn fǎ	
3040	Arrival of qi	Deqi	The arrival of qi is signalled by particular sensations felt by the patient and the practitioner. For the patient, it typically refers to soreness, numbness, distension and heaviness felt around the needle (but may move up or down along the meridian). For the practitioner, it refers to a gripping sensation or a feeling of pressure underneath the needle.	得气	dé qì	
3041	Needling sensation		Typical sensations of soreness, numbness, distension and heaviness felt around the needle by the patient.	针感	zhēn gǎn	
3042	Waiting for qi		A method to leave the needle in place for a while after insertion, without any manipulation.	候气	hòu qì	
3043	Moving qi		A method to manipulate the needle to stimulate the flow of qi.	催气	cūi qì	
3044	Qi reaches the affected area		The effect of needling sensation reaching an affected area.	气至病所	qì zhì bìng suǒ	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
3045	Reinforcing and reducing manipulation	Tonifying and sedating manipulation	Needling manipulations to reinforce healthy qi for deficiency pattern and to remove pathogenic factors for excess pattern.	针刺补泻	zhēn cì bǔ xiè	
3046	Reinforcing and reducing by twirling or rotating	Tonifying and sedating by twirling or rotating	Needling manipulations to reinforce or reduce according to the twirling/rotating direction, angle, frequency and duration.	捻转补泻	niǎn zhuǎn bǔ xiè	
3047	Reinforcing and reducing by lifting and thrusting	Tonifying and sedating by lifting and thrusting	Needling manipulations to reinforce or reduce according to the forcefulness, speed, amplitude and duration of the lifting and thrusting.	提插补泻	tí chā bǔ xiè	
3048	Reinforcing and reducing by slowness and rapidness	Tonifying and sedating by slowness and rapidness	Needling manipulations to reinforce or reduce according to the slow or rapid needle insertion and withdrawal.	徐疾补泻	xú jí bǔ xiè	
3049	Directional reinforcing and reducing	Directional tonifying and sedating	Needling manipulations to reinforce or reduce by going against or following the pathways of meridians.	迎随补泻	yíng suí bǔ xiè	
3050	Reinforcing and reducing by breathing	Tonifying and sedating by breathing	Needling manipulations to reinforce or reduce by inserting or withdrawing the needle when the patient breathes in or out.	呼吸补泻	hū xī bǔ xiè	
3051	Reinforcing and reducing by opening and closing	Tonifying and sedating by opening and closing	Needling manipulations to reinforce or reduce by opening or closing the needle holes.	开阖补泻	kāi hé bǔ xiè	
3052	Balanced reinforcing and reducing	Even tonifying and sedating	Needling manipulations to lift, thrust, or twirl evenly.	平补平泻	píng bǔ píng xiè	
3053	Setting the Mountain on Fire		A complex reinforcing manipulation to induce local or general warming sensation. The point to be needled is divided into three levels: shallow (heaven), intermediate (man) and deep (earth). Insert the needle into the shallow level first and then down to the intermediate and deep levels, coupled with rapid thrusting and slow lifting for a total of nine times in each level. Repeat the procedure three times and leave the needle in the deep level.	烧山火	shāo shān huǒ	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
3054	Penetrating Heaven coolness		A complex reducing manipulation to induce local or general cool sensation. The point to be needled is divided into three levels: shallow (heaven), intermediate (man) and deep (earth). Insert the needle to the deep level first and then lift to the intermediate and shallow levels, coupled with rapid lifting and slow thrusting for a total of six times in each level. Repeat the procedure three times and leave the needle in the shallow level.	透天凉	tòu tiān liáng	
3055	Reinforcing the mother or reducing the son		One of the reinforcing or reducing manipulations. Manipulations of reinforcing the mother or reducing the son are selected according to deficiency or excess of the zang-fu organs or meridian problems.	子母补泻法	zǐ mǔ bǔ xiè fǎ	
3056	Midnight-noon ebb-flow	Zi Wu Liu Zhu Chronoacupuncture	A special theory for point selection. The midnight-noon (Zi Wu) represents the time. The ebb-flow (Liu Zhu) refers to the circulation of qi and blood. This theory believes the meridian qi and blood flows from Zi time (11:00 pm–1:00 am) to Wu time (11:00 am–1:00 pm) and then from the Wu time to the Zi time. The yin qi becomes most abundant at the Zi time and then begins to decline, and the Yang qi starts to increase and becomes most abundant at the Wu time. Based on this theory, the five-Shu points located below the knee and elbow joints should be selected according to the designated hours.	子午流注	zǐ wǔ liú zhù	
3057	Needle retaining		To retain a needle in place after the presence of needling sensation (arrival of qi).	留针(置针)	liú zhēn (zhì zhēn)	
3058	Needle withdrawal		To remove a needle when the treatment is done.	出针	chū zhēn	
3059	Acupuncture-related adverse events		Acupuncture-related adverse events include fainting, stuck needle, bent needle and broken needle. These accidents are often caused by a weak constitution, nervousness, hunger, inappropriate body position or medical negligence.	针刺异常情况	zhēn cì yì cháng qíng kuàng	



WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
3060	Needle shock	Fainting during an acupuncture session.	An adverse event during an acupuncture session: Patients may present with a pale complexion or experience dizziness, nausea and chest tightness. In severe cases, cold limbs, cold sweats, drop in blood pressure, syncope or shock may be present.	晕针	yūn zhēn	
3061	Stuck needle		Difficulty or impossible to rotate, lift or thrust a needle.	滞针	zhì zhēn	
3062	Bent needle		The needle body becomes bent upon insertion or retention.	弯针	wān zhēn	
3063	Broken needle		The needle body is broken and the broken part is on or below the skin surface.	断针	duàn zhēn	
3064	Acupuncture-induced haematoma		Localized swelling, distension and pain from bleeding in the tissue after needle withdrawal.	针刺血肿	zhēn cì xuè zhǒng	
3065	Acupuncture-induced pneumothorax		Pneumothorax induced by inappropriate acupuncture needling that punctures the lung.	针刺性气胸	zhēn cì xìng qì xiōng	
3066	Micro-system therapy		A collective term for acupuncture in a specific local area, such as ear, scalp, or face, etc.	微针疗法	wēi zhēn liáo fǎ	
3067	Scalp acupuncture		A therapeutic method to stimulate specific lines on the scalp with an acupuncture needle.	头针疗法	tóu zhēn liáo fǎ	
3068	Ear acupuncture	Auriculotherapy	A therapeutic method to stimulate points on the ear with an acupuncture needle.	耳针疗法	ěr zhēn liáo fǎ	
3069	Ear points		Specific stimulation areas distributed on the auricles.	耳穴	ěr xué	
3070	Facial acupuncture		A therapeutic method to stimulate points on the face with an acupuncture needle.	面针疗法	miàn zhēn liáo fǎ	
3071	Eye acupuncture		A therapeutic method to stimulate points around the eye socket with an acupuncture needle.	眼针疗法	yǎn zhēn liáo fǎ	
3072	Nose acupuncture		A therapeutic method to stimulate points on the nose with an acupuncture needle.	鼻针疗法	bí zhēn liáo fǎ	
3073	Tongue acupuncture		A therapeutic method to stimulate points on the tongue with an acupuncture needle.	舌针疗法	shé zhēn liáo fǎ	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
3074	Back acupuncture		A therapeutic method to stimulate points on the back with an acupuncture needle.	脊背针疗法	jǐ bèi zhēn liáo fǎ	
3075	Hand acupuncture		A therapeutic method to stimulate points on the hand with an acupuncture needle.	手针疗法	shǒu zhēn liáo fǎ	
3076	Foot acupuncture		A therapeutic method to stimulate points on the foot with an acupuncture needle.	足针疗法	zú zhēn liáo fǎ	
3077	Wrist-ankle acupuncture		A therapeutic method to stimulate points on the wrist and ankle subcutaneously with an acupuncture needle.	腕踝针疗法	wàn huái zhēn liáo fǎ	
3078	Abdominal acupuncture		A therapeutic method to stimulate specific abdominal points with an acupuncture needle.	腹针疗法	fù zhēn liáo fǎ	
3079	The second metacarpal bone acupuncture		A method to stimulate the area lateral to the second metacarpal bone with an acupuncture needle. This method is based on micro-system theory that regards the second metacarpal bone as the whole body.	第二掌骨侧针法	dì èr zhǎng gǔ cè zhēn fǎ	
3080	The three-edged needle		A thick needle with a round handle, a triangular body and a sharp tip similar to a lancet needle. It derives from the Sharp-edged Needle (one of the nine ancient needles).	三棱针	sān léng zhēn	
3081	The dermal needle		Needling instrument composed of several short needles used for tapping the points, such as the plum-blossom needle or seven-star needle. These needles cannot be reused without sterilization.	皮肤针	pí fū zhēn	
3082	The plum-blossom needle		A dermal needle that has a bundle of five short, embedded needles resembling a plum blossom. This needle cannot be reused without sterilization.	梅花针	méi huā zhēn	
3083	The seven-star needle	The seven-star hammer	A dermal needle that has seven short needles attached to the end of a handle in a cluster. This needle cannot be reused without sterilization.	七星针	qī xīng zhēn	
3084	The intradermal needle		A small needling instrument for embedding at a certain point for an extended period.	皮内针	pí nèi zhēn	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
3085	Thumbtack needle	Presstack needle	An intradermal needle that is shaped like a thumbtack used for extended auricular therapy, approximately 0.2 mm–1.5 mm in length.	揸针	qìn zhēn	
3086	Needle-embedding therapy	Intradermal needle therapy	A therapy to insert an intradermal needle into the skin of the body surface (an acupuncture point) and fix with tape to retain for a period of time.	埋针疗法	mái zhēn liáo fǎ	皮内针疗法
3087	Electroacupuncture		A therapeutic method to connect pulses of electrical current to inserted acupuncture needles.	电针	diàn zhēn	
3088	Point injection	Hydro-acupuncture	A therapeutic method to inject fluid, sometimes medicated, into acupuncture points.	穴位注射	xué wèi zhù shè	水针
3089	Fire needling	Cauterized needle	A therapeutic method to insert a hot needle to the affected area and remove immediately afterwards.	火针	huǒ zhēn	燔针
3090	Elongated needle	Thread needling	A therapeutic method to puncture one point towards another one subcutaneously using a long, thready needle like wheat awn. It derives from the Long Needle (one of the nine ancient needles).	芒针	máng zhēn	
3091	Laser therapy		A therapeutic method to use a low-energy laser beam to stimulate acupuncture points.	激光针	jī guāng zhēn	
3092	Bee-sting therapy	Bee venom acupuncture	A therapy to use the sting from a live bee (mechanical stimulation) and venom (pharmacological action) in the treatment of health conditions.	蜂针疗法	fēng zhēn liáo fǎ	
3093	Sham acupuncture	Placebo acupuncture	A research control method that simulates acupuncture needle insertion without actual insertion, preferably without any penetration that carries physiological response. The tip of a sham needle is blunt to prevent the actual penetration into the body, which effectively trick the patient into thinking they are receiving real acupuncture, such as the “Streitberger” needle.	伪针;假针	wěi zhēn;jǐǎ zhēn	
3094	Incision therapy		A therapeutic method to incise the skin to squeeze out a small amount of fat.	割治	gē zhì	
3095	Catgut-embedding therapy		A therapeutic method to implant catgut or surgical suture at a selected point.	穴位埋线	xué wèi mái xiàn	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
3096	Bian-stone needling		Pointed or wedge-shaped stones historically used to stimulate the surface of the body, drain pus or let blood out.	砭石	biān shí	
3097	Nine ancient needles		A collective term for the nine types of needles described in the Nei Jing (Yellow Emperor's Internal Classic), namely, shear needle, rounded needle, spoon-like needle, sharp-edged needle, round-sharp needle, sword-like needle, long needle, large needle and filiform needle.	九针	jiǔ zhēn	
3098	Shear needle	Chan zhen	One of the nine ancient needles. It has an arrow-shaped head and often used for superficial insertion in the treatment of heat pattern or skin conditions.	铍针	chán zhēn	
3099	Rounded needle	Yuan zhen	One of the nine ancient needles. It has a cylindrical needle body and oval tip. It is often used for point massage in the treatment of muscle problems.	圆针	yuán zhēn	
3100	Spoon-like needle	Ti zhen	One of the nine ancient needles. It has a big, thick needle body and a slightly sharp round tip. It is often used for blood problems and heat pattern.	鍤针	chí zhēn	
3101	Sharp-edged needle (lancing needle)	Fen zhen	One of the nine ancient needles. It is also known as the three-edged needle. It is often used to prick subcutaneous veins or small vessels in the treatment of abscess, heat pattern, acute gastroenteritis, etc.	锋针	fēng zhēn	
3102	Round-sharp needle	Yuan Li zhen	One of the nine ancient needles. It has a round and sharp needle tip and is often used for abscess, bi-impediment and acute conditions.	员利针	yuán lì zhēn	
3103	Sword-like needle	Pi zhen	One of the nine ancient needles. It has a (double-edged) sword-like needle tip and is often used to cut open the abscesses to drain pus and blood.	铍针	pī zhēn	
3104	Long needle	Chang zhen	One of the nine ancient needles. It has a longer needle body (approximately 20–30 cm or longer) and is often used for deep insertion in the treatment of chronic rheumatism or sciatica.	长针	cháng zhēn	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
3105	Large needle	Da zhen	One of the nine ancient needles. It has a thick needle body and a slightly round needle tip. It is often used to treat general oedema or abdominal masses.	大针	dà zhēn	
3106	Filiform needle	Hao zhen	One of the nine ancient needles. It is now the most common needle in acupuncture treatment.	毫针	háo zhēn	
3107	The five needling techniques		A collective term for five ancient needling techniques, namely, half needling, leopard-spot needling, joint needling, Hegu needling, and Shu needling.	五刺	wǔ cì	
3108	Half needling	Shallow needling	A technique characterized by a shallow insertion and swift withdrawal. It is often used for lung-related problems.	半刺	bàn cì	
3109	Leopard-spot needling		A technique characterized by pricking with a three-edged needle around the point, causing leopard spot-like haemorrhagic spots. It is often used for heart-related problems.	豹文刺	bào wén cì	
3110	Joint needling		A technique characterized by puncturing the tendon close to the joint without causing bleeding. It is often used for liver-related problems.	关刺	guān cì	
3111	Hegu needling	Multi-direction needling	A technique characterized by puncturing the muscles of the affected region with the needle going obliquely right and left, resembling the claws of a chicken. It is often used for spleen-related problems.	合谷刺	hé gǔ cì	
3112	Shu needling (one of the five needling techniques)		A technique characterized by deep puncture directly to the bone. It is often used for kidney-related problems.	输刺(五刺)	shū cì (wǔ cì)	
3113	The nine needling techniques		A collective term for nine ancient needling techniques, namely, Shu needling, distant needling, meridian needling, collateral needling, intramuscular needling, great drainage needling, skin needling, cauterized needling and contralateral needling.	九刺	jiǔ cì	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
3114	Shu needling (one of the nine needling techniques)		A technique to puncture the Ying-spring point and Shu-stream point of the meridian involved and the back-Shu points of five zang organs.	输刺(九刺)	shū cì (jiǔ cì)	
3115	Distal needling		A technique to puncture points on the lower body (i.e. the lower He-sea points of the six fu organs) to treat problems of the upper body.	远道刺	yuǎn dào cì	
3116	Meridian needling	Channel needling	A technique to acupuncture stasis/tenderness points along the pathways of meridians.	经刺	jīng cì	
3117	Collateral needling		A technique to prick small vessels with a three-edged needle for bloodletting.	络刺	luò cì	
3118	Intramuscular needling		A technique to puncture directly into the muscle.	分刺	fēn cì	
3119	Great drainage needling		A technique to incise with a sword-shaped needle to drain pus or eliminate stagnant blood, also known as lancing.	大泻刺	dà xiè cì	
3120	Skin needling		A technique to puncture shallowly into the skin.	毛刺	máo cì	
3121	Contralateral needling		A technique to puncture points on the left side if the right side is affected, or vice versa.	巨刺	jù cì	
3122	Contralateral blood-letting		A technique to conduct blood-letting on the left side if the right side is affected, or vice versa.	缪刺	miù cì	
3123	Cauterized needling		A technique to prick swiftly with a cauterized needle. Indicated for cold bi-impediment pattern.	焮刺	cùn cì	
3124	The twelve needling techniques		A collective term for twelve ancient needling techniques, namely: coupled needling; successive trigger needling; relaxing needling; triple needling; quintuple needling; straight needling; Shu needling; short needling; superficial needling; yin needling; accompanied needling; and repeated shallow needling.	十二刺	shí èr cì	
3125	Coupled needling		A technique to puncture the tenderness spots felt on the front (corresponding to the front-Mu point) and back (corresponding to the back-Shu point).	偶刺	ǒu cì	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
3126	Successive trigger needling		A technique to puncture migratory Ashi points: while needling directly at the tender point, searching for other tender points over the surrounding area and needling in succession.	报刺	bào cì	
3127	Relaxing needling	Cramp-relieving	A technique to insert the needle from the side of the tendon and then puncture the contracted muscle in different directions to induce relaxation.	恢刺	huī cì	
3128	Triple needling		A technique to insert one needle perpendicularly, coupled with two more needles by its sides. Used to remove cold in a small, deeper area.	齐刺	qí cì	
3129	Quintuple needling		A technique to insert one needle perpendicularly in the centre, coupled with four more needles anterior, posterior, right, and left to the perpendicular needle. Used to remove cold in a large, shallow area.	扬刺	yáng cì	
3130	Straight needling		A technique to pinch the skin and insert the needle subcutaneously (The word “straight” here means towards the affected shallow area). Used to remove cold in the superficial area.	直针刺	zhí zhēn cì	
3131	Shu needling (one of the twelve needling techniques)		A technique to insert a needle perpendicularly to the deep area to wait for needling sensation and then slowly withdraw the needle when the needling sensation is present. Used to clear pathogenic heat.	输刺(十二刺)	shū cì (shí èr cì)	
3132	Short needling		A technique to insert the needle slowly while gently shaking the needle, followed by mild rotation when the needle is close to the bone. Used to treat bone pain or tenderness.	短刺	duǎn cì	
3133	Superficial needling		A technique to puncture the superficial area obliquely. Used indicated for muscle pain with a cold sensation.	浮刺	fú cì	
3134	Yin needling		A technique to puncture bilateral Taixi (KI 3) (the Yuan-primordial point of the kidney meridian) simultaneously. Used to treat cold limbs.	阴刺	yīn cì	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
3135	Accompanied needling		A technique to insert one needle perpendicularly, coupled with another one lateral to its side. Indicated for tenderness or pain with a fixed location.	傍针刺	bàng zhēn cì	
3136	Repeated shallow needling		A technique to repeatedly puncture the shallow areas to cause bloodletting. Often used for carbuncles or abscesses.	赞刺	zàn cì	
3137	Moxibustion therapy			灸法类	jiǔ fǎ lèi	
3138	Moxibustion		A therapeutic method to apply burning mugwort (moxa) or other substances near or to particular points or areas of the body to relax, warm and tonify.	灸法	jiǔ fǎ	
3139	Moxa wool	Moxa punk	Processed moxa leaves that concentrates the white hairs on the underside of the leaf.	艾绒	ài róng	
3140	Moxa cone		Cone-shaped mass made of moxa wool	艾炷	ài zhù	
3141	Zhuang		A dosage unit to count the number of moxa cones.	壮	zhuàng	
3142	Moxa stick	Moxa roll	A cigar-shaped roll of mugwort wrapped in cotton paper.	艾条	ài tiáo	
3143	Medicinal moxa stick		Moxa sticks containing medicinal powder.	药艾条	yào ài tiáo	
3144	Moxa cone moxibustion		A method to place a moxa cone directly or indirectly to the selected area and then ignite.	艾炷灸	ài zhù jiǔ	
3145	Direct moxibustion		A method to place a moxa cone directly on the selected area and then ignite to create a superficial burn.	直接灸	zhí jiē jiǔ	
3146	Scarring moxibustion		A method to place a small moxa cone directly on the skin, then ignite until the skin blisters and then scars after it heals.	瘢痕灸	bān hén jiǔ	
3147	Suppurative moxibustion		Please refer to scarring moxibustion.	化脓灸	huà nóng jiǔ	
3148	Non-scarring moxibustion		A method to place a small moxa cone directly on the skin, then ignite and remove the burning moxa before the skin burns enough to scar.	无瘢痕灸	wú bān hén jiǔ	



WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
3149	Wheat-grain sized cone moxibustion	Rice grain moxibustion	A direct moxibustion method using a wheat grain size moxa cone.	麦粒灸	mài lì jiǔ	
3150	Indirect moxibustion	Insulated moxibustion	A method to place some insulated materials between the moxa cone and the skin.	间接灸	jiàn jiē jiǔ	间隔灸, 隔物灸
3151	Ginger-insulated moxibustion	Ginger moxibustion	A method to place a fresh ginger slice between the moxa cone and the skin.	隔姜灸	gé jiāng jiǔ	
3152	Garlic-insulated moxibustion	Garlic moxibustion	A method to place a fresh garlic slice or mashed garlic between the moxa cone and the skin.	隔蒜灸	gé suàn jiǔ	
3153	Salt-insulated moxibustion	Salt moxibustion	A method to place some salt (usually at Shenque (Ren 8)) between the moxa cone and the skin.	隔盐灸	gé yán jiǔ	
3154	Monkshood cake-insulated moxibustion	Monkshood moxibustion	A method to place a monkshood cake between the moxa cone and the skin.	隔附子饼灸	gé fù zǐ bǐng jiǔ	
3155	Moxa stick moxibustion		A method of indirect moxibustion where an ignited moxa stick or roll passes over a selected area without directly touching the surface to warm the area.	艾条灸	ài tiáo jiǔ	
3156	Suspended moxibustion		An indirect moxibustion method to hold a moxa stick above the skin during the treatment.	悬灸	xuán jiǔ	悬起灸
3157	Gentle moxibustion		An indirect moxibustion method to keep the end of an ignited moxa stick at a fixed distance (2–3 cm) from the selected area, enabling a mild warm sensation.	温和灸	wēn hé jiǔ	
3158	Sparrow-pecking moxibustion		An indirect moxibustion method to place an ignited moxa stick near the selected area and move it up and down like a pecking bird.	雀啄灸	què zhuó jiǔ	
3159	Circling moxibustion		An indirect moxibustion method to keep the end of an ignited moxa stick at a fixed distance from the selected area and move it back and forth circularly.	回旋灸	huí xuán jiǔ	
3160	Mild-warm moxibustion		An indirect moxibustion method to place several layers of cloth or cotton paper on the selected area and then press the ignited end of a moxa stick to allow the heat to penetrate the skin.	实按灸	shí àn jiǔ	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
3161	Taiyi moxa stick		An indirect moxibustion method to apply an ignited moxa stick to the selected area. The moxa stick is made of fine powder of Tan Xiang (Lignum Santali Albi), Shan Nai (Rhizoma Kaempferiae), Qiang Huo (Rhizoma et Radix Notopterygii), Gui Zhi (Ramulus Cinnamomi), Mu Xiang (Radix Aucklandiae), Xiong Huang (Realgar), Bai Zhi (Radix Angelicae Dahuricae) and Xi Xin (Radix et Rhizoma Asari).	太乙神针	tài yǐ shén zhēn	
3162	Thunder-fire moxa stick		An indirect moxibustion method to apply an ignited moxa stick to the selected area. The moxa stick is made of fine powder of Chen Xiang (Lignum Aquilariae Resinatum), Mu Xiang (Radix Aucklandiae), Ru Xiang (Olibanum), Yin Chen (Herba Artemisiae Scopariae), Qiang Huo (Rhizoma et Radix Notopterygii), Gan Jiang (Rhizoma Zingiberis), Chuan Shan Jia (Squama Manitis), and She Xiang (Moschus).	雷火神针	léi huǒ shén zhēn	
3163	Warming needle	Needle-warming moxibustion	A method to fix a small section of moxa stick or cone onto the handle of an inserted needle prior to igniting.	温针灸	wēn zhēn jiǔ	
3164	Moxibustion with a moxa burner		A method to put moxa wool or stick into a metal box or canister, ignite and then place the box or canister over the selected area.	温灸器灸	wēn jiǔ qì jiǔ	
3165	Juncus moxibustion		A method to apply a quick momentary touch to the selected area with an ignited oiled rush of Juncus.	灯火灸	dēng huǒ jiǔ	
3166	Blistering moxibustion	Scarring moxibustion	A method to apply irritants to the selected area to produce congestion and blistering.	天灸	tiān jiǔ	药物发泡法
3167	Acupoint application		A method to apply warm or hot medicinal substances to acupuncture points.	穴位敷贴	xué wèi fū tiē	
3168	Cupping therapy			拔罐类	bá guàn lèi	
3169	Cupping		A therapeutic method to create negative pressure by consuming the air inside the cup with fire or other methods and then place the cup on the skin over the selected area.	拔罐法	bá guàn fǎ	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
3170	Fire cupping	Fire suction	A method to create negative pressure by introducing an ignited material inside the cup to consume the air, thereby enabling the cup to suck itself onto the skin. There are three different approaches: fire twinkling; fire throwing; and cotton sticking.	火罐法	huǒ guàn fǎ	火吸法
3171	Fire twinkling		A method to ignite an alcoholic cotton ball held with a forceps, place it inside the cup, quickly turn it around in one to two circles, take it out immediately, and place the cup on the selected area.	闪火法	shǎn huǒ fǎ	
3172	Fire throwing		A method whereby an ignited paper is quickly flung into a cup to create a negative pressure on the selected area.	投火法	tóu huǒ fǎ	
3173	Cotton sticking		A method to stick an alcoholic cotton ball on the inner wall (the lower 1/3), ignite the cotton ball and quickly place the cup over the selected area.	贴棉法	tiē mián fǎ	
3174	Boiling cup method	Water suction	A method to boil a cup in water to create negative pressure: to hold the boiled bamboo cup (the mouth facing downwards) with a forceps, cover the cup mouth with a towel to absorb the water in the cup, and then quickly place the cup over the selected area.	水罐法	shuǐ guàn fǎ	水吸法
3175	Cup retention		Leave the cup in place after suction.	留罐法	liú guàn fǎ	
3176	Sliding cupping	Moving cupping	A method to lubricate the cup mouth and selected area first and then slide the cup up and down while retaining its suction.	走罐法	zǒu guàn fǎ	
3177	Flash cupping		A method to rapidly place and remove the cup repeatedly over the selected area until the local skin becomes red.	闪罐法	shǎn guàn fǎ	
3178	Blood-letting and cupping	Wet cupping	A method to prick the area to be treated with a three-edged needle or lancet and then suck out blood with a cup.	刺络拔罐	cì luò bá guàn	
3179	Needle-retention cupping		A method to apply cupping to the centre of the site where a needle is retained.	留针拔罐	liú zhēn bá guàn	针罐

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
3180	Medicated cupping		A boiling cup method to boil bamboo cups in medicinal liquid and then apply to the body.	药罐	yào guǎn	
3181	Guasha therapy		A method to scrape the skin repeatedly using a soup spoon or other smooth-edged instruments (such as horned animal bones, water buffalo horn or jade). The skin is often lubricated with massage oil or water.	刮痧疗法	guā shā liáo fǎ	
3182	Guasha tool		Guasha tools are often made from buffalo horn, Bian-stone or jade.	刮痧板	guā shā bǎn	
3183	3.6 Tuina			3.6 推拿类		
3184	Tuina	Anmo, Anqiao, Qiaomo, Anwu, etc.	A Chinese medical therapy to apply manipulation to points or body areas for disease treatment and prevention as well as promoting health. Sometimes, patients are educated to exercise in addition to receiving treatment.	推拿	tuī ná	按摩; 按跷; 乔摩; 案扞
3185	Tuina manipulation		<b>Specific, standardized methods and movements to treat/prevent diseases and benefit health. Tuina manipulations are supposed to be lasting, forceful, even, soft and penetrating to the deeper tissue.</b>	推拿手法	tuī ná shǒu fǎ	
3186	Rolling manipulation		A tuina manipulation to stick to the area to be treated with the fifth metacarpophalangeal joint and conduct back-and-forth rolling using the hypothenar eminence and the ulnar side of the back of the hand.	滚法	gǔn fǎ	
3187	Rolling manipulation with the proximal interphalangeal joints		A tuina manipulation to clench a fist to allow the distal phalanx bone of the thumb to be inside the fist, stick to the area to be treated with the proximal interphalangeal joints of the index, middle, ring and little fingers and then apply back-and-forth rolling manipulation.	滚法	gǔn fǎ	
3188	Yi Zhi Chan pushing	One finger pushing	A tuina manipulation to exert constant force on the area to be treated with the tip or the palmar side of the thumb through active swing of the forearm.	一指禅推法	yì zhǐ chán tuī fǎ	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
3189	Yi Zhi Chan pushing with the radial side of the thumb		A variation of Yi Zhi Chan pushing manipulation using the radial side of the thumb.	一指禅偏锋推法	yì zhǐ chán piān fēng tuī fǎ	
3190	Fast Yi Zhi Chan pushing manipulation		A fast Yi Zhi Chan pushing manipulation with a frequency of more than 220 times/min.	缠法	chán fǎ	
3191	Yi Zhi Chan pushing with the flexed thumb		A variation of Yi Zhi Chan pushing manipulation with the radial or dorsal side of the interphalangeal joint of the thumb.	跪推法	guì tuī fǎ	
3192	Thenar-kneading manipulation		A tuina manipulation to knead and exert force on the area to be treated with the great thenar eminence through rhythmic swing of the forearm.	鱼际揉法	yú jì róu fǎ	
3193	Kneading manipulation		A tuina manipulation to apply perpendicular pressure to the surface of the body with the fingers, palms or elbows. The pressure is supposed to reach subcutaneous tissues. It includes kneading with the finger, kneading with the palm and kneading with the forearm.	揉法	róu fǎ	
3194	Circular rubbing manipulation		A Tuina manipulation to rub the area to be treated circularly with the fingers or palms.	摩法	mó fǎ	
3195	Pushing manipulation		A one-way linear pushing manipulation with the fingers, palms, or elbows.	推法	tuī fǎ	
3196	Plane pushing manipulation		A pushing manipulation with the Hukou area (formed between the thumb and index finger).	刨推法	páo tuī fǎ	
3197	Scraping manipulation		A tuina manipulation to scrape with the radial side of the index finger, on the back of the interphalangeal joint of the index finger. Alternatively, scraping can be done with tools such as spoons or coins.	刮法	guā fǎ	
3198	Linear rubbing manipulation		A tuina manipulation to apply linear rubbing with the hypothenar, great thenar, palms or fingers.	擦法	cā fǎ	
3199	Wiping manipulation		A tuina manipulation to apply top-down, left-right or arch-shaped wiping with the palmar side of the thumbs or the palms.	抹法	mǒ fǎ	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
3200	Pressing manipulation		A tuina manipulation to apply perpendicular pressure to the surface of the body with the palmar side of the fingers, palms or elbows. It is also one of the common diagnostic methods in tuina practice.	按法	àn fǎ	
3201	Point-pressing manipulation		A tuina manipulation to apply perpendicular pressure to the surface of the body with finger tips, interphalangeal joints or elbows.	点法	diǎn fǎ	
3202	Forceful pressing manipulation		A tuina manipulation to apply continuous, forceful pressure to the surface of the body with the palmar side of the thumbs, palms or elbows.	压法	yā fǎ	
3203	Symmetrical pressing manipulation		A tuina manipulation to apply symmetrical pressure to the area to be treated with the fingers or palms.	抵法	dǐ fǎ	
3204	Rotating pressing manipulation		A tuina manipulation to apply rotating pressure to the area to be treated with the palms.	碟转法	dié zhuǎn fǎ	
3205	Fist-pressing manipulation		A tuina manipulation to apply pressure to the area to be treated with a fist.	拳顶法	quán dǐng fǎ	
3206	Stroking manipulation		A tuina manipulation to rub the palms and gently place (the warm palms) over the area to be treated.	扞法	mén fǎ	
3207	Thumb pressing manipulation		A tuina manipulation to press the area to be treated with the palmar side of the thumbs.	押法	yā fǎ	
3208	Pinching manipulation		A tuina manipulation to apply coordinated pressure to the area to be treated with the thumb and the other four fingers.	捏法	niē fǎ	
3209	Slow-shifting manipulation		A tuina manipulation to place the palm over the area to be treated, grasp and lift the muscle either using the thumb and the other four fingers or exerting a symmetric force from the base of the palm and fingers, hold for a while and then shift forward to repeat the procedure.	挪法	nuó fǎ	
3210	Twisting manipulation	Pulling manipulation	A tuina manipulation to clamp and release the area to be treated with flexed index finger and middle finger or with the thumb and flexed index finger.	拧法	nǐng fǎ	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
3211	Hooking manipulation		A tuina manipulation to place the index finger and middle finger together and flex into a hook, stick to the skin with the radial border of the middle phalanx of index finger and then apply continuous pushing and wiping manipulation.	勾法	gōu fǎ	
3212	Grasping manipulation		A tuina manipulation to pinch and knead the area to be treated with the thumb and the other four fingers.	拿法	ná fǎ	
3213	Gripping manipulation		A tuina manipulation to grab and pinch the area to be treated with five fingertips.	抓法	zhuā fǎ	
3214	Clutching manipulation		A tuina manipulation to clutch and release the limb with the palm.	握法	wò fǎ	
3215	Palm-twisting manipulation		A tuina manipulation to hold the limb with both hands/palms and apply alternating or back-and-forth twisting.	搓法	cuō fǎ	
3216	Regulating manipulation		A tuina manipulation to apply rhythmic grasping and pinching of the limb.	理法	lǐ fǎ	
3217	Finger-twisting manipulation		A tuina manipulation to hold the area to be treated with the thumb and index finger and apply back-and-forth twisting.	捻法	niǎn fǎ	
3218	Plucking manipulation		A tuina manipulation to press the area to be treated with fingers or elbows and then apply perpendicular plucking force to the subcutaneous tissue.	拨法	bō fǎ	
3219	Patting manipulation		A tuina manipulation to pat the area to be treated with the palms or fingers.	拍法	pāi fǎ	
3220	Knocking manipulation		A tuina manipulation to knock the surface of the body with the fist, palms, fingers or mulberry sticks.	击法	jī fǎ	
3221	Pecking manipulation		A tuina manipulation to place the five fingers together and peck the area to be treated.	啄法	zhuó fǎ	
3222	Tapping manipulation		A tuina manipulation to tap the area to be treated with the ulnar side of the little finger or a hollow fist.	叩法	kòu fǎ	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
3223	Chopping manipulation		A tuina manipulation to chop the area between the fingers with the ulnar side of the palm.	劈法	pī fǎ	
3224	Percussing manipulation		A tuina manipulation to place one palm over the area to be treated and percuss the dorsum of the hand with a hollow fist made by the other hand.	贯法	guàn fǎ	
3225	Flipping manipulation		A tuina manipulation to flip the area to be treated with fingernails or palmar sides of the fingers.	弹法	tán fǎ	
3226	Shaking manipulation		A tuina manipulation to grasp the affected limb and apply small-amplitude radial shakings.	抖法	dǒu fǎ	
3227	Vibrating manipulation		A tuina manipulation to press acupuncture points or certain body parts with the fingers or palms and apply fast, continuous vibration.	振法	zhèn fǎ	
3228	Rotating manipulation		A tuina manipulation to conduct passive rotation of the affected joint along the axis of motion.	摇法	yáo fǎ	
3229	Pulling-stretching manipulation	Traction manipulation	A tuina manipulation to immobilize one end of the affected joint or limb and pull the other end along the longitudinal axis.	拔伸法	bá shēn fǎ	牵引法
3230	Tightening manipulation		A tuina manipulation to clamp the affected fingers or toes with the fingers and apply rapid pulling.	勒法	lè fǎ	
3231	Flexion and extension		A tuina manipulation to slowly and repeatedly flex and extend the joints to stretch the surrounding tissues, and increase the joint range of motion.	屈伸法	qū shēn fǎ	
3232	Pulling manipulation		A tuina manipulation to apply a sudden thrust force to the affected joint to produce passive rotation, flexion, extension, abduction and adduction.	扳法	bān fǎ	
3233	Back-carrying manipulation		A tuina manipulation to carry the patient on the back and apply traction, shaking, vibration and instant extension to the affected lumbar vertebrae.	背法	bēi fǎ	
3234	Combing manipulation		A tuina manipulation to place the palmar sides of the fingers over the area to be treated and apply soft, one-way combing.	梳法	shū fǎ	



WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
3235	Brushing manipulation		A tuina manipulation to brush or scrub the surface of the body with the fingers.	拂法	fú fǎ	
3236	Smoothing manipulation		A tuina manipulation to place the palm or fingers over the area to be treated, gradually push from the proximal end to the distal end, and then release the force quickly.	捋法	lǚ fǎ	
3237	Covering manipulation		A tuina manipulation to gently cover the area to be treated with the hand and remain still.	掩法	yǎn fǎ	
3238	Rotating manipulation		A tuina manipulation to make a passive rotation of the joints.	捻法	niǎn fǎ	
3239	Holding manipulation		A tuina manipulation to hold or lift the affected limb with one or both hands.	端法	duān fǎ	
3240	Touching manipulation		A tuina manipulation to press the limbs or acupuncture points with fingers to help with diagnosis.	摸法	mō fǎ	
3241	Lifting manipulation		A tuina manipulation to lift the post-traumatic sunken bones or joints to normal position using one or both hands or with the help of a rope.	提法	tí fǎ	
3242	Gathering manipulation		A tuina manipulation to clamp and release the skin of the area to be treated with the ulnar aspects of both palms.	拢法	lǒng fǎ	
3243	Squeezing manipulation		A tuina manipulation to squeeze both sides of the area to be treated with one or both hands.	挤法	jǐ fǎ	挟按法
3244	Drawing manipulation		A tuina manipulation to pull or move the limbs of the patient.	挽法	wǎn fǎ	
3245	Compound Tuina manipulations			推拿复合手法类	tuī ná fù hé shǒu fǎ lèi	
3246	Pressing-kneading manipulation		A compound tuina manipulation composed of pressing and kneading manipulations.	按揉法	àn róu fǎ	
3247	Grasping-kneading manipulation		A compound tuina manipulation composed of grasping and kneading manipulations.	拿揉法	ná róu fǎ	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
3248	Pushing-rubbing manipulation		A compound tuina manipulation composed of Yi Zhi Chan pushing using the radial side of the thumb and rubbing circularly with the other four fingers.	推摩法	tuī mó fǎ	
3249	Pulling-shaking manipulation		A compound tuina manipulation composed of pulling-stretching and shaking manipulations.	牵抖法	qiān dǒu fǎ	
3250	Kneading-pinching manipulation		A compound tuina manipulation composed of kneading and pinching manipulations.	揉捏法	róu niē fǎ	
3251	Lifting-flicking manipulation		A compound tuina manipulation composed of tendon-flicking and muscle plucking manipulations.	提弹法	tí tán fǎ	
3252	Tendon-flicking manipulation		A compound tuina manipulation composed of pinching and lifting manipulations.	弹筋法	tán jīn fǎ	
3253	Pushing-kneading manipulation		A compound tuina manipulation composed of Yi Zhi Chan pushing and kneading manipulation.	推揉法	tuī róu fǎ	
3254	Plucking-pulling manipulation		A compound tuina manipulation composed of plucking and pulling manipulations.	推扳法	tuī bān fǎ	
3255	Hooking-pointing manipulation		A compound tuina manipulation composed of hooking and point-pressing manipulations.	勾点法	gōu diǎn fǎ	
3256	Sweeping manipulation		A tuina manipulation to push and scrub along the Shaoyang meridian in the temporal region using the radial side of the thumb and tips of the other four fingers.	扫散法	sǎo sàn fǎ	
3257	Stepping manipulation		A tuina manipulation to step with the feet on certain areas of the body.	踩跷法	cǎi qiāo fǎ	
3258	Spine-pinching manipulation		A tuina manipulation to pinch and lift the skin of the spine symmetrically with the thumb, index finger and middle finger or with the thumb and the other four fingers and release the force immediately. Move forward gradually and repeat the same procedure.	捏脊法	niē jǐ fǎ	
3259	Spine-pointing manipulation		A tuina manipulation to press the bladder meridian on both sides of the spine.	点脊法	diǎn jǐ fǎ	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
3260	Inserting manipulation		A tuina manipulation to insert the fingers into the space between the scapula and thoracic wall. It is specifically used for gastroptosis.	插法	chā fǎ	
3261	Supporting manipulation		A tuina manipulation to lift the affected area with one or both hands. It is commonly used for gastroptosis.	托法	tuō fǎ	
3262	Swinging manipulation		A tuina manipulation: Place the palms on the lower borders of the subcostal region and extend gradually to the low back, press and knead the soft tissues on both sides of the low back using the palmar sides of the fingers, lift the low back and abdomen and then swing to the left and right gently.	抄法	chāo fǎ	
3263	Low back-closing manipulation		A tuina manipulation to place the thumbs and the middle fingers over the lumbar triangles on both sides and apply soft, gentle pressure.	封腰法	fēng yāo fǎ	
3264	Low back-vibrating manipulation		A tuina manipulation to press the low back coupled with traction and stretching.	颤腰法	chàn yāo fǎ	
3265	Spinal tuina manipulation		Manipulations used on the spine to correct spinal subluxation and regulate the functions of the spine.	脊柱推拿手法类	jǐ zhù tuī ná shǒu fǎ lèi	
3266	Tuina medium		Lotions applied to the surface of the body for lubrication or treatment.	推拿介质	tuī ná jiè zhì	
3267	Assistant tuina tools		<b>Supplementary tools to assist in tuina treatment and health care.</b>	推拿辅助器具类	tuī ná fǔ zhù qì jù lèi	
3268	Mulberry branch stick		An assistant tuina tool made of 12 specific mulberry branches based on certain requirements with a strong effect to unblock and circulate qi and blood. It is often used on the top of the head, chest and back, waist, hip and limbs.	桑枝棒	sāng zhī bàng	
3269	Tai Ping Che		An assistant tuina tool comprising an iron bar with five to six pieces of jade or sandalwood made into a chain of beads. The head and tail of the iron bar are folded. The appliance is connected to a short handle and can be held in the hand and the beads work like a rolling wheel. It is often used on the face, bone joints, etc.	太平车	tài píng chē	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
3270	Paediatric tuina		A type of tuina therapy based on the theory of traditional Chinese medicine, using specific manipulations on the meridians and collaterals and specific points on the surface of the body. It helps to prevent against diseases and benefit health through harmonizing Zang-Fu organs, yin, yang, qi and blood, strengthen the body and promote the healthy growth and development of children.	小儿推拿	xiǎo ér tuī ná	
3271	Shaolin Neigong	Shaolin Internal Exercise	A main training method in tuina exercise and a key part of Neigong tuina. It is originally a form of martial art to strengthen the body, but now becomes a distinctive method and school of self-exercise plus tuina treatment.	少林内功	shào lín nèi gōng	
3272	Yi Jin Jing	Sinew-transforming exercise	A traditional health-building exercise to stretch the body, strengthen the sinews, bones and ligaments and regulate the meridians and zang-fu organs.	易筋经	yì jīn jīng	
3273	<b>Other tuina terminologies</b>			其他推拿术语	qí tā tuī ná shù yǔ	
3274	Hot compress		A common external therapy in Chinese medicine to treat diseases through heat stimulation.	热敷	rè fū	
3275	Tuina combined with herbal ointment		A therapeutic method to apply herbal ointment on the surface of the area to be treated, followed by tuina manipulations.	膏摩	gāo mó	
3276	Tuina analgesia		One of the pain control methods in Chinese medicine by applying Tuina to reduce or control pain according to theories of Chinese medicine.	推拿镇痛	tuī ná zhèn tòng	
3277	Healthcare Tuina	Healthcare massage	A tuina method for healthy people or people with suboptimal health to strengthen the body and help with disease prevention and treatment.	健身推拿	jiàn shēn tuī ná	
3278	Cosmetic tuina		A type of tuina method to achieve healthier skin and slow down the ageing process of the skin.	美容推拿	měi róng tuī ná	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
3279	3.7 Daoyin/qigong			3.7 导引气功		
3280	Daoyin (guiding and stretching)		To guide qi to harmonize the body and stretch the body to make it soft. It aims to prevent and cure diseases and promote health through stretching exercise combined with breath and internal qi circulation.	导引	dǎo yǐn	
3281	Qigong		An exercise method to regulate the body, breath and mind to achieve body-mind, man-society and man-nature harmonization. It cultivates the essence, qi and spirit internally and sinews, bones and body externally according to ancient Chinese philosophy.	气功	qì gōng	
3282	Large heavenly circle		Originated in Daoism, it refers to the second stage of internal alchemical process (i.e., to refine qi to spirit). This is performed on the basis of the small heavenly circle exercise and is believed that the large heavenly circle can connect spirit with qi, improve health and attain longevity.	大周天	dà zhōu tiān	
3283	Three passes	Three barriers	The three areas in the ascending path along the Du meridian when internal qi circulates along the pathways of the Du and Ren meridians during practicing the “small heavenly circle” (or “microcosmic orbit”) meditation. They are arduous for internal qi to overcome and therefore called “passes” or “barriers”. Alternatively, they refer to the three steps in internal alchemy (Neidan): refining the essence to qi; refining the qi to spirit; and refining the spirit to emptiness. Some also use three passes to represent the ears, eyes and mouth.	三关	sān guān	
3284	Harmony of the eyes, ears, nose and tongue		A specific state in qigong practice that requires dropping the eyelids, listening to the silence, regulating breathing by focusing the eyes on the tip of the nose and closing the mouth. This state helps to remove distracting thoughts during qigong practice.	和合四象	hé hé sì xiàng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
3285	Inner peace and calmness	Tian Dan Xu Wu	A state of peaceful inner joy and free from ego or desires. This principle on health cultivation was recorded in the Huang Di Nei Jing (Yellow Emperor's Internal Classic) and highly valued by generations of qigong masters.	恬淡虚无	tián dàn xū wú	
3286	Dantian breathing		A beneficial variation of natural breathing with the Dantian area. Unlike usual abdominal breathing, this breathing method does not need mental focus or external force.	丹田呼吸	dān tián hū xī	
3287	3.8 Taiji		Taiji is an ancient Chinese philosophical term which represents the state of undifferentiated absolute and infinite potential; the oneness before duality, from which yin and yang, the basic polarity of the universe, originate. It has later become the highest conceivable principle about the generation, development and changes of all things in the universe. Taiji is often considered as the root and symbol of traditional Chinese culture. It has far-reaching impact on the Yi Jing (the Book of Changes), traditional Chinese medicine and taijiquan.	3.8 太极		
3288	Taijiquan		An ancient Chinese martial art practiced for both defence training and health benefits. It is a combination of breathing, mental focus, and physical movements, whose intention is to cultivate the practitioner's internal qi. It is rooted in the philosophies of Confucianism, Daoism and Chinese medicine, and concepts of Taiji, yin-yang and the Five Elements.	太极拳	tài jí quán	
3289	Taijiquan styles		Major influential taijiquan styles include Chen style, yang style, Wu style, Wu style, Sun style and Zhaobao style.	太极拳流派	tài jí quán liú pài	
3290	Taijiquan principles		The principles of taijiquan are based on its philosophical and medical meaning as well as practice requirements. They include Taiji theories, mnemonics and classics.	太极拳拳理	tài jí quán quán lǐ	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
3291	Taijiquan mnemonics		The tips or smart ways in Taiji practice. These include mnemonics for taijiquan, Taiji sword, Taiji spear, Taiji knife and Taiji pushing hands. These mnemonics are often vivid and conversational.	拳诀	quán jué	
3292	Taijiquan manual		A catalogue to record categories or systems. There are three types of Taiji manuals: 1) the names of sequenced Taiji skills and weapons routines/forms; 2) Inheritance lineage; and 3) books on Taiji skills.	拳谱	quán pǔ	
3293	Taijiquan classics		Classics/texts which are exclusively focussed on the essential principles that guide the practice of taijiquan.	拳经	quán jīng	
3294	Taijiquan structure		Intangible frame and rhythm, including physical moves, eye movement and connections or transitions between moves.	拳势	quán shì	
3295	Internal martial arts		It refers to Wudang martial arts (occupied with spiritual, mental or qi-related aspects), as opposed to Shaolin (external) martial arts (focused on physical aspects). There are three internal martial arts: taijiquan, xingyiquan (form-intention fist) and baguazhang (eight trigram palm).	内家拳	nèi jiā quán	
3296	Form		A series of movements in Taiji practice.	盘架子	pán jià zi	
3297	Eight directions		These include four sides and four corners. If we consider taijiquan as a 3-D ball, symmetrical release of forces from eight directions (left, right, up, down and two diagonal angles) is essential to maintain the body equilibrium, known as the “rounded force” .	八面	bā miàn	
3298	Eight body parts		Vertex, crotch, heart, eyes, ears, hands, feet and waist.	八体	bā tǐ	
3299	Eight types of people should be declined to learn Taiji		Those with no loyalty or filial piety; those with no humanistic spirit; those with evil intentions; those who are reckless and impulsive; those who are defiant and arrogant; those who are rude and disrespectful; those who are unpredictable; and those who care too much about gains and losses.	八不传	bā bù chuán	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
3300	Four mistakes		Avoid using strength to store qi; avoid expanding the chest or sinking the low back; avoid shrugging the shoulders or sinking the neck; avoid discontinuity in body moves.	四忌	sì jì	
3301	Eight requirements		Relax the shoulders and sink the elbows; lift the vertex and issue force from the thighs; tap the teeth and touch the palate with the tongue; sink the chest and loosen the waist; move naturally; internal-external unity; yin-yang coordination; and stillness in movement.	八要	bā yào	
3302	Wuji (without ridgepole)		An ancient philosophical term, referring to the primordial universe prior to the Taiji (supreme ultimate). In Taiji practice, it has three extended meanings: 1) a relatively static state; 2) mental serenity before body moves in Taiji practice; 3) abdomen.	无极	wú jí	
3303	Two complementary forces		An ancient philosophical term, referring to yin and yang. In Taiji practice, the two forms have three extended meanings: 1) movement and stillness; 2) symmetrical Taiji moves; 3) the two kidneys.	两仪	liǎng yí	
3304	Three elements		An ancient philosophical term, referring to heaven, earth and man. In Taiji practice, it is used to represent head, hands and feet, further indicating the upper, middle and lower body parts.	三才	sān cái	
3305	Four symbols		An ancient philosophical term. It has two meanings in Taiji: 1) upper and lower limbs; 2) four directions—front, back, left and right.	四象	sì xiàng	
3306	Taiji functions		These include health benefits and self-defence training. Health benefits are achieved through practicing taolu (solo hand and weapons routines/forms). Self-defence training mainly refers to pushing hands sequences, which embody a variety of self-defence techniques.	体用	tǐ yòng	
3307	Six harmonies		The six closings include three internal harmonies (intent, qi and strength) and three external ones (shoulder-hip, elbow-knee and hands-feet). These harmonies allow the movements to connect seamlessly and the force to be intact.	六合	liù hé	



WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
3308	Taiji diagram		A symbol or diagram in Chinese philosophy representing Taiji and its dualist aspects—yin and yang.	太极图	tài jí tú	
3309	Hold the head as if suspended from above	Head upright, spirit rising	The head is held as if suspended by a thread attached to the crown, at the point Baihui (Du20). This posture aims to avoid tension in the neck. In doing so, do not tilt the head from side to side, or up and down. The whole body is light and nimble when the head is suspended at the crown.	虚领顶劲	xū lǐng dǐng jìn	提顶; 顶头悬; 贯顶; 悬顶
3310	Relax the shoulders, sink the elbows		Relax and drop down the shoulders, especially the acromion, or the point Jianjing (GB 21); at the same time, slightly flex and drop the elbow.	沉肩坠肘	chén jiān zhuì zhǒu	
3311	Stomach-protecting technique		A technique to protect the stomach in Taiji practice. It produces a similar effect as dropping the elbow.	护肱	hù zhūn	
3312	Sunken (sitting) wrist with finger extension		Extend and relax the fingers naturally, slightly separating them to form an arc or spiral at the back of the hand. This enables the internal qi to radiate to the fingers and is known as “materializing in the hands and fingers”.	展指坐腕	zhǎn zhǐ zuò wàn	
3313	Coordination between the two arms		During Taiji practice, the movement of one arm triggers corresponding movement in the other one, as if they are connected to each other by a cord.	两膊相系	liǎng bó xiāng xì	
3314	Vertical Fist		Keep the wrist and fingers in a vertical position (approximately 90°). However, it is advisable not to use force to bend the wrist.	竖腕	shù wàn	
3315	Sunken wrist		Drop and relax the wrist to allow the internal energy to reach the fingertips from the arm.	坐腕	zuò wàn	
3316	Pumping wrist		Pump the wrist to soften and relax the hands.	鼓腕	gǔ wàn	
3317	Straight wrist		Make the wrist straight and flat.	直腕	zhí wàn	
3318	Overlapped wrist		Place one wrist over the other.	叠腕	dié wàn	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
3319	Sink the chest, raise the back		Intentionally relax the chest and back muscles and intercostal space. The shoulders should be naturally rounded to allow the chest to be slightly hollowed. To “raise the back” means to stretch the spine longitudinally and horizontally to allow the qi to stick to the back (so that one can use this qi to issue great power).	含胸拔背	hán xiōng bá bèi	
3320	Expand the back		Expanding the back is closely associated with sinking the chest. By sinking the chest, one will be able to expand the back naturally.	扩背	kuò bèi	
3321	Keep the waist relaxed and buttocks tucked under		To relax the waist means to lift the coccyx and sink the points Shensu (BL 23) and Mingmen (DU 4). To tuck buttocks under means to slightly tuck in the buttocks.	松腰敛臀	sōng yāo liǎn tún	
3322	Keep the waist sunken and buttocks tucked under		By sinking the waist in a relaxed sitting position, one will be able to tuck in the buttocks naturally.	弓腰收臀	gōng yāo shōu tún	
3323	Keep the coccyx upright		During Taiji practice, the coccyx needs to be kept upright at all times.	尾闾中正	wěi lú zhōng zhèng	
3324	Lifting the anus	Suspending the crotch	To lift the anus, tuck in the coccyx and keep the body neutral. This helps to maintain balance and feel comfortable.	尾闾收	wěi lú shōu	提肛; 吊裆; 调裆
3325	Keep the upper and lower connected		To make Baihui (DU 20) and Huiyin (REN 1) vertically connected, in order to keep the upper body aligned and upright; and to connect Jianjing (GB 21) with Yongquan (KI 1) to keep the head and feet vertically connected.	上下一线	shàng xià yí xiàn	
3326	Keep the body upright		To keep the torso perpendicular to the ground and place the bodyweight over the supporting feet. This helps to keep the body stable.	立身中正	lì shēn zhōng zhèng	
3327	Lengthen the torso and limbs		To lengthen the torso through “holding the head as if suspended from above”. To extend the arms through sinking the shoulders and dropping the elbows. To lengthen the legs through relaxing the waist, opening the hips and flexing the knees.	身肢放长	shēn zhī fàng cháng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
3328	Five bows in the body		The five bows include the torso, both hands and both feet. The body bow uses the waist as the handle and uses Yamen (DU 15) and coccyx as the tips. The hand bow uses the elbow as the handle and uses the wrist and clavicle as the tips. The foot bow uses the knee as the handle and uses the hip and heel as the tips.	一身备五弓	yì shēn bèi wǔ gōng	
3329	Float the buttocks		To attempt to float the buttocks before issuing internal energy.	泛臀	fàn tún	
3330	Drop the buttocks		To relax and drop the buttocks when squatting down.	溜臀	liū tún	
3331	Tuck in the buttocks		To slightly tuck in the buttocks to facilitate the abdomen and relax the crotch. This helps to keep the body neutral and stable.	敛臀	liǎn tún	
3332	Round crotch		To relax the hip joint, relax hip muscles and tuck in the femoral head. This enables the crotch to become round.	圆裆	yuán dāng	
3333	Relax and tuck in the hips		To relax and, at the same time, tuck in the hips to enable the perineum to become a semicircle.	缩胯	suō kuà	
3334	Wrap the crotch		To adduct the knees intentionally to protect the crotch. This helps to distinguish empty from solid, keep the lower body stable and increase the loading ability of the legs. This can also lengthen the legs.	裹裆	guǒ dāng	
3335	Slack crotch		A common error in Taiji practice. Slack crotch may cause energy to scatter.	荡裆	dàng dāng	
3336	Sharp-angled crotch		A common error in Taiji practice. A sharp-angled crotch may cause an inability to support the internal energy.	尖裆	jiān dāng	
3337	Open crotch		A common error in Taiji practice. An open crotch (>90°) may cause an inability to obtain the internal energy.	敞裆	chǎng dāng	
3338	Sitting legs		To appropriately flex the knee to enable the body weight to be placed on the flexed leg.	坐腿	zuò tuǐ	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
3339	Opening and closing		Movement combination of the body, breathing and energy. The “opening” refers to eccentric movements of the arms, whereas the “closing” refers to concentric movements of the arms. Breathing in and releasing energy act to open, whereas breathing out and storing energy act to close.	开合	kāi hé	
3340	Store and release		To “store energy” means to relax muscles with mental focus. To “release energy” means to contract muscles and often combine with breathing.	蓄发	xù fà	
3341	Seek stillness in movement		A dynamic state in Taiji practice. Taiji movements are open, continuous and transitional like a river; however, they can also close and become static like mountains.	动静	dòng jìng	
3342	Fast and slow		Taiji movements are relatively slower than other martial arts; the speed of movement varies among differing styles.	快慢	kuài màn	
3343	Distinguish between fullness (weighted) and emptiness (weightless)		In Taiji practice, it is important to distinguish between fullness and emptiness all over the body (i.e. we must know exactly which part of our body is issuing power and which part is receiving it). As for the legs, the “empty” leg is never absolutely weightless, and the “full” leg does not have all the weight placed upon it.	虚实分清	xū shí fēn qīng	虚实分明
3344	Opening, closing, empty and full		The principles of Taiji exercise. The “opening” means to stretch, step forward, bend down and drop. The “closing” means to flex, step backward, raise and lift. The “empty” means absence of mental focus, supplementary force, relaxation and closing movements. The “solid” means presence of mental focus, major force point and opening movements.	开合虚实	kāi hé xū shí	
3345	Internal-external unity		The coordination or harmony between mental intent and physical movement. The “unity” here means a perfect and natural combination between hands, feet and mental intent.	内外相合	nèi wài xiāng hé	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
3346	Upper-lower coordination		Coordinated movements of the upper and lower limbs as well as the torso. Hand movements, waist movements, leg movements, and even the eye movements — all are in one unified movement (The root is in the feet, released through the legs, controlled by the waist, and materialized in the hands and fingers).	上下相随	shàng xià xiāng suí	
3347	Movement of all joints		This refers to successive movement of nine major joints throughout the body: neck, back, low back, hip, knee, ankle, shoulder, elbow and wrist.	节节贯串	jié jié guàn chuàn	
3348	Gentle and flexible movements	Mindful-qi movement	A distinctive feature of taijiquan. Mindfulness or “intent” guides the body movement and breathing; both breathing and internal qi are controlled by the mindfulness of the will. The “gentle” means to guide movements with intent instead of force. The “flexible” means to move the arms or legs with agility.	轻灵	qīng líng	
3349	Unity of upper and lower		The power is rooted in the feet, controlled by the waist, and manifested through the fingers, integrating the body as one harmonious unit.	一动无有不动	yí dòng wú yǒu bú dòng	
3350	Hard and soft		Force and changes of taijiquan. The “hard” refers to fast, short release of force in an attack, whereas the “soft” refers to slow, gentle and spiral moves in defence.	刚柔	gāng róu	
3351	Square and round		The two technical features of Taiji. The “square” refers to the force points, whereas the “round” refers to arc-shaped Taiji movements. The two features are unity of opposites.	方圆	fāng yuán	
3352	Mutual generation of square and round		The “square” refers to the hard power point that manifests in four sides and four corners. The “round” refers to the soft, circulating qi. The “square” originates from the “round”, and the “round” contains the “square”. There is “square” within the “round” and vice versa.	方圆相生	fāng yuán xiāng shēng	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
3353	The thirteen postures		These include eight force-releasing methods and five footwork methods. The eight force-releasing methods include four straight directions (Peng, Lǚ, Ji and An) and four diagonal directions (Cai, Lie, Zhou and Kao). The five footwork methods are called step forward, step backward, gaze (that is, focus your intention toward and move) to the left, gaze to the right, and central equilibrium.	十三势	shí sān shì	
3354	Taiji jin		A collective term for a variety of power or energy developed through Taiji practice.	太极劲	tài jí jìn	
3355	Keep the central equilibrium		The “Zhong” means the centre in direction. The “Tu” means earth in five elements. Together they mean the “centre” or body weight. In Taiji practice, it is important to distinguish empty and full in all body parts as well as the two legs.	中土常守	zhōng tǔ cháng shǒu	
3356	Defeat the strong with minimal effort		‘A force of four ounces deflects a thousand pounds’ (i.e. to repel force effortlessly).	四两拨千斤	sì liǎng bō qiān jīn	
3357	Energy (Jin) and force (Li)		The “Jin” originally means strong and powerful. In Taiji practice, it refers to the cultivated, trained and flexible force that can change in power, direction, force point and force speed, in response to an opponent’s attack.	劲与力	jìn yǔ lì	
3358	Sink qi down to Dantian		To sink qi to Dantian, you need to keep the coccyx upright, sink the chest, relax the shoulders and suspend the crotch, and thus to guide qi down to the abdomen with intent.	气沉丹田	qì chén dān tián	
3359	Opening with breathing out and closing with breathing in		An essential principle in coordinated movements and breathing: breathe out when performing opening, solid, stretching, stepping forward, dropping, bending down, moving away, releasing, attacking or striking moves; and breathe in when performing closing, empty, sinking, flexing, stepping backward, lifting, moving back, raising, collecting, and softening moves.	开呼合吸	kāi hū hé xī	
3360	Opening with breathing in and closing with breathing out		An essential principle in coordinated movements and breathing: breathe in when opening up the rib cage and breathe out when closing the rib cage.	开吸合呼	kāi xī hé hū	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
3361	Intent-qi movement		A distinctive feature of taijiquan. The “intent” means to guide the body movement and breathing with mental intent. The “qi” means both breathing and internal qi are controlled by mental intent.	意气运动	yì qì yùn dòng	
3362	Shen-qi movement		A distinctive feature of taijiquan. The “Shen” includes spirit and eye direction. The “qi” means breathing and internal qi move with body movement.	神气鼓荡	shén qì gǔ dàng	
3363	Nine essentials of Taiji		The nine essentials in Taiji practice. These include: 1) keep the head upright as if suspended by a thread; 2) keep the coccyx upright as if pillared to the ground; 3) raise the upper back as if carrying a pot on the back ; 4) sink the chest like holding a tree; 5) suspend the crotch as if holding a ball; 6) relax the waist; 7) move the hands as if tearing cotton; 8) move the feet as if sailing a boat; and 9) move the legs as if pulling a string.	太极九如	tài jí jiǔ rú	
3364	Relaxation and tension		An important feature of Taiji practice. There is a saying that it takes at least 10 years to really understand Taiji. The key part is learning to cultivate internal energy through relaxation and stillness. It is necessary to avoid tension and mental stress before achieving relaxation in Taiji practice.	松紧	sōng jǐn	
3365	Issue forces from the four extremities		Intentionally projecting internal force through the tips of fingers and toes.	齐四梢	qí sì shāo	
3366	Gongfa		Basic skills acquired through learning standard Taiji moves and pushing hands. These require continuous practice and include both psychological and physiological abilities.	功法	gōng fǎ	
3367	Taiji sword		A weaponry (sword) form of Taiji practice, based on ancient fencing technique, coupled with fencing arts from other schools of martial arts.	太极剑	tài jí jiàn	
3368	Taiji fan		A combination of taijiquan and skills of playing with a fan. It moves or rotates the fan with intent and acts to benefit health, uplift the mood, and entertain yourself and others.	太极扇	tài jí shàn	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
3369	Taiji spear		A weaponry (spear) form of Taiji practice. The spear is long, sharp and easy to use. It is known as the “king of weapons” because of the significant military advantage it provides on battlefields.	太极枪	tài jí qiāng	
3370	Taiji cane		A Taiji practice, which uses a cane or stick as a weapon. The stick is known as the “head of weapons”. There were no standard Taiji cane forms before 1949, with the exception of the White Ape form in Chen style Taiji. After 1949, martial arts masters including Cui Yishi developed Taiji cane forms.	太极棍	tài jí gùn	
3371	Taiji pushing hands		Also known as hitting hands, kneading hands or crossing hands, pushing hands is a two-person training routine practiced in Taiji. It works to undo a person’s natural instinct to resist force with force, teaching the body to yield to force and redirect it. There are mainly eight methods in practicing pushing hands: bing-warding off; lǚ-rolling back; ji-pressing; an-pushing; cai-plucking; lie-splitting; zhou- elbow striking; and kao-shoulder striking.	太极推手	tài jí tuī shǒu	
3372	(Peng) ward off		Rising or expanding internal energy. With this energy, one feels the body is full of qi in all eight directions. During pushing hands, this energy allows you to create a buffer zone that prevents the first shock of an incoming attack and at the same time, enable you to defend, absorb or redirect the opponent’s power.	棚劲	bēng jìn	
3373	(Lǚ) roll back		The use of force in a sideways direction, such as where we intercept and move with a forward directed attack, simultaneously diverting it slightly to one side and thus to empty space.	捋劲	lǚ jìn	
3374	(Ji) press forward		Internal energy that projects forward from its source to prevent your opponent from issuing strength. During pushing hands, this energy radiates along the outside of the forearms and the back of the hands.	挤劲	jǐ jìn	



WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
3375	(An) push down		A forward and downward movement of energy. During pushing hands, this energy enables you to prevent your opponent from raising their arms or legs, and at the same time, allows you to stick to and redirect the opponent's power.	按劲	àn jìn	
3376	(Cai) pluck		Internal energy that grasps or pulls the opponent's wrist or elbow downwards with the fingertips or palm.	采劲	cǎi jìn	
3377	(Lie) splitting power		Internal energy to push or pluck forward. During pushing hands, this energy allows you to use a spiral motion to split the opponent's body and destroy the opponent's balance.	捌劲	liè jìn	
3378	(Zhou) elbow striking power		Internal energy that projects through the forearm rotation and tip of the elbow. During pushing hands, you can either defend the opponent's attack with the tip of your elbow. Alternatively, you can use one hand to stick to the opponent's hand and use flexed elbow of the other arm to spirally press the opponent's elbow and arm.	肘劲	zhǒu jìn	
3379	(Kao) shoulder striking power		Internal energy to squeeze forward with your shoulder, back and hip. During pushing hands, this energy allows you to push the opponent with your shoulder, back or hip.	靠劲	kào jìn	
3380	Floating hands		A wrong move in pushing hands.	双浮	shuāng fú	
3381	Resisting hands		Rigid, inflexible moves during pushing hands.	双重	shuāng zhòng	
3382	Flexible hands		Connection and transition between empty and solid moves.	双轻	shuāng qīng	
3383	Single weighted stance		This is opposed to a stance with equal weight on both feet. Single weighted stance refers to the body weight focusing on one foot.	单重	dān zhòng	
3384	(Bing) warding off method		One of the eight methods in pushing hands: An upward circular movement, forward or backward, yielding or offsetting usually with the arms to disrupt the opponent's centre of gravity.	棚法	bēng fǎ	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
3385	(Lü) rolling back method		One of the eight methods in pushing hands: to apply sideways, circular yielding movement to the opponent's wrist with one hand and stick to the opponent's elbow with the other hand.	捋法	lǚ fǎ	
3386	(Ji) pressing method		One of the eight methods in pushing hands: A pressing or squeezing offset in a direction away from the body, usually done with the back of the hand or outside edge of the forearm.	挤法	jǐ fǎ	
3387	(Cai) plucking method		One of the eight methods in pushing hands: to grasp the opponent's wrist or elbow downwards with the fingertips or palm.	采法	cǎi fǎ	
3388	(Lie) splitting method		One of the eight methods in pushing hands: to separate, to twist or to offset with a spiral motion, often while making immobile part of the body (such as a hand or leg) to split an opponent's body thereby destroying posture and balance.	捌法	liè fǎ	
3389	(Zhou) elbow striking method		One of the eight methods in pushing hands: to strike or push with the elbow.	肘法	zhǒu fǎ	
3390	(Kao) shoulder striking method		One of the eight methods in pushing hands: to strike or push with the shoulder, upper back, arm or hip.	靠法	kào fǎ	
3391	Adhere and follow		Two basic skills in the practice of Taiji pushing hands. To "adhere" means to get your opponent to follow you under your control; whereas to "follow" means to obey your opponent's intention by letting him think he can apply an application, which leads him to use force.	粘走	zhān zǒu	
3392	Taiji broadsword		A weaponry (broadsword) form of Taiji practice, which includes the philosophy, training and thirteen standard forms.	太极刀	tài jí dāo	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
3393	3.9 Mental/emotional therapy		Methods to treat disordered moods and emotions using Chinese medicine theories on emotions.	3.9 情志疗法		
3394	Praying method		A psychotherapeutic treatment protocol that combines analysis of causative factors of mental-emotional disorders with prayer. These analyses and prayer treatments are based on emotion theories and psychological principles in Chinese medicine.	祝由法	zhù yóu fǎ	
3395	Restraining emotions method		A psychotherapeutic method that uses the mutual restraint cycle of five element theory in the treatment of mental-emotional disorders, during which the doctor intentionally arouses certain feelings in the patient that counteract their abnormal emotional state.	情志相胜法	qíng zhì xiāng shèng fǎ	
3396	Sadness prevails over anger		An emotion therapy based on the restraining cycle of the five-element theory: sadness corresponds to metal; anger corresponds to wood; metal restrains wood; so sad feelings and language will subdue or release anger.	悲胜怒	bēi shèng nù	
3397	Anger prevails over excessive thinking		An emotion therapy based on the restraining cycle of the five-element theory: anger corresponds to wood; thinking corresponds to earth; and wood restrains earth; so provocation to elicit an angry response will relieve anxiety and over-thinking.	怒胜思	nù shèng sī	
3398	Thinking prevails over fear		An emotion therapy based on the restraining cycle of the five-element theory: thinking corresponds to earth; fear corresponds to water; earth restrains water; so encouraging mental focus or meditation can help the patient ignore or forget fear.	思胜恐	sī shèng kǒng	
3399	Fear prevails over excess joy		An emotion therapy based on the restraining cycle of the five-element theory: fear corresponds to water; joy corresponds to fire; water restrains fire; so eliciting a fearful response will restrain excess joy and euphoria.	恐胜喜	kǒng shèng xǐ	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
3400	Joy prevails over sadness		An emotion therapy based on the restraining cycle of the five-element theory: joy corresponds to fire; sadness corresponds to metal; fire restrains metal; and so happiness can overcome melancholy and sorrow.	喜胜悲	xǐ shèng bēi	
3401	Flexible methods		Flexible psychotherapeutic methods that apply the mutual promotion or mutual restraint relationship among the five phases to different mental-emotional disorders. This idea was first mentioned in the Su Wen and later promulgated by Zhu Danxi.	活套法	huó tào fǎ	
3402	Panic calming therapy		A method to treat mental-emotional diseases such as anxiety, panic and post-traumatic stress disorders. Under controlled conditions, by repeated exposure to the circumstance that trigger the patient's anxiety or traumatic response disorder, their adverse reaction is gradually lessened and normalized.	惊者平之法	jīng zhě píng zhī fǎ	
3403	Five element music therapy	Five phase music therapy	A method to use different qualities of the five musical tones (gong, shang, jiao, zheng and yu), related to the five elements in the treatment of mental disorders.	五行音乐	wǔ xíng yīn yuè	
3404	Imagery therapy		A method to treat mental disorders by communicating with the patient's self-image.	意疗法	yì liáo fǎ	
3405	Five emotions		Joy, anger, grief, excess thinking and fear.	五志	wǔ zhì	
3406	Excess of the five emotions		Pathological conditions that result from excessive mental activity impairing the essential qi of five zang organs and/or disturbing qi movement within zang-fu organs.	五志过极	wǔ zhì guò jí	
3407	Fright causes the qi to become chaotic		Sudden shock and fright disrupt the qi activity and causes qi movements to become confused and disorderly.	惊则气乱	jīng zé qì luàn	
3408	Fear causes the qi to descend		Excess fear or an ongoing state of fearfulness causes qi to strongly descend.	恐则气下	kǒng zé qì xià	
3409	Joy causes the qi to slack		Excess joy and/or euphoria cause qi to move too slowly and the qi movement becomes sluggish.	喜则气缓	xǐ zé qì huǎn	

WGM2#	English term	Synonyms	English definition/description	Chinese term	Pinyin term	Chinese synonyms
3410	Sadness consumes the qi		Excess sorrow and grief weaken the qi.	悲则气消	bēi zé qì xiāo	
3411	Anger causes the qi to rise		Rage and persistent anger cause disorderly ascending of the qi.	怒则气上	nù zé qì shàng	
3412	3.10 Others			3.10 其他		
3413	Dietary therapy		The study of essential knowledge and use of diet as part of therapy.	食疗学	shí liáo xué	
3414	Medicated diet		Food prepared in combination with Chinese herbs to benefit the health, where the selection of the herbs is based on the theories of Chinese medicine.	药膳	yào shàn	
3415	Food therapy	Dietary therapy	A therapeutic approach to harmonize qi and blood, balance yin and yang, prevent disease and benefit health, through the use of specifically tailored diets, where the properties of the food ingredients are guided by the theories of Chinese medicine.	食疗	shí liáo	食治; 食养; 食补



# References

1. World Health Organization. Regional Office for the Western Pacific. WHO International Standard Terminologies on Traditional Medicine in the Western Pacific Region. 2007
2. WHO ICD-11 Supplementary Chapter Traditional Medicine Conditions - Module I
3. Chinese-English Dictionary of Chinese Medicine, Nigel Wiseman
4. Wang Yiqin. Diagnostics of Traditional Chinese Medicine [M]. Beijing: Higher Education Press, 2006
5. Zhu Bangxian, Tang Hanjun. Chinese-English Illustrated TCM External Therapies for Common Diseases [M]. Shanghai: Shanghai Science and Technical Publishers, 2006
6. Xu Yao, Zhou Yu, Li Heng, Han Chouping. Perplexities to Acupuncture and Moxibustion [M]. Shanghai: Press of Shanghai University of Traditional Chinese Medicine, 2007
7. Wang Yiqin. Chinese-English Edition of Illustrations on TCM Tongue Diagnosis [M]. Shanghai: Shanghai Science and Technical Publishers, 2007
8. Peng Bo. Traditional Chinese Internal Medicine [M]. Beijing: People's Medical Publishing House. 2007
9. Wu Yiling. Collateral Disease Theory in Practice [M]. Beijing: People's Medical Publishing House, 2008
10. Jin Hongzhu. Chinese-English Edition of Illustrations of Tuina Therapy [M]. Shanghai: Shanghai Science and Technical Publishers, 2009
11. Zheng Meifeng, He Furong. Chinese-English Pocket Edition (Colored) Illustrations of Guasha Therapy [M]. Shanghai: Shanghai Science and Technical Publishers, 2009
12. Tao Xianyue, Qu Fei. Chinese-English Pocket Edition (Colored) Illustrations of Cupping Therapy [M]. Shanghai: Shanghai Science and Technical Publishers, 2009
13. Chen Hongfeng, Li Daofang, Han Chouping. Chinese External Medicine [M]. Beijing: People's Medical Publishing House. 2011
14. Xie Jianqun, Li Mingdong, Han Chouping. Chinese Internal Medicine [M]. Beijing: People's Medical Publishing House. 2013
15. Chen Xiangjun. Improving Clinical Accuracy—A Systematic Method for Pattern Differentiation and Treatment [M]. Beijing: People's Medical Publishing House. 2014
16. Shanghai Qigong Research Institute. Dictionary of Common Qigong Glossary [M]. Shanghai: Shanghai Scientific & Technical Publishers. 2015
17. Zhao Xiaoting. Traditional and Classical Chinese Health Cultivation—BaDuanJin [M]. Shanghai: Shanghai Science & Technical Publishers. 2015
18. Xu Feng. Traditional and Classical Chinese Health Cultivation—LiuHeGong [M]. Shanghai: Shanghai Science & Technical Publishers. 2015
19. Ni Qinggen. Traditional and Classical Chinese Health Cultivation—YiJinJing [M]. Shanghai: Shanghai Science & Technical Publishers. 2015
20. Xiao Bin. Traditional and Classical Chinese Health Cultivation—BaDuanJin [M]. Shanghai: Shanghai Science & Technical Publishers. 2015
21. Zhao Xiaoting. Traditional and Classical Chinese Health Cultivation—FangSongGong [M]. Shanghai: Shanghai Science & Technical Publishers. 2015
22. Terminologies of Fundamentals of Traditional Chinese Medicine, National Standard of the People's Republic of China (GB/T 20348-2006)
23. TCM Disease/Syndrome Classification and Code, National Standard of the People's Republic of China (GB/T 15657-1995)

24. Terminologies of TCM Clinical Diagnosis and Treatment (Diseases), National Standard of the People's Republic of China (GB/T 16751.1-1997)
25. Terminologies of TCM Clinical Diagnosis and Treatment (Symptoms), National Standard of the People's Republic of China (GB/T 16751.2-1997)
26. Terminologies of TCM Clinical Diagnosis and Treatment (Therapies), National Standard of the People's Republic of China (GB/T 16751.3-1997)
27. Terminologies in Traditional Chinese Medicine 2004, China National Committee for Terms in Sciences and Technologies
28. International Standard Chinese-English Basic Nomenclature of Chinese Medicine, the World Federation of Chinese Medicine Societies. Beijing: the People's Medical Publishing House. 2008
29. Li JW, Ou YX, et al. The Dictionary of Chinese Medicine [M]. Beijing: the People's Medical Publishing House. 1995
30. Li Zhenji. Dictionary of Commonly Used Terminology for Traditional Chinese Medicine [M]. Beijing: China Press of Traditional Chinese Medicine. 2001
31. Xia Zhengnong. The Great Dictionary (Medical Science) [M]. Shanghai: Shanghai Lexicographic Publishing House. 2003
32. Li Jingwei, et al. Essential Dictionary of Terminologies in Traditional Chinese Medicine [M]. Tianjin: Tianjin Science and Technology Press. 1996
33. Pan Renxian. Clinical Terminologies in Traditional Chinese Medicine [M]. Shanghai: Shanghai Science and Technical Publishers. 1987
34. Yan Shiyun. New Concise Dictionary of Traditional Chinese Medicine [M]. Beijing: the People's Medical Publishing House. 2007
35. Yu Dafang. The Principle and Practice of Tuina [M]. Shanghai: Shanghai Science and Technical Publishers. 1985
36. Ding Jifeng. Encyclopedia of Chinese Medicine (Tuina) [M]. Shanghai: Shanghai Science and Technical Publishers. 1987
37. Yan Juntao. Tuina Science [M]. Beijing: China Press of Traditional Chinese Medicine. 2003
38. Wang Zhihong. Tuina Science [M]. Beijing: China Press of Traditional Chinese Medicine. 2012
39. Zhou Xinwen. Tuina Exercise [M]. Shanghai: Shanghai Science and Technical Publishers. 2001
40. Qu Lifang, Zhang Weihang. Chinese Medicine and Mental Illness [M]. Shanghai: Shanghai Science and Technical Publishers. 2015
41. Zhu Wenfeng. Diagnosis in Traditional Chinese Medicine [M]. Beijing: China Press of Traditional Chinese Medicine. 2002
42. Yuan Zhong, Tu Ya, Peng Zebang, et al. Traditional Chinese Medicine Dictionary [M]. Beijing: China Medical Science Press. 1995
43. Li Jingwei, Yu Yingao, Cai Jingfeng, et al. Dictionary of Traditional Chinese Medicine [M]. Beijing: the People's Medical Publishing House. 2007
44. Yuan Zhaokai, Wang Tianfang. Diagnosis in Traditional Chinese Medicine [M]. Beijing: China Press of Traditional Chinese Medicine. 2007
45. Yao Naili. Differential Diagnosis of TCM Symptoms [M]. Beijing: the People's Medical Publishing House. 2000
46. Wang Yiqin. Diagnosis in Traditional Chinese Medicine [M]. Beijing: China Press of Traditional Chinese Medicine. 2004
47. Deng Tietao. Diagnosis in Traditional Chinese Medicine [M]. Shanghai Science and Technical Publishers. 1984.
48. Gao Xinzhu, Hu Ling. Chinese Acupuncture and Moxibustion Dictionary [M]. Phoenix Publishing & Media Group, Jiangsu Science and Technology Press. 2010
49. Shen Xueyong. Meridians and Points [M]. China Press of Traditional Chinese Medicine. 2006
50. General Nomenclature of Acupuncture and Moxibustion, National Standard of the People's Republic of China (GB/T 30232-2013)
51. Part 5, Standard Manipulation of Acupuncture and Moxibustion: Cupping (GB/T 21709.5-2008)



52. Zhong Gansheng. Chinese Pharmacy [M]. Beijing: China Press of Traditional Chinese Medicine. 2012.
53. Lei Zaiquan, Zhang Tingmo. Clinical Practice of Chinese Pharmacy [M]. Beijing: the People's Medical Publishing House. 1998: 92.
54. Ling Yikui. Chinese Pharmacy [M]. Shanghai: Shanghai Science and Technical Publishers. 1984.
55. Chen Dexing, Wen Xiaoping. Chinese Herbal Formula [M]. Beijing: Tsinghua University Press. 2013
56. Xie Ming, Zhou Ran. Chinese Herbal Formula [M]. Beijing: the People's Medical Publishing House. 2012
57. Xie Mengzhou, Zhu Tianmin. Chinese Medicated Diet [M]. Beijing: China Press of Traditional Chinese Medicine. 2016
58. Ding Fubao, the Great Dictionary of Buddhism. Beijing: Cathay Bookshop Publishing House. 2011
59. Hu Fuchen. Chinese Taoism Dictionary. Beijing: China Social Sciences Press. 1995
60. Ma Qiren. Practical Chinese Medical Qigong. Shanghai: Shanghai Science and Technical Publishers. 1992
61. Yi Ru (Ming Dynasty). Tripitaka Arts. Zhejiang: Zhejiang Classics Publishing House. 1991
62. Zhi Yi (Sui Dynasty). Six Profound Gateways to Dharma. Shanghai: Shanghai Classics Publishing House.1989
63. Zhu Feihuang. Buddhist Dictionary. Shanghai: The Commercial Press. 2000
64. Chen Yixiao. Common Buddhist Glossaries. Ningxia: Ningxia People's Publishing House.1994
65. Chinese Research Institute for Buddhist Culture. The Buddhist Source of Colloquialism. Shanghai: Shanghai People's Publishing House. 1993
66. Liu Yiming. Twelve Taoist Books. Beijing: Bibliography and Document Publishing House. 1996
67. Zhang Junfang. Seven Slips from the Book bag of the Clouds. Jinan: Qilu Publishing House. 1988
68. Lù Guangrong. Chinese Qigong Dictionary. Beijing: the People's Medical Publishing House. 1988
69. Lu Jinchuan. Dictionary of Traditional Qigong Glossaries. Sichuan: Sichuan Science and Technology Press. 1988
70. Zhang Wenjiang. Traditional Chinese Qigong Dictionary. Shanxi: Shanxi Education Press. 1989
71. Chen Yongzheng. Chinese Fangshu (Magic Arts) Dictionary. Guangdong: Sun Yat-Sen University Press. 1991
72. Zhang Zhizhe. Dictionary of Taoist Culture. Jiangsu: Jiangsu Classics Publishing House. 1994
73. Liu Tianjun. Chinese Medical Qigong. Beijing: China Press of Traditional Chinese Medicine. 2012
74. Yang Chengfu. Selections of Taijiquan. Beijing: Beijing City Chinese Bookstore. 1984







**World Health  
Organization**

Department of Integrated Health Services  
World Health Organization (WHO)  
Avenue Appia 20 – CH-1211 Geneva 27 – Switzerland

